00067791

ARY

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
Town Hall, Bombay.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 18 July, 2018

THE CONFESSIONS

OF

ST. AUGUSTINE,

BISHOP OF HIPPO.

C7791

TRANSLATED AND ANNOTATED BY

J. G. PILKINGTON, M.A.,

VICAR OF ST. MARK'S, WEST HACKNEY; AND SOMETIME CLERICAL SECRETARY OF THE BISHOP OF LONDON'S FUND.

"Thou hast formed us for Thyself, and our hearts are restless till they find rest in Thee."—*Confessions*, i. 1.

"The joy of the solemn service of Thy house constraineth to tears, when it is read of Thy younger Son, that He was dead, and is alive again, and was lost, and is found."—*Ibid.* viii. 6.

EDINBURGH:

38 GLOR

MCLXVI

00067791

THE WORKS

OF

AURELIUS AUGUSTINE,

BISHOP OF HIPPO.

B 3202

A NEW TRANSLATION.

Edited by the

REV. MARCUS DODS, D.D.

A. 2 1

VOL. XIV.

THE CONFESSIONS OF SAINT AUGUSTINE.

A. 2 1

EDINBURGH:
T. CLARK, 38 GEORGE ST.
MDCCCLXXVI.

PRINTED BY MORRAY AND GIBB

FOR

T. & T. CLARK, EDINBURGH

LONDON, [illegible] AND [illegible]

DUBLIN, [illegible]

NEW YORK, [illegible]

TO HIS MOTHER,

THIS TRANSLATION,

CONTAINING THE RECORD OF A MOTHER'S DEVOTION TO HER SON,

IS DEDICATED

BY THE TRANSLATOR.

THE OPINION OF ST. AUGUSTINE

CONCERNING HIS

CONFESSIONS, AS EMBODIED IN HIS RETRACTATIONS, II. 6.

1. "THE Thirteen Books of my Confessions, whether they refer to my evil or good, praise the just and good God, and stimulate the heart and mind of man to approach unto Him. And, as far as pertaineth unto me, they wrought this in me when they were written, and this they work when they are read. What some think of them they may have seen, but that they have given much pleasure, and do give pleasure, to many brethren I know. From the First to the Tenth they have been written of myself; in the remaining three, of the Sacred Scriptures, from the text, 'In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth,' even to the rest of the Sabbath (Gen. i. 1, ii. 2)."

2. "In the Fourth Book, when I acknowledged the distress of my mind at the death of a friend, saying, that our soul, though one, had been in some manner made out of two; and therefore, I say, perchance was I afraid to die lest he should die wholly whom I had so much loved (chap. vi.);—this seems to me as if it were a light declamation rather than a grave confession, although this folly may in some sort be tempered by that 'perchance' which follows. And in the Thirteenth Book (chap. xxxii.) what I said, viz. that the 'firmament was made between the spiritual upper waters, and the corporeal lower waters,' was said without due consideration; [illegible] thing is very obscure."

ON THE GRACE OF CHRIST,

AND

ON ORIGINAL SIN;

WRITTEN AGAINST PELAGIUS AND CŒLESTIUS,

IN THE YEAR A.D. 418.

BOOK FIRST.

ON THE GRACE OF CHRIST.

WHEREIN HE SHOWS THAT PELAGIUS WAS SIMPLY DISINGENUOUS IN HIS CONFESSION OF GRACE, INASMUCH AS HE PLACED GRACE EITHER IN MAN'S NATURE AND FREE WILL, OR IN THE LAW AND DOCTRINE [OF SCRIPTURE;] AND, MOREOVER, ASSERTED THAT IT WAS MERELY THE "POSSIBILITY" (AS HE CALLS IT) OF A MAN'S EXERCISING WILL AND ACTION, AND NOT THE WILL AND ACTION ITSELF, WHICH IS ASSISTED BY DIVINE GRACE; AND THAT *SSISTING GRACE, TOO, IS GIVEN BY GOD ACCORDING TO MEN'S MERITS;* HE FURTHER THOUGHT THAT THEY WERE SO ASSISTED FOR THE SOLE E OF BEING THE MORE EASILY ENABLED TO FULFIL THE COMMAND- AUGUSTINE EXAMINES THOSE PASSAGES OF HIS WRITINGS IN HE BOASTED THAT HE HAD BESTOWED EXPRESS COMMENDATION ON RACE OF GOD, AND POINTS OUT HOW THEY CAN BE INTERPRETED AS EING TO THE LAW AND THE DOCTRINE,—IN OTHER WORDS, TO THE REVELATION AND THE EXAMPLE OF CHRIST, WHICH ARE ALIKE IN- D IN "THE DOCTRINE,"—OR ELSE TO THE REMISSION OF SINS; NOR DO AFFORD ANY EVIDENCE WHATEVER THAT PELAGIUS REALLY ACKNOW- D CHRISTIAN GRACE, IN THE SENSE OF HELP RENDERED FOR THE PER- ANCE OF RIGHT ACTION TO NATURAL FACULTY AND [SCRIPTURAL] TION, BY THE INSPIRATION OF A MOST GLOWING AND LUMINOUS AND HE CONCLUDES WITH A REQUEST THAT PELAGIUS WOULD TEN TO AMBROSE, WHOM HE IS SO VERY FOND OF QUOTING, IN LOGY IN COMMENDATION OF THE GRACE OF GOD.

CHAP. 1. [I.]

on account of your bodily health, se of your spiritual welfare, my en and beloved of God, Albina nnot express in words; w our own thoughts and belief, i

EXTRACT FROM "THE RETRACTATIONS,"
Book II. Chap. 50.

"AFTER the conviction and condemnation[1] of the Pelagian heresy and its authors by the bishops of the Church of Rome,—first Innocent, and then Zosimus,—aided by letters from councils in Africa, I wrote two books in opposition to the heretics: one of these was *On the Grace of Christ*, and the other *On Original Sin*. The work began with the following words: 'How greatly we rejoice on account of your bodily health, and, above all, because of your spiritual welfare'" [Quantum de vestrâ corporali, et maxime spiritali salute gaudeamus].

[1] From this it follows that we must refer his works *On the Grace of C*
and *On Original Sin* to the year 418; for it was in this year that
heresy was condemned even by the pope Zosimus, [who had at fir
Pelagius]. And about the same time also was held a general co
bishops of Africa at Carthage, to take measures against the heresy,
date of which council is May 1st of this year 418. Augustine, by re
council, was detained at Carthage, and his stay in that city was l
usual, as one may learn from the 94th canon of the council, or from
Canonum of the Church of Africa, canon 127, as well as from his epi
Mercator. Now it was in this interval of time, before he started for
Cæsariensis, that he wrote these two books for Albina, Pinianus, and
accordingly, in his *Retractations*, he places them just previous to the
proceedings with Emeritus, which were concluded at Cæsarea on
September in this very year 418. Julianus, in his work addressed
calumniously attacked a passage in this book *On the Grace*
passage is defended by Augustine in his work against Julia
he mentions this first book, addressed to *the holy Pini*
gives its title as *De Gratiâ contra Pelagium* [
to Pelagius"].—ED. BENEDICT.

TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.

"IF St. Augustine," says Nourrisson,[1] "had left nothing but his *Confessions* and the *City of God*, one could readily understand the respectful sympathy that surrounds his memory. How, indeed, could one fail to admire in the *City of God* the flight of genius, and in the *Confessions*, what is better still, the effusions of a great soul?" It may be safely predicted, that while the mind of man yearns for knowledge, and his heart seeks rest, the *Confessions* will retain that foremost place in the world's literature which it has secured by its sublime outpourings of devotion and profound philosophical spirit. There is in the book a wonderful combination of childlike piety and intellectual power. Desjardins' idea,[2] that, while in Augustine's other works we see the philosopher or the controversialist, here we see the man, is only to be accepted as a comparative statement of Augustine's attitude in the *Confessions*; for philosophy and piety are in many of his reflections as it were molten into one homogeneous whole. In his highest intellectual flights we find the breathings of faith and love, and, amid the profoundest expressions of penitential sorrow, gleams of his metaphysical genius appear.

It may, indeed, be from the man's showing himself so little, as distinguished from the philosopher, that some readers are a little disappointed in the book. They have expected to meet with a copiousness of biographic detail, and have found, com-

[1] *Philosophie de St. Augustin*, Preface. [2] *Essai sur le Conf. de St. Aug.* p. 5.

mingled with such as are given, long disquisitions on Manichæanism, Time, Creation, and Memory. To avoid such disappointment we must ascertain the author's design. The book is emphatically *not* an autobiography. There is in it an outline of the author's life up to his mother's death; but only so much of detail is given as may subserve his main purpose. That purpose is clearly explained in the fourth section of his Tenth Book. It was that the inquirer on reading it might not say, "I cannot," and "sleep in despair," but rather that, looking to that God who had raised the writer from his low estate of pride and sin to be a pillar of the Church, he might take courage, and "awake in the sweetness of His grace, by which he that is weak is made strong;" and that those no longer in sin might rejoice and praise God as they heard of the past lusts of him who was now freed from them.[1] This, his design of encouraging penitence and stimulating praise, is referred to in his *Retractations*, and in his *Letter to Darius*.[2]

These two main ideas are embodied in the very meaning of the title of the book, the word *confession* having, as Augustine constantly urges, two meanings. In his exposition of the Psalms we read: "Confession is understood in two senses, of our *sins*, and of God's *praise*. Confession of our sins is well known, so well known to all the people, that whenever they hear the name of confession in the lessons, whether it is said in praise [illegible] of sin, they beat their breasts." [illegible]: "Confession of sin all know, but confession of [illegible]. The former but showeth the wound to the physician; the latter giveth thanks for health."[4] He [illegible] exhorts his hearers make the sacrifice of praise [illegible].

[1] *Confession* [illegible] x. sec. 4.
[2] See the passage quoted in nearly before [illegible].
[4] *Enarr. in Ps.* [illegible] i. sec. 19; see also *in Ps.* [illegible] sec. 4, and [illegible] 19.
[5] *Enarr.* [illegible] xxvii sec. 2.

City of God, even in the New Jerusalem, there will be no longer confession of sin, but there will be confession of praise.[1] It is not surprising, that with this view of confession he should hinge on the incidents of his life such considerations as tend to elevate the mind and heart of the reader. When, for example, he speaks of his youthful sins,[2] he diverges into a disquisition on the motives to sin; when his friend dies,[3] he moralizes on death; and—to give one example of a reverse process—his profound psychological review of memory[4] recalls his former sin (which at times haunts him in his dreams), and leads up to devout reflections on God's power to cleanse from sin. This undertone of penitence and praise which pervades the *Confessions* in all its episodes, like the golden threads which run through the texture of an Eastern garment, presents one of its peculiar charms.

It would not be right to overlook a charge that has been brought against the book by Lord Byron. He says, "Augustine in his fine *Confessions* makes the reader envy his transgressions." Nothing could be more reckless or further from the truth than this charge. There is here no dwelling on his sin, or painting it so as to satisfy a prurient imagination. As we have already remarked, Augustine's manner is not to go into detail further than to find a position from which to "edify" the reader, and he treats this episode in his life with his characteristic delicacy and reticence. His sin was dead; and [illegible] carried it to its burial with tears of repentance. And [illegible] years after his baptism, he sets him[illegible] the request [illegible] to a consideration of what he then was [illegible] the moment [illegible] his confessions,[5] he refers hardly at all to this sin of [illegible]; and such allusions as he does make are of the most [illegible]ual kind. Instead of enlarging upon it [illegible] it

[1] [illegible] xliv. sec. 33, xcix. sec. 16.
[2] Book ii. [illegible] 6–18.
[3] [illegible] iv. secs. 11–15.
[4] Book x. [illegible] 1–42.
[5] [illegible] x. sec. 4.

as past, and only speaks of temptation and sin as they are common to all men. Many of the French writers on the *Confessions*[1] institute a comparison in this matter between the confessions of Augustine and those of Rousseau. Pressensé[2] draws attention to the delicacy and reserve which characterise the one, and the arrogant defiance of God and man manifested in the other. The confessions of the one he speaks of as "un grand acte de repentir et d'amour;" and eloquently says, "In it he seems, like the Magdalen, to have spread his box of perfumes at the foot of the Saviour; from his stricken heart there exhales the incense most agreeable to God—the homage of true penitence." The other he truly describes as uttering "a cry of triumph in the very midst of his sin, and robing his shame in a royal purple." Well may Desjardins[3] express surprise at a book of such foulness coming from a genius so great; and perhaps his solution of the enigma is not far from the truth, when he attributes it to an overweening vanity and egotism.[4]

It is right to point out, in connection with this part of our subject, that in regard to some at least of Augustine's self-accusations,[5] there may be a little of that pious exaggeration of his sinfulness which, as Lord Macaulay points out in his essays on Bunyan,[6] frequently characterises deep penitence. But however this may be, justice requires us to remember, in considering his transgression, that from his very childhood he had been surrounded by a condition of civilisation presenting many-

[1] In addition to those referred to, there is one at the beginning of vol. ii. of Saint-Marc Girardin's *Essais de Littérature et de Morale*, devoted to the subject. It has some good points in it, but has much of that sentimentality which is often found in French criticisms.

[2] *Le Christianisme au Quatrième Siècle*, p. 269.

[3] *Essai sur les Conf.*, etc. p. 12.

[4] He concludes: "La folie de son orgueil, voilà le mot de l'énigme, ou l'énigme n'en a pas."—*Id.* p. 13.

[5] Compare *Confessions*, ii. sec. 2, and iii. sec. 1, with iv. sec. 2.

[6] In vol. i. of his *Crit. and Hist. Essays*, and also in his *Miscellaneous Writings*.

fold temptations. Carthage, where he spent a large part of his life, had become, since its restoration and colonization under Augustus Cæsar, an "exceeding great city," in wealth and importance next to Rome.[1] "African Paganism," says Pressensé,[2] "was half Asiatic; the ancient worship of nature, the adoration of Astarte, had full licence in the city of Carthage; Dido had become a mythological being, whom this dissolute city had made its protecting divinity, and it is easy to recognise in her the great goddess of Phœnicia under a new name." The luxury of the period is described by Jerome and Tertullian, when they denounce the custom of painting the face and tiring the head, and the prodigality that would give 25,000 golden crowns for a veil, immense revenues for a pair of ear-rings, and the value of a forest or an island for a head-dress.[3] And Jerome, in one of his epistles, gives an illustration of the Church's relation to the Pagan world at that time, when he represents an old priest of Jupiter with his grand-daughter, a catechumen, on his knee, who responds to his caresses by singing canticles.[4] It was a time when we can imagine one of Augustine's parents going to the Colosseum, and enjoying the lasciviousness of its displays, and its gladiatorial shows, with their contempt of human life; while the other carefully shunned such scenes, as being under the ban of the teachers of the Church.[5] It was an age in which there was action and reaction between religion and philosophy: but in which the power of Christianity was so great in its influences on Paganism that some received the Christian Scriptures only to embody in their phraseology the ideas of heathenism. Of this last point Manichæanism presents an illustration. Now all these influences left their mark on Augustine. In his youth he plunged deep into the pleasures of his day; and we know how he endeavoured to find in Manichæanism

[1] Herodian, *Hist.* vii. 6. [2] *Le Christianisme*, etc. as above, p. 274.
[3] Quoted by Nourrisson, *Philosophie*, etc. ii. 436. [4] *Ibid.* ii. 434, 435.
[5] See *Confessions*, iii. sec. 2, note, and vi. sec. 13, note.

a solution of those speculations which haunted his subtle and inquiring mind. Augustine at this time, then, is not to be taken as a type of what Christianity produced. He is to a great extent the outgrowth of the Pagan influences of the time. Considerations such as these may enable us to judge of his early sin more justly than if we measured it by our own privileges and opportunities.

The style of Augustine is sometimes criticised as not having the refinement of Virgil, Horace, or Cicero. But it should be remembered that he wrote in a time of national decay; and further, as Desjardins has remarked in the introduction to his essay, he had *no time* "to cut his phrases." From the period of his conversion to that of his death, he was constantly engaged in controversy with this or that heresy; and if he did not write with classical accuracy, he so inspired the language with his genius, and moulded it by his fire,[1] that it appears almost to pulsate with the throbbings of his brain. He seems likewise to have despised *mere* elegance, for in his *Confessions*,[2] when speaking of the style of Faustus, he says, "What profit to me was the elegance of my cup-bearer, since he offered me not the more precious draught for which I thirsted?" In this connection the remarks of Collinges[3] are worthy of note. He says, when anticipating objections that might be made to his own style: "It was the last of my study; my opinion always was what Augustine calls *diligens negligentia* was the best diligence as to that; while I was yet a very young man I had learned out of him that it was no solecism in a preacher to use *ossum* for *os*, for (said he) an iron key is better than one made of gold if it will better open the door, for that is all

[1] See Poujoulat, *Lettres de Saint Augustin*, Introd. p. 12, who compares the language to the time to Ezekiel's Valley of Dry Bones, and says Augustine inspired it with life.

[2] *Confessions*, v. sec. 10.

[3] *The Intercourses of Divine Love betwixt Christ and His Church*, Preface (1688)

the use of the key. I had learned out of Hierom that a gaudry of phrases and words in a pulpit is but *signum insipientiæ*. The words of a preacher, saith he, ought *pungere non palpare*, to prick the heart, not to smooth and coax. The work of an orator is too precarious for a minister of the gospel. Gregory observed that our Saviour had not styled us the *sugar* but the *salt* of the earth, and Augustine observeth, that though Cyprian in one epistle showed much of a florid orator, to show he could do it, yet he never would do so any more, to show he would not."

There are several features in the *Confessions* deserving of remark, as being of special interest to the philosopher, the historian, or the divine.

1. Chiefest amongst these is the intense desire for knowledge and the love of truth which characterised Augustine. This was noticeable before his conversion in his hungering after such knowledge as Manichæanism and the philosophy of the time could afford.[1] It is none the less observable in that better time, when, in his quiet retreat at Cassiciacum, he sought to strengthen the foundations of his faith, and resolved to give himself up to the acquisition of divine knowledge.[2] It was seen, too, in the many conflicts in which he was engaged with Donatists, Manichæans, Arians, and Pelagians, and in his earnest study of the deep things of God. This love of knowledge is perhaps conveyed in the beautiful legend quoted by Nourrisson,[3] of the monk rapped in spirit, who expressed astonishment at not seeing Augustine among the elect in heaven. "He is higher up," he was answered, "he is standing before the Holy Trinity disputing thereon for all eternity."

While from the time of his conversion we find him holding on to the fundamental doctrines of the faith with the tenacity of one who had experienced the hollowness of the teachings of

[1] See *Confessions*, iv. sec. 1, note.
[2] *Ibid.* ix. sec. 7, note, and compare x. sec. 55, note.
[3] *Philosophie*, etc. as above, i. 320.

philosophy,[1] this passion for truth led him to handle most freely subjects of speculation in things non-essential.[2] But whether viewed as a controversialist, a student of Scripture, or a bishop of the Church of God, he ever manifests those qualities of mind and heart that gained for him not only the affection of the Church, but the esteem of his unorthodox opponents. To quote Guizot's discriminating words, there was in him "ce mélange de passion et de douceur, d'autorité et de sympathie, d'étendue d'esprit et de rigueur logique, qui lui donnait un si rare pouvoir."[3]

2. It is to this eager desire for truth in his many-sided mind that we owe those trains of thought that read like forecasts of modern opinion. We have called attention to some such anticipations of modern thought as they recur in the notes throughout the book; but the speculations on Memory, Time, and Creation, which occupy so large a space in Books Ten and Eleven, deserve more particular notice. The French essayists have entered very fully into these questions. M. Saisset, in his admirable introduction to the *De Civitate Dei*,[4] reviews Augustine's theories as to the mysterious problems connected with the idea of Creation. He says that in his subtle analysis of Time, and in his attempt at reconciling "the eternity of creative action with the dependence of things created . . . he has touched with a bold and delicate hand one of the deepest mysteries of the human mind, and that to all his glorious titles he has added another, that of an ingenious psychologist and an eminent metaphysician." Dejardins likewise commends the depth of Augustine's speculations as to Time,[5] and maintains that no one's teaching as to Creation h

[1] See *Confessions*, x. sec. 38, note.

[3] *Histoire de la Civilisation en France*, i. 208 (1828). [illegible] is speaking of Augustine's attitude in the Pelagian controversy.

[4] A portion of this introduction will be found translated in Appendix ii. of M. Saisset's *Essay on Religious Philosophy* (Clark).

[5] [illegible], etc. [illegible] before, p. 12[illegible].

shown more clearness, boldness, and vigour,—avoiding the perils of dualism on the one hand, and atheism on the other.[1] In his remarks on Augustine's disquisitions on the phenomena of Memory, his praise is of a more qualified character. He compares his theories with those of Malebranche, and, while recognising the practical and animated character of his descriptions, thinks him obscure in his delineation of the *manner in which* absent realities reproduce themselves on the memory.[2]

We have had occasion in the notes to refer to the *Unseen Universe*. The authors of this powerful "Apologia" for Christianity propose it chiefly as an antidote to the materialistic disbelief in the immortality of the soul amongst scientific men, which has resulted in this age from the recent advance in physical science; just as in the last century English deism had its rise in a similar influence. It is curious, in connection with this part of our subject, to note that in leading up to the conclusion at which he arrives, M. Saisset quotes a passage from the *City of God*,[3] which contains an adumbration of the theory of the above work in regard to the eternity of the invisible universe.[4] Verily, the saying of the wise man is true: "The thing that hath been, it is that which shall be; and that which is done, is that which shall be done: and there is no new thing under the sun."[5]

3. We have already, in a previous paragraph, briefly adverted to the influence Christianity and Paganism had one on the

[1] *Essai*, etc. p. 130.

[2] *Ibid.* pp. 130-138. Nourrisson's criticism of Augustine's views on Memory "may well be compared with that of Descartes. He speaks of the powerful originality of Augustine,—who is as marvellous as well as new,—and says some of his disquisitions are 'the most admirable which have inspired psychological observation.' And further, 'One does not meet with all the books of St. Augustine any philosophical theories which have greater depth than that on Memory.'"—*Philosophic*, etc. as above, i. 133.

[3] Book xii. ch. 15.

[4] This explanation is accepted by Leibnitz in his *Essais de Théodicée*. See also M. Saisset, as above, ii. 196-8 (Essay by the Translator).

[5] Eccl. i. 9.

other. The history of Christianity has been a steady advance on Paganism and Pagan philosophy; but it can hardly be denied that in this advance there has been an absorption—and in some periods in no small degree—of some of their elements. As these matters have been examined in the notes, we need not do more than refer the reader to the Index of Subjects for the evidence to be obtained in this respect from the *Confessions* on such matters as Baptism, False Miracles, and Prayers for the Dead.

4. There is one feature in the *Confessions* which we should not like to pass unnoticed. A reference to the *Retractations*[1] will show that Augustine highly appreciated the spiritual use to which the book might be put in the edification of the brethren. We believe that it will prove most useful in this way; and spiritual benefit will accrue in proportion to the steadiness of its use. We would venture to suggest that Book X., from section 37 to the end, may be profitably used as a manual of self-examination. We have pointed out in a note, that in his comment on the 8th Psalm he makes our Lord's three temptations to be types of all the temptations to which man can be subjected; and makes them correspond in their order, as given by St. Matthew, to "the Lust of the Flesh, the Lust of the Eyes, and the Pride of Life," mentioned by St. John.[2] Under each of these heads we have, in this part of the *Confessions*, a most severe examination of conscience; and the impression is deepened by his allegorically likening the three divisions of temptation to the beasts of the field, the fish of the sea, and the birds of the air.[3] We have already remarked, in adverting to allegorical interpretation, that where "the strict use of the history is not disregarded," to use Augustine's expression, a good thing, by way of spiritual

[1] Quoted immediately before this Preface. [2] ii. 16.
[3] See *Confessions*, x. sec. 3, note, and x. sec. 41, note.
[4] *Ibid.* vi. sec. 5, note.

meditation, may be profitable. Those who employ it with this idea will find their interpretations greatly aided, and made more systematic, by realizing Augustine's methods here and in the last two books of the *Confessions*,—as when he makes the sea to represent the wicked world, and the fruitful earth the Church.[1]

It only remains to call attention to the principles on which this translation and its annotations have been made. The text of the Benedictine edition has been followed; but the head-lines of the chapters are taken from the edition of Bruder, as being the more definite and full. After carefully translating the whole of the book, it has been compared, line by line, with the translation of Watts[2] (one of the most nervous translations of the seventeenth century), and that of Dr. Pusey, which is confessedly founded upon that of Watts. Reference has also been made, in the case of obscure passages, to the French translation of Du Bois, and the English translation of the first Ten Books alluded to in the note on p. 233. The references to Scripture are in the words of the Authorized Version wherever the sense will bear it; and whenever noteworthy variations from our version occur, they are indicated by references to the old Italic version, or to the Vulgate. In some cases, where Augustine has clearly referred to the LXX. in order to amend his version thereby, such variations are indicated.[3] The annotations are, for the most part, such as have been derived from the translator's own reading. Two exceptions, however, must be made. Out of upwards of four hundred notes, some forty are taken from the annotations in Pusey and Watts, but in every case these have been indicated

[1] See *Confessions*, xiii. sec. 27, note 3, and sec. 21, note 1.

[2] "St. Augustine's *Confessions* translated and with some marginal notes illustrated by ... Watts, Rector of St. Alban's, Wood St. (1631)."

[3] For what ... may be as to the extent of his knowledge of Greek, it is beyond dispute that he frequently had recourse to the Greek of the Old and New Testament with this view. See Nourrisson, *Philosophie* ..., ii. p. 98.

by the initials E. B. P. or W. W. Dr. Pusey's annotations (which will be found chiefly in the earlier part of this work) consist almost entirely of quotations from other works of Augustine. These annotations are very copious, and Dr. Pusey explains that he resorted to this method "partly because this plan of illustrating St. Augustine out of himself had been already adopted by M. Du Bois in his Latin edition . . . and it seemed a pity not to use valuable materials ready collected to one's hand. The far greater part of these illustrations are taken from that edition." It seemed the most proper course, in using such notes of Du Bois as appeared suitable for this edition, to take them from Dr. Pusey's edition, and, as above stated, to indicate their source by his initials. A Textual Index has been added, for the first time, to this edition, and both it and the Index of Subjects have been prepared with the greatest possible care.

J. G. P.

St. Mark's Vicarage, West Hackney, 1876.

CONTENTS.

BOOK FIRST.

COMMENCING WITH THE INVOCATION OF GOD, AUGUSTINE RELATES IN DETAIL THE BEGINNING OF HIS LIFE, HIS INFANCY AND BOYHOOD UP TO HIS FIFTEENTH YEAR; AT WHICH AGE HE ACKNOWLEDGES THAT HE WAS MORE INCLINED TO ALL YOUTHFUL PLEASURES AND VICES THAN TO THE STUDY OF LETTERS.

PAGE

CHAPTER I.—He proclaims the greatness of God, whom he desires to seek and invoke, being awakened by Him, ... 1

CHAPTER II.—That the God whom we invoke is in us, and we in Him, . 2

CHAPTER III.—Everywhere God wholly filleth all things, but neither heaven nor earth containeth Him, ... 3

CHAPTER IV.—The majesty of God is supreme, and His virtues inexplicable, ... 3

CHAPTER V.—He seeks rest in God, and pardon of his sins, ... 4

CHAPTER VI.—He describes his infancy, and lauds the protection and eternal providence of God, ... 5

CHAPTER VII.—He shows by examples that even infancy is prone to sin, . 8

CHAPTER VIII.—That when a boy he learned to speak, not by any set method, but from the acts and words of his parents, ... 10

CHAPTER IX.—Concerning the hatred of learning, the love of play, and the fear of being whipped noticeable in boys; and of the folly of our elders and masters, ... 11

CHAPTER X.—Through a love of ball-playing and shows, he neglects his studies and the injunctions of his parents, ... 12

CHAPTER XI.—Seized by disease, his mother being troubled, he earnestly demands baptism; which however is postponed—his father not as yet believing, ... 13

CHAPTER XII.—Being compelled, he gave his attention to learning, but fully acknowledges that this was the work of God, ... 14

PAGE

CHAPTER XIII.—He delighted in Latin studies, and the empty fables of the poets, but hated the elements of literature and the Greek language, ... 15

CHAPTER XIV.—Why he despised Greek literature, and easily learned Latin, 17

CHAPTER XV.—He entreats God, that whatever useful things he learned as a boy may be dedicated to Him, ... 18

CHAPTER XVI.—He disapproves of the mode of educating youth, and he points out why wickedness is attributed to the gods by the poets, . 18

CHAPTER XVII.—He continues on the unhappy method of training youth in literary subjects, ... 20

CHAPTER XVIII.—Men desire to observe the rules of learning, but neglect the eternal rules of everlasting safety, ... 21

BOOK SECOND.

HE ADVANCES TO PUBERTY, AND INDEED TO THE EARLY PART OF THE SIXTEENTH YEAR OF HIS AGE, IN WHICH, HAVING ABANDONED HIS STUDIES, HE INDULGED IN LUSTFUL PLEASURES, AND, WITH HIS COMPANIONS, COMMITTED THEFT.

CHAPTER I.—He deplores the wickedness of his youth, ... 25

CHAPTER II.—Stricken with exceeding grief, he remembers the dissolute passions in which, in his sixteenth year, he used to indulge, . . . 25

CHAPTER III.—Concerning his father, a freeman of Thagaste, the assister of his son's studies, and on the admonitions of his mother on the preservation of chastity, ... 27

CHAPTER IV.—He commits theft with his companions, not urged on by poverty, but from a certain distaste for well-doing, ... 30

CHAPTER V.—Concerning the motives to sin, which are not in the love of evil, but in the desire of obtaining the property of others, ... 30

CHAPTER VI.—Why he delighted in that theft, when all things which under the appearance of good invite to vice, are true and perfect in God alone, ... 32

CHAPTER VII.—He gives thanks to God for the remission of his sins, and reminds every one that the Supreme God may have preserved us from greater sins, ... 34

CHAPTER VIII.—In his theft he loved the company of his fellow-sinners, . 34

CHAPTER IX.—It was a pleasure to him also to laugh when seriously deceiving others, ... 35

CHAPTER X.—With God there is true rest and life unchanging, . . . 36

BOOK THIRD.

OF THE SEVENTEENTH, EIGHTEENTH, AND NINETEENTH YEARS OF HIS AGE, PASSED AT CARTHAGE, WHEN, HAVING COMPLETED HIS COURSE OF STUDIES, HE IS CAUGHT IN THE SNARES OF A LICENTIOUS PASSION, AND FALLS INTO THE SNARES OF THE MANICHÆANS.

PAGE

CHAPTER I.—Deluded by an insane love, he, though foul and dishonourable, desires to be thought elegant and urbane, ... 37

CHAPTER II.—In public spectacles he is moved by an empty compassion. He is attacked by a troublesome spiritual disease, ... 38

CHAPTER III.—Not even when at church does he suppress his desires. In the School of Rhetoric he abhors the acts of subverters, ... 40

CHAPTER IV.—In the nineteenth year of his age (his father having died two years before) he is led by the *Hortensius* of Cicero to philosophy, to God, and a better mode of thinking, ... 41

CHAPTER V.—He rejects the Sacred Scriptures as too simple, and as not to be compared with the dignity of Tully, ... 42

CHAPTER VI.—Deceived by his own fault, he falls into the errors of the Manichæans, who gloried in the true knowledge of God, and in a thorough examination of things, ... 43

CHAPTER VII.—He attacks the doctrine of the Manichæans concerning evil. God, and the righteousness of the patriarchs, ... 46

CHAPTER VIII.—He argues against the same as to the reason of offences, . 49

CHAPTER IX.—That the judgment of God and men as to human acts of violence is different, ... 51

CHAPTER X.—He reproves the triflings of the Manichæans as to the fruits of the earth, ... 52

CHAPTER XI.—He refers to the tears and the memorable dream concerning her son, granted by God to his mother, ... 53

CHAPTER XII.—The excellent answer of the bishop when referred to by his mother as to the conversion of her son, ... 55

BOOK FOURTH.

THEN FOLLOWS A PERIOD OF NINE YEARS FROM THE NINETEENTH YEAR OF HIS AGE; DURING WHICH, [illegible] HAD LOST A FRIEND, HE FOLLOWED THE MANICHEANS—AND WROTE BOOKS ON THE FAIR AND FIT, AND PUBLISHED A WORK ON THE LIBERAL ARTS, AND THE CATEGORIES OF ARISTOTLE.

CHAPTER I.—Concerning that most unhappy time in which he, being deceived, deceived others; and concerning the mockers of his confession, 56

CHAPTER II.—He teaches rhetoric, the only thing he loved, and scorns the soothsayers who promised him victory, ... 57

PAGE

CHAPTER III.—Not even the most experienced men could persuade him of the vanity of astrology, to which he was devoted, ... 58

CHAPTER IV.—Sorely distressed by weeping at the death of his friend, he provides consolation for himself, ... 61

CHAPTER V.—Why weeping is pleasant to the wretched, ... 63

CHAPTER VI.—His friend being snatched away by death, he imagines that he remains only as half, ... 64

CHAPTER VII.—Troubled by restlessness and grief, he leaves his country a second time for Carthage, ... 65

CHAPTER VIII.—That his grief ceased by time, and the consolation of friends, 66

CHAPTER IX.—That the love of a human being, however constant in loving and returning love, perishes; while he who loves God never loses a friend, 67

CHAPTER X.—That all things exist that they may perish, and that we are not safe unless God watches over us, ... 68

CHAPTER XI.—That portions of the world are not to be loved; but that God, their Author, is immutable, and His word eternal, ... 69

CHAPTER XII.—Love is not condemned, but love in God, in whom there is rest through Jesus Christ, is to be preferred, ... 70

CHAPTER XIII.—Love originates from grace and beauty enticing us, . . . 72

CHAPTER XIV.—Concerning the books which he wrote "on the Fair and Fit," dedicated to Hierius, ... 73

CHAPTER XV.—While writing, being blinded by corporeal images, he failed to recognise the spiritual nature of God, ... 74

CHAPTER XVI.—He very easily understood the liberal arts and the categories of Aristotle, but without true fruit, ... 78

BOOK FIFTH.

HE DESCRIBES THE TWENTY-NINTH YEAR OF HIS AGE, IN WHICH, HAVING DISCOVERED THE FALLACIES OF THE MANICHÆANS, HE PROFESSED RHETORIC AT ROME AND MILAN. HAVING HEARD AMBROSE, HE BEGINS TO COME TO HIMSELF.

CHAPTER I.—That it becomes the soul to praise God, and to confess unto Him, ... 82

CHAPTER II.—On the vanity of those who wish to escape the Omnipotent God, ... 83

CHAPTER III.—Having heard Faustus, the most learned bishop of the Manichæans, he discerns that God, the Author of things animate and inanimate, chiefly has care for the humble 84

CHAPTER IV.—That the knowledge of terrestrial and celestial things does not give happiness, but the knowledge of God only, ... 87

CHAPTER V.—Of Manichæus pertinaciously teaching false doctrines, and proudly arrogating to himself the Holy Spirit, ... 89

PAGE

CHAPTER VI.—Faustus was indeed an elegant speaker, but knew nothing of the liberal sciences, ... 90

CHAPTER VII.—Clearly seeing the fallacies of the Manichæans, he retires from them, being remarkably aided by God, ... 91

CHAPTER VIII.—He sets out for Rome, his mother in vain lamenting it, . 94

CHAPTER IX.—Being attacked by fever, he is in great danger, . . . 96

CHAPTER X.—When he had left the Manichæans, he retained his depraved opinions concerning God, sin, and the origin of the Saviour, . . . 99

CHAPTER XI.—Helpidius disputed well against the Manichæans as to the authenticity of the New Testament, ... 102

CHAPTER XII.—Professing rhetoric at Rome, he discovers the fraud of his scholars, ... 103

CHAPTER XIII.—He is sent to Milan, that he, about to teach rhetoric, may be known by Ambrose, ... 104

CHAPTER XIV.—Having heard the Bishop, he perceives the force of the Catholic faith, yet doubts, after the manner of the modern Academics, 105

BOOK SIXTH.

ATTAINING HIS THIRTIETH YEAR, HE, UNDER THE ADMONITION OF THE DISCOURSES OF AMBROSE, DISCOVERED MORE AND MORE THE TRUTH OF THE CATHOLIC DOCTRINE, AND DELIBERATES AS TO THE BETTER REGULATION OF HIS LIFE.

CHAPTER I.—His mother having followed him to Milan, declares that she will not die before her son shall have embraced the Catholic faith, . 107

CHAPTER II.—She, on the prohibition of Ambrose, abstains from honouring the memory of the martyrs, ... 109

CHAPTER III.—As Ambrose was occupied with business and study, Augustine could seldom consult him concerning the Holy Scriptures, . . . 112

CHAPTER IV.—He recognises the falsity of his own opinions, and commits to memory the saying of Ambrose, ... 114

CHAPTER V.—Faith as the basis of human life; man cannot discover that truth which Holy Scripture has disclosed. 117

CHAPTER VI.—On the source and cause of true joy.—The example of the joyous being adduced, ... 119

CHAPTER VII.—He leads to reformation his friend Alypius, seized with madness for the Circensian games, ... 121

CHAPTER VIII.—The same when at Rome, being led by others into the Amphitheatre, is delighted with the gladiatorial games, ... 124

CHAPTER IX.—Innocent Alypius, being apprehended as a thief, is set at liberty by the cleverness of an architect, ... 126

CHAPTER X.—The wonderful integrity of Alypius in judgment. The lasting friendship of Nebridius with Augustine, ... 128

PAGE

CHAPTER XI.—Being troubled by his grievous errors, he meditates entering on a new life, ... 130

CHAPTER XII.—Discussion with Alypius concerning a life of celibacy, . 132

CHAPTER XIII.—Being urged by his mother to take a wife, he sought a maiden that was pleasing unto him, ... 134

CHAPTER XIV.—The design of establishing a common household with his friends is speedily hindered, ... 134

CHAPTER XV.—He dismisses one mistress, and chooses another, . . . 136

CHAPTER XVI.—The fear of death and judgment called him, believing in the immortality of the soul, back from his wickedness, him who aforetime believed in the opinions of Epicurus, ... 136

BOOK SEVENTH.

HE RECALLS THE BEGINNING OF HIS YOUTH, I.E. THE THIRTY-FIRST YEAR OF HIS AGE, IN WHICH VERY GRAVE ERRORS AS TO THE NATURE OF GOD, AND THE ORIGIN OF EVIL, BEING DISTINGUISHED, AND THE SACRED BOOKS MORE ACCURATELY KNOWN, HE AT LENGTH ARRIVES AT A CLEAR KNOWLEDGE OF GOD, NOT YET RIGHTLY APPREHENDING JESUS CHRIST.

CHAPTER I.—He regarded not God, indeed, under the form of a human body, but as a corporeal substance diffused through space, ... 139

CHAPTER II.—The disputation of Nebridius against the Manichæans on the question, "Whether God be corruptible or incorruptible?" . . 141

CHAPTER III.—That the cause of evil is the free judgment of the will, . 143

CHAPTER IV.—That God is not corruptible, who, if He were, would not be God at all, ... 144

CHAPTER V.—Questions concerning the origin of evil in regard to God, who, since He is the chief good, cannot be the cause of evil, . . . 145

CHAPTER VI.—He refutes the divinations of the astrologers deduced from the constellations 147

CHAPTER VII.—He is variously exercised as to the origin of evil, . . 150

CHAPTER VIII.—By God's assistance he by degrees arrives at the truth, . 151

CHAPTER IX.—He compares the doctrine of the Platonists concerning the Word with the much more excellent doctrine of Christianity, . . 152

CHAPTER X.—Divine things are the more clearly manifested to him who withdraws into the recesses of his heart, ... 157

CHAPTER XI.—That creatures are mutable and God alone immutable . . 159

CHAPTER XII.—Whatever things the good God has created are very good, . 159

CHAPTER XIII.—It is meet to praise the Creator for the good things which are made in heaven and earth, ... 160

CHAPTER XIV.—Being displeased with some part of God's creation, he conceives of two original substances, ... 161

PAGE

CHAPTER XV.—Whatever is, owes its being to God, ... 161

CHAPTER XVI.—Evil arises not from a substance, but from the perversion of the will, ... 162

CHAPTER XVII.—Above his changeable mind, he discovers the unchangeable Author of Truth, ... 162

CHAPTER XVIII.—Jesus Christ, the Mediator, is the only way of safety, . 165

CHAPTER XIX.—He does not yet fully understand the saying of John, "That the Word was made flesh," 166

CHAPTER XX.—He rejoices that he proceeded from Plato to the Holy Scriptures, and not the reverse, ... 169

CHAPTER XXI.—What he found in the sacred books which are not to be found in Plato, ... 170

BOOK EIGHTH.

HE FINALLY DESCRIBES THE THIRTY-SECOND YEAR OF HIS AGE, THE MOST MEMORABLE OF HIS WHOLE LIFE, IN WHICH, BEING INSTRUCTED BY SIMPLICIANUS CONCERNING THE CONVERSION OF OTHERS, AND THE MANNER OF ACTING, HE IS, AFTER A SEVERE STRUGGLE, RENEWED IN HIS WHOLE MIND, AND IS CONVERTED UNTO GOD.

CHAPTER I.—He, now given to divine things, and yet entangled by the lusts of love, consults Simplicianus in reference to the renewing of his mind, 174

CHAPTER II.—The pious old man rejoices that he read Plato and the Scriptures, and tells him of the rhetorician Victorinus having been converted to the faith through the reading of the sacred books, . . 176

CHAPTER III.—That God and the angels rejoice more on the return of one sinner than of many just persons, ... 182

CHAPTER IV.—He shows by the example of Victorinus that there is more joy in the conversion of nobles, ... 183

CHAPTER V.—Of the causes which estrange us from God, ... 185

CHAPTER VI.—Pontitianus' account of Antony, the founder of Monachism, and of some who imitated him, ... 189

CHAPTER VII.—He recounts his wretchedness, having been born thirty-two years, but had not yet found the truth, ... 193

CHAPTER VIII.—The conversation with Alypius being ended, he retires to the garden, whither his friend follows him, ... 196

CHAPTER IX.—That the mind commandeth the mind but it willeth not entirely, ... 197

CHAPTER X.—He refutes the opinion of the Manichæans as to two kinds of minds, one good and the other evil, ... 198

CHAPTER XI.—In what manner the Spirit struggled with the flesh, that it might be freed from the bondage of vanity, ... 200

PAGE

CHAPTER XII.—Having prayed to God, he pours forth a shower of tears, and, admonished by a voice, he opens the book and reads the words in Rom. xiii. 13; by which, being changed in his whole soul, he discloses the divine favour to his friend and his mother, . . . 203

BOOK NINTH.

HE SPEAKS OF HIS DESIGN OF FORSAKING THE PROFESSION OF RHETORIC; OF THE DEATH OF HIS FRIENDS, NEBRIDIUS AND VERECUNDUS; OF HAVING RECEIVED BAPTISM IN THE THIRTY-THIRD YEAR OF HIS AGE; AND OF THE VIRTUES AND DEATH OF HIS MOTHER MONICA.

CHAPTER I.—He praises God, the author of safety, and Jesus Christ, the Redeemer, acknowledging his own wickedness, ... 206

CHAPTER II.—As his lungs were affected, he meditates withdrawing himself from public favour, ... 207

CHAPTER III.—He retires to the villa of his friend Verecundus, who was not yet a Christian, and refers to his conversion and death, as well as that of Nebridius, ... 209

CHAPTER IV.—In the country he gives his attention to literature, and explains the fourth Psalm in connection with the happy conversion of Alypius. He is troubled with toothache, ... 211

CHAPTER V.—At the recommendation of Ambrose, he reads the prophecies of Isaiah, but does not understand them, ... 217

CHAPTER VI.—He is baptized at Milan with Alypius and his son Adeodatus; the book *De Magistro*, ... 217

CHAPTER VII.—Of the Church hymns instituted at Milan; of the Ambrosian persecution raised by Justina; and of the discovery of the bodies of two martyrs, ... 219

CHAPTER VIII.—Of the conversion of Evodius; and the death of his mother, when returning with him to Africa; and whose education he carefully relates, ... 220

CHAPTER IX.—He describes the praiseworthy habits of his mother, and her kindness towards her husband and her sons, ... 222

CHAPTER X.—A conversation he had with his mother concerning the kingdom of heaven, ... 226

CHAPTER XI.—His mother, attacked by fever, dies at Ostia, ... 229

CHAPTER XII.—How he mourned his dead mother, ... 230

CHAPTER XIII.—He entreats God for her sins, and admonishes his readers to remember her piously, ... 234

BOOK TENTH.

HAVING MANIFESTED WHAT HE WAS AND WHAT HE IS, HE SHOWS THE GREAT FRUIT OF HIS CONFESSION; AND BEING ABOUT TO EXAMINE BY WHAT METHOD GOD AND THE HAPPY LIFE MAY BE FOUND, HE ENLARGES ON THE NATURE AND POWER OF MEMORY. THEN HE EXAMINES HIS OWN ACTS, THOUGHTS, AND AFFECTIONS, VIEWED UNDER THE THREEFOLD DIVISION OF TEMPTATION; AND COMMEMORATES THE LORD, THE ONE MEDIATOR OF GOD AND MEN.

PAGE

CHAPTER I.—In God alone is the hope and joy of man, ... 238

CHAPTER II.—That all things are manifest to God. That confession unto Him is not made by the words of the flesh, but of the soul, and the cry of reflection, ... 238

CHAPTER III.—He who confesseth rightly unto God best knoweth himself, 239

CHAPTER IV.—That in his Confessions he may do good, he considers others, ... 240

CHAPTER V.—That man knoweth not himself wholly, ... 242

CHAPTER VI.—The love of God, in His nature superior to all creatures, is acquired by the knowledge of the senses and the exercise of reason, 243

CHAPTER VII.—That God is to be found neither from the powers of the body nor of the soul, ... 245

CHAPTER VIII.—Of the nature and the amazing power of memory, . . 245

CHAPTER IX.—Not only all things, but also literature and images, are taken from the memory, and are brought forth by the act of remembering, . 248

CHAPTER X.—Literature is not introduced to the memory through the senses, but is brought forth from its more secret places, . . . 249

CHAPTER XI.—What it is to learn and to think, ... 249

CHAPTER XII.—On the recollection of things mathematical, . . . 250

CHAPTER XIII.—Memory retains all things, ... 251

CHAPTER XIV.—Concerning the manner in which joy and sadness may be brought back to the mind and memory, ... 251

CHAPTER XV.—In memory there are also images of things which are absent, 253

CHAPTER XVI.—The privation of memory is forgetfulness, ... 253

CHAPTER XVII.—God is to be attained unto by the power of memory, which beasts and birds possess, ... 255

CHAPTER XVIII.—Things which lost could not be found unless it were retained in the memory, ... 254

CHAPTER XIX.—What it is to remember, ... 256

CHAPTER XX.—We should not seek for God and the happy life unless we had known it, ... 257

CHAPTER XXI.—How a happy life may be retained in the memory, . . 258

CHAPTER XXII.—A happy life is to rejoice to God, and for God, . . . 260

CHAPTER XXIII.—And wish to rejoice in the Truth, ... 260

PAGE

CHAPTER XXIV.—He who finds truth, finds God, ... 262

CHAPTER XXV.—He is glad that God dwells in his memory, . . 262

CHAPTER XXVI.—God everywhere answers those who take counsel of Him, 263

CHAPTER XXVII.—He grieves that he was so long without God, . . 263

CHAPTER XXVIII.—On the misery of human life, ... 264

CHAPTER XXIX.—All hope is in the mercy of God, ... 265

CHAPTER XXX.—Of the perverse images of dreams, which he wishes to have taken away, ... 265

CHAPTER XXXI.—About to speak of the temptations of the "lust of the flesh," he first complains of the lust of eating and drinking, . . 267

CHAPTER XXXII.—Of the charms of perfumes which are more easily overcome, ... 271

CHAPTER XXXIII.—He overcame the pleasures of the ear, although in the church he frequently delighted in the song, not in the thing sung, . 272

CHAPTER XXXIV.—Of the very dangerous allurements of the eyes; on account of beauty of form, God, the Creator, is to be praised, . . 273

CHAPTER XXXV.—Another kind of temptation is curiosity, which is stimulated by the "lust of the eyes," 275

CHAPTER XXXVI.—A third kind is "pride," which is pleasing to man, not to God, ... 278

CHAPTER XXXVII.—He is forcibly goaded on by the love of praise, . . 279

CHAPTER XXXVIII.—Vain-glory is the highest danger, ... 282

CHAPTER XXXIX.—Of the vice of those who, while pleasing themselves, displease God, ... 282

CHAPTER XL.—The only safe resting-place for the soul is to be found in God, ... 283

CHAPTER XLI.—Having conquered his triple desire, he arrives at salvation, 284

CHAPTER XLII.—In what manner many sought the Mediator, . . . 284

CHAPTER XLIII.—That Jesus Christ, at the same time God and man, is the true and most efficacious Mediator, ... 285

BOOK ELEVENTH.

THE DESIGN OF HIS CONFESSIONS BEING DECLARED, HE SEEKS FROM GOD THE KNOWLEDGE OF THE HOLY SCRIPTURES, AND BEGINS TO EXPOUND THE WORDS OF GENESIS I. 1, CONCERNING THE CREATION OF THE WORLD. THE OPINIONS OF RASH DISPUTERS BEING REFUTED, "WHAT DID GOD BEFORE HE CREATED THE WORLD?" THAT HE MIGHT THE BETTER OVERCOME HIS OPPONENTS, HE ADDS A COPIOUS DISQUISITION CONCERNING TIME.

CHAPTER I.—By confession he desires to stimulate towards God His own love and that of his readers, ...

PAGE

CHAPTER II.—He begs of God, that through the Holy Scriptures he may be led to truth, ... 290

CHAPTER III.—He begins from the creation of the world,—not understanding the Hebrew text, ... 293

CHAPTER IV.—Heaven and earth cry out that they have been created by God, ... 294

CHAPTER V.—God created the world not from any certain matter, but in His own word, ... 294

CHAPTER VI.—He did not, however, create it by a sounding and passing word, ... 295

CHAPTER VII.—By His co-eternal Word He speaks, and all things are done, ... 296

CHAPTER VIII.—That Word itself is the beginning of all things, in the which we are instructed as to evangelical truth, ... 297

CHAPTER IX.—Wisdom and the Beginning, ... 298

CHAPTER X.—The rashness of those who inquire what God did before He created heaven and earth, ... 299

CHAPTER XI.—They who ask this have not as yet known the eternity of God, which is exempt from the relation of time, ... 299

CHAPTER XII.—What God did before the creation of the world, ... 300

CHAPTER XIII.—Before the time created by God, times were not, . . . 300

CHAPTER XIV.—Neither time past nor future, but the present, only really is, ... 301

CHAPTER XV.—There is only a moment of present time, ... 302

CHAPTER XVI.—Time can only be perceived or measured while it is passing, ... 304

CHAPTER XVII.—Nevertheless there is time past and future, ... 304

CHAPTER XVIII.—Past and future times cannot be thought of but as present, ... 304

CHAPTER XIX.—We are ignorant in what manner God teaches future things, ... 306

CHAPTER XX.—In what manner time may properly be designated, . . . 306

CHAPTER XXI.—How time may be measured, ... 307

CHAPTER XXII.—He prays God that He would explain this most entangled enigma, ... 307

CHAPTER XXIII.—That time is a certain extension, ... 308

CHAPTER XXIV.—That time is not a motion of the body which we measure by time, ... 310

CHAPTER XXV.—He calls on God to enlighten his mind, ... 311

CHAPTER XXVI.—We measure longer events by shorter in time, ... 312

CHAPTER XXVII.—Times are measured in proportion as they pass by, . . 312

CHAPTER XXVIII.—Time in the human mind, which expects, considers, and remembers, ... 313

PAGE

CHAPTER XXIX.—That human life is a distraction, but that, through the mercy of God, he was intent on the prize of his heavenly calling, . 316

CHAPTER XXX.—Again he refutes the empty question, "What did God before the creation of the world?" 317

CHAPTER XXXI.—How the knowledge of God differs from that of man, . 317

BOOK TWELFTH.

HE CONTINUES HIS EXPLANATION OF THE FIRST CHAPTER OF GENESIS ACCORDING TO THE SEPTUAGINT, AND BY ITS ASSISTANCE HE ARGUES, ESPECIALLY CONCERNING THE DOUBLE HEAVEN, AND THE FORMLESS MATTER OUT OF WHICH THE WHOLE WORLD MAY HAVE BEEN CREATED; AFTERWARDS OF THE INTERPRETATIONS OF OTHERS NOT DISALLOWED, AND SETS FORTH AT GREAT LENGTH THE SENSE OF THE HOLY SCRIPTURE.

CHAPTER I.—The discovery of truth is difficult, but God has promised that he who seeks shall find, ... 319

CHAPTER II.—Of the double heaven,—the visible, and the heaven of heavens, ... 319

CHAPTER III.—Of the darkness upon the deep, and of the invisible and formless earth, ... 320

CHAPTER IV.—From the formlessness of matter, the beautiful world has arisen, ... 321

CHAPTER V.—What may have been the form of matter, ... 321

CHAPTER VI.—He confesses that at one time he himself thought erroneously of matter, ... 321

CHAPTER VII.—Out of nothing God made heaven and earth, ... 322

CHAPTER VIII.—Heaven and earth were made "in the beginning;" afterwards the world, during six days, from shapeless matter, ... 323

CHAPTER IX.—That the heaven of heavens was an intellectual creature, but that the earth was invisible and formless before the days that it was made, ... 324

CHAPTER X.—He begs of God that he may live in the true light, and may be instructed as to the mysteries of the sacred books, ... 325

CHAPTER XI.—What may be discovered to him by God, ... 325

CHAPTER XII.—From the formless earth, God created another heaven and a visible and formed earth, ... 327

CHAPTER XIII.—Of the intellectual heaven and formless earth, out of which on another day the firmament was formed, ... 328

CHAPTER XIV.—Of the depth of the Sacred Scripture, and its enemies, . 328

CHAPTER XV.—He argues against adversaries concerning the heaven of heavens, ... 329

CHAPTER XVI.—He wishes to have no intercourse with those who deny Divine Truth, ... 332

PAGE

CHAPTER XVII.—He mentions five explanations of the words of Genesis i. 1, 333

CHAPTER XVIII.—What error is harmless in Sacred Scripture, . . . 335

CHAPTER XIX.—He enumerates the things concerning which all agree, . 336

CHAPTER XX.—Of the words, "In the beginning," variously understood, . 336

CHAPTER XXI.—Of the explanation of the words, "The earth was invisible," 338

CHAPTER XXII.—He discusses whether matter was from eternity, or was made by God, ... 339

CHAPTER XXIII.—Two kinds of disagreements in the books to be explained, 340

CHAPTER XXIV.—Out of the many true things, it is not asserted confidently that Moses understood this or that, ... 341

CHAPTER XXV.—It behoves interpreters, when disagreeing concerning obscure places, to regard God the Author of truth, and the rule of charity, ... 342

CHAPTER XXVI.—What he might have asked of God had he been enjoined to write the book of Genesis, ... 343

CHAPTER XXVII.—The style of speaking in the book of Genesis is simple and clear, ... 344

CHAPTER XXVIII.—The words, "In the beginning," and, "The heaven and the earth," are differently understood, ... 345

CHAPTER XXIX.—Concerning the opinion of those who explain it, "At first He made," 346

CHAPTER XXX.—In the great diversity of opinions, it becomes all to unite charity and Divine Truth, ... 348

CHAPTER XXXI.—Moses is supposed to have perceived whatever of truth can be discovered in his words, ... 349

CHAPTER XXXII.—First, the sense of the writer is to be discovered, then that is to be brought out which Divine Truth intended, ... 350

BOOK THIRTEENTH.

OF THE GOODNESS OF GOD EXPLAINED IN THE CREATION OF THINGS, AND OF THE TRINITY AS FOUND IN THE FIRST WORDS OF GENESIS. THE STORY CONCERNING THE ORIGIN OF THE WORLD (GEN. i.) IS ALLEGORICALLY EXPLAINED, AND IS APPLIED TO THOSE THINGS WHICH GOD WORKS FOR SANCTIFIED AND BLESSED MAN. FINALLY, HE MARKS AN END OF THIS WORK, HAVING IMPLORED ETERNAL REST FROM GOD.

CHAPTER I.—He calls upon God, and proposes to [illegible] to worship Him, 353

CHAPTER II.—All creatures subsist from the plenitude of divine goodness, 353

CHAPTER III.—Genesis i. 2.—Of "light," he understands as it is said in the spiritual creatures, ... 354

CHAPTER IV.—All things have been created by the grace of God, and not of Him as standing in need of created things, ... 355

PAGE

CHAPTER V.—He recognises the Trinity in the first two verses of Genesis, . 354

CHAPTER VI.—Why the Holy Ghost should have been mentioned after the mention of heaven and earth, ... 355

CHAPTER VII.—That the Holy Spirit brings us to God, ... 355

CHAPTER VIII.—That nothing whatever, short of God, can yield to the rational creature a happy rest, ... 356

CHAPTER IX.—Why the Holy Spirit was only "borne over" the waters, . 358

CHAPTER X.—That nothing arose save by the gift of God, ... 359

CHAPTER XI.—That the symbols of the Trinity in man, To Be, To Know, and To Will, are never thoroughly examined, ... 359

CHAPTER XII.—Allegorical explanation of Genesis, chap. i., concerning the origin of the Church and its worship, ... 361

CHAPTER XIII.—That the renewal of man is not completed in this world, . 362

CHAPTER XIV.—That out of the children of the night and of the darkness, children of the light and of the day are made, ... 363

CHAPTER XV.—Allegorical explanation of the firmament and upper works, ver. 6, ... 364

CHAPTER XVI.—That no one but the Unchangeable Light knows himself, . 366

CHAPTER XVII.—Allegorical explanation of the sea and the fruit-bearing earth, vers. 9 and 11, ... 367

CHAPTER XVIII.—Of the lights and stars of heaven,—of day and night, ver. 14, ... 368

CHAPTER XIX.—All men should become lights in the firmament of heaven, 371

CHAPTER XX.—Concerning reptiles and flying creatures (ver. 20),—the sacrament of Baptism being regarded, ... 373

CHAPTER XXI.—Concerning the living soul, birds and fishes (ver. 24),—the sacrament of the Eucharist being regarded, ... 375

CHAPTER XXII.—He explains the divine image (ver. 26) of the renewal of the mind, ... 377

CHAPTER XXIII.—That to have power over all things (ver. 26) is to judge spiritually of all, ... 379

CHAPTER XXIV.—Why God has blessed men, fishes, flying creatures, and not herbs and the other animals (ver. 28), ... 381

CHAPTER XXV.—He explains the fruits of the earth (ver. 29) of works of mercy, ... 383

CHAPTER XXVI.—In the confessing of benefits, computation is made not as to the "gifts," but as to the "fruits,"—that is, the good and right will of the giver, ... 384

CHAPTER XXVII.—Many are ignorant as to this, and ask for miracles, which are signified under the names of "fishes" and "whales," . . 386

CHAPTER XXVIII.—He proceeds to the last verse, "All things are very good,"—that is, the work being altogether good, ... 387

CHAPTER XXIX.—Although it is said eight times that "God saw that it was good," yet time has no relation to God and His Word, ... 388

PAGE

CHAPTER XXX.—He refutes the opinions of the Manichæans and the Gnostics concerning the origin of the world, ... 388

CHAPTER XXXI.—We do not see "that it was good," but through the Spirit of God, which is in us, ... 389

CHAPTER XXXII.—Of the particular works of God, more especially of man, . 390

CHAPTER XXXIII.—The world was created by God out of nothing, . . . 391

CHAPTER XXXIV.—He briefly repeats the allegorical interpretation of Genesis (chap. i.), and confesses that we see it by the Divine Spirit, . 392

CHAPTER XXXV.—He prays God for that peace of rest which hath no evening, ... 393

CHAPTER XXXVI.—The seventh day, without evening and setting, the image of eternal life and rest in God, ... 393

CHAPTER XXXVII.—Of rest in God, who ever worketh, and yet is ever at rest, ... 393

CHAPTER XXXVIII.—Of the difference between the knowledge of God and of men, and of the repose which is to be sought from God only, . . . 394

THE THIRTEEN BOOKS

OF THE

CONFESSIONS OF ST. AUR. AUGUSTINE,

BISHOP OF HIPPO

BOOK FIRST.

COMMENCING WITH THE INVOCATION OF GOD, AUGUSTINE RELATES IN DETAIL THE BEGINNING OF HIS LIFE, HIS INFANCY AND BOYHOOD, UP TO HIS FIFTEENTH YEAR; AT WHICH AGE HE ACKNOWLEDGES THAT HE WAS MORE INCLINED TO ALL YOUTHFUL PLEASURES AND VICES THAN TO THE STUDY OF LETTERS.

CHAP. I.—*He proclaims the greatness of God, whom he desires to seek and invoke, being awakened by Him.*

1. GREAT art Thou, O Lord, and greatly to be praised; great is Thy power, and of Thy wisdom there is no end.[1] And man, being a part of Thy creation, desires to praise Thee,—man, who bears about with him his mortality, the witness of his sin, even the witness that Thou "resistest the proud,"[2]—yet man, this part of Thy creation, desires to praise Thee.[3] Thou movest us to delight in praising Thee; for Thou hast formed us for Thyself, and our hearts are restless till they find rest in Thee.[4] Lord, teach me to know and understand

[1] Ps. cxlv. 3, and cxlvii. 5. [2] Jas. iv. 6, and 1 Pet. v. 5.

[3] Augustine begins with praise, and the whole book vibrates with praise. He says elsewhere (*in Ps.* cxlix.), that "as a new song fits not well an old man's lips, he should sing a new song who is a new creature and is living a new life;" and so from the time of his new birth, the "new song" of praise went up from him, and that "not of the lip only," but (*ibid.* cxlviii.) *conscientia linguae vitae*.

[4] And the rest which the Christian has here is but an earnest of the more perfect rest hereafter, which, as Augustine says (*De Gen. ad Lit.* xii. 26), "all virtue will be to love what one sees, and the highest felicity to have what one loves."

which of these should be first, to call on Thee, or to praise Thee; and likewise to know Thee, or to call upon Thee. But who is there that calls upon Thee without knowing Thee? For he that knows Thee not may call upon Thee as other than Thou art. Or perhaps we call on Thee that we may know Thee. "But how shall they call on Him in whom they have not believed? or how shall they believe without a preacher?"[1] And those who seek the Lord shall praise Him.[2] For those who seek shall find Him,[3] and those who find Him shall praise Him. Let me seek Thee, Lord, in calling on Thee, and call on Thee in believing in Thee; for Thou hast been preached unto us. O Lord, my faith calls on Thee,—that faith which Thou hast imparted to me, which Thou hast breathed into me through the incarnation of Thy Son, through the ministry of Thy preacher.[4]

CHAP. II.—*That the God whom we invoke is in us, and we in Him.*

2. And how shall I call upon my God—my God and my Lord? For when I call on Him I ask Him to come into me. And what place is there in me into which my God can come—into which God can come, even He who made heaven and earth? Is there anything in me, O Lord my God, that can contain Thee? Do indeed the very heaven and the earth, which Thou hast made, and in which Thou hast made me, contain Thee? Or, as nothing could exist without Thee, doth whatever exists contain Thee? Why, then, do I ask Thee to come into me, since I indeed exist, and could not exist if Thou wert not in me? Because I am not yet in hell, though Thou art even there; for "if I go down into hell Thou art there."[5] I could not therefore exist, could not exist at all, O my God, unless Thou wert in me. Or should I not rather

[1] Rom. x. 14. [2] Ps. xxii. 26. [3] Matt. vii. 7.

[4] That is, Ambrose, Bishop of Milan, who was instrumental in his conversion (vi. sec. 1; viii. sec. 28, etc.). "Before conversion," as Leighton observes on 1 Pet. ii. 1, 2, "wit or eloquence may draw a man to the word, and possibly prove a happy bait to catch him (as St. Augustine reports of his hearing St. Ambrose), but, when born again, then it is the milk itself that he desires for food."

[5] Ps. cxxxix. 8.

say, that I could not exist unless I were in Thee from whom are all things, by whom are all things, in whom are all things?[1] Even so, Lord; even so. Where do I call Thee to, since Thou art in me, or whence canst Thou come into me? For where outside heaven and earth can I go that from thence my God may come into me who has said, "I fill heaven and earth"?[2]

CHAP. III.—*Everywhere God wholly filleth all things, but neither heaven nor earth containeth Him.*

3. Since, then, Thou fillest heaven and earth, do they contain Thee? Or, as they contain Thee not, dost Thou fill them, and yet there remains something over? And where dost Thou pour forth that which remaineth of Thee when the heaven and earth are filled? Or, indeed, is there no need that Thou who containest all things shouldest be contained of any, since those things which Thou fillest Thou fillest by containing them? For the vessels which Thou fillest do not sustain Thee, since should they even be broken Thou wilt not be poured forth. And when Thou art poured forth on us,[3] Thou art not cast down, but we are uplifted; nor art Thou dissipated, but we are drawn together. But, as Thou fillest all things, dost Thou fill them with Thy whole self, or, as even all things cannot altogether contain Thee, do they contain a part, and do all at once contain the same part? Or has each its own proper part—the greater more, the smaller less? Is, then, one part of Thee greater, another less? Or is it that Thou art wholly everywhere whilst nothing altogether contains Thee?[4]

CHAP. IV.—*The majesty of God is supreme, and His virtues inexplicable.*

4. What, then, art Thou, O my God—what, I ask, but the Lord God? For who is Lord but the Lord? or who is God save our God?[5] Most high, most excellent, most potent, most omnipotent; most pitiful and most just; most hidden

[1] Rom. xi. 36. [2] Jer. xxiii. 24. [3] Acts ii. 18.

[4] In this section, and constantly throughout the *Confessions*, he adverts to the materialistic views concerning God held by the Manichæans. See also sec. 10; iii. sec. 12; iv. sec. 31, etc. etc.

[5] Ps. xviii. 31.

and most near; most beauteous and most strong; stable, yet contained of none; unchangeable, yet changing all things; never new, never old; making all things new, yet bringing old age upon the proud and they know it not; always working, yet ever at rest; gathering, yet needing nothing; sustaining, pervading, and protecting; creating, nourishing, and developing; seeking, and yet possessing all things. Thou lovest, and burnest not; art jealous, yet free from care; repentest, and hast no sorrow; art angry, yet serene; changest Thy ways, leaving unchanged Thy plans; recoverest what Thou findest, having yet never lost; art never in want, whilst Thou rejoicest in gain; never covetous, though requiring usury.[1] That Thou mayest owe, more than enough is given to Thee;[2] yet who hath anything that is not Thine? Thou payest debts while owing nothing; and when Thou forgivest debts, losest nothing. Yet, O my God, my life, my holy joy, what is this that I have said? And what saith any man when He speaks of Thee? Yet woe to them that keep silence, seeing that even they who say most are as the dumb.[3]

CHAP. V.—*He seeks rest in God, and pardon of his sins.*

5. Oh! how shall I find rest in Thee? Who will send Thee into my heart to inebriate it, so that I may forget my woes, and embrace Thee, my only good? What art Thou to me? Have compassion on me, that I may speak. What am I to Thee that Thou demandest my love, and unless I give it Thee art angry, and threatenest me with great sorrows? Is it, then, a light sorrow not to love Thee? Alas! alas! tell me of Thy compassion, O Lord my God, what Thou art to me.

[1] Matt. xxv. 27. [2] Supererogatur tibi, ut debeas.

[3] "As it is impossible for mortal, imperfect, and perishable man to comprehend the immortal, perfect, and eternal, we cannot expect that he should be able to express in praise the fulness of God's attributes. The Talmud relates of a rabbi, who did not consider the terms, 'the great, mighty, and fearful God,' which occur in the daily prayer, as being sufficient, but added *some more attributes* —'What!' exclaimed another rabbi, who was present, 'imaginest thou to be able to exhaust the praise of God? Thy praise is blasphemy. Thou hadst better be quiet.' Hence the Psalmist's exclamation, after finding that the praises of God were inexhaustible: לְךָ דֻמִיָּה תְהִלָּה, 'Silence is praise to Thee.'"—BRESLAU.

"Say unto my soul, I am thy salvation."[1] So speak that I may hear. Behold, Lord, the ears of my heart are before Thee; open Thou them, and "say unto my soul, I am thy salvation." When I hear, may I run and lay hold on Thee. Hide not Thy face from me. Let me die, lest I die, if only I may see Thy face.[2]

6. Cramped is the dwelling of my soul; do Thou expand it, that Thou mayest enter in. It is in ruins, restore Thou it. There is that about it which must offend Thine eyes; I confess and know it, but who will cleanse it? or to whom shall I cry but to Thee? Cleanse me from my secret sins,[3] O Lord, and keep Thy servant from those of other men. I believe, and therefore do I speak;[4] Lord, Thou knowest. Have I not confessed my transgressions unto Thee, O my God; and Thou hast put away the iniquity of my heart?[5] I do not contend in judgment with Thee,[6] who art the Truth; and I would not deceive myself, lest my iniquity lie against itself.[7] I do not, therefore, contend in judgment with Thee, for "if Thou, Lord, shouldest mark iniquities, O Lord, who shall stand?"[8]

CHAP. VI.—*He describes his infancy, and lauds the protection and eternal providence of God.*

7. Still suffer me to speak before Thy mercy—me, "dust and ashes."[9] Suffer me to speak, for, behold, it is Thy mercy I address, and not derisive man. Yet perhaps even Thou deridest me; but when Thou art turned to me Thou wilt have compassion on me.[10] For what do I wish to say, O Lord my

[1] Ps. xxxv. 3. [2] Moriar ne moriar, ut eam videam. See Ex. xxxiii. 20.

[3] Ps. xix. 12, 13. "Be it, that sin may never see the light, that it may be like a child born and buried in the womb; yet as that child is a man, a true man, there closeted in that hidden frame of nature, so sin is truly sin, though it never gets out beyond the womb which did conceive and enliven it."—SEDGWICK.

[4] Ps. cxvi. 10. [5] Ps. xxxii. 5. [6] Job ix. 3.

[7] Ps. xxvi. 12, *Vulg.* "The danger of ignorance is not less than its guilt. For of all evils a secret evil is most to be deprecated, of all enemies a concealed enemy is the worst. Better the precipice than the pitfall; better the tortures of curable disease than the painlessness of mortification; and so, whatever your soul's guilt and danger, better to be aware of it. However alarming, however distressing self-knowledge may be, better *that* than the tremendous evils of self-ignorance."—CAIRD.

[8] Ps. cxxx. 3. [9] Gen. xviii. 27. [10] Jer. xii. 15.

God, but that I know not whence I came hither into this—shall I call it dying life or living death? Yet, as I have heard from my parents, from whose substance Thou didst form me,—for I myself cannot remember it,—Thy merciful comforts sustained me. Thus it was that the comforts of a woman's milk entertained me; for neither my mother nor my nurses filled their own breasts, but Thou by them didst give me the nourishment of infancy according to Thy ordinance and that bounty of Thine which underlieth all things. For Thou didst cause me not to want more than Thou gavest, and those who nourished me willingly to give me what Thou gavest them. For they, by an instinctive affection, were anxious to give me what Thou hadst abundantly supplied. It was, in truth, good for them that my good should come from them, though, indeed, it was not from them, but by them; for from Thee, O God, are all good things, and from my God is all my safety.[1] This is what I have since discovered, as Thou hast declared Thyself to me by the blessings both within me and without me which Thou hast bestowed upon me. For at that time I knew how to suck, to be satisfied when comfortable, and to cry when in pain—nothing beyond.

8. Afterwards I began to laugh,—at first in sleep, then when waking. For this I have heard mentioned of myself, and I believe it (though I cannot remember it), for we see the same in other infants. And now little by little I realized where I was, and wished to tell my wishes to those who might satisfy them, but I could not; for my wants were within me, while they were without, and could not by any faculty of theirs enter into my soul. So I cast about limbs and voice, making the few and feeble signs I could, like, though indeed not much like, unto what I wished; and when I was not satisfied—either not being understood, or because it would have been injurious to me—I grew indignant that my elders were not subject unto me, and that those on whom I had no claim did not wait on me, and I revenged myself on them by tears. That infants are such I have been able to learn by watching them; and they, though unconscious, have better

[1] Prov. xxi. 31.

shown me that I was such an one than my nurses who knew it.

9. And, behold, my infancy died long ago, and I live. But Thou, O Lord, who ever livest, and in whom nothing dies (since before the world was, and indeed before all that can be called "before," Thou existest, and art the God and Lord of all Thy creatures; and with Thee fixedly abide the causes of all unstable things, the unchanging sources of all things changeable, and the eternal reasons of all things unreasoning and temporal), tell me, Thy suppliant, O God; tell, O merciful One, Thy miserable servant[1]—tell me whether my infancy succeeded another age of mine which had at that time perished. Was it that which I passed in my mother's womb? For of that something has been made known to me, and I have myself seen women with child. And what, O God, my joy, preceded that life? Was I, indeed, anywhere, or anybody? For no one can tell me these things, neither father nor mother, nor the experience of others, nor my own memory. Dost Thou laugh at me for asking such things, and command me to praise and confess Thee for what I know?

10. I give thanks to Thee, Lord of heaven and earth, giving praise to Thee for that my first being and infancy, of which I have no memory; for Thou hast granted to man that from others he should come to conclusions as to himself, and that he should believe many things concerning himself on the authority of feeble women. Even then I had life and being; and as my infancy closed I was already seeking for signs by which my feelings might be made known to others. Whence could such a creature come but from Thee, O Lord? Or shall any man be skilful enough to fashion himself? Or is there any other vein by which being and life runs into us save this, that "Thou, O Lord, hast made us,"[2] with whom being and life are one, because Thou Thyself art being and life in the highest? Thou art the Highest, Thou changest not,[3] neither in Thee doth this present day come to an end, though

[1] "Mercy," says Binning, "hath but its name from misery, and is no other thing than to have another's misery at heart."

[2] Ps. c. 3. [3] Mal. iii. 6.

it doth end in Thee, since in Thee all such things are; for they would have no way of passing away unless Thou sustainedst them. And since "Thy years shall have no end,"[1] Thy years are an ever present day. And how many of ours and our fathers' days have passed through this Thy day, and received from it their measure and fashion of being, and others yet to come shall so receive and pass away! "But Thou art the same;"[2] and all the things of to-morrow and the days yet to come, and all of yesterday and the days that are past, Thou wilt do to-day, Thou hast done to-day. What is it to me if any understand not? Let him still rejoice and say, "What *is* this?"[3] Let him rejoice even so, and rather love to discover in failing to discover, than in discovering not to discover Thee.

CHAP. VII.—*He shows by examples that even infancy is prone to sin.*

11. Hearken, O God! Alas for the sins of men! Man saith this, and Thou dost compassionate him; for Thou didst create him, but didst not create the sin that is in him. Who bringeth to my remembrance the sin of my infancy? For before Thee none is free from sin, not even the infant which has lived but a day upon the earth. Who bringeth this to my remembrance? Doth not each little one, in whom I behold that which I do not remember of myself? In what, then, did I sin? Is it that I cried for the breast? If I should now so cry,—not indeed for the breast, but for the food suitable to my years,—I should be most justly

[1] Ps. cii. 27. [2] *Ibid.*

[3] Ex. xvi. 15. This is one of the alternative translations put against "it is manna" in the margin of the authorized version. It is the literal significance of the Hebrew, and is so translated in most of the old English versions. Augustine indicates thereby the attitude of faith. Many things we are called on to believe (to use the illustration of Locke) which are above reason, but none that are contrary to reason. We are [illegible] children in relation to God, and may therefore only expect to know "parts of His ways." Even in the difficulties of Scripture he sees the goodness of God. "God, [illegible] has in Scripture clothed His mysteries with clouds, that man's love [illegible] might be enlarged by the difficulty of finding them out. For if they were [illegible] such as were readily understood, [illegible] would not be eagerly sought, nor would it give pleasure when found."—[illegible] *Ver. Relig.* c. 17.

laughed at and rebuked. What I then did deserved rebuke; but as I could not understand those who rebuked me, neither custom nor reason suffered me to be rebuked. For as we grow we root out and cast from us such habits. I have not seen any one who is wise, when "purging"[1] anything cast away the good. Or was it good, even for a time, to strive to get by crying that which, if given, would be hurtful —to be bitterly indignant that those who were free and its elders, and those to whom it owed its being, besides many others wiser than it, who would not give way to the nod of its good pleasure, were not subject unto it—to endeavour to harm, by struggling as much as it could, because those commands were not obeyed which only could have been obeyed to its hurt? Then, in the weakness of the infant's limbs, and not in its will, lies its innocency. I myself have seen and known an infant to be jealous though it could not speak. It became pale, and cast bitter looks on its foster-brother. Who is ignorant of this? Mothers and nurses tell us that they appease these things by I know not what remedies; and may this be taken for innocence, that when the fountain of milk is flowing fresh and abundant, one who has need should not be allowed to share it, though needing that nourishment to sustain life? Yet we look leniently on these things, not because they are not faults, nor because the faults are small, but because they will vanish as age increases. For although you may allow these things now, you could not bear them with equanimity if found in an older person.

12. Thou, therefore, O Lord my God, who gavest life to the infant, and a frame which, as we see, Thou hast endowed with senses, compacted with limbs, beautified with form, and, for its general good and safety, hast introduced all vital energies,—Thou commandest me to praise Thee for these things, "to give thanks unto the Lord, and to sing praise unto Thy name, O Most High;"[2] for Thou art a God omnipotent and good, though Thou hadst done nought but these things, which none other can do but Thou, who alone makest all things, O Thou most fair, who madest all things [v. and

[1] John xv. 2. [2] Ps. xcii. 1.

orderest all according to Thy law. This period, then, of my life, O Lord, of which I have no remembrance, which I believe on the word of others, and which I guess from other infants, it chagrins me—true though the guess be—to reckon in this life of mine which I lead in this world; inasmuch as, in the darkness of my forgetfulness, it is like to that which I passed in my mother's womb. But if "I was shapen in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me,"[1] where, I pray thee, O my God, where, Lord, or when was I, Thy servant, innocent? But behold, I pass by that time, for what have I to do with that, the memories of which I cannot recall?

CHAP. VIII.—*That when a boy he learned to speak, not by any set method, but from the acts and words of his parents.*

13. Did I not, then, growing out of the state of infancy, come to boyhood, or rather did it not come to me, and succeed to infancy? Nor did my infancy depart (for whither went it?); and yet it did no longer abide, for I was no longer an infant that could not speak, but a chattering boy. I remember this, and I afterwards observed how I first learned to speak, for my elders did not teach me words in any set method, as they did letters afterwards; but I myself, when I was unable to say all I wished and to whomsoever I desired, by means of the whimperings and broken utterances and various motions of my limbs, which I used to enforce my wishes, repeated the sounds in my memory by the mind, O my God, which Thou gavest me. When they called anything by name, and moved the body towards it while they spoke, I saw and gathered that the thing they wished to point out was called by the name they then uttered; and that they did mean this was made plain by the motion of the body, even by the natural language of all nations expressed by the countenance, glance of the eye, movement of other members, and by the sound of the voice indicating the affections of the mind, as it seeks, possesses, rejects, or avoids. So it was that by frequently hearing words, in duly placed sentences, I gradually gathered what things they were the signs of; and

[1] Ps. li. 5.

having formed my mouth to the utterance of these signs, I thereby expressed my will.[1] Thus I exchanged with those about me the signs by which we express our wishes, and advanced deeper into the stormy fellowship of human life, depending the while on the authority of parents, and the beck of elders.

CHAP. IX.—*Concerning the hatred of learning, the love of play, and the fear of being whipped noticeable in boys: and of the folly of our elders and masters.*

14. O my God! what miseries and mockeries did I then experience, when obedience to my teachers was set before me as proper to my boyhood, that I might flourish in this world, and distinguish myself in the science of speech, which should get me honour amongst men, and deceitful riches! After that I was put to school to get learning, of which I (worthless as I was) knew not what use there was; and yet, if slow to learn, I was flogged! For this was deemed praiseworthy by our forefathers; and many before us, passing the same course, had appointed beforehand for us these troublesome ways by which we were compelled to pass, multiplying labour and sorrow upon the sons of Adam. But we found, O Lord, men praying to Thee, and we learned from them to conceive of Thee, according to our ability, to be some Great One, who was able (though not visible to our senses) to hear and help us. For as a boy I began to pray to Thee, my "help" and my "refuge,"[2] and in invoking Thee broke the bands of my tongue, and entreated Thee though little, with no little earnestness, that I might not be beaten at school. And when Thou hearkedst me not, giving me not over to folly thereby,[3] my elders, yea, and my own parents too, who wished me no ill, laughed at my stripes, my then great and grievous ill.

15. Is there any one, Lord, with so high a spirit, cleaving to Thee with so strong an affection—for even a kind of obtuseness may do that much—that is there, I say, any one who, by cleaving devoutly to Thee, is endowed with so

[1] See some interesting remarks on this subject in Whately's *Logic*, Int. sec. 5.

[2] Ps. ix. 9, and xlvi. 1, and xlvii. 2.

[3] Ps. xxii. 2, *Vulg.*

great a courage that he can esteem lightly those racks and hooks, and varied tortures of the same sort, against which, throughout the whole world, men supplicate Thee with great fear, deriding those who most bitterly fear them, just as our parents derided the torments with which our masters punished us when we were boys? For we were no less afraid of our pains, nor did we pray less to Thee to avoid them; and yet we sinned, in writing, or reading, or reflecting upon our lessons less than was required of us. For we wanted not, O Lord, memory or capacity,—of which, by Thy will, we possessed enough for our age,—but we delighted only in play; and we were punished for this by those who were doing the same things themselves. But the idleness of our elders they call business, whilst boys who do the like are punished by those same elders, and yet neither boys nor men find any pity. For will any one of good sense approve of my being whipped because, as a boy, I played ball, and so was hindered from learning quickly those lessons by means of which, as a man, I should play more unbecomingly? And did he by whom I was beaten do other than this, who, when he was overcome in any little controversy with a co-tutor, was more tormented by anger and envy than I when beaten by a playfellow in a match at ball?

CHAP. X.—*Through a love of ball-playing and shows, he neglects his studies and the injunctions of his parents.*

16. And yet I erred, O Lord God, the Creator and Disposer of all things in Nature,—but of sin the Disposer only,—I erred, O Lord my God, in doing contrary to the wishes of my parents and of those masters; for this learning which they (no matter for what motive) wished me to acquire, I might have put to good account afterwards. For I disobeyed them not because I had chosen a better way, but from a fondness for play, loving the honour of victory in the matches, and to have my ears tickled with lying fables, in order that they might itch the more furiously—the same curiosity beaming more and more in my eyes for the shows and sports of my elders. Yet those who give these entertainments are held in

such high repute, that almost all desire the same for their children, whom they are still willing should be beaten, if so be these same games keep them from the studies by which they desire them to arrive at being the givers of them. Look down upon these things, O Lord, with compassion, and deliver us who now call upon Thee; deliver those also who do not call upon Thee, that they may call upon Thee, and that Thou mayest deliver them.

CHAP. XI.—*Seized by disease, his mother being troubled, he earnestly demands baptism, which on recovery is postponed—his father not as yet believing in Christ.*

17. Even as a boy I had heard of eternal life promised to us through the humility of the Lord our God condescending to our pride, and I was signed with the sign of the cross, and was seasoned with His salt[1] even from the womb of my mother, who greatly trusted in Thee. Thou sawest, O Lord, how at one time, while yet a boy, being suddenly seized with pains in the stomach, and being at the point of death—Thou sawest, O my God, for even then Thou wast my keeper, with what emotion of mind and with what faith I solicited from the piety of my mother, and of Thy Church, the mother of us all, the baptism of Thy Christ, my Lord and my God. On which, the mother of my flesh being much troubled,—since she, with a heart pure in Thy faith, travailed in birth[2] more lovingly for my eternal salvation,—would, had I not quickly recovered, have without delay provided for my initiation and washing by Thy life-giving sacraments, confessing Thee, O Lord Jesus, for the remission of sins. So my cleansing was deferred, as if I must needs, should I live, be further polluted; because, indeed, the guilt contracted by sin would, after baptism, be greater and more perilous.[3] Thus I at that

[1] "A rite in the Western churches, on admission as a catechumen, previous to baptism, denoting the purity and uncorruptedness and [illegible] required of Christians. See S. Aug. *De Catechiz. rudib.* c. 26; Concil. [illegible] c. 5; and Liturgies in *Assem. Cod. Liturg.* [illegible]"—E. B. P. See also vi. 1, note, below.

[2] Gal. iv. 19.

[3] Baptism was in those days frequently [illegible] for similar reasons to the above postponed till the hour of death approached. The decrees of the Church endeavoured to discourage this, and persons baptized on a sick-bed ("clinically")

time believed with my mother and the whole house, except my father; yet he did not overcome the influence of my mother's piety in me so as to prevent my believing in Christ, as he had not yet believed in Him. For she was desirous that Thou, O my God, shouldst be my Father rather than he; and in this Thou didst aid her to overcome her husband, to whom, though the better of the two, she yielded obedience, because in this she yielded obedience to Thee, who dost so command.

18. I beseech Thee, my God, I would gladly know, if it be Thy will, to what end my baptism was then deferred? Was it for my good that the reins were slackened, as it were, upon me for me to sin? Or were they not slackened? If not, whence comes it that it is still dinned into our ears on all sides, "Let him alone, let him act as he likes, for he is not yet baptized"? But as regards bodily health, no one exclaims, "Let him be more seriously wounded, for he is not yet cured!" How much better, then, had it been for me to have been cured at once; and then, by my own and my friends' diligence, my soul's restored health had been kept safe in Thy keeping, who gavest it! Better, in truth. But how numerous and great waves of temptation appeared to hang over me after my childhood! These were foreseen by my mother; and she preferred that the unformed clay should be exposed to them rather than the image itself.

CHAP. XII.—*Being compelled, he gave his attention to learning; but fully acknowledged that this was the work of God.*

19. But in this my childhood (which was far less dreaded for me than youth) I had no love of learning, and hated to be fo[illegible] it yet w[illegible] to it notwithstanding; and this [illegible] do[illegible] me, b[illegible] did not well, for I would [illegible] had I not [illegible] compelled. [illegible] no man

[illegible] with suspicion. The Emperor Constantine [illegible] till the close of his life, and he is censured by Dr. Newman [illegible], iii. sec. 1) for presuming to sp[illegible] of questions which divided the [illegible] and the Orthodox as "unimportant," [illegible] he himself was both unbaptized and uninstructed. On the postponing [illegible] baptism with a view to unrestrained enjoyment of the world, and on the severity of the early Church towards sins committed after baptism, see Kaye's *Tertullian*, pp. 234–241.

[illegible] against his will, even if that which he doth be well. Neither did they who forced me do well, but the good that was done to me came from Thee, my God. For they considered not in what way I should employ what they forced me to learn, unless to satisfy the inordinate desires of a rich beggary and a shameful glory. But Thou, by whom the very hairs of our heads are numbered,[1] didst use for my good the error of all who pressed me to learn; and my own error in willing not to learn, didst Thou make use of for my punishment—of which I, being so small a boy and so great a sinner, was not unworthy. Thus by the instrumentality of those who did not well didst Thou well for me; and by my own sin didst Thou justly punish me. For it is even as Thou hast appointed, that every inordinate affection should bring its own punishment.[2]

[illegible] *Lighted in Latin studies and the empty fables of the poets, but hated the elements of literature and the Greek language.*

20. But what was the cause of my dislike of Greek literature, which I studied from my boyhood I cannot even now understand? For the Latin I loved groundingly—not yet the first masters, but what the grammarians teach; for the primary lessons of reading, writing, and ciphering, I considered no less of a burden and a punishment than Greek. Yet whence was this unless from the sin and vanity of this life? for I was "but flesh, a wind that passeth away and cometh not again."[3] For [illegible] assuredly [illegible]

[illegible]

Dido for love of Æneas, but shedding no tears over his own death in not loving Thee, O God, light of my heart, and bread of the inner mouth of my soul, and the power that weddest my mind with my innermost thoughts? I did not love Thee, and committed fornication against Thee; and those around me thus sinning, cried, "Well done! Well done!" For the friendship of this world is fornication against Thee;" and "Well done! Well done!" is cried until one feels ashamed not to be such a man. And for this I shed no tears, though I wept for Dido, who sought death at the sword's point, myself the while seeking the lowest of Thy creatures—having forsaken Thee—earth tending to the earth; and if forbidden to read these things, how grieved would I feel that I was not permitted to read what grieved me. This sort of madness is considered a more honourable and more fruitful learning than that by which I learned to read and write.

22. But now, O my God, cry unto my soul; and let Thy Truth say unto me, "It is not so, it is not so; better much was that first teaching." For behold, I would rather forget the wanderings of Æneas, and all such things, than how to write and read. But it is thus that over the entrance of the grammar school there hangs a vail; but this is not so much a sign of the majesty of the mystery, as of a covering for error. Let not them exclaim against me of whom I am no longer in fear, whilst I confess to Thee, my God, that which my soul desires, and acquiesce in reprehending my evil ways, that I may [illegible] Neither let those [illegible] against [illegible] the grammar learning. For [illegible] as the poet [illegible] Æneas [illegible] to Carthage [illegible] vail [illegible] they do [illegible] the learning will depart. [illegible] ask [illegible]

[illegible] ode of educa[illegible] ed to the [illegible]

[illegible] B. P.

learnt this will answer truly, in accordance with the conventional understanding men have arrived at as to these signs. Again, if I should ask which, if forgotten, would cause the greatest inconvenience in our life, reading and writing, or these poetical fictions, who does not see what every one would answer who had not entirely forgotten himself? I erred, then, when as a boy I preferred those vain studies to those more profitable ones, or rather loved the one and hated the other. "One and one are two, two and two are four," this was then in truth a hateful song to me; while the wooden horse full of armed men, and the burning of Troy, and the "spectral image" of Creusa[1] were a most pleasant spectacle of vanity.

CHAP. XIV.—*Why he despised Greek literature, and easily learned Latin.*

23. But why, then, did I dislike Greek learning, which was full of like tales?[2] For Homer also was skilled in inventing similar stories, and is most sweetly vain, yet was he disagreeable to me as a boy. I believe Virgil, indeed, would be the same to Grecian children, if compelled to learn him, as I was Homer. The difficulty, in truth, the difficulty of learning a foreign language mingled as it were with gall all the sweetness of those fabulous Grecian stories. For not a single word of it did I understand, and to make me do so, they vehemently urged me with cruel threatenings and punishments. There was a time also when (as an infant) I knew no Latin; but this I acquired without any fear or tormenting, by merely taking notice, amid the blandishments of my nurses, the jests of those who smiled

[1] *Æneid*, ii. 772.

[2] Exaggerated statements have been made as to [illegible] the knowledge of Greek. [illegible] it is clear that he simply alludes to a repugnance to learn a foreign [illegible] that has often been seen in boys since his day. It would seem equ[illegible] Bk. vii. sec. 18 (see also *L. Trin.* iii. sec. 1), that when he could [illegible] of a Greek book, he preferred it to one in the original langu[illegible] Perha[illegible] in this again, he is not altogether singular. It is difficult to decide [illegible] exact extent of his knowledge, but [illegible] familiar with his writings can scarcely [illegible] be satisfied that he had a sufficient acquaintance with the language to correct h[illegible] Italic version by the Greek Testament and the LXX., and [illegible] to the importance of such knowledge in an interpreter of Scripture [illegible] also *Con. Faust*, xi. 2–4; and *De Doctr. Christ.* ii. 11–15.

on me, and the sportiveness of those who toyed with me. I learnt all this, indeed, without being urged by any pressure of punishment, for my own heart urged me to bring forth its own conceptions, which I could not do unless by learning words, not of those who taught me, but of those who talked to me; into whose ears, also, I brought forth whatever I discerned. From this it is sufficiently clear that a free curiosity hath more influence in our learning these things than a necessity full of fear. But this last restrains the overflowings of that freedom, through Thy laws, O God,—Thy laws, from the ferule of the schoolmaster to the trials of the martyr, being effective to mingle for us a salutary bitter, calling us back to Thyself from the pernicious delights which allure us from Thee.

CHAP. XV.—*He entreats God, that whatever useful things he learned as a boy may be dedicated to Him.*

24. Hear my prayer, O Lord; let not my soul faint under Thy discipline, nor let me faint in confessing unto Thee Thy mercies, whereby Thou hast saved me from all my most mischievous ways, that Thou mightest become sweet to me beyond all the seductions which I used to follow; and that I may love Thee entirely, and grasp Thy hand with my whole heart, and that Thou mayest deliver me from every temptation, even unto the end. For lo, O Lord, my King and my God, for Thy service be whatever useful thing I learnt as a boy—for Thy service what I speak, and write, and count. For when I learned vain things, Thou didst grant me Thy discipline; and my sin in taking delight in those vanities, Thou hast forgiven me. I learned, indeed, in them many useful words, but these may be learned in things not vain, and that is the safe way for youths to walk in.

CHAP. XVI.—*He disapproves of the [illegible] ting youth, and [illegible] why wickedness is attributed [illegible] gods by the poets.*

25. But woe unto thee, thou stream of human custom! Who shall stay thy course? How long shall it be before thou art dried up? How long wilt thou carry down the sons of Eve into that huge and formidable ocean, which even they who are embarked on the cross (*lignum*) can scarce

pass over?[1] Do I not read in thee of Jove the thunderer and adulterer? And the two verily he could not be; but it was that, while the fictitious thunder served as a cloak, he might have warrant to imitate real adultery. Yet which of our gowned masters can lend a temperate ear to a man of his school who cries out and says: "These were Homer's fictions; he transfers things human to the gods. I could have wished him to transfer divine things to us."[2] But it would have been more true had he said: "These are, indeed, his fictions, but he attributed divine attributes to sinful men, that crimes might not be accounted crimes, and that whosoever committed any might appear to imitate the celestial gods and not abandoned men."

26. And yet, thou stream of hell, into thee are cast the sons of men, with rewards for learning these things; and much is made of it when this is going on in the forum in the sight of laws which grant a salary over and above the rewards. And thou beatest against thy rocks and roarest, saying, "Hence words are learnt; hence eloquence is to be attained, most necessary to persuade people to your way of thinking, and to unfold your opinions." So, in truth, we should never have understood these words, "golden shower," "bosom," "intrigue," "highest heavens," and other words written in the same place, unless Terence had introduced a good-for-nothing youth upon the stage, setting up Jove as his example of lewdness:—

> "Viewing a picture, where the tale was drawn,
> Of Jove's descending in a golden shower
> To Danaë's bosom . . . with a woman to intrigue."

And yet, how he excites himself to lust as if by celestial [illegible], when he says:—

> "Great Jove,
> Who shakes the highest heavens with his thunder,
> And I, poor mortal man, not do the same!
> I did it, and with all my heart I did it."[3]

---

[1] So in Tract. II. on John, he has: "The sea has to be [illegible] and dost thou [illegible] the wood?" explaining it to mean the cross of Christ. And again: "[illegible] not at all able to walk in the sea, be carried by a ship—be carried by the wood—believe on the crucified," etc.

[2] Cic. Tusc. i. 26.

[3] Terence, *Eunuch*, Act 3, scene 6 (Colman).

Not one whit more easily are the words learnt for this cleverness, but by their means is the vileness perpetrated with more confidence. I do not blame the words, they being, as it were, choice and precious vessels, but the wine of error which was drunk in them to us by inebriated teachers; and unless we drank, we were beaten, without liberty of appeal to any sober judge. And yet, O my God,—in whose presence I can now with security recall this,—did I, unhappy one, learn these things willingly, and with delight, and for this was I called a boy of good promise.[1]

CHAP. XVII.—*He continues on the unhappy method of training youth in literary subjects.*

27. Bear with me, my God, while I speak a little of those talents Thou hast bestowed upon me, and on what follies I wasted them. For a lesson sufficiently disquieting to my soul was given me, in hope of praise, and fear of shame or stripes, to speak the words of Juno, as she raged and sorrowed that she could not

"Latium bar
From all approaches of the Dardan king,"[2]

which I had heard Juno never uttered. Yet were we compelled to stray in the footsteps of these poetic fictions, and to utter that into prose which the poet had said in verse. And his speaking was most applauded in whom, according to the reputation of the persons delineated, the passions of anger and sorrow were most strikingly reproduced, and clothed in the most suitable language. But what is it to me, O my true Life, my God, that my declaiming was applauded above [illegible] of many who were my contemporaries and fellow-[illegible]? Behold, is not all this smoke and wind? Was there [illegible] else, too, on which I could exercise my wit and [illegible] Thy praise, Lord, Thy praises might have supported [illegible] tendrils of my heart by Thy Scriptures; so had it [illegible] dragged away by these empty trifles, a shameful prey [illegible]

[1] Until very recently, the *Eunuchus* was recited at "the play" [illegible] of our public schools. See *De Civ. Dei*, ii. sect. 7, 8, where Augustine [illegible] alludes to this matter.

[2] *Æneid*, i. 36-75 (Kennedy). [3] See note on v. 4, [illegible]

owls of the air. For there is more than one way in which men sacrifice to the fallen angels.

CHAP. XVIII.—*Men desire to observe the rules of learning, but neglect the eternal rules of everlasting safety.*

28. But what matter of surprise is it that I was thus carried towards vanity, and went forth from Thee, O my God, when men were proposed to me to imitate, who, should they in relating any acts of theirs—not in themselves evil—be guilty of a barbarism or solecism, when censured for it became confounded; but when they made a full and ornate oration, in well-chosen words, concerning their own licentiousness, and were applauded for it, they boasted? Thou seest this, O Lord, and keepest silence, "long-suffering, and plenteous in mercy and truth,"[1] as Thou art. Wilt Thou keep silence for ever? And even now Thou drawest out of this vast deep the soul that seeketh Thee and thirsteth after Thy delights, whose "heart said unto Thee," I have sought Thy face, "Thy face, Lord, will I seek."[2] For I was far from Thy face, through my darkened[3] affections. For it is not by our feet[4] nor by change of place, that we either turn from Thee or return to Thee. Or, indeed, did that younger son look out for horses, or chariots, or ships, or fly away with visible wings, or journey by the motion of his limbs, that he might, in a far country, prodigally waste all that Thou gavest him when he set out? A kind Father when Thou gavest, and kinder still when he returned destitute![4] So, then, in wanton, that is to say, in darkened affections, lies distance from Thee.

Behold, O Lord God, and behold patiently, as Thou art wont to do, how diligently the sons of men observe the conventional rules of letters and syllables, received from those who spoke prior to them, and yet neglect the eternal rules of everlasting salvation received from Thee, insomuch that he who practises or teaches the hereditary rules of pronunciation, contrary to grammatical usage, he should say, without aspirating the first letter, a *human* being, will offend men more than if, in opposition to Thy commandments, he, a human

[1] Ps. lxxxvi. 15. [2] Ps. xxvii. 8. [3] Rom. i. 21. [4] Luke xv. 11-32.

being, were to hate a human being. As if, indeed, any man should feel that an enemy could be more destructive to him than that hatred with which he is excited against him, or that he could destroy more utterly him whom he persecutes than he destroys his own soul by his enmity. And of a truth, there is no science of letters more innate than the writing of conscience—that he is doing unto another what he himself would not suffer. How mysterious art Thou, who in silence "dwellest on high,"[1] Thou God, the only great, who by an unwearied law dealest out the punishment of blindness to illicit desires! When a man seeking for the reputation of eloquence stands before a human judge while a thronging multitude surrounds him, inveighs against his enemy with the most fierce hatred, he takes most vigilant heed that his tongue slips not into grammatical error, but takes no heed lest through the fury of his spirit he cut off a man from his fellow-men.[2]

30. These were the customs in the midst of which I, unhappy boy, was cast, and on that arena it was that I was more fearful of perpetrating a barbarism than, having done so, of envying those who had not. These things I declare and confess unto Thee, my God, for which I was applauded by them whom I then thought it my whole duty to please, for I did not perceive the gulf of infamy wherein I was cast away from Thine eyes.[3] For in Thine eyes what was more infamous than I was already, displeasing even those like myself, deceiving with innumerable lies both tutor, and masters, and parents, from love of play, a desire to see frivolous spectacles, and a stage-struck restlessness, to imitate them? Pilferings I committed from my parents' cellar and table, either enslaved by gluttony, or that I might have something to give to boys who sold me their play, who, though they sold it, liked it as well as I. In this play, likewise, I often sought dishonest victories, I myself being conquered by the vain desire of pre-eminence.

[1] Isa. xxxiii. 5.

[2] Literally, "takes care not by a slip of the tongue to say *inter hominibus*, but takes no care lest *hominem auferat ex hominibus*."

[3] Ps. xxxi. 22.

And what could I so little endure, or, if I detected it, censured I so violently, as the very things I did to others, and, when myself detected I was censured, preferred rather to quarrel than to yield? Is this the innocence of childhood? Nay, Lord, nay, Lord; I entreat Thy mercy, O my God. For these same sins, as we grow older, are transferred from governors and masters, from nuts, and balls, and sparrows, to magistrates and kings, to gold, and lands, and slaves, just as the rod is succeeded by more severe chastisements. It was, then, the stature of childhood that Thou, O our King, didst approve of as an emblem of humility when Thou saidst: "Of such is the kingdom of heaven."[1]

31. But yet, O Lord, to Thee, most excellent and most good, Thou Architect and Governor of the universe, thanks had been due unto Thee, our God, even hadst Thou willed that I should not survive my boyhood. For I existed even then; I lived, and felt, and was solicitous about my own well-being, —a trace of that most mysterious unity[2] from whence I had my being; I kept watch by my inner sense over the wholeness of my senses, and in these insignificant pursuits, and also in my thoughts on things insignificant, I learnt to take pleasure in truth. I was averse to being deceived, I had a vigorous memory, was provided with the power of speech, was softened by friendship, shunned sorrow, meanness, ignorance. In such a being what was not wonderful and praiseworthy? But all these are gifts of my God; I did not give them to myself; and they are good, and all these constitute myself. Good, then, is He that made me, and He is my God; and before Him will I rejoice exceedingly for every good gift which, as a boy, I had. For in this lay my sin, that not in Him, but in His creatures—myself and the rest—I sought for pleasures,

[1] Matt. xix. 14. See i. sec. 11, note 3, above.

[2] "To be is no other than to be one. In as far therefore, as anything attains unity, in so far [it is].' For unity worketh congruity and harmony, whereby things composite are in so far as they are; for things uncompounded are in themselves, because they are one; but things compounded imitate unity by the harmony of their parts, and, so far as they attain to unity, they are. Wherefore order and rule secure being, disorder tends to not being."—Aug. *De Morib. Manich.* c. 6.

honours, and truths, falling thereby into sorrows, troubles, and errors. Thanks be to Thee, my joy, my pride, my confidence, my God—thanks be to Thee for Thy gifts; but preserve Thou them to me. For thus wilt Thou preserve me; and those things which Thou hast given me shall be developed and perfected, and I myself shall be with Thee, for from Thee is my being.

BOOK SECOND.

HE ADVANCES TO PUBERTY, AND INDEED TO THE EARLY PART OF THE SIXTEENTH YEAR OF HIS AGE, IN WHICH, HAVING ABANDONED HIS STUDIES, HE INDULGED IN LUSTFUL PLEASURES, AND, WITH HIS COMPANIONS, COMMITTED THEFT.

CHAP. I.—*He deplores the wickedness of his youth.*

1. I WILL now call to mind my past foulness, and the carnal corruptions of my soul, not because I love them, but that I may love Thee, O my God. For love of Thy love do I it, recalling, in the very bitterness of my remembrance, my most vicious ways, that Thou mayest grow sweet to me,—Thou sweetness without deception! Thou sweetness happy and assured!—and re-collecting myself out of that my dissipation, in which I was torn to pieces, while, turned away from Thee the One, I lost myself among many vanities. For I even longed in my youth formerly to be satisfied with worldly things, and I dared to grow wild again with various and shadowy loves; my form consumed away,[1] and I became corrupt in Thine eyes, pleasing myself, and eager to please in the eyes of men.

2. *Stricken with exceeding grief, he remembers the dissolute passions in which, in his sixteenth year, he used to indulge.*

But what was it that I delighted in save to love and to be loved? But I held it not in moderation, mind to mind, in the right path of friendship, but out of the dark concupiscence of the flesh and the effervescence of youth exhalations came forth which obscured and overcast my heart, so that I was not able to discern pure affection from unholy desire. Both boiled confusedly within me, and dragged away my unstable age into the rough places of unchaste desires, and plunged me into a gulf of infamy. Thy anger had overshadowed me,

[1] Ps. xxxix. 11.

and I knew it not. I was become deaf by the rattling of the chains of my mortality, the punishment for my soul's pride; and I wandered farther from Thee, and Thou didst "suffer"[1] me; and I was tossed to and fro, and wasted, and poured out, and boiled over in my fornications, and Thou didst hold Thy peace, O Thou my tardy joy! Thou then didst hold Thy peace, and I wandered still farther from Thee, into more and more barren seed-plots of sorrows, with proud dejection and restless lassitude.

3. Oh for one to have regulated my disorder, and turned to my profit the fleeting beauties of the things around me, and fixed a bound to their sweetness, so that the tides of my youth might have spent themselves upon the conjugal shore, if so be they could not be tranquillized and satisfied within the object of a family, as Thy law appoints, O Lord,—who thus formest the offspring of our death, being able also with a tender hand to [illegible] the thorns which were excluded from Thy paradise! For Thy omnipotency is not far from us even when we are far from Thee, else in truth ought I more vigilantly to have given heed to the voice from the clouds: "Nevertheless, such shall have trouble in the flesh, but I spare you;"[2] and, "It is good for a man not to touch a woman;"[3] and, "He that is unmarried careth for the things that belong to the Lord, how he may please the Lord; but he that is married careth for the things that are of the world, how he may please his wife."[4] I should, therefore, have listened more attentively to "these words, and, being severed "for the kingdom of heaven's sake,"[5] [illegible] with greater happiness have expected Thy embraces. But I, poor fool, seethed as does the sea, and, forsaking Thee, followed the violent course of my own stream, and exceeded all Thy limitations; nor did I escape Thy scourges. For what mortal can do so? But Thou wert always by me, mercifully angry, and dashing with the bitterest vexations all my unlawful pleasures, in order that I might seek pleasures free from vexation. But where I could meet with [illegible] except in Thee, O Lord, I could not find,—except in Thee, who teachest

[1] Matt. xvii. 17.
[2] 1 Cor. vii. 28.
[3] 1 Cor. vii. 1.
[4] 1 Cor. vii. 32, 33.
[5] Matt. xix. 12.
[6] Isa. x. 28.

by sorrow,[1] and woundest us to heal us, and killest us that we may not die from Thee.[2] Where was I, and how far was I exiled from the delights of Thy house, in that sixteenth year of the age of my flesh, when the madness of lust—to the which human shamelessness granteth full freedom, although forbidden by Thy laws—held complete sway over me, and I resigned myself entirely to it? Those about me meanwhile took no care to save me from ruin by marriage, their sole care being that I should learn to make a powerful speech, and become a persuasive orator.

CHAP. III.—*Concerning his father, a freeman of Thagaste, the assister of his son's studies, and on the admonitions of his mother on the preservation of chastity.*

5. And for that year my studies were intermitted, while after my return from Madaura[3] (a neighbouring city, whither I had begun to go in order to learn grammar and rhetoric), the expenses for a further residence at Carthage were provided for me; and that was rather by the determination than the means of my father, who was but a poor freeman of Thagaste. To whom do I narrate this? Not unto Thee, my God; but before Thee unto my own kind, even to that small part of the human race who may chance to light upon these my writings. And to what end? That I and all who read the same may reflect out of what depths we are to cry unto Thee.[4] For what cometh nearer to Thine ears than a confessing heart and a life of faith? For who did not extol and praise my father, in that he went even beyond his means to supply his son with all the necessaries for a far journey for the sake of his studies? For many far richer citizens did not the like for their children. But yet this same father did not trouble

[1] Deut. xxxii. 39.

[2] Ps. xc. 20. *Vulg.* "Lit. 'Formest trouble in or as a precept.' Thou makest to us a precept out of trouble, so that trouble itself shall be a precept to us, *i.e.* hast willed so to discipline and instruct those Thy sons, that they should not be without fear, lest they should love something else, and forget their true good."—S. AUG. *ad loc.*—E. B. P.

[3] Formerly an episcopal city; now a small village. At this time the inhabitants were heathen. St. Augustine calls them 'his fathers,' in a letter persuading them to embrace the gospel.—*Ep.* 232."—E. B. P.

[4] Ps. cxlii. 1.

himself how I grew towards Thee, nor how chaste I was, so long as I was skilful in speaking—however barren I was to Thy tilling, O God, who art the sole true and good Lord of my heart, which is Thy field.

6. But while, in that sixteenth year of my age, I resided with my parents, having holiday from school for a time (this idleness being imposed upon me by my parents' necessitous circumstances), the thorns of lust grew rank over my head, and there was no hand to pluck them out. Moreover when my father, seeing me at the baths, perceived that I was becoming a man, and was stirred with a restless youthfulness, he, as if from this anticipating future descendants, joyfully told it to my mother; rejoicing in that intoxication wherein the world so often forgets Thee, its Creator, and falls in love with Thy creature instead of Thee, from the invisible wine of its own perversity turning and bowing down to the most infamous things. But in my mother's breast Thou hadst even now begun Thy temple, and the commencement of Thy holy habitation, whereas my father was only a catechumen as yet, and that but recently. She then started up with a pious fear and trembling; and, although I had not yet been baptized,[1] she feared those crooked ways in which they walk who turn their back to Thee, and not their face.[2]

7. Woe is me! and dare I affirm that Thou heldest Thy peace, O my God, while I strayed farther from Thee? Didst Thou then hold Thy peace to me? And whose words were they but Thine which by my mother, Thy faithful handmaid, Thou pouredst into my ears, none of which sank into [illegible] to make me do it? For she desired, and I remember privately warned me, with great solicitude, "not to commit fornication, but above all things never to defile another man's wife." These appeared to me but womanish counsels, which I should blush to obey. But they were Thine, and I knew it not, and I thought that Thou heldest Thy peace and [illegible] she who spoke, through whom Thou heldest [illegible]

[1] *Nonam fideli*, not having rehearsed the articles [illegible] baptism. See I. sec. 17, note, above; and below, sec. 1, [illegible]

[2] Jer. ii. 27.

me; and in her person wast despised by me, her son, "the son of Thy handmaid, Thy servant."[1] But this I knew not, and rushed on headlong with such blindness, that amongst my equals I was ashamed to be less shameless, when I heard them pluming themselves upon their disgraceful acts, yea, and glorying all the more in proportion to the greatness of their baseness; and I took pleasure in doing it, not for the pleasure's sake only, but for the praise. What is worthy of dispraise but vice? But I made myself out worse than I was, in order that I might not be dispraised; and when in anything I had not sinned as the abandoned ones, I would affirm that I had done what I had not, that I might not appear abject for being more innocent, or of less esteem for being more chaste.

8. Behold with what companions I walked the streets of Babylon, in whose filth I was rolled, as if in cinnamon and precious ointments. And that I might cleave the more tenaciously to its very centre, my invisible enemy trod me down, and seduced me, I being easily seduced. Nor did the mother of my flesh, although she herself had ere this fled "out of the midst of Babylon,"[2]—progressing, however, but slowly *in the skirts of it*,—in counselling me to chastity, so bear in mind what she had been told about me by her husband as to restrain in the limits of conjugal affection (if it could not be cut away to the quick) what she knew to be pernicious in the present and dangerous in the future. But [illegible] no need of this, for she was afraid lest a wife should be a hindrance and a clog to my hopes. Not those hopes [illegible] future world, which my mother had in Thee: but the [illegible] learning, which both my parents were too anxious I should acquire,—he, because he had little or no thought [illegible], and but vain thoughts for me — she, because she [illegible] that those usual courses of learning would not only [illegible] withdraw, but rather a furtherance towards my attainment [illegible] things I conjecture, recalling as well as I can [illegible] of my parents. The reins, meantime, were [illegible] beyond the restraint of due severity, [illegible] yea, even to dissoluteness, in whatsoever I

[1] Ps. lxxxvi. 16. [2] Jer. l. 8.

fancied. And in all there was a mist, shutting out from my sight the brightness of Thy truth, O my God; and my iniquity displayed itself as from very "fatness."[1]

CHAP. IV.—*He commits theft with his companions, not urged on by poverty, but from a certain distaste for well-doing.*

9. Theft is punished by Thy law, O Lord, and by the law written in men's hearts, which iniquity itself cannot blot out. For what thief will suffer a thief? Even a rich thief will not suffer him who is driven to it by want. Yet had I a desire to commit robbery, and did so, compelled neither by hunger, nor poverty, but through a distaste for well-doing, and a lustiness of iniquity. For I pilfered that of which I had already sufficient, and much better. Nor did I desire to enjoy what I pilfered, but the theft and sin itself. There was a pear-tree close to our vineyard, heavily laden with fruit, which was tempting neither for its colour nor its flavour. To shake and rob this some of us wanton young fellows went, late one night (having, according to our disgraceful habit, prolonged our games in the streets until then), and carried away great loads, not to eat ourselves, but to fling to the very swine, having only eaten some of them; and to do this pleased us all the more because it was not permitted. Behold my heart, O my God; behold my heart, which Thou hadst pity upon when in the bottomless pit. Behold, now, let my heart tell Thee what it was seeking there, that I should be gratuitously wanton, having no inducement to evil but the evil itself. It was foul, and I loved it. I loved to perish. I loved my own error—not that for which I erred, but the error itself. Base soul, falling from Thy firmament to utter destruction—not seeking aught through the shame but the shame itself!

CHAP. V.—*Concerning the motives to sin, which are not in the love of evil, but in the desire of obtaining the property of others.*

10. There is a desirableness in all beauties [illegible] to gold, and silver, and all things; and in bodily contact is sympathy most powerful, and each other sense hath his proper adaptation of body. Worldly honour hath also its glory, and

[1] Ps. lxxiii. 7.

the power of command, and of overcoming; whence proceeds also the desire for revenge. And yet to acquire all these, we must not depart from Thee, O Lord, nor deviate from Thy law. The life which we live here hath also its peculiar attractiveness, through a certain measure of comeliness of its own, and harmony with all things here below. The friendships of men also are endeared by a sweet bond, in the oneness of many souls. On account of all these, and such as these, is sin committed; while through an inordinate preference for these goods of a lower kind, the better and higher are neglected,—even Thou, our Lord God, Thy truth, and Thy law. For these meaner things have their delights, but not like unto my God, who hath created all things; for in Him doth the righteous delight, and He is the sweetness of the upright in heart.[1]

11. When, therefore, we inquire why a crime was committed, we do not believe it, unless it appear that there might have been the wish to obtain some of those which we designated meaner things, or else a fear of losing them. For truly they are beautiful and comely, although in comparison with those higher and celestial goods they be abject and contemptible. A man hath murdered another; what was his motive? He desired his wife or his estate; or would steal to support himself; or he was afraid of losing something of the kind by him; or, being injured, he was burning to be revenged. Would he commit murder without a motive, taking delight simply in the act of murder? Who would credit it? For as for that savage and brutal man, of whom it is declared that he was gratuitously wicked and cruel, there is yet a motive assigned. "Lest through idleness," he says, "hand or heart should grow inactive."[2] And to what purpose? Why, even that, having once got possession of the city through that practice of wickedness, he might attain unto honours, empire, and wealth, and be exempt from the fear of the laws, and his difficult circumstances from the needs of his family, and the consciousness of his own wickedness. So it seems that even Catiline himself loved not his own villanies, but something else, which gave him the motive for committing them.

[1] Ps. lxiv. 10. [2] Sallust, *De Bello Catil.* c. 9.

CHAP. VI.—*Why he delighted in that theft, when all things which under the appearance of good invite to vice are true and perfect in God alone.*

12. What was it, then, that I, miserable one, so doted on in thee, thou theft of mine, thou deed of darkness, in that sixteenth year of my age? Beautiful thou wert not, since thou wert theft. But art thou anything, that so I may argue the case with thee? Those pears that we stole were fair to the sight, because they were Thy creation, Thou fairest[1] of all, Creator of all, Thou good God—God, the highest good, and my true good. Those pears truly were pleasant to the sight; but it was not for them that my miserable soul lusted, for I had abundance of better, but those I plucked simply that I might steal. For, having plucked them, I threw them away, my sole gratification in them being my own sin, which I was pleased to enjoy. For if any of these pears entered my mouth, the sweetener of it was my sin in eating it. And now, O Lord my God, I ask what it was in that theft of mine that caused me such delight; and behold it hath no beauty in it—not such, I mean, as exists in justice and wisdom, nor such as is in the mind, memory, senses, and animal life of man; nor yet such as is the glory and beauty of the stars in their courses; or the earth, or the sea, teeming with incipient life, to replace, as it is born, that which decayeth; nor, indeed, that false and shadowy beauty which pertaineth to deceptive vices.

13. For thus doth pride imitate high estate, whereas Thou alone art God, high above all. And what does ambition seek but honours and renown, whereas Thou alone art to be honoured above all, and renowned for evermore? The cruelty of the powerful wishes to be feared; but who is to be feared but God only? out of whose power what can be forcibly taken away or withdrawn—when, or where, or whither, or by whom? The enticements of the wanton would fain be deemed love, and yet is naught more enticing than Thy charity, nor aught loved more healthfully than that, Thy truth being the most beautiful above all. Curiosity affects a desire for knowledge, whereas it is Thou who supremely knowest all things. Yea,

[1] Ps. xlv. 2. [2] Ps. xxvi. 7.

ignorance and foolishness themselves are concealed under the names of ingenuousness and harmlessness, because nothing can be found more ingenuous than Thou; and what is more harmless, since it is a sinner's own works by which he is harmed?[1] And sloth seems to long for rest; but what sure rest is there besides the Lord? Luxury would fain be called plenty and abundance; but Thou art the fulness and unfailing plenteousness of unfading joys. Prodigality presents a shadow of liberality; but Thou art the most lavish giver of all good. Covetousness desires to possess much; and Thou art the Possessor of all things. Envy contends for excellence; but what so excellent as Thou? Anger seeks revenge; who avenges more justly than Thou? Fear starts at unwonted and sudden chances which threaten things beloved, and is wary for their security; but what can happen that is unwonted or sudden to Thee? or who can deprive Thee of what Thou lovest? or where is there unshaken security save with Thee? Grief languishes for things lost in which desire had delighted itself, even because it would have nothing taken from it, as nothing can be from Thee.

14. Thus doth the soul commit fornication when she turns away from Thee, and seeks without Thee what she cannot find pure and untainted until she returns to Thee. Thus all pervertedly imitate Thee who separate themselves far from Thee, and raise themselves up against Thee. But even by thus imitating Thee they acknowledge Thee to be the Creator of all nature, and so that there is no place whither they can altogether retire from Thee.[2] What, then, was it that I loved in that theft? And wherein did I, even corruptedly and pervertedly, imitate my Lord? Did I wish, if only by stealth, to act contrary to Thy law, because by power I could not do so that, being a captive, I might imitate a counterfeit liberty by doing with impunity things which were not allowed to do, in obscured likeness of Thy omnipotency?[3]

[1] Ps. vii. 15.

[2] Jer. xxiii. 7, 8.

[3] "For even souls, in their very sins, strive after nothing else but some kind of likeness of God, in a proud and preposterous, and, so to say, slavish liberty. Neither could our first parents have been persuaded to sin unless it had been said, 'Ye shall be as gods.'"—Aug. *De Trin.* xi. 5.

as the theft itself was nothing, all the more wretched was I who loved it. Yet by myself alone I would not have done it.—I recall what my heart was—alone I could not have done it. I loved, then, in it the companionship of my accomplices with whom I did it. I did not, therefore, love the theft alone—yea, rather, it was that alone that I loved, for the companionship was nothing. What is the fact? Who is it that can teach me, but He who illuminateth mine heart and searcheth out the dark corners thereof? What is it that hath come into my mind to inquire about, to discuss, and to reflect upon? For had I at that time loved the pears I stole, and wished to enjoy them, I might have done so alone, if I could have been satisfied with the mere commission of the theft by which my pleasure was secured; nor needed I have provoked that itching of my own passions, by the encouragement of accomplices. But as my enjoyment was not in those pears, it was in the crime itself, which the company of my fellow-sinners produced.

CHAP. IX.—*It was a pleasure to him also to laugh when seriously deceiving others.*

17. By what feelings, then, was I animated? For it was in truth too shameful; and woe was me who had it. But still what was it? "Who can understand his errors?"[1] We laughed because our hearts were tickled at the thought of [illegible] thus, when little unaware what we were doing, and would [illegible] why did I [illegible] no [illegible] laughs alone? [illegible] yet [illegible], when men [illegible] being [illegible] of laughter [illegible] very [illegible] presents itself [illegible] alone I would not have done [illegible] Should, my God, [illegible] before, Thee—alone [illegible] wherein what I stole [illegible] me not, [illegible] stealing; nor to have [illegible] it alone would [illegible] well, neither would I have done it. O [illegible]

[1] Ps. xix. 12.

friendly! thou mysterious seducer of the soul, thou greediness to do mischief out of mirth and wantonness, thou craving for others' loss, without desire for my own profit or revenge; but when they say, "Let us go, let us do it," we are ashamed not to be shameless.

CHAP. X.—*With God there is true rest and life unchanging.*

18. Who can unravel that twisted and tangled knottiness? It is foul. I hate to reflect on it. I hate to look on it. But thee do I long for, O righteousness and innocency, fair and comely to all virtuous eyes, and of a satisfaction that never palls! With thee is perfect rest, and life unchanging. He who enters into thee enters into the joy of his Lord,[1] and shall have no fear, and shall do excellently in the most Excellent. I sank away from Thee, O my God, and I wandered too far from Thee, my stay, in my youth, and became to myself an unfruitful land.

[1] Matt. xxv. 21.

BOOK THIRD.

OF THE SEVENTEENTH, EIGHTEENTH, AND NINETEENTH YEARS OF HIS AGE, PASSED AT CARTHAGE, WHEN, HAVING COMPLETED HIS COURSE OF STUDIES, HE IS CAUGHT IN THE SNARES OF A LICENTIOUS PASSION, AND FALLS INTO THE ERRORS OF THE MANICHÆANS.

CHAP. I.—*Deluded by an insane love, he, though foul and dishonourable, desires to be thought elegant and urbane.*

1. TO Carthage I came, where a cauldron of unholy loves bubbled up all around me. I loved not as yet, yet I loved to love; and, with a hidden want, I abhorred myself that I wanted not. I searched about for something to love, in love with loving, and hating security, and a way not beset with snares. For within me I had a dearth of that inward food, Thyself, my God, though that dearth caused me no hunger; but I remained without all desire for incorruptible food, not because I was already filled thereby, but the more empty I was the more I loathed it. For this reason my soul was far from well, and, full of ulcers, it miserably cast itself forth, craving to be excited by contact with objects of sense. Yet, had these no soul, they would not surely inspire love. To love and to be loved was sweet to me, and all the more when I succeeded in enjoying the person I loved. I befouled, therefore, the spring of friendship with the filth of concupiscence, and I dimmed its lustre with the hell of lustfulness; and yet, foul and dishonourable as I was, I craved, through an excess of vanity, to be thought elegant and urbane. I fell precipitately, then, into the love in which I longed to be ensnared. My God, my mercy, with how much bitterness didst Thou, out of Thy infinite goodness, besprinkle for me that sweetness! For I was both beloved, and secretly arrived at the bond of enjoying; and was joyfully bound with troublesome ties, that I might be scourged with the burning iron rods of jealousy, suspicion, fear, anger, and strife.

CHAP. II.—*In public spectacles he is moved by an empty compassion. He is attacked by a troublesome spiritual disease.*

2. Stage-plays also drew me away, full of representations of my miseries and of fuel to my fire.[1] Why does man like to be made sad when viewing doleful and tragical scenes, which yet he himself would by no means suffer? And yet he wishes, as a spectator, to experience from them a sense of grief, and in this very grief his pleasure consists. What is this but wretched insanity? For a man is more affected with these actions, the less free he is from such affections. Howsoever, when he suffers in his own person, it is the custom to style it "misery;" but when he compassionates others, then it is styled "mercy."[2] But what kind of mercy is it that arises from fictitious and scenic passions? The hearer is not expected to relieve, but merely invited to grieve; and the more he grieves, the more he applauds the actor of these fictions. And if the misfortunes of the characters (whether of olden times or merely imaginary) be so represented as not to touch the feelings of the spectator, he goes away disgusted and censorious; but if his feelings be touched, he sits it out attentively, and sheds tears of joy.

3. Are sorrows, then, also loved? Surely all men desire to rejoice? Or, as man wishes to be miserable, is he, nevertheless, glad to be merciful, which, because it cannot exist without passion, for this cause alone are passions loved? This also is from that vein of friendship. But whither does it go? Whither does it flow? Wherefore runs it into that torrent of pitch,[3] seething forth those huge tides of loathsome lusts into which it is changed and transformed, being of its own will away and corrupted from its celestial clearness? Shall,

[1] The early Fathers strongly reprobated stage-plays, and those who went to [illegible] excluded from baptism. This is not to be wondered at, when we learn [illegible] the laws of Rome prohibited actors from being enrolled as citizens" [illegible], ii. 14), and that they were accounted infamous (Tertullian, *De* [illegible] xxii.). See also Tertullian, *De Pudicitia*, c. vii.

[2] [illegible]te, above.

[3] [illegible] probably, as Watts suggests, to the sea of Sodom, which, accord- [illegible]*ist.* book v.), throws up bitumen "at stated seasons of the year." [illegible]lludes to its pestiferous odour, and to its being deadly to birds [illegible]o Gen. xiv. 3, 10.

then, mercy be repudiated? By no means. Let us, therefore, love sorrows sometimes. But beware of uncleanness, O my soul, under the protection of my God, the God of our fathers, who is to be praised and exalted above all for ever,[1] beware of uncleanness. For I have not now ceased to have compassion; but then in the theatres I sympathized with lovers when they sinfully enjoyed one another, although this was done fictitiously in the play. And when they lost one another, I grieved with them, as if pitying them, and yet had delight in both. But now-a-days I feel much more pity for him that delighteth in his wickedness, than for him who is counted as enduring hardships by failing to obtain some pernicious pleasure, and the loss of some miserable felicity. This, surely, is the truer mercy, but grief hath no delight in it. For though he that condoles with the unhappy be approved for his office of charity, yet would he who had real compassion rather there were nothing for him to grieve about. For if good-will be ill-willed (which it cannot), then can he who is truly and sincerely commiserating wish that there should be some unhappy ones, that he might commiserate them. Some grief may then be justified, none loved. For thus dost Thou, O Lord God, who lovest souls far more purely than do we, and art more incorruptibly compassionate, although Thou art wounded by no sorrow. "And who is sufficient for these things?"[2]

4. But I, wretched one, then loved to grieve, and sought out what to grieve at, as when, in another man's misery, though feigned and counterfeited, that delivery of the actor best pleased me, and attracted me the most powerfully, which moved me to tears. What marvel was it that an unhappy sheep, straying from Thy flock, and impatient of Thy care, I became infected with a foul disease? And hence came my love of griefs: not such as should probe me to the quick, for I love not to suffer such things as I loved to [illegible] such as, when hearing their fictions, should [illegible] surface; upon which, like [illegible] noisome burning, swelling, putrefaction [illegible] was my life! But whither [illegible]

CHAP. III.—*Not even when at church does he suppress his desires. In the School of Rhetoric he abhors the acts of the subverters.*

5. And Thy faithful mercy hovered over me afar. Upon what unseemly iniquities did I wear myself out, following a sacrilegious curiosity, that, having deserted Thee, it might drag me into the treacherous abyss, and to the beguiling obedience of devils, unto whom I immolated my wicked deeds, and in all which Thou didst scourge me! I dared, even while Thy solemn rites were being celebrated within the walls of Thy church, to desire, and to plan a business sufficient to procure me the fruits of death; for which Thou chastisedst me with grievous punishments, but nothing in comparison with my fault, O Thou my greatest mercy, my God, my refuge from those terrible hurts, among which I wandered with presumptuous neck, receding farther from Thee, loving my own ways, and not Thine—loving a vagrant liberty.

6. Those studies, also, which were accounted honourable, were directed towards the courts of law; to excel in which, the more crafty I was, the more I should be praised. Such is the blindness of men, that they even glory in their blindness. And now I was head in the School of Rhetoric, whereat I rejoiced proudly, and became inflated with arrogance, though more sedate, O Lord, as Thou knowest, and altogether removed from the subvertings of those "subverters"[1] (for this stupid and diabolical name was held to be the very brand of gallantry) amongst whom I lived, with an impudent shamefacedness that I was not even as they were. And with them I was, and at times I was delighted with their friendship whose acts I ever abhorred, that is, their "subverting," wherewith they insolently attacked the modesty of strangers, which they di[illegible]ed by uncalled for jeers, gratifying thereby their [illegible]th. Nothing can more nearly resemble the

[illegible] for their boldness were like our 'Roarers,' and for [illegible] [illegible]ort of th[illegible] would be called 'The Wi[illegible]' [illegible] [illegible]een a [illegible] [illegible]estal[illegible] and sava[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]tion. Augustine [illegible] them [illegible] [illegible] 4, and below, [illegible] [illegible]inian students, whose

actions of devils than these. By what name, therefore, could they be more truly called than "subverters"?—being themselves subverted first, and altogether perverted—being secretly mocked at and seduced by the deceiving spirits, in what they themselves delight to jeer at and deceive others.

CHAP. IV.—*In the nineteenth year of his age (his father having died two years before) he is led by the "Hortensius" of Cicero to "philosophy," to God, and a better mode of thinking.*

7. Among such as these, at that unstable period of my life, I studied books of eloquence, wherein I was eager to be eminent from a damnable and inflated purpose, even a delight in human vanity. In the ordinary course of study, I lighted upon a certain book of Cicero, whose language, though not his heart, almost all admire. This book of his contains an exhortation to philosophy, and is called *Hortensius*. This book, in truth, changed my affections, and turned my prayers to Thyself, O Lord, and made me have other hopes and desires. Worthless suddenly became every vain hope to me; and, with an incredible warmth of heart, I yearned for an immortality of wisdom,[1] and began now to arise[2] that I might return to Thee. Not, then, to improve my language—which I appeared to be purchasing with my mother's means, in that my nineteenth year, my father having died two years before—not to improve my language did I have recourse to that book; nor did it persuade me by its style, but its matter.

8. How ardent was I then, my God, how ardent to fly from earthly things to Thee! Nor did I know how Thou wouldst deal with me. For with Thee is wisdom. In Greek the love of wisdom is called "philosophy,"[3] with which that book inflamed me. There be some who seduce through philosophy, under a great, and alluring, and honourable name, colouring and adorning their own errors. And almo[illegible]e can [illegible] in

[1] Up to the time of Cicero the Romans employed [illegible] φιλοσοφία (Monboddo's *Ancient Metaphys.* i. 5). It is [illegible] of the philosophy in which they had been trai[illegible] of the [illegible]. Even Justin Martyr, the first after [illegible] of this influence. See the account of his search for [illegible] in his *Dialogue with Trypho*, ii. and iii.

[2] Luke xv. 18.

[3] See above, [illegible]

[illegible]oo deeply, i[illegible] [illegible]o look upon, bu[illegible] [illegible] lightly affect the [illegible]oned nails, followed [illegible]

that and former times were such, are in that book censured and pointed out. There is also disclosed that most salutary admonition of Thy Spirit, by Thy good and pious servant: "Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ: for in Him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily."[1] And since at that time (as Thou, O Light of my heart, knowest) the words of the apostle were unknown to me, I was delighted with that exhortation, in so far only as I was thereby stimulated, and enkindled, and inflamed to love, seek, obtain, hold, and embrace, not this or that sect, but wisdom itself, whatever it were; and this alone checked me thus ardent, that the name of Christ was not in it. For this name, according to Thy mercy, O Lord, this name of my Saviour Thy Son, had my tender heart piously drunk in, deeply treasured even with my mother's milk; and whatsoever was without that name, though never so erudite, polished, and truthful, took not complete hold of me.

CHAP. V.—*He rejects the Sacred Scriptures as too simple, and as not to be compared with the dignity of Tully.*

9. I resolved, therefore, to direct my mind to the Holy Scriptures, that I might see what they were. And behold, I perceive something not comprehended by the proud, not disclosed to children, but lowly as you approach, sublime as you advance, and veiled in mysteries; and I was not of the number of those who could enter into it, or bend my neck to follow its steps. For not as when now I speak did I feel when I turned towards those Scriptures,[2] but they appeared to me to be

[1] Col. ii. 8, 9.

[2] In connection with the opinion Augustine formed of the Scriptures before and after his conversion, it is interesting to recall Fénélon's glowing description of the literary merit of the Bible. The whole passage might well be quoted did space permit:—"L'Ecriture surpasse en naïveté, en vivacité, en grandeur, tous les écrivains de Rome et de la Grèce. Jamais Homère même n'a approché de la sublimité de Moïse dans ses cantiques. . . . Jamais nulle ode Grecque ou Latine n'a pu atteindre à la hauteur des Psaumes. . . . Jamais Homère ni aucun autre poète n'a égalé Isaïe peignant la majesté de Dieu. . . . Tantôt ce prophète a toute la douceur et toute la tendresse d'une églogue, dans les riantes peintures qu'il fait de la paix; tantôt il s'élève jusqu'à laisser tout au-dessous de lui. Que n'y a-t-il, dans l'antiquité profane, de comparable au tendre Jérémie,

unworthy to be compared with the dignity of Tully; for my inflated pride shunned their style, nor could the sharpness of my wit pierce their inner meaning.[1] Yet, truly, were they such as would develope in little ones; but I scorned to be a little one, and, swollen with pride, I looked upon myself as a great one.

CHAP. VI.—*Deceived by his own fault, he falls into the errors of the Manichæans, who gloried in the true knowledge of God and in a thorough examination of things.*

10. Therefore I fell among men proudly raving, very carnal, and voluble, in whose mouths were the snares of the devil—*the bird-lime being composed of a mixture of the syllables of Thy name, and of our Lord Jesus Christ, and of the Paraclete, the Holy Ghost, the Comforter.*[2] These names departed not out of their mouths, but so far forth as the sound only and the clatter of the tongue, for the heart was empty of truth. Still they cried, "Truth, Truth," and spoke much about it to me, "yet was it not in them;"[3] but they spake falsely not of Thee only—who, verily, art the Truth—but also of these elements of this world, Thy creatures. And I, in truth, should have

déplorant les maux de son peuple; ou à Nahum, voyant de loin, en esprit, tomber la superbe Ninive sous les efforts d'une armée innombrable? On croit voir cette armée, on croit entendre le bruit des armes et des chariots; tout est dépeint d'une manière vive qui saisit l'imagination; il laisse Homère loin derrière lui. . . . *Enfin, il y a autant de différence entre les poëtes profanes et les prophètes, qu'il y en a entre le véritable enthousiasme et le faux.*"—*Sur l'Eloq. de la Chaire*, Dial. iii.

[1] That is probably the "spiritual" meaning on which Ambrose (vi. 6, below) laid so much emphasis. How different is the attitude of mind indicated in xi. 3 from the spiritual pride which beset him at this period of his life! When converted he became as a little child, and ever looked to God as a Father, from whom he must receive both light and strength. He speaks, on Ps. cxlvi., of the Scriptures, which were plain to "the little ones," being obscured to the mocking spirit of the Manichæans. See also below, iii. 14, note.

[2] So, in Book xxii. sec. 13 of his reply to Faustus, he charges them with "professing to believe the New Testament in order to entrap the unwary;" and again, in sec. 15, he says: "They claim the impious liberty of holding and teaching, that whatever they deem favourable to their heresy was said by Christ and the apostles; while they have the profane boldness to say, that whatever in the same writings is unfavourable to them is a spurious interpolation." They professed to believe in the doctrine of the Trinity, but affirmed (*ibid.* sec. 6) "that the Father dwells in a secret light, the power of the Son in the sun, and His wisdom in the mind, and the Holy Spirit in the air." It was the employment of the phraseology of Scripture to convey doctrines utterly unscriptural that rendered their teaching such a snare to the unwary. See also below, v. 12, note.

[3] 1 John ii. 4.

passed by philosophers, even when speaking truth concerning them, for love of Thee, my Father, supremely good, beauty of all things beautiful! O Truth, Truth! how inwardly even then did the marrow of my soul pant after Thee, when they frequently, and in a multiplicity of ways, and in numerous and huge books, sounded out Thy name to me, though it was but a voice![1] And these were the dishes in which to me, hungering for Thee, they, instead of Thee, served up the sun and moon, Thy beauteous works—but yet Thy works, not Thyself, nay, nor Thy first works. For before these corporeal works are Thy spiritual ones, celestial and shining though they be. But I hungered and thirsted not even after those first works of Thine, but after Thee Thyself, the Truth, "with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning;"[2] yet they still served up to me in those dishes glowing phantasies, than which better were it to love this very sun (which, at least, is true to our sight), than those illusions which deceive the mind through the eye. And yet, because I supposed them to be Thee, I fed upon them; not with avidity, for Thou didst not taste to my mouth as Thou art, for Thou wast not these empty fictions; neither was I nourished by them, but the rather exhausted. Food in our sleep appears like our food awake; yet the sleepers are not nourished by it, for they are asleep. But those things were not in any way like unto Thee as Thou hast now spoken unto me, in that those were corporeal phantasies, false bodies, than which these true bodies, whether celestial or terrestrial, which we perceive with our fleshly sight, are much more certain. These things the very beasts

[1] There was something peculiarly enthralling to an ardent mind like Augustine's in the Manichæan system. That system was kindred in many ways to modern Rationalism. Reason was exalted at the expense of faith. Nothing was received on mere authority, and the disciple's inner consciousness was the touchstone of truth. The result of this is well pointed out by S. Augustine (*Con. Faust.* xxxii. sec. 19): "Your design, clearly, is to deprive Scripture of all authority, and to make every man's mind the judge what passage of Scripture he is to approve of, and what to disapprove of. This is not to be subject to Scripture in matters of faith, but to make Scripture subject to you. Instead of making the high authority of Scripture the reason of approval, every man makes his approval the reason for 'thinking a passage correct.'" Compare also *Con. Faust.* xi. sec. 2, and xxxii. sec. 16.

[2] Jas. i. 17.

and birds perceive as well as we, and they are more certain than when we imagine them. And again, we do with more certainty imagine them, than by them conceive of other greater and infinite bodies which have no existence. With such empty husks was I then fed, and was not fed. But Thou, my Love, in looking for whom I fail[1] that I may be strong, art neither those bodies that we see, although in heaven, nor art Thou those which we see not there; for Thou hast created them, nor dost Thou reckon them amongst Thy greatest works. How far, then, art Thou from those phantasies of mine, phantasies of bodies which are not at all, than which the images of those bodies which are, are more certain, and still more certain the bodies themselves, which yet Thou art not; nay, nor yet the soul, which is the life of the bodies. Better, then, and more certain is the life of bodies than the bodies themselves. But Thou art the life of souls, the life of lives, having life in Thyself; and Thou changest not, O Life of my soul.

11. Where, then, wert Thou then to me, and how far from me? Far, indeed, was I wandering away from Thee, being even shut out from the very husks of the swine, whom with husks I fed.[2] For how much better, then, are the fables of the grammarians and poets than these snares! For verses, and poems, and Medea flying, are more profitable truly than those men's five elements, variously painted, to answer to the five caves of darkness,[3] none of which exist, and which slay the believer. For verses and poems I can turn into[4] true food, but the "Medea flying," though I sang, I maintained it not; though I heard it sung, I believed it not; but those things I did believe. Woe, woe, by what steps was I dragged down to "the depths of hell!"[5]—toiling and turmoiling through want of Truth, when I sought after Thee,

[1] Ps. lxix. 3.

[2] Luke xv. 16; and see below, vi. sec. 8, note.

[3] See below, xii. sec. 6, note.

[4] "Of this passage St. Augustine is probably speaking when he says, 'Praises bestowed on bread in simplicity of heart, let him (Petilian) defame, if he will, by the ludicrous title of poisoning and corrupting honey.' Augustine means in mockery, that by verses he could get his bread; his adversaries seem to have twisted the word to signify a love-potion."—*Con. Lit. Petiliani*, ii. 16.—E. B. P.

[5] Prov. ix. 18.

my God,—to Thee I confess it, who hadst mercy on me when I had not yet confessed,—sought after Thee not according to the understanding of the mind, in which Thou desiredst that I should excel the beasts, but according to the sense of the flesh! Thou wert more inward to me than my most inward part; and higher than my highest. I came upon that bold woman, who "is simple, and knoweth nothing,"[1] the enigma of Solomon, sitting "at the door of the house on a seat," and saying, "Stolen waters are sweet, and bread eaten in secret is pleasant."[2] This woman seduced me, because she found my soul beyond its portals, dwelling in the eye of my flesh, and thinking on such food as through it I had devoured.

CHAP. VII.—*He attacks the doctrine of the Manichæans concerning evil, God, and the righteousness of the patriarchs.*

12. For I was ignorant as to that which really is, and was, as it were, violently moved to give my support to foolish deceivers, when they asked me, "Whence is evil?"[3]—and, "Is God limited by a bodily shape, and has He hairs and nails?"—and, "Are they to be esteemed righteous who had many wives at once, and did kill men, and sacrificed living creatures?"[4] At which things I, in my ignorance, was much disturbed, and, retreating from the truth, I appeared to myself to be going towards it; because as yet I knew not that evil was naught but a privation of good, until in the end it ceases altogether to be; which how should I see, the sight of whose eyes saw no further than bodies, and of my mind no further than a phantasm? And I knew not God to be a Spirit,[5] not one who hath parts extended in length and breadth, nor whose

[1] Prov. ix. 13. [2] Prov. ix. 14, 17.

[3] The strange mixture of the pensive philosophy of Persia with Gnosticism and Christianity, propounded by Manichæus, attempted to solve this question, which was "the great object of heretical inquiry" (Mansel's *Gnostics*, lec. i.). It was Augustine's desire for knowledge concerning it that united him to this sect, and which also led him to forsake it, when he found therein nothing but empty fables (*De Lib. Arb.* i. sec. 4.) Manichæus taught that evil and good were primeval, and had independent existences. Augustine, on the other hand, maintains that it was not possible for evil so to exist (*De Civ. Dei*, xi. sec. 22), but, as he here states, evil is "the privation of good." The evil will has a *causa deficiens*, but not a *causa efficiens* (*ibid.* xii. 6), as is exemplified in the fall of the angels.

[4] 1 Kings xvii. 10. [5] John iv. 24.

being was bulk; for every bulk is less in a part than in the whole, and, if it be infinite, it must be less in such part as is limited by a certain space than in its infinity; and cannot be wholly everywhere, as Spirit, as God is. And what that should be in us, by which we were like unto God, and might rightly in Scripture be said to be after "the image of God,"[1] I was entirely ignorant.

13. Nor had I knowledge of that true inner righteousness, which doth not judge according to custom, but out of the most perfect law of God Almighty, by which the manners of places and times were adapted to those places and times—being itself the while the same always and everywhere, not one thing in one place, and another in another; according to which Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and Moses, and David, and all those commended by the mouth of God were righteous,[2] but were judged unrighteous by foolish men, judging out of man's judgment,[3] and gauging by the petty standard of their own manners the manners of the whole human race. Like as if in an armoury, one knowing not what were adapted to the several members should put greaves on his head, or boot himself with a helmet, and then complain because they would not fit. Or as if, on some day when in the afternoon business was forbidden, one were to fume at not being allowed to sell as it was lawful to him in the forenoon. Or when in some house he sees a servant take something in his hand which the butler is not permitted to touch, or something done behind a stable which would be prohibited in the dining-room, and should be indignant that in one house, and one family, the same thing is not distributed everywhere to all. Such are they who cannot endure to hear something to have been lawful for righteous men in former times which is not so now; or that God, for certain temporal reasons, commanded them one thing, and these another, but both obeying the same righteousness; though they see, in one man, one day and one house, different things to be fit for different members, and a thing which was formerly lawful after a time unlawful—that permitted or commanded in one corner, which does in another

[1] Gen. i. 27; see vi. sec. 4, n. 9. [2] Heb. xi. 8–40. [3] 1 Cor. iv. 3.

is justly prohibited and punished. Is justice, then, various and changeable? Nay, but the times over which she presides are not all alike, because they are times.[1] But men, whose days upon the earth are few,[2] because by their own perception they cannot harmonize the causes of former ages and other nations, of which they had no experience, with these of which they have experience, though in one and the same body, day, or family, they can readily see what is suitable for each member, season, part, and person—to the one they take exception, to the other they submit.

14. These things I then knew not, nor observed. They met my eyes on every side, and I saw them not. I composed poems, in which it was not permitted me to place every foot everywhere, but in one metre one way, and in another another, nor even in any one verse the same foot in all places. Yet the art itself by which I composed had not different principles for these different cases, but comprised all in one. Still I saw not how that righteousness, which good and holy men submitted to, far more excellently and sublimely comprehended in one all those things which God com-

[1] The law of the development of revelation implied in the above passage is one to which Augustine frequently resorts in confutation of objections such as those to which he refers in the previous and following sections. It may likewise be effectively used when similar objections are raised by modern sceptics. In the Rabbinical books there is a tradition of the wanderings of the children of Israel, that not only did their clothes not wax old (Deut. xxix. 5) during those forty years, but that they *grew* with their growth. The written word is as it were the swaddling-clothes of the holy child Jesus; and as the revelation concerning Him—the Word Incarnate—grew, did the written word grow. God spoke in sundry parts [πολυμέρως] and in divers manners unto the fathers by the prophets (Heb. i. 1); but when the "fulness of the time was come" (Gal. iv. 4), He completed the revelation in His Son. Our Lord indicates this principle when He speaks of divorce in Matt. xix. 8. "Moses," he says, "because of the hardness of your hearts suffered you to put away your wives: but from the beginning it was not so." (See *Con. Faust.* xix. 26, 29.) When objections, then, as to obsolete ritual usages, or the sins committed by Old Testament worthies are urged, the answer is plain: the ritual has become obsolete because only intended for the infancy of revelation, and the sins, while recorded in, are not approved by Scripture, and those who committed them will be judged according to the measure of revelation they received. See also *De Ver. Relig.* xvii.; *in Ps.* lxxxi. 1, liv. 23; *Con. Faust.* xxii. 25; Temple, *Halsean Lect.* iv., v. (1845); and Candlish's *Reason and Revelation*, pp. 6, 75.

[2] Job xiv. 1.

manded, and in no part varied, though in varying times it did not prescribe all things at once, but distributed and enjoined what was proper for each. And I, being blind, blamed those pious fathers, not only for making use of present things as God commanded and inspired them to do, but also for foreshowing things to come as God was revealing them.[1]

CHAP. VIII.—*He argues against the same as to the reason of offences.*

15. Can it at any time or place be an unrighteous thing for a man to love God with all his heart, with all his soul, and with all his mind, and his neighbour as himself?[2] Therefore those offences which be contrary to nature are everywhere and at all times to be held in detestation and punished; such were those of the Sodomites, which should all nations commit, they should all be held guilty of the same crime by the divine law, which hath not so made men that they should in that way abuse one another. For even that fellowship which should be between God and us is violated, when that same nature of which He is author is polluted by the perversity of lust. But those offences which are contrary to the customs of men are to be avoided according to the customs severally prevailing; so that an agreement made, and confirmed by custom or law of any city or nation, may not be violated at the lawless pleasure of any, whether citizen or stranger. For any part which is not consistent with its whole is unseemly. But when God commands anything contrary to the customs or compacts of any nation to be done, though it

[1] Here, as at the end of sec. 17, he alludes to the typical and allegorical character of Old Testament histories. Though he does not with Origen go so far as to disparage the letter of Scripture (see *De Civ. Dei*, xiii. 21), but upholds it, he constantly employs the allegorical principle. He (alluding to the patriarchs) goes so far, indeed, as to say (*Con. Faust.* xxii. 24), that "not only the speech but the life of these men was prophetic; and the whole kingdom of the Hebrews was like a great prophet;" and again: "We may discover a prophecy of the coming of Christ and of the Church both in what they said and what they did." This method of interpretation he first learned from Ambrose. See note on "the letter killeth," etc. (below, vi. sec. 6), for the danger attending it. On the general subject, reference may also be made to his *in Ps.* cxxxvi. 3; *Serm.* 2; *De Tentat. Abr.* sec. [illegible]; and *De Civ. Dei*, xvii. 3.

[2] Deut. vi. 5, and Matt. xxii. 37–39.

were never done by them before, it is to be done; and if intermitted it is to be restored, and, if never established, to be established. For if it be lawful for a king, in the state over which he reigns, to command that which neither he himself nor any one before him had commanded, and to obey him cannot be held to be inimical to the public interest,—nay, it were so if he were not obeyed (for obedience to princes is a general compact of human society),—how much more, then, ought we unhesitatingly to obey God, the Governor of all His creatures! For as among the authorities of human society the greater authority is obeyed before the lesser, so must God above all.

16. So also in deeds of violence, where there is a desire to harm, whether by contumely or injury; and both of these either by reason of revenge, as one enemy against another; or to obtain some advantage over another, as the highwayman to the traveller; or for the avoiding of some evil, as with him who is in fear of another; or through envy, as the unfortunate man to one who is happy; or as he that is prosperous in anything to him who he fears will become equal to himself, or whose equality he grieves at; or for the mere pleasure in another's pains, as the spectators of gladiators, or the deriders and mockers of others. These be the chief iniquities which spring forth from the lust of the flesh, of the eye, and of power, whether singly, or two together, or all at once. And so do men live in opposition to the three and seven, that psaltery "of ten strings,"[1] Thy ten commandments, O God most high and most sweet. But what foul offences can there be against Thee who canst not be defiled? Or what deeds of violence against Thee who canst not be harmed? But Thou avengest

[1] Ps. cxliv. 9. "St. Augustine (*Quæst. in Exod.* ii. qu. 71) mentions the two modes of dividing the ten commandments into three and seven, or four and six, and gives what appear to have been his own private reasons for preferring the first. Both commonly existed in his day, but the Anglican mode appears to have been the most usual. It occurs in Origen, Greg. Naz., Jerome, Ambrose, Chrys. St. Augustine alludes to his division again, *Serm.* 8, 9, *De x. Chordis*, and sec. 53 on this psalm: 'To the first commandment there belong three strings, because God is trine. To the other, *i.e.* the love of our neighbour, seven strings. These let us join to those three, which belong to the love of God, if we would on the psaltery of ten strings sing a new song.'"—E. B. P.

that which men perpetrate against themselves, seeing also that when they sin against Thee, they do wickedly against their own souls; and iniquity gives itself the lie,[1] either by corrupting or perverting their nature, which Thou hast made and ordained, or by an immoderate use of things permitted, or in "burning" in things forbidden to that use which is against nature;[2] or when convicted, raging with heart and voice against Thee, kicking against the pricks;[3] or when, breaking through the pale of human society, they audaciously rejoice in private combinations or divisions, according as they have been pleased or offended. And these things are done whenever Thou art forsaken, O Fountain of Life, who art the only and true Creator and Ruler of the universe, and by a self-willed pride any one false thing is selected therefrom and loved. So, then, by a humble piety we return to Thee; and Thou purgest us from our evil customs, and art merciful unto the sins of those who confess unto Thee, and dost "hear the groaning of the prisoner,"[4] and dost loosen us from those fetters which we have forged for ourselves, if we lift not up against Thee the horns of a false liberty, —losing all through craving more, by loving more our own private good than Thee, the good of all.

CHAP. IX.—*That the judgment of God and men, as to human acts of violence, is different.*

17. But amidst these offences of infamy and violence, and so many iniquities, are the sins of men who are, on the whole, making progress; which, by those who judge rightly, and after the rule of perfection, are censured, yet commended withal, upon the hope of bearing fruit, like as in the green blade of the growing corn. And there are some which resemble offences of infamy or violence, and yet are not sins, because they neither offend Thee, our Lord God, nor social custom: when, for example, things suitable for the times are provided for the use of life, and we are uncertain whether it be out of a lust of having; or when acts are punished by constituted authority for the sake of correction, and we are

[1] Ps. xxvi. 12, *Valg.*
[2] Rom. i. 24–29.
[3] Acts ix. 5.
[4] Ps. cii. 20.

uncertain whether it be out of a lust of hurting. Many a deed, then, which in the sight of men is disapproved, is approved by Thy testimony; and many a one who is praised by men is, Thou being witness, condemned; because frequently the view of the deed, and the mind of the doer, and the hidden exigency of the period, severally vary. But when Thou unexpectedly commandest an unusual and unthought-of thing—yea, even if Thou hast formerly forbidden it, and still for the time keepest secret the reason of Thy command, and it even be contrary to the ordinance of some society of men, who doubts but it is to be done, inasmuch as that society is righteous which serves Thee?[1] But blessed are they who know Thy commands! For all things were done by them who served Thee either to exhibit something necessary at the time, or to foreshow things to come.[2]

CHAP. X.—*He reproves the triflings of the Manichæans as to the fruits of the earth.*

18. These things being ignorant of, I derided those holy servants and prophets of Thine. And what did I gain by deriding them but to be derided by Thee, being insensibly, and little by little, led on to those follies, as to credit that a fig-tree wept when it was plucked, and that the mother-tree shed milky tears? Which fig notwithstanding, plucked not by his own but another's wickedness, had some "saint"[3] eaten and mingled with his entrails, he should breathe out

[1] The Manichæans, like the deistical writers of the last century, attacked the spoiling of the Egyptians, the slaughter of the Canaanites, and such episodes. Referring to the former, Augustine says (*Con. Faust.* xxii. 71), "Then, as for Faustus' objection to the spoiling of the Egyptians, he knows not what he says. In this Moses not only did not sin, but it would have been sin not to do it. It was by the command of God, who, from His knowledge both of the actions and of the hearts of men, can decide upon what every one should be made to suffer, and through whose agency. The people at that time were still carnal, and engrossed with earthly affection; while the Egyptians were in open rebellion against God, for they used the gold, God's creature, in the service of idols, to the dishonour of the Creator, and they had grievously oppressed strangers by making them work without pay. Thus the Egyptians deserved the punishment, and the Israelites were suitably employed in inflicting it." For an exhaustive vindication of the conduct of the children of Israel as the agents of God in punishing the Canaanites, see *Graves on the Pentateuch*, Part iii. lecture 1. See also *De Civ. Dei*, i. 26; and *Quæst. in Jos.* 8, 16, etc.

[2] See note on sec. 14, above.

[3] i.e. Manichæan saint.

of it angels; yea, in his prayers he shall assuredly groan and sigh forth particles of God, which particles of the most high and true God should have remained bound in that fig unless they had been set free by the teeth and belly of some "elect saint"![1] And I, miserable one, believed that more mercy was to be shown to the fruits of the earth than unto men, for whom they were created; for if a hungry man—who was not a Manichæan—should beg for any, that morsel which should be given him would appear, as it were, condemned to capital punishment.[2]

CHAP. XI.—*He refers to the tears, and the memorable dream concerning her son, granted by God to his mother.*

19. And Thou sendedst Thine hand from above,[3] and drewest my soul out of that profound darkness, when my mother, Thy faithful one, wept to Thee on my behalf more than mothers are wont to weep the bodily deaths of their children. For she saw that I was dead by that faith and spirit which she had from Thee, and Thou heardest her, O Lord. Thou heardest her, and despisedst not her tears, when, pouring down, they watered the earth[4] under her eyes in every place where she prayed; yea, Thou heardest her. For whence was that dream with which Thou consoledst her, so that she permitted me to live with her, and to have my meals at the same table in the house, which she had begun to avoid,

[1] According to this extraordinary system, it was the privilege of the "elect" to set free in eating such parts of the divine substance as were imprisoned in the vegetable creation (*Con. Faust.* xxxi. 5). They did not marry or work in the fields, and led an ascetic life, the "hearers" or catechumens being privileged to provide them with food. The "elect" passed immediately on dying into the realm of light, while, as a reward for their service, the souls of the "hearers" after death transmigrated into plants (from which they might be most readily freed), or into the "elect," so as, in their turn, to pass away into the realm of light. See *Con. Faust.* v. 10, xx. 23; and *in Ps.* cxl.

[2] Augustine frequently alludes to their conduct to the poor, in refusing to give them bread or the fruits of the earth, lest in eating they should defile the portion of God contained therein. But to avoid the odium of their conduct, they would inconsequently give money whereby food might be bought. See *in Ps.* cxl. sec. 12; and *De Mor. Manich.* 36, 37, and 53.

[3] Ps. cxliv. 7.

[4] He alludes here to that devout manner of the Eastern ancients, who used to lie flat on their faces in prayer.—W. W.

hating and detesting the blasphemies of my error? For she saw herself standing on a certain wooden rule,[1] and a bright youth advancing towards her, joyous and smiling upon her, whilst she was grieving and bowed down with sorrow. But he having inquired of her the cause of her sorrow and daily weeping (he wishing to teach, as is their wont, and not to be taught), and she answering that it was my perdition she was lamenting, he bade her rest contented, and told her to behold and see "that where she was, there was I also." And when she looked she saw me standing near her on the same rule. Whence was this, unless that Thine ears were inclined towards her heart? O Thou Good Omnipotent, who so carest for every one of us as if Thou caredst for him only, and so for all as if they were but one!

20. Whence was this, also, that when she had narrated this vision to me, and I tried to put this construction on it, "That she rather should not despair of being some day what I was," she immediately, without hesitation, replied, "No; for it was not told me that 'where he is, there shalt thou be,' but 'where thou art, there shall he be'"? I confess to Thee, O Lord, that, to the best of my remembrance (and I have oft spoken of this), Thy answer through my watchful mother —that she was not disquieted by the speciousness of my false interpretation, and saw in a moment what was to be seen, and which I myself had not in truth perceived before she spake—even then moved me more than the dream itself, by which the happiness to that pious woman, to be realized so long after, was, for the alleviation of her present anxiety, so long before predicted. For nearly nine years passed in which I wallowed in the slime of that deep pit and the darkness of falsehood, striving often to rise, but being all the more heavily dashed down. But yet that chaste, pious, and sober widow (such as Thou lovest), now more buoyed up with hope, though no whit less zealous in her weeping and mourning, desisted not, at all the hours of her supplications, to bewail my case unto Thee. And her prayers entered into Thy presence,[2] and yet Thou didst still suffer me to be involved and re-involved in that darkness.

[1] Symbolical of the rule of faith. See viii. sec. 30, below. [2] Ps. lxxxviii. 1.

CHAP. XII.—*The excellent answer of the bishop when referred to by his mother as to the conversion of her son.*

21. And meanwhile Thou grantedst her another answer, which I recall; for much I pass over, hastening on to those things which the more strongly impel me to confess unto Thee, and much I do not remember. Thou didst grant her then another answer, by a priest of Thine, a certain bishop, reared in Thy Church and well versed in Thy books. He, when this woman had entreated that he would vouchsafe to have *some* talk with me, refute my errors, unteach me evil things, and teach me good (for this he was in the habit of doing when he found people fitted to receive it), refused, very prudently, as I afterwards came to see. For he answered that I was still unteachable, being inflated with the novelty of that heresy, and that I had already perplexed divers inexperienced persons with vexatious questions,[1] as she had informed him. "But leave him alone for a time," saith he, "only pray God for him; he will of himself, by reading, discover what that error is, and how great its impiety." He disclosed to her at the same time how he himself, when a little one, had, by his misguided mother, been given over to the Manichæans, and had not only read, but even written out almost all their books, and had come to see (without argument or proof from any one) how much that sect was to be shunned, and had shunned it. Which when he had said, and she would not be satisfied, but repeated more earnestly her entreaties, shedding copious tears, that he would see and discourse with me, he, a little vexed at her importunity, exclaimed, "Go thy way, and God bless thee, for it is not possible that the son of these tears should perish." Which answer (as she often mentioned in her conversations with me) she accepted as though it were a voice from heaven.

[1] We can easily understand that Augustine's dialectic skill would render him a formidable opponent, while, with the zeal of a neophyte, he urged those difficulties of Scripture (*De Agon. Christ.* iv.) which the Manichæans knew so well how to employ. In an interesting passage (*De Duab. Anim. con. Manich.* ix.) he tells us that his victories over "inexperienced persons" stimulated him to fresh conquests, and thus kept him bound longer than he would otherwise have been in the chains of this heresy.

FOURTH BOOK.

THEN FOLLOWS A PERIOD OF NINE YEARS FROM THE NINETEENTH YEAR OF HIS AGE, DURING WHICH, HAVING LOST A FRIEND, HE FOLLOWED THE MANICHÆANS—AND WROTE BOOKS ON THE FAIR AND FIT, AND PUBLISHED A WORK ON THE LIBERAL ARTS, AND THE CATEGORIES OF ARISTOTLE.

CHAP. I.—*Concerning that most unhappy time in which he, being deceived, deceived others; and concerning the mockers of his confession.*

1. DURING this space of nine years, then, from my nineteenth to my eight and twentieth year, we went on seduced and seducing, deceived and deceiving, in divers lusts; publicly, by sciences which they style "liberal"—secretly, with a falsity called religion. Here proud, there superstitious, everywhere vain! Here, striving after the emptiness of popular fame, even to theatrical applauses, and poetic contests, and strifes for grassy garlands, and the follies of shows and the intemperance of desire. There, seeking to be purged from these our corruptions by carrying food to those who were called "elect" and "holy," out of which, in the laboratory of their stomachs, they should make for us angels and gods, by whom we might be delivered.[1] These things did I follow eagerly, and practise with my friends—by me and with me deceived. Let the arrogant, and such as have not been yet savingly cast down and stricken by Thee, O my God, laugh at me; but notwithstanding I would confess to Thee mine own shame in Thy praise. Bear with me, I beseech Thee, and give me grace to retrace in my present

[1] Augustine tells us that he went not beyond the rank of a "hearer," because he found the Manichæan teachers readier in refuting others than in establishing their own views, and seems only to have looked for some esoteric doctrine to have been disclosed to him under their materialistic teaching as to God—viz. that He was an unmeasured Light that extended all ways but one, infinitely (*Serm.* xv. sec. 5)—rather than to have really accepted it.—*De Util. Cred. Prref.* See also iii. sec. 18, notes 1 and 2, above.

remembrance the circlings of my past errors, and to "offer to Thee the sacrifice of thanksgiving."[1] For what am I to myself without Thee, but a guide to mine own downfall? Or what am I even at the best, but one sucking Thy milk,[2] and feeding upon Thee, the meat that perisheth not?[3] But what kind of man is any man, seeing that he is but a man? Let, then, the strong and the mighty laugh at us, but let us who are "poor and needy"[4] confess unto Thee.

CHAP. II.—*He teaches rhetoric, the only thing he loved, and scorns the soothsayer who promised him victory.*

2. In those years I taught the art of rhetoric, and, overcome by cupidity, put to sale a loquacity by which to overcome. Yet I preferred—Lord, Thou knowest—to have honest scholars (as they are esteemed); and these I, without artifice, taught artifices, not to be put in practice against the life of the guiltless, though sometimes for the life of the guilty. And Thou, O God, from afar sawest me stumbling in that slippery path, and amid much smoke[5] sending out some flashes of fidelity; which I exhibited in that my guidance of such as loved vanity and sought after leasing,[6] I being their companion. In those years I had one (whom I knew not in what is called lawful wedlock, but whom my wayward passion, void of understanding, had discovered), yet one only, remaining faithful even to her; in whom I found out truly by my own experience what difference there is between the restraints of the marriage bonds, contracted for the sake of issue, and the compact of a lustful love, where children are born against the parents' will, although, being born, they compel love.

3. I remember, too, that when I decided to compete for a theatrical prize, a soothsayer demanded of me what I would give him to win; but I, detesting and abominating such foul mysteries, answered, "That if the garland were of imperishable gold, I would not suffer a fly to be destroyed to secure it for me." For he was to slay certain living creatures in his sacrifices, and by those honours to invite the devils to give me their support. But this ill thing I also refused, not out

[1] Ps. cxvi. 17. [2] 1 Pet. ii. 2. [3] John vi. 27.
[4] Ps. lxxiv. 21. [5] Isa. xlii. 3, and Matt. xii. 20. [6] Ps. iv. 2.

of a pure love[1] for Thee, O God of my heart; for I knew not how to love Thee, knowing not how to conceive aught beyond corporeal brightness.[2] And doth not a soul, sighing after such-like fictions, commit fornication against Thee, trust in false things,[3] and nourish the wind?[4] But I would not, forsooth, have sacrifices offered to devils on my behalf, though I myself was offering sacrifices to them by that superstition. For what else is nourishing the wind but nourishing them, that is, by our wanderings to become their enjoyment and derision?

CHAP. III.—*Not even the most experienced men could persuade him of the vanity of astrology, to which he was devoted.*

4. Those impostors, then, whom they designate Mathematicians, I consulted without hesitation, because they used no sacrifices, and invoked the aid of no spirit for their divinations, which art Christian and true piety fitly rejects and

[1] "He alone is truly pure who waiteth on God, and keepeth himself to Him alone" (Aug. *De Vita Beata*, sec. 18). "Whoso seeketh God is pure, because the soul hath in God her legitimate husband. Whosoever seeketh of God anything besides God, doth not love God purely. If a wife loved her husband because he is rich, she is not pure, for she loveth not her husband but the gold of her husband" (Aug. *Serm.* 137). "Whoso seeks from God any other reward but God, and for it would serve God, esteems what he wishes to receive more than Him from whom he would receive it. What, then? hath God no reward? None, save Himself. The reward of God is God Himself. This it loveth; if it love aught beside, it is no pure love. You depart from the immortal flame, you will be chilled, corrupted. Do not depart; it will be thy corruption, will be fornication in thee" (Aug. *in Ps.* lxxii. sec. 32). "The pure fear of the Lord (Ps. xix. 9) is that wherewith the Church, the more ardently she loveth her Husband, the more diligently she avoids offending Him, and therefore love, when perfected, casteth not out this fear, but it remaineth for ever and ever" (Aug. *in loc.*). "Under the name of pure fear is signified that will whereby we must needs be averse from sin, and avoid sin, not through the constant anxiety of infirmity, but through the tranquillity of affection" (*De Civ. Dei*, xiv. sec. 65).—E. B. P.

[2] See note on sec. 9, below.

[3] "Indisputably we must take care, lest the mind, believing that which it does not see, feign to itself something which is not, and hope for and love that which is false. For in that case it will not be charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned, which is the end of the commandment" (*De Trin.* viii. sec. 6). And again (*Confessions*, i. 1): "For who can call on Thee, not knowing Thee? For he that knoweth Thee not may call on Thee as other than Thou art."

[4] Hosea xii. 1.

condemns.[1] For good it is to confess unto Thee, and to say, "Be merciful unto me, heal my soul, for I have sinned against Thee;"[2] and not to abuse Thy goodness for a license to sin, but to remember the words of the Lord, "Behold, thou art made whole; sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee."[3] All of which salutary advice they endeavour to destroy when they say, "The cause of thy sin is inevitably determined in heaven;" and, "This did Venus, or Saturn, or

[1] Augustine classes the votaries of both wizards and astrologers (*De Doctr. Christ.* ii. 23; and *De Civ. Dei*, x. 9; compare also Justin Martyr, *Apol.* ii. c. 5) as alike "deluded and imposed on by the false angels, to whom the lowest part of the world has been put in subjection by the law of God's providence;" and he says, "All arts of this sort are either nullities, or are part of a guilty superstition springing out of a baleful fellowship between men and devils, and are to be utterly repudiated and avoided by the Christian, as the covenants of a false and treacherous friendship." It is remarkable that though these arts were strongly denounced in the Pentateuch, the Jews—acquiring them from the surrounding Gentile nations—have embedded them deeply in their oral law, said also to be given by Moses (*e.g.* in *Moed Katon* 28, and *Shabbath* 156, prosperity comes from the influence of the stars; in *Shabbath* 61 it is a question whether the influence of the stars or a charm has been effective; and in *Sanhedrin* 17 magic is one of the qualifications for the Sanhedrim). It might have been expected that the Christians, if only from that reaction against Judaism which shows itself in Origen's disparagement of the letter of the Old Testament Scriptures (see *De Princip.* iv. 15, 16), would have shrunk from such strange arts. But the influx of pagans, who had practised them, into the Christian Church appears gradually to have leavened it in no slight degree. This is not only true of the Valentinians (see Kaye's *Clement of Alex.* vi.) and other heretics, but the influence of these contacts is seen even in the writings of the "orthodox." Those who can read between the lines will find no slight trace of this (after separating what they would conceive to be true from what is manifestly false) in the story told by Zonaras, in his *Annals*, of the controversy between the Rabbis and Sylvester, Bishop of Rome, before Constantine. The Jews were worsted in argument, and evidently thought an appeal to miracles might, from the Emperor's education, bring him over to their side. An ox is brought forth. The Jewish wonder-worker whispers a mystic name into its ear, and it falls dead; but Sylvester, according to the story, is quite equal to the occasion, and restores the animal to life again by uttering the name of the Redeemer. It may have been that the cessation of miracles may have gradually led stable professors of Christianity to invent miracles; and, as Bishop Kaye observes (*Tertullian*, p. 95), "the success of the first attempts naturally encouraged others to practise similar impositions on the credulity of mankind." As to the time of the cessation of miracles, comparison may be profitably made of the views of Kaye, in the early part of c. ii. of his *Tertullian*, and of Blunt, in his *Right Use of the Early Fathers*, series ii. lecture 6.

[2] Ps. xli. 4.

[3] John v. 14.

Mars;" in order that man, forsooth, flesh and blood, and proud corruption, may be blameless, while the Creator and Ordainer of heaven and stars is to bear the blame. And who is this but Thee, our God, the sweetness and well-spring of righteousness, who renderest "to every man according to his deeds,"[1] and despisest not "a broken and a contrite heart!"[2]

5. There was in those days a wise man, very skilful in medicine, and much renowned therein, who had with his own proconsular hand put the Agonistic garland upon my distempered head, not, though, as a physician;[3] for this disease Thou alone healest, who resistest the proud, and givest grace to the humble.[4] But didst Thou fail me even by that old man, or forbear from healing my soul? For when I had become more familiar with him, and hung assiduously and fixedly on his conversation (for though couched in simple language, it was replete with vivacity, life, and earnestness), when he had perceived from my discourse that I was given to books of the horoscope-casters, he, in a kind and fatherly manner, advised me to throw them away, and not vainly bestow the care and labour necessary for useful things upon these vanities; saying that he himself in his earlier years had studied that art with a view to gaining his living by following it as a profession, and that, as he had understood Hippocrates, he would soon have understood this, and yet he had given it up, and followed medicine, for no other reason than that he discovered it to be utterly false, and he, being a man of character, would not gain his living by beguiling people. "But thou," saith he, "hast rhetoric to support thyself by, so that thou followest

[2] Ps. li. 17.

[3] ... the "acute old man" mentioned ... "the most ..."

this of free will, not of necessity—all the more, then, oughtest thou to give me credit herein, who laboured to attain it so perfectly, as I wished to gain my living by it alone." When I asked him to account for so many true things being foretold by it, he answered me (as he could) "that the force of chance, diffused throughout the whole order of nature, brought this about. For if when a man by accident opens the leaves of some poet, who sang and intended something far different, a verse oftentimes fell out wondrously apposite to the present business, it were not to be wondered at," he continued, "if out of the soul of man, by some higher instinct, not knowing what goes on within itself, an answer should be given by chance, not art, which should coincide with the business and actions of the questioner."

6. And thus truly, either by or through him, Thou didst look after me. And Thou didst delineate in my memory what I might afterwards search out for myself. But at that time neither he, nor my most dear Nebridius, a youth most good and most circumspect, who scoffed at that whole stock of divination, could persuade me to forsake it, the authority of the authors influencing me still more; and as yet I had lighted upon no certain proof—such as I sought—whereby it might without doubt appear that what had been truly foretold by those consulted was by accident or chance, not by the art of the star-gazers.

CHAP. IV.—*Sorely distressed by weeping at the death of his friend, he provides consolation for himself.*

7. In those years, when I first began to teach rhetoric in my native town, I had acquired a very dear friend, from association in our studies, of mine own age, and, like myself, just rising up into the flower of youth. He had [illegible] me from [illegible]hood, and we had been both [illegible] was not th[illegible]

he, as a youth, had not soundly and thoroughly become master of), I had turned him aside towards those superstitious and pernicious fables which my mother mourned in me. With me this man's mind now erred, nor could my soul exist without him. But behold, Thou wert close behind Thy fugitives—at once God of vengeance [1] and Fountain of mercies, who turnest us to Thyself by wondrous means. Thou removedst that man from this life when he had scarce completed one whole year of my friendship, sweet to me above all the sweetness of that my life.

8. "Who can show forth all Thy praise" [2] which he hath experienced in himself alone? What was it that Thou didst then, O my God, and how unsearchable are the depths of Thy judgments! [3] For when, sore sick of a fever, he long lay unconscious in a death-sweat, and all despaired of his recovery, he was baptized without his knowledge; [4] myself meanwhile little caring, presuming that his soul would retain rather what it had imbibed from me, than what was done to his unconscious body. Far different, however, was it, for he was revived and restored. Straightway, as soon as I could talk to him (which I could as soon as he was able, for I never left him, and we hung too much upon each other), I attempted to jest with him, as if he also would jest with me at that baptism which he had received when mind and senses were in abeyance, but had now learnt that he had received. But he shuddered at me, as if I were his enemy; and, with a remarkable and unexpected freedom, admonished me, if I desired to continue his friend, to desist from speaking to him in such a way. I, confounded and confused, concealed all my emotions, till he should get well, and his health be strong enough to allow me to deal with him as I wished. [illegible] withdrawn from my frenzy, [illegible] for my com[illegible]

a torture to me, and my father's house a wondrous unhappiness; and whatsoever I had participated in with him, wanting him, turned into a frightful torture. Mine eyes sought him everywhere, but he was not granted them; and I hated all places because he was not in them; nor could they now say to me, "Behold, he is coming," as they did when he was alive and absent. I became a great puzzle to myself, and asked my soul why she was so sad, and why she so exceedingly disquieted me;[1] but she knew not what to answer me. And if I said, "Hope thou in God,"[2] she very properly obeyed me not; because that most dear friend whom she had lost was, being man, both truer and better than that phantasm[3] she was bid to hope in. Naught but tears were sweet to me, and they succeeded my friend in the dearest of my affections.

CHAP. V.—*Why weeping is pleasant to the wretched.*

10. And now, O Lord, these things are passed away, and time hath healed my wound. May I learn from Thee, who art Truth, and apply the ear of my heart unto Thy mouth, that Thou mayest tell me why weeping should be so sweet to the unhappy.[4] Hast Thou—although present everywhere—cast away far from Thee our misery? And Thou abidest in Thy-

[1] *Ps.* xlii. 5. [2] *Ibid.*

[3] The mind may rest in theories and abstractions, but the heart craves a being that it can love; and Archbishop Whately has shown in one of his essays that the idol worship of every age had doubtless its origin in the craving of mind and heart for an embodiment of the object of worship. "Show us the Father, and it sufficeth us," says Philip (John xiv. 8), and he expresses the longing of the soul; and when the Lord replies, "He that hath seen Me hath seen the Father," He reveals to us God's satisfaction of human wants in the incarnation of His Son. Augustine's heart was now thrown in upon itself, and his view of God gave him no consolation. It satisfied his mind, perhaps, in a measure, to think of God as a "corporeal brightness" (see iii. 12; iv. 3, 12, 31; v. 10, etc.) who is free from trouble, but it could not satisfy him now. He had yet to learn of Him who is the very image of God—who by His divine power raised the dead to life again, while, with perfect human sympathy, He could "weep with those that wept," —the "Son of Man" (not of a man, He being miraculously born, but of the race of men [*ἀνθρώπων*]), *i.e.* the Son of Mankind. See also viii. sec. 27, note, below.

[4] For so it has ever been found to be:—

"Est quædam flere voluptas;
Expletur lacrymis egeriturque dolor."

—OVID, *Trist.* iv. 3, 35.

self, but we are disquieted with divers trials; and yet, unless we wept in Thine ears, there would be no hope for us remaining. Whence, then, is it that such sweet fruit is plucked from the bitterness of life, from groans, tears, sighs, and lamentations? Is it the hope that Thou hearest us that sweetens it? This is true of prayer, for therein is a desire to approach unto Thee. But is it also in grief for a thing lost, and the sorrow with which I was then overwhelmed? For I had neither hope of his coming to life again, nor did I seek this with my tears; but I grieved and wept only, for I was miserable, and had lost my joy. Or is weeping a bitter thing, and for distaste of the things which aforetime we enjoyed before, and even then, when we are loathing them, does it cause us pleasure?

CHAP. VI.—*His friend being snatched away by death, he imagines that he remains only as half.*

11. But why do I speak of these things? For this is not the time to question, but rather to confess unto Thee. Miserable I was, and miserable is every soul fettered by the friendship of perishable things—he is torn to pieces when he loses them, and then is sensible of the misery which he had before ever he lost them. Thus was it at that time with me; I wept most bitterly, and found rest in bitterness. Thus was I miserable, and that life of misery I accounted dearer than my friend. For though I would willingly have changed it, yet I was even more unwilling to lose it than him; yea, I knew not whether I was willing to lose it even for him, as is handed down to us (if not an invention) of Pylades and Orestes, that they would gladly have died one for another, or both together, it being worse than death to them not to live together. But there had sprung up in me some kind of feeling, too, contrary to this, for both exceedingly wearisome was it to me to live, and dreadful to die. I suppose, the more I loved him, so much the more did I hate and fear, as a most cruel enemy, that death which had robbed me of him; and I imagined it would suddenly annihilate all men as it had power over him. Thus, I remember, it was with me. Behold my heart, O my God! Behold and look into me, for I remember it well, O my

Hope! who cleansest me from the uncleanness of such affections, directing mine eyes towards Thee, and plucking my feet out of the net.[1] For I was astonished that other mortals lived, since he whom I loved, as if he would never die, was dead; and I wondered still more that I, who was to him a second self, could live when he was dead. Well did one say of his friend, "Thou half of my soul," [2] for I felt that my soul and his soul were but one soul in two bodies;[3] and, consequently, my life was a horror to me, because I would not live in half. And therefore, perchance, was I afraid to die, lest he should die wholly[4] whom I had so greatly loved.

CHAP. VII.—*Troubled by restlessness and grief, he leaves his country a second time for Carthage.*

12. O madness, which knowest not how to love men as men should be loved! O foolish man that I then was, enduring with so much impatience the lot of man! So I fretted, sighed, wept, tormented myself, and took neither rest nor advice. For I bore about with me a rent and polluted soul, impatient of being borne by me, and where to repose it I found not. Not in pleasant groves, not in sport or song, not in fragrant spots, nor in magnificent banquetings, nor in the pleasures of the bed and the couch, nor, finally, in books and songs did it find repose. All things looked terrible, even the very light itself; and whatsoever was not what he was, was repulsive and hateful, except groans and tears, for in those alone found I a little repose. But when my soul was withdrawn from them, a heavy burden of misery weighed me down. To Thee, O Lord, should it have been raised, for Thee to lighten and avert it.[5] This I knew, but was neither willing nor able; all

[1] Ps. xxv. 15.

[2] Horace, *Carm.* I. ode 3.

[3] Ovid, *Trist.* iv. eleg. iv. 72.

[4] Augustine's reference to this passage in his *Retractations* is quoted at the beginning of the book. He might have gone further than to describe his words here as *declamatio levis*, since the conclusion is not logical.

[5] "The great and merciful Architect of His Church, whom not only the philosophers have styled, but the Scripture itself calls τεκτονα (an artist or artificer), employs not on us the hammer and chisel with an intent to wound or mangle us, but only to square and fashion our hard and stubborn hearts into such *lively stones* as may both grace and strengthen His heavenly structure."—BOYLE.

the more since, in my thoughts of Thee, Thou wert not any solid or substantial thing to me. For Thou wert not Thyself, but an empty phantasm,[1] and my error was my god. If I attempted to discharge my burden thereon, that it might find rest, it sank into emptiness, and came rushing down again upon me; and I remained to myself an unhappy spot, where I could neither stay nor depart from. For whither could my heart fly from my heart? Whither could I fly from mine own self? Whither not follow myself? And yet fled I from my country; for so should my eyes look less for him where they were not accustomed to see him. And thus I left the town of Thagaste, and came to Carthage.

CHAP. VIII.—*That his grief ceased by time, and the consolation of friends.*

13. Times lose no time, nor do they idly roll through our senses. They work strange operations on the mind.[2] Behold, they came and went from day to day, and by coming and going they disseminated in my mind other ideas and other remembrances, and by little and little patched me up again with the former kind of delights, unto which that sorrow of mine yielded. But yet there succeeded, not certainly other sorrows, yet the causes of other sorrows.[3] For whence had that former sorrow so easily penetrated to the quick, but that I had poured out my soul upon the dust, in loving one who must die as if he were never to die? But what revived and refreshed me especially was the consolations of other friends,[4] with whom I did love what instead of Thee I loved. And this was a monstrous fable and protracted lie, by whose adulterous contact our soul, which lay itching in our ears, was

[1] See iii. 9; iv. 3, 12, 31; v. 19.

[2] As Seneca has it: "Quod ratio non quit, sæpe sanabit mora" (*Agam.* 130).

[3] See iv. cc. 1, 10, 12, and vi. c. 16.

[4] "Friendship," says Lord Bacon, in his essay thereon,—the sentiment being perhaps suggested by Cicero's "Secundas res splendidiores facit amicitia et adversas partiens communicansque leviores" (*De Amicit.* 6),—"redoubleth joys, and cutteth griefs in halves." Augustine appears to have been eminently open to influences of this kind. In his *De Duab. Anim. con. Manich.* (c. ix.) he tells us that friendship was one of the bonds that kept him in the ranks of the Manichæans; and here we find that, aided by time and weeping, it restored him in his great grief. See also v. sec. 13, and vi. sec. 26, below.

being polluted. But that fable would not die to me so oft as any of my friends died. There were other things in them which did more lay hold of my mind,—to discourse and jest with them; to indulge in an interchange of kindnesses; to read together pleasant books; together to trifle, and together to be earnest; to differ at times without ill-humour, as a man would do with his own self; and even by the infrequency of these differences to give zest to our more frequent consentings; sometimes teaching, sometimes being taught; longing for the absent with impatience, and welcoming the coming with joy. These and similar expressions, emanating from the hearts of those who loved and were beloved in return, by the countenance, the tongue, the eyes, and a thousand pleasing movements, were so much fuel to melt our souls together, and out of many to make but one.

CHAP. IX.—*That the love of a human being, however constant in loving and returning love, perishes; while he who loves God never loses a friend.*

14. This is it that is loved in friends; and so loved that a man's conscience accuses itself if he love not him by whom he is beloved, or love not again him that loves him, expecting nothing from him but indications of his love. Hence that mourning if one die, and gloom of sorrow, that steeping of the heart in tears, all sweetness turned into bitterness, and upon the loss of the life of the dying, the death of the living. Blessed be he who loveth Thee, and his friend in Thee, and his enemy for Thy sake. For he alone loses none dear to him to whom all are dear in Him who cannot be lost. And who is this but our God, the God that created heaven and earth,[1] and filleth them, because by filling them He created them?[2] None loseth Thee but he who leaveth Thee. And he who leaveth Thee, whither goeth he, or whither fleeth he, but from Thee well pleased to Thee angry? For where doth not he find Thy law in his own punishment? "And Thy law is the truth,"[4] and truth Thou.[5]

[1] Gen. i. 1. [2] Jer. xxiii. 24. [3] See i. 2, 3, above.
[4] Ps. cxix. 142, and John xvii. 17. [5] John xiv. 6.

CHAP X.—*That all things exist that they may perish, and that we are not safe unless God watches over us.*

15. "Turn us again, O Lord God of Hosts, cause Thy face to shine; and we shall be saved."[1] For whithersoever the soul of man turns itself, unless towards Thee, it is affixed to sorrows,[2] yea, though it is affixed to beauteous things without Thee and without itself. And yet they were not unless they were from Thee. They rise and set; and by rising, they begin as it were to be; and they grow, that they may become perfect; and when perfect, they wax old and perish; and all wax not old, but all perish. Therefore when they rise and tend to be, the more rapidly they grow that they may be, so much the more they hasten not to be. This is the way of them.[3] Thus much hast Thou given them, because they are parts of things, which exist not all at the same time, but by departing and succeeding they together make up the universe, of which they are parts. And even thus is our speech accomplished by signs emitting a sound; but this, again, is not perfected unless one word pass away when it has sounded its part, in order that another may succeed it. Let my soul praise Thee out of

[1] Ps. lxxx. 19. [2] See iv. cc. 1, 12, and vi. c. 16, below.

[3] It is interesting in connection with the above passages to note what Augustine says elsewhere as to the *origin* of the law of death in the sin of our first parents. In his *De Gen. ad Lit.* (vi. 25) he speaks thus of their condition in the garden, and the provision made for the maintenance of their life: "Aliud est *non posse mori*, sicut quosdam naturas immortales creavit Deus; aliud est autem *posse non mori*, secundum quem modum primus creatus est homo immortalis." Adam, he goes on to say, was *able to avert death*, by partaking of the tree of life. He enlarges on this doctrine in Book xiii. *De Civ. Dei.* He says (sec. 20): "Our first parents decayed not with years, nor drew nearer to death—a condition secured to them in God's marvellous grace by the tree of life, which grew along with the forbidden tree in the midst of Paradise." Again (sec. 19) he says: "Why do the philosophers find that absurd which the Christian faith preaches, namely, that our first parents were so created, that, if they had not sinned, they would not have been dismissed from their bodies by any death, but would have been endowed with immortality as the reward of their obedience, and would have lived eternally with their bodies?" That this was the doctrine of the early Church has been fully shown by Bishop Bull in his *State of Man before the Fall*, vol. ii. Theophilus of Antioch was of opinion (*Ad Autolyc.* c. 24) that Adam might have gone on from strength to strength, until at last he "would have been taken up into heaven." See also on this subject Dean Buckland's *Sermon on Death*; and Delitzsch, *Bibl. Psychol.* vi. secs. 1 and 2.

all these things, O God, the Creator of all; but let not my soul be affixed to these things by the glue of love, through the senses of the body. For they go whither they were to go, that they might no longer be; and they rend her with pestilent desires, because she longs to be, and yet loves to rest in what she loves. But in these things no place is to be found; they *stay not*—they flee; and who is he that is able to follow them with the senses of the flesh? Or who can grasp them, even when they are near? For tardy is the sense of the flesh, because it is the sense of the flesh, and its boundary is itself. It sufficeth for that for which it was made, but it is not sufficient to stay things running their course from their appointed starting-place to the end appointed. For in Thy word, by which they were created, they hear the fiat, "Hence and hitherto."

CHAP. XI.—*That portions of the world are not to be loved, but that God, their Author, is immutable, and His word eternal.*

16. Be not foolish, O my soul, and deaden not the ear of thine heart with the tumult of thy folly. Hearken thou also. The word itself invokes thee to return; and there is the place of rest imperturbable, where love is not abandoned if itself abandoneth not. Behold, these things pass away, that others may succeed them, and so this lower universe be made complete in all its parts. But do I depart anywhere, saith the word of God? There fix thy habitation. There commit whatsoever thou hast thence, O my soul, at all events now thou art tired out with deceits. Commit to truth whatsoever thou hast from the truth, and nothing shalt thou lose; and thy decay shall flourish again, and all thy diseases be healed,[1] and thy perishable parts shall be re-formed and renovated, and drawn together to thee; nor shall they put thee down where themselves descend, but they shall abide with thee, and continue for ever before God, who abideth and continueth for ever.[2]

17. Why, then, be perverse and follow thy flesh? Rather let it be converted and follow thee. Whatever by her thou feelest, is but in part; and the whole, of which these are portions, thou art ignorant of, and yet they delight thee.

[1] Ps. ciii. 3. [2] 1 Pet. i. 23.

But had the sense of thy flesh been capable of comprehending the whole, and not itself also, for thy punishment, been justly limited to a portion of the whole, thou wouldest that whatsoever existeth at the present time should pass away, that so the whole might please thee more.[1] For what we speak, also by the same sense of the flesh thou hearest; and yet wouldest not thou that the syllables should stay, but fly away, that others may come, and the whole[2] be heard. Thus it is always, when any single thing is composed of many, all of which exist not together, all together would delight more than they do simply could all be perceived at once. But far better than these is He who made all; and He is our God, and He passeth not away, for there is nothing to succeed Him. If bodies please thee, praise God for them, and turn back thy love upon their Creator, lest in those things which please thee thou displease.

CHAP. XII.—*Love is not condemned, but love in God, in whom there is rest through Jesus Christ, is to be preferred.*

18. If souls please thee, let them be loved in God; for they also are mutable, but in Him are they firmly stablished, else would they pass, and pass away. In Him, then, let them be beloved; and draw unto Him along with thee as many souls as thou canst, and say to them, "Him let us love, Him let us love; He created these, nor is He far off. For He did not create them, and then depart; but they are of Him, and in Him. Behold, there is He wherever truth is known. He is within the very heart, but yet hath the heart wandered from Him. Return to your heart,[3] O ye transgres-

[1] See xiii. sec. 22, below. [2] A similar illustration occurs in sec. 15, above.

[3] Augustine is never weary of pointing out that there is a *lex occulta* (*in Ps.* lvii. sec. 1), a law written on the heart, which cries to those who have forsaken the written law, "Return to your hearts, ye transgressors." In like manner he interprets (*De Serm. Dom. in Mon.* ii. sec. 11) "Enter into thy closet," of the heart of man. The door is the gate of the senses through which carnal thoughts enter into the mind. We are to shut the door, because the devil (*in Ps.* cxii. 3) *si clausum invenerit transit.* In sec. 16, above, the figure is changed, and we are to fear lest these objects of sense render us "deaf in the ear of our heart" with the tumult of our folly. Men will not, he says, go back into their hearts, because the heart is full of sin, and they fear the reproaches of conscience, just (*in Ps.* xxxiii. 5) "as those are unwilling to enter their houses

sors,[1] and cleave fast unto Him that made you. Stand with Him, and you shall stand fast. Rest in Him, and you shall be at rest. Whither go ye in rugged paths? Whither go ye? The good that you love is from Him; and as it has respect unto Him it is both good and pleasant, and justly shall it be embittered,[2] because whatsoever cometh from Him is unjustly loved if He be forsaken for it. Why, then, will ye wander farther and farther in these difficult and toilsome ways? There is no rest where ye seek it. Seek what ye seek; but it is not there where ye seek. Ye seek a blessed life in the land of death; it is not there. For could a blessed life be where life itself is not?"

19. But our very Life descended hither, and bore our death, and slew it, out of the abundance of His own life; and thundering He called loudly to us to return hence to Him into that secret place whence He came forth to us—first into the Virgin's womb, where the human creature was married to Him, —our mortal flesh, that it might not be for ever mortal,—and thence "as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber, rejoicing as a strong man to run a race."[3] For He tarried not, but ran crying out by words, deeds, death, life, descent, ascension, crying aloud to us to return to Him. And He departed from our sight that we might return to our heart, and there find Him. For He departed, and behold, He is here. He would not be long with us, yet left us not; for He departed thither, whence He never departed, because "the world was made by Him."[4] And in this world He was, and into this world He came to save sinners, unto whom my soul doth confess that He may heal it, for it hath sinned against Him.[5] O ye sons of men, how long so slow of heart?[6] Even now, after the Life is descended to you, ye

who have troublesome wives." These outer things, which too often draw us away from Him, God intends should lift us up to Him who is better than they, though they could all be ours at once, since He made them all; and "woe," he says (*De Lib. Arb.* ii. 16), "to them who love the indications of Thee rather than Thee, and remember not what these indicated."

[1] Isa. lvi. 8.
[2] See iv. ch. 1, 10, above, and vi. c. 16, below.
[3] Ps. xix. 5.
[4] John i. 10.
[5] 1 Tim. i. 15.
[6] Ps. xli. 4.
[7] Luke xxiv. 25.

ye not ascend and live?[1] But whither ascend ye, when ye are on high, and set your mouth against the heavens?[2] Descend that ye may ascend,[3] and ascend to God. For ye have fallen by "ascending against Him." Tell them this, that they may weep in the valley of tears,[4] and so draw them with thee to God, because it is by His Spirit that thou speakest thus unto them, if thou speakest burning with the fire of love.

CHAP. XIII.—*Love originates from grace and beauty enticing us.*

20. These things I knew not at that time, and I loved these lower beauties, and I was sinking to the very depths; and I said to my friends, "Do we love anything but the beautiful? What, then, is the beautiful? And what is beauty? What is it that allures and unites us to the things we love; for unless there were a grace and beauty in them, they could by no means attract us to them?" And I marked and perceived that in bodies themselves there was a beauty from their forming a kind of whole, and another from mutual fitness, as one part of the body with its whole, or a shoe with a foot, and so on. And this consideration sprang up in my mind out of the recesses of my heart, and I wrote books (two or three, I think) "on the fair and fit." Thou knowest, O Lord, it has escaped me; for I have them not, but they have ...ed from me, I know not how.

...he Son of God," says Augustine in another place, "became a son of ...n, the sons of men might be made sons of God." He put off the *form* of ...hat by which He manifested His divine glory in heaven—and put on ...form of a servant" (Phil. ii. 6, 7), that as the outshining [ἀπαύγασμα] of ...Father's glory (Heb. i. 3) He might draw us to Himself. He descended ...emptied Himself of His dignity that we might ascend, giving an example ...all time (*in Ps.* xxxiii. sec. 4); for, "lest man should disdain to imitate a ...umble man, God humbled Himself, so that the pride of the human race might ...not disdain *to walk in the footsteps of God.*" See also v. sec. 5, note, below.

[2] *Ps.* lxxiii. 9.

[3] "There is something in humility which, strangely enough, exalts the heart, and something in pride which debases it. This seems, indeed, to be contradictory, that loftiness should debase and lowliness exalt. But pious humility enables us to submit to what is above us; and nothing is more exalted above us than God; and therefore humility, by making us subject to God, exalts us."—*De Civ. Dei*, xiv. sec. 13.

[4] Ps. lxxxiv. 6.

CHAP. XIV.—*Concerning the books which he wrote "on the Fair and Fit," dedicated to Hierius.*

21. But what was it that prompted me, O Lord my God, to dedicate these books to Hierius, an orator of Rome, whom I knew not by sight, but loved the man for the fame of his learning, for which he was renowned, and some words of his which I had heard, and which had pleased me? But the more did he please me in that he pleased others, who highly extolled him, astonished that a native of Syria, instructed first in Greek eloquence, should afterwards become a wonderful Latin orator, and one so well versed in studies pertaining unto wisdom. Thus a man is commended and loved when absent. Doth this love enter into the heart of the hearer from the mouth of the commender? Not so. But through one who loveth is another inflamed. For hence he is loved who is commended when the commender is believed to praise him with an unfeigned heart; that is, when he that loves him praises him.

22. Thus, then, loved I men upon the judgment of men, not upon Thine, O my God, in which no man is deceived. But yet why not as the renowned charioteer, as the huntsman,[1] known far and wide by a vulgar popularity—but far otherwise, and seriously, and so as I would desire to be myself commended? For I would not that they should commend and love me as actors are,—although I myself did commend and love them,—but I would prefer being unknown than so known, and even being hated than so loved. Where now are these influences of such various and divers kinds of loves distributed in one soul? What is it that I am in love with in another, which, if I did not hate, I should not detest and repel from myself, seeing we are equally men? For it does not follow that because a good horse is loved by him who would not, though he might, be that horse, the same should therefore be affirmed by an actor, who partakes of our nature. Do I then love in a man that which I, who am a man, hate to be? Man himself is a great deep, whose very hairs Thou numberest, O Lord, and they fall not to the ground without Thee.[2] And yet are the hairs of his head more readily

[1] See vi. sec. 13, below [2] Matt. x. 29, 30.

numbered than are his affections and the movements of his heart.

23. But that orator was of the kind that I so loved as I wished myself to be such a one; and I erred through an inflated pride, and was "carried about with every wind,"[1] but yet was piloted by Thee, though very secretly. And whence know I, and whence confidently confess I unto Thee that I loved him more because of the love of those who praised him, than for the very things for which they praised him? Because had he been unpraised, and these self-same men had dispraised him, and with dispraise and scorn told the same things of him, I should never have been so inflamed and provoked to love him. And yet the things had not been different, nor he himself different, but only the affections of the narrators. See where lieth the impotent soul that is not yet sustained by the solidity of truth! Just as the blasts of tongues blow from the breasts of conjecturers, so is it tossed this way and that, driven forward and backward, and the light is obscured to it and the truth not perceived. And behold it is before us. And to me it was a great matter that my style and studies should be known to that man; the which if he approved, I were the more stimulated, but if he disapproved, this vain heart of mine, void of Thy solidity, had been offended. And yet that "fair and fit," about which I wrote to him, I reflected on with pleasure, and contemplated it, and admired it, though none joined me in doing so.

CHAP. XV.—*While writing, being blinded by corporeal images, he failed to recognise the spiritual nature of God.*

24. But not yet did I perceive the hinge on which this impotent matter turned in Thy wisdom, O Thou Omnipotent, "who alone doest great wonders;"[2] and my mind ranged through corporeal forms, and I defined and distinguished as "fair," that which is so in itself, and "fit," that which is beautiful as it corresponds to some other thing; and this I supported by corporeal examples. And I turned my attention to the nature of the mind, but the false opinions which I entertained of spiritual things prevented me from seeing the

[1] Eph. iv. 14. [2] Ps. cxxxvi. 4.

truth. Yet the very power of truth forced itself on my gaze, and I turned away my throbbing soul from incorporeal substance, to lineaments, and colours, and bulky magnitudes. And not being able to perceive these in the mind, I thought I could not perceive my mind. And whereas in virtue I loved peace, and in viciousness I hated discord, in the former I distinguished unity, but in the latter a kind of division. And in that unity I conceived the rational soul and the nature of truth and of the chief good[1] to consist. But in this division I, unfortunate one, imagined there was I know not what substance of

[1] Augustine tells us (*De Civ. Dei*, xix. 1) that Varro, in his lost book *De Philosophia*, gives two hundred and eighty-eight different opinions as regards the chief good, and shows us how readily they may be reduced in number. Now, as then, philosophers ask the same questions. We have our hedonists, whose "good" is their own pleasure and happiness; our materialists, who would seek the common good of all; and our intuitionists, who aim at following the dictates of conscience. When the pretensions of these various schools are examined without prejudice, the conclusion is forced upon us that we must have recourse to Revelation for a reconcilement of the difficulties of the various systems; and that the philosophers, to employ Davidson's happy illustration (*Prophecies*, Introd.), forgetting that their faded taper has been insensibly kindled by gospel light, are attempting now, as in Augustine's time (*ibid.* sec. 4), "to fabricate for themselves a happiness in this life based upon a virtue as deceitful as it is proud." Christianity gives the golden key to the attainment of happiness, when it declares that "godliness is profitable for all things, having the promise of the life which now is, and of that which is to come" (1 Tim. iv. 8). It was a saying of Bacon (*Essay on Adversity*), that while "prosperity is the blessing of the Old Testament, adversity is the blessing of the New." He would have been nearer the truth had he said that while temporal rewards were the special promise of the Old Testament, spiritual rewards are the special promise of the New. For though Christ's immediate followers had to suffer "adversity" in the planting of our faith, adversity cannot properly be said to be the result of following Christ. It has yet to be shown that, on the whole, the greatest amount of real happiness does not result, even in this life, from a Christian life; for virtue is, even here, its own reward. The fu[illegible] only be received in the life to come. A[illegible] good that "life eternal is the s[illegible] evil, and [illegible]

irrational life, and the nature of the chief evil, which should not be a substance only, but real life also, and yet not emanating from Thee, O my God, from whom are all things. And yet the first I called a Monad, as if it had been a soul without sex,[1] but the other a Duad,—anger in deeds of violence, in deeds of passion, lust,—not knowing of what I talked. For I had not known or learned that neither was evil a substance, nor our soul that chief and unchangeable good.

25. For even as it is in the case of deeds of violence, if that emotion of the soul from whence the stimulus comes be depraved, and carry itself insolently and mutinously; and in acts of passion, if that affection of the soul whereby carnal pleasures are imbibed is unrestrained,—so do errors and false opinions contaminate the life, if the reasonable soul itself be depraved, as it was at that time in me, who was ignorant that it must be enlightened by another light that it may be partaker of truth, seeing that itself is not that nature of truth. "For Thou wilt light my candle; the Lord my God will enlighten my darkness;"[2] and "of His fulness have all we received,"[3] for "that was the true Light which lighted every man that cometh into the world;"[4] for in Thee there is "no variableness, neither shadow of turning."[5]

26. But I pressed towards Thee, and was repelled by Thee that I might taste of death, for Thou "resistest the proud."[6] But what prouder than for me, with a marvellous madness, to assert myself to be that by nature which Thou art? For

[1] "Or 'an unintelligent soul;' very good MSS. reading '*sensu*,' the majority, it appears, '*sexu*.' If we read '*sexu*,' the absolute unity of the first principle, or Monad, may be insisted upon, and in the inferior principle, divided into 'violence' and 'lust,' 'violence,' as implying strength, may be looked on as the male, 'lust' was, in mythology, represented as female; if we take '*sensu*,' it will express the living but unintelligent soul of the world in the Manichæan, as a pantheistic system."—E. B. P.

[2] Ps. xviii. 28. Augustine constantly urges our recognition of this truth that God is the "Father of lights." From Him as our central sun, all [illegible] whether of wisdom or knowledge, proceedeth, and if, changing the figure, the candle which He hath lighted be blown out, He again must light it. Compare *Enar. in Ps.* xciii. 147; and *Sermons*, 67 and 341.

[3] John i. 16.

[4] John i. 9.

[5] Jas. i. 17.

[6] Jas. iv. 6, and 1 Pet. v. 5.

whereas I was mutable,—so much being clear to me, for my very longing to become wise arose from the wish from worse to become better,—yet chose I rather to think Thee mutable, than myself not to be that which Thou art. Therefore was I repelled by Thee, and Thou resistedst my changeable stiff-neckedness; and I imagined corporeal forms, and, being flesh, I accused flesh, and, being "a wind that passeth away,"[1] I returned not to Thee, but went wandering and wandering on towards those things that have no being, neither in Thee, nor in me, nor in the body. Neither were they created for me by Thy truth, but conceived by my vain conceit out of corporeal things. And I used to ask Thy faithful little ones, my fellow-citizens,—from whom I unconsciously stood exiled,—I used flippantly and foolishly to ask, "Why, then, doth the soul which God created err?" But I would not permit any one to ask me, "Why, then, doth God err?" And I contended that Thy immutable substance erred of constraint, rather than admit that my mutable substance had gone astray of free will, and erred as a punishment.[2]

[1] Ps. lxxviii. 39.

[2] It may assist those unacquainted with Augustine's writings to understand the last three sections, if we set before them a brief view of the Manichæan speculations as to the good and evil principles, and the nature of the human soul:—(1) The Manichæans believed that there were two principles or substances, one good and the other evil, and that both were eternal and opposed one to the other. The good principle they called God, and the evil, matter or Hyle (*Con. Faust.* xxi. 1, 2). Faustus, in his argument with Augustine, admits that they sometimes called the evil nature "God," but simply as a conventional usage. Augustine says thereon (*ibid.* sec. 4): "Faustus glibly defends himself by saying, 'We speak not of two gods, but of God and Hyle;' but when you ask for the meaning of Hyle, you find that it is in fact another god. If the Manichæans gave the name of Hyle, as the ancients did, to the unformed matter which is susceptible of bodily forms, we should not accuse them of making two gods. But it is pure folly and madness to give to matter the power of forming bodies, or to deny that what has this power is God." Augustine alludes in the above passage to the Platonic theory of matter, which, as the late Dean Mansel has shown us (*Gnostic Heresies, Basilides*, etc.), resulted after his time in Pan-
ibid. and which was entirely opposed to the dualism of Manichæus. It
are sa "power of forming bodies" claimed for matter, then, that Augustine
presen n our text (sec. 24) as "not only a substance but real life also."
ought uman soul the Manichæans declared to be of the same nature as God,
good." created by Him—it having originated in the intermingling of part
last cha g with the evil principle, in the conflict between the kingdoms of
which a

27. I was about six or seven and twenty years of age when I wrote those volumes—meditating upon corporeal fictions, which clamoured in the ears of my heart. These I directed, O sweet Truth, to Thy inward melody, pondering on the "fair and fit," and longing to stay and listen to Thee, and to rejoice greatly at the Bridegroom's voice,[1] and I could not; for by the voices of my own errors was I driven forth, and by the weight of my own pride was I sinking into the lowest pit. For Thou didst not "make me to hear joy and gladness;" nor did the bones which were not yet humbled rejoice.[2]

CHAP. XVI.—*He very easily understood the liberal arts and the categories of Aristotle, but without true fruit.*

28. And what did it profit me that, when scarce twenty years old, a book of Aristotle's, entitled *The Ten Predicaments*, fell into my hands,—on whose very name I hung as on something great and divine, when my rhetoric master of Carthage, and others who were esteemed learned, referred to it with cheeks swelling with pride,—I read it alone and understood it? And on my conferring with others, who said that with the assistance of very able masters—who not only explained it orally, but drew many things in the dust[3]—they scarcely understood it, and could tell me no more about it than I had acquired in reading it by myself alone? And the book

light and darkness (*in Ps.* cxl. sec. 10). Augustine says to Faustus: "You generally call your soul not a temple, but a part or member of God" (*Con. Faust.* xx. 15); and thus, "identifying themselves with the nature and substance of God" (*ibid.* xii. 13), they did not refer their sin to themselves, but to the race of darkness, and so did not "prevail over their sin." That is, they denied original sin, and asserted that it necessarily resulted from the soul's contact with the body. To this Augustine steadily replied, that as the soul was not of the nature of God, but created by Him and endowed with free will, man was responsible for his transgressions. Again, referring to the *Confessions*, we find Augustine speaking consistently with his then belief, when he says that he had not then learned that the soul was not a "chief and unchangeable good" (sec. 24), or that "it was not that nature of truth" (sec. 25); and that when he transgressed "he accused flesh" rather than himself; and, as a result of his Manichæan errors (sec. 26), "contended that God's immutable substance erred of constraint, rather than admit that his mutable substance had gone astray of free will, and erred as a punishment."

[1] John iii. 29. [2] Ps. li. 8, *Vulg.*

[3] As the mathematicians did their figures, in dust or sand.

appeared to me to speak plainly enough of substances, such as man is, and of their qualities,—such as the figure of a man, of what kind it is; and his stature, how many feet high; and his relationship, whose brother he is; or where placed, or when born; or whether he stands or sits, or is shod or armed, or does or suffers anything; and whatever innumerable things might be classed under these nine categories,[1]—of which I have given some examples,—or under that chief category of substance.

29. What did all this profit me, seeing it even hindered me, when, imagining that whatsoever existed was comprehended in those ten categories, I tried so to understand, O my God, Thy wonderful and unchangeable unity as if Thou also hadst been subjected to Thine own greatness or beauty, so that they should exist in Thee as their subject, like as in bodies, whereas Thou Thyself art Thy greatness and beauty? But a body is not great or fair because it is a body, seeing that, though it were less great or fair, it should nevertheless be a body. But that which I had conceived of Thee was falsehood, not truth, —fictions of my misery, not the supports of Thy blessedness. For Thou hadst commanded, and it was done in me, that the earth should bring forth briars and thorns to me,[2] and that with labour I should get my bread.[3]

30. And what did it profit me that I, the base slave of vile affections, read unaided, and understood, all the books that I could get of the so-called liberal arts? And I took delight in

[1] "The categories enumerated by Aristotle are οὐσία, ποσόν, ποῖον, πρός τι, ποῦ, ποτέ, κεῖσθαι, ἔχειν, ποιεῖν, πάσχειν; which are usually rendered, as adequately as perhaps they can be in our language, substance, quantity, quality, relation, place, time, situation, possession, action, suffering. The catalogue (which certainly is but a very crude one) has been by some writers enlarged, as it is evident may easily be done by subdividing some of the heads; and by others curtailed, as it is no less evident that all may ultimately be referred to the two heads of *substance* and *attribute*, or, in the language of some logicians, '*accident*.'" (Whately's *Logic*, iv. 2, sec. 1, note). "These are called in Latin the *prædicamenti*, because they can be said or predicated, in the same sense of all other terms, as well as of all the objects denoted by them, whereas no other term can be correctly said of them, because no other is employed to express the full extent of their meaning" (Gillies, *Analysis of Aristotle*, c. 2).

[2] Isa. xxxii. 13. [3] Gen. iii. 19.

them, but knew not whence came whatever in them was true and certain. For my back then was to the light, and my face towards the things enlightened; whence my face, with which I discerned the things enlightened, was not itself enlightened. Whatever was written either on rhetoric or logic, geometry, music, or arithmetic, did I, without any great difficulty, and without the teaching of any man, understand, as Thou knowest, O Lord my God, because both quickness of comprehension and acuteness of perception are Thy gifts. Yet did I not thereupon sacrifice to Thee. So, then, it served not to my use, but rather to my destruction, since I went about to get so good a portion of my substance[1] into my own power; and I kept not my strength for Thee,[2] but went away from Thee into a far country, to waste it upon harlotries.[3] For what did good abilities profit me, if I did not employ them to good uses? For I did not perceive that those arts were acquired with great difficulty, even by the studious and those gifted with genius, until I endeavoured to explain them to such; and he was the most proficient in them who followed my explanations not too slowly.

31. But what did this profit me, supposing that Thou, O Lord God, the Truth, wert a bright and vast body,[4] and I a piece of that body? Perverseness too great! But such was I. Nor do I blush, O my God, to confess to Thee Thy mercies towards me, and to call upon Thee—I, who blushed not then to avow before men my blasphemies, and to bark against Thee. What profited me then my nimble wit in those sciences and all those knotty volumes, disentangled by me without help from a human master, seeing that I erred so odiously, and with such sacrilegious baseness, in the doctrine of piety? Or what impediment was it to Thy little ones to have a far slower wit, seeing that they departed not far from Thee, that in the nest of Thy Church they might safely become fledged, and nourish the wings of charity by the food of a sound faith? O Lord our God, under the shadow of Thy wings let us hope, defend us, and carry us. Thou wilt carry us both when [illegible]

[1] Luke xv. 12. [2] Ps. lix. 9, *Vulg.*
[4] See iii. 12; iv. 3, 12; v. 19.

and even to grey hairs wilt Thou carry us;[1] for our firmness, when it is Thou, then is it firmness; but when it is our own, then it is infirmity. Our good lives always with Thee, from which when we are averted we are perverted. Let us now, O Lord, return, that we be not overturned, because with Thee our good lives without any eclipse,—which good Thou Thyself art.[2] And we need not fear lest we should find no place unto which to return because we fell away from it; for when we were absent, our home—Thy Eternity—fell not.

[1] Isa. xlvi. 4. [2] See xi. sec. 5, note, below.

BOOK FIFTH.

HE DESCRIBES THE TWENTY-NINTH YEAR OF HIS AGE, IN WHICH, HAVING DISCOVERED THE FALLACIES OF THE MANICHÆANS, HE PROFESSED RHETORIC AT ROME AND MILAN. HAVING HEARD AMBROSE, HE BEGINS TO COME TO HIMSELF.

CHAP. I.—*That it becomes the soul to praise God, and to confess unto Him.*

1. ACCEPT the sacrifice of my confessions by the agency of my tongue, which Thou hast formed and quickened, that it may confess to Thy name; and heal Thou all my bones, and let them say, "Lord, who is like unto Thee?"[1] For neither does he who confesses to Thee teach Thee what may be passing within him, because a closed heart doth not exclude Thine eye, nor does man's hardness of heart repulse Thine hand, but Thou dissolvest it when Thou willest, either in pity or in vengeance, "and there is no one who can hide himself from Thy heat."[2] But let my soul praise Thee, that it may love Thee; and let it confess Thine own mercies to Thee, that it may praise Thee. Thy whole creation ceaseth not, nor is it silent in Thy praises—neither the spirit of man, by the voice directed unto Thee, nor animal nor corporeal things, by the voice of those meditating thereon;[3] so that our soul [illegible]

[1] Ps. xxxv. 10. [2] Ps. xix. 6.

[3] St. Paul speaks of a "minding of the flesh" and a "minding of the spirit" (Rom. viii. 6, 5, argm), and we are prone to be attracted and held by the carnal surroundings of life; that is, "quia per carnem sentiri quernut id est per oculos, per aures, ceterosque corporis sensus" (*De Vera Relig.* xxiv.). But God would have us, as we meditate on the things that enter by the gates of the senses, to arise towards Him, through these His creatures. Our Father in heaven might have ordered His creation simply in a utilitarian way, letting, for example, hunger be satisfied without any of the pleasures of taste, and so of the other senses. But He has not so done. To every sense He has given its appropriate pleasure as well as its proper use. And though this presents to us a source of temptation, still ought we for it to praise His goodness to the full, and that *corde et opere*.—Bradward, ii. c. 28. See also i. sect. 1, note 3, and iv. sec. 18, above.

from their weariness arise towards Thee, leaning on those things which Thou hast made, and passing on to Thee, who hast made them wonderfully; and there is there refreshment and true strength.

CHAP. II.—*On the vanity of those who wish to escape the Omnipotent God.*

2. Let the restless and the unjust depart and flee from Thee. Thou both seest them and distinguishest the shadows. And lo! all things with them are fair, yet are they themselves foul.[1] And how have they injured Thee?[2] Or in what have they disgraced Thy government, which is just and perfect from heaven even to the lowest parts of the earth. For whither fled they when they fled from Thy presence?[3] Or where dost Thou not find them? But they fled that they might not see Thee seeing them, and blinded might stumble against Thee;[4] since Thou forsakest nothing that Thou hast made[5]—that the unjust might stumble against Thee, and justly be hurt,[6] with-

[1] Augustine frequently recurs to the idea, that in God's overruling Providence, the foulness and sin of man does not disturb the order and fairness of the universe. He illustrates the idea by reference to music, painting, and oratory. "For as the beauty of a picture is increased by well-managed shadows, so, to the eye that has skill to discern it, the universe is beautified even by sinners, though, considered by themselves, their deformity is a sad blemish" (*De Civ. Dei.* xi. 23). So again, he says, God would never have created angels or men whose future wickedness He foreknew, unless He could turn them to the use of the good, "thus embellishing the course of the ages as it were an exquisite poem set off with antitheses" (*ibid.* xi. 18); and further on, in the same section, "as the opposition of contraries lend beauty to language, so the beauty of the course of the world is achieved by the opposition of contraries, arranged, as it were, by an eloquence not of words, but of things." These reflections affected Augustine's views as to the last things. They seemed to him to render the idea entertained by Origen (*De Princ.* i. 6) and the Fathers as to a general restoration [ἀποκατάστασις] unnecessary. See Hagenbach's *Hist. of Doct.* etc. i. 383 (Clark).

[2] "In Scripture they are called God's enemies who oppose His rule not by nature but by vice, having no power to hurt Him, but only themselves. For they are His enemies not through their power to hurt, but by their will to oppose Him. For God is unchangeable, and wholly proof against injury" (*De Civ. Dei.* xii. 3).

[3] Ps. cxxxix. 7. [4] Gen. xvi. 13, 14. [5] Wisd. xi. 24. *Old ver.*

[6] He also refers to the injury man does himself by sin in ii. sec. 13 above; and elsewhere he suggests the law which underlies it. "The vice which makes those who are called God's enemies resist Him, is an evil not to God but to themselves. And to them it is an evil solely because it corrupts the good of their nature." And

drawing themselves from Thy gentleness, and stumbling against Thine uprightness, and falling upon their own roughness. Forsooth, they know not that Thou art everywhere whom no place encompasseth, and that Thou alone art near even to those that remove far from Thee.[1] Let them, then, be converted and seek Thee; because not as they have forsaken their Creator hast Thou forsaken Thy creature. Let them be converted and seek Thee; and behold, Thou art there in their hearts, in the hearts of those who confess to Thee, and cast themselves upon Thee, and weep on Thy bosom after their obdurate ways, even Thou gently wiping away their tears. And they weep the more, and rejoice in weeping, since Thou, O Lord, not man, flesh and blood, but Thou, Lord, who didst make, remakest and comfortest them. And where was I when I was seeking Thee? And Thou wert before me, but I had gone away even from myself; nor did I find myself, much less Thee!

CHAP. III.—*Having heard Faustus, the most learned bishop of the Manichæans, he discerns that God, the Author both of things animate and inanimate, chiefly has care for the humble.*

3. Let me lay bare before my God that twenty-ninth year of my age. There had at this time come to Carthage a certain bishop of the Manichæans, by name Faustus, a great snare of the devil, and many were entangled by him through the allurement of his smooth speech; the which, although I did commend, yet could I separate from the truth of those things which I was eager to learn. Nor did I esteem the setting dish of oratory so much as the science, which this their so famed Faustus placed before me to feed upon. Fame, indeed, had before spoken of him to me as most skilled in all becoming learning, and pre-eminently skilled in the liberal sciences. And as I had read and retained in memory many injunctions of the philosophers, I used to compare some teach-

when we suffer for our sins we should thank God that we are not unpunished (*De Civ. Dei*, xii. 3). But if, when God punishes us, we still continue in our sin, we shall be more confirmed in habits of sin, and then, as Augustine in another place (*in Ps.* vii. 15) warns us, "our facility in sinning will be the punishment of God for our former yieldings to sin." See also Butler's *Analogy*, Pt. i. ch. 5, "On a state of probation as intended for moral discipline and improvement."

[1] Ps. lxxiii. 27.

ings of theirs with those long fables of the Manichæans; and the former things which they declared, who could only prevail so far as to estimate this lower world, while its lord they could by no means find out,[1] seemed to me the more probable. For Thou art great, O Lord, and hast "respect unto the lowly, but the proud Thou knowest afar off."[2] Nor dost Thou draw near but to the contrite heart,[3] nor art Thou found by the proud,[4]—not even could they number by cunning skill the stars and the sand, and measure the starry regions, and trace the courses of the planets.

4. For with their understanding and the capacity which Thou hast bestowed upon them they search out these things; and much have they found out, and foretold many years before, —the eclipses of those luminaries, the sun and moon, on what day, at what hour, and from how many particular points they were likely to come. Nor did their calculation fail them; and it came to pass even as they foretold. And they wrote down the rules found out, which are read at this day; and from these others foretell in what year, and in what month of the year, and on what day of the month, and at what hour of the day, and at what quarter of its light, either moon or sun is to be eclipsed, and thus it shall be even as it is foretold. And men who are ignorant of these things marvel and are amazed, and they that know them exult and are exalted; and by an impious pride, departing from Thee, and forsaking Thy light, they foretell a failure of the sun's light which is likely to occur so long before, but see not their own, which is now present. For they seek not religiously whence they have the ability wherewith they seek out these things. And finding that Thou hast made them, they give not themselves up to Thee, that Thou mayest preserve what Thou hast made. They sacrifice themselves to Thee even such as they have made themselves to be; nor do they slay their own pride, as fowls of the air,[5] nor their own curiosities, by which (like the fishes

[1] Wisd. xiii. 9. [2] Ps. cxxxviii. 6.
[3] Ps. xxxiv. 18, and cxlv. 18. [4] See Book iv. sec. 12, note, above.
[5] He makes use of the same illustrations on Psalms viii. and xi., where the birds of the air represent the proud, the fishes of the sea those who have too great a curiosity, while the beasts of the field are those given to carnal pleasures. It

of the sea) they wander over the unknown paths of the abyss, nor their own extravagance, as the "beasts of the field,"[1] that Thou, Lord, "a consuming fire,"[2] mayest burn up their lifeless cares and renew them immortally.

5. But the way—Thy Word,[3] by whom Thou didst make these things which they number, and themselves who number, and the sense by which they perceive what they number, and the judgment out of which they number—they knew not, and that of Thy wisdom there is no number.[4] But the Only-begotten has been "made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification,"[5] and has been numbered amongst us, and paid tribute to Cæsar.[6] This way, by which they might descend to Him from themselves, they knew not; nor that through Him they might ascend unto Him.[7] This way they knew not, and they think themselves exalted with the stars[8] and shining, and lo! they fell upon the earth,[9] and "their foolish heart was darkened."[10] They say many true things concerning the creature; but Truth, the Artificer of the creature, they seek not with devotion, and hence they find Him not. Or if they find Him, knowing that He is God, they glorify Him not as God, neither are they thankful,[11] but become vain in their imaginations, and say that they themselves are wise,[12] attributing to themselves what is Thine; and by this, with most perverse blindness, they desire to impute to Thee what is their own, forging lies against Thee who art the Truth, and changing the glory of the incorruptible God into an image made like corruptible man, and to birds, and four-footed beasts, and creeping things,[13]—changing Thy truth into a lie, and worshipping and serving the creature more than the Creator.[14]

6. Many truths, however, concerning the creature did I retain

will be seen that there is a correspondence between these and the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eye, and the pride of life, in 1 John ii. 16. See also Book iii. sec. 16, and below, Book x. sec. 41, etc.

[1] Ps. viii. 7, 8. [2] Deut. iv. 24. [3] John i. 3.
[4] Ps. cxlvii. 5, *Vulg.* [5] 1 Cor. i. 30. [6] Matt. xvii. 27.
[7] In *Sermon* 123, sec. 3, we have: "Christ as God is the country to which we go.—Christ as man is the way by which we go." See note on Book iv. sec. 19, above.
[8] Isa. xiv. 13. [9] Rev. xii. 4. [10] Rom. i. 21. [11] *Ibid.*
[12] Rom. i. 22. [13] Rom. i. 23. [14] Rom. i. 25.

from these men, and the cause appeared to me from calculations, the succession of seasons, and the visible manifestations of the stars; and I compared them with the sayings of Manichæus, who in his frenzy has written most extensively on these subjects, but discovered not any account either of the solstices, or the equinoxes, the eclipses of the luminaries, or anything of the kind I had learned in the books of secular philosophy. But therein I was ordered to believe, and yet it corresponded not with those rules acknowledged by calculation and my own sight, but was far different.

CHAP. IV.—*That the knowledge of terrestrial and celestial things does not give happiness, but the knowledge of God only.*

7. Doth, then, O Lord God of truth, whosoever knoweth those things therefore please Thee? For unhappy is the man who knoweth all those things, but knoweth Thee not; but happy is he who knoweth Thee, though these he may not know.[1] But he who knoweth both Thee and them is not the happier on account of them, but is happy on account of Thee only, if knowing Thee he glorify Thee as God, and gives thanks, and becomes not vain in his thoughts.[2] But as he is happier who knows how to possess a tree, and for the use thereof renders thanks to Thee, although he may not know how many cubits high it is, or how wide it spreads, than he that measures it and counts all its branches, and neither owns it nor knows or loves its Creator; so a just man, whose is the entire world of wealth,[3] and who, as having nothing, yet possesseth all things[4] by cleaving unto Thee, to whom all things

[1] What a contrast does his attitude here present to his supreme regard for secular learning before his conversion! We have constantly in his writings expressions of the same kind. On Psalm cxii. he dilates lovingly on the fount of happiness the word of God is, as compared with the writings of Cicero, Tully, and Plato; and again on Psalm xxxviii. he shows that the word is the source of all true joy. So likewise in *De Trin.* iv. 1: "That mind is more worthy which knows even its own weakness, than that which, without regard to this, searches out and even comes to know the ways of the stars, or which holds fast such knowledge already acquired, while ignorant of the way by which itself to enter into its own proper health and strength. . . . Such a one has preferred to know his own weakness, rather than to know the walls of the world, the foundations of the earth, and the pinnacles of heaven." See iii. sec. 9, note, above. [2] Rom. i. 21. [3] Prov. xvii. 6, in the LXX. [4] 2 Cor. vi. 10.

are subservient, though he know not even the circles of the Great Bear, yet it is foolish to doubt but that he may verily be better than he who can measure the heavens, and number the stars, and weigh the elements, but is forgetful of Thee, "who hast set in order all things in number, weight, and measure."[1]

CHAP. V.—*Of Manichæus pertinaciously teaching false doctrines, and proudly arrogating to himself the Holy Spirit.*

8. But yet who was it that ordered Manichæus to write on these things likewise, skill in which was not necessary to piety? For Thou hast told man to behold piety and wisdom,[2] of which he might be in ignorance although having a complete knowledge of these other things; but since, knowing not these things, he yet most impudently dared to teach them, it is clear that he had no acquaintance with piety. For even when we have a knowledge of these worldly matters, it is folly to make a profession of them; but confession to Thee is piety. It was therefore with this view that this straying one spake much of these matters, that, standing convicted by those who had in truth learned them, the understanding that he really had in those more difficult things might be made plain. For he wished not to be lightly esteemed, but went about trying to persuade men "that the Holy Ghost, the Comforter and Enricher of Thy faithful ones, was with full authority personally resident in him"[3] When, therefore, it was dis-

[1] Wisd. xi. 20. [2] Job xxviii. 28 in LXX. reads: Ἰδοὺ ἡ θεοσέβεια ἐστι σοφία.

[3] This claim of Manichæus was supported by referring to the Lord's promise (John xvi. 12, 13) to send the Holy Ghost, the Comforter, to guide the apostles into that truth which they were as yet "not able to bear." The Manichæans used the words "Paraclete" and "Comforter," as indeed the names of the other two persons of the blessed Trinity, in a sense entirely different from that of the gospel. These terms were little more than the bodily frame, the soul of which was his own heretical belief. Whenever opposition appeared between that belief and the teaching of Scripture, their ready answer was that the Scriptures had been corrupted (*De Mor. Ecc. Cath.* xxviii. and xxix.); and in such a case, as we find Faustus contending (*Con. Faust.* xxxii. 6), the Paraclete taught them what part to receive and what to reject, according to the promise of Jesus that He should "guide them into all truth," and much more to the same effect. Augustine's whole argument in reply is well worthy of attention. Amongst other things, he points out that the Manichæan pretension to having received the promised Paraclete was precisely the same as that of the

covered that his teaching concerning the heavens and stars, and the motions of sun and moon, was false, though these things do not relate to the doctrine of religion, yet his sacrilegious arrogance would become sufficiently evident, seeing that not only did he affirm things of which he knew nothing, but also perverted them, and with such egregious vanity of pride as to seek to attribute them to himself as to a divine being.

9. For when I hear a Christian brother ignorant of these things, or in error concerning them, I can bear with patience to see that man hold to his opinions; nor can I apprehend that any want of knowledge as to the situation or nature of this material creation can be injurious to him, so long as he does not entertain belief in anything unworthy of Thee, O Lord, the Creator of all. But if he conceives it to pertain to the form of the doctrine of piety, and presumes to affirm with great obstinacy that whereof he is ignorant, therein lies the injury. And yet even a weakness such as this in the dawn of faith is borne by our Mother Charity, till the new man may grow up "unto a perfect man," and not be "carried about with every wind of doctrine."[1] But in him who thus presumed to be at once the teacher, author, head, and leader of all whom he could induce to believe this, so that all who followed him believed that they were following not a simple man only, but Thy Holy Spirit, who would not judge that such great insanity, when once it stood convicted of false teaching, should be abhorred and utterly cast off? But I had not yet clearly ascertained whether the changes of longer and shorter days and nights, and day and night itself, with the eclipses of the greater lights, and whatever of the like kind I had read in other books, could be expounded consistently with his words. Should I have found myself able to do so, there would still have remained a doubt in my mind whether it were so or no, although I might, on the strength of his reputed godliness,[2] rest my faith on his authority.

Montanists in the previous century. It should be observed that Beausobre (*Histoire*, i. 254, 264, etc.) vigorously rebuts the charge brought against Manichæus of claiming to *be* the Holy Ghost. An interesting examination of the claims of Montanus will be found in Kaye's *Tertullian*, pp. 13 to 33.

[1] Eph. iv. 13, 14.

[2] See vi. sec. 12, note, below.

CHAP. VI.—*Faustus was indeed an elegant speaker, but knew nothing of the liberal sciences.*

10. And for nearly the whole of those nine years during which, with unstable mind, I had been their follower, I had been looking forward with but too great eagerness for the arrival of this same Faustus. For the other members of the sect whom I had chanced to light upon, when unable to answer the questions I raised, always bade me look forward to his coming, when, by discoursing with him, these, and greater difficulties if I had them, would be most easily and amply cleared away. When at last he did come, I found him to be a man of pleasant speech, who spoke of the very same things as they themselves did, although more fluently, and in better language. But of what profit to me was the elegance of my cup-bearer, since he offered me not the more precious draught for which I thirsted? My ears were already satiated with similar things; neither did they appear to me more conclusive, because better expressed; nor true, because oratorical; nor the spirit necessarily wise, because the face was comely and the language eloquent. But they who extolled him to me were not competent judges; and therefore as he was possessed of suavity of speech, he appeared to them to be prudent and wise. Another sort of persons, however, was, I was aware, suspicious even of truth itself, if enunciated in smooth and flowing language. But me, O my God, Thou hadst already instructed by wonderful and mysterious ways, and therefore I believe that Thou instructedst me because it is truth; nor of truth is there any other teacher—where or whencesoever it may shine upon us[1]—but Thee. From Thee, therefore, I had now learned that because a thing is eloquently expressed, it should not of necessity seem to be true; nor, because uttered with stammering lips, should it be false; nor, again, perforce true, because unskilfully delivered; nor consequently untrue, because the language is fine; but that wisdom and folly are as food both wholesome and unwholesome, and courtly or simple words as town made or

[1] Sec. vii. sec. 15, below.

rustic vessels,—and both kinds of food may be served in either kind of dish.

11. That eagerness, therefore, with which I had so long waited for this man was in truth delighted with his action and feeling when disputing, and the fluent and apt words with which he clothed his ideas. I was therefore filled with joy, and joined with others (and even exceeded them) in exalting and praising him. It was, however, a source of annoyance to me that I was not allowed at those meetings of his auditors to introduce and impart [1] any of those questions that troubled me in familiar exchange of arguments with him. When I might speak, and began, in conjunction with my friends, to engage his attention at such times as it was not unseeming for him to enter into a discussion with me, and had mooted such questions as perplexed me, I discovered him first to know nothing of the liberal sciences save grammar, and that only in an ordinary way. Having, however, read some of Tully's *Orations*, a very few books of Seneca, and some of the poets, and such few volumes of his own sect as were written coherently in Latin, and being day by day practised in speaking, he so acquired a sort of eloquence, which proved the more delightful and enticing in that it was under the control of ready tact, and a sort of native grace. Is it not even as I recall, O Lord my God, Thou judge of my conscience? My heart and my memory are laid before Thee, who didst at that time direct me by the inscrutable mystery of Thy Providence, and didst set before my face those vile errors of mine, in order that I might see and loathe them.

CHAP. VII.—*Clearly seeing the fallacies of the Manichæans, he retires from them, being remarkably aided by God.*

12. For when it became plain to me that he was ignorant of those arts in which I had believed him to excel, I began to despair of his clearing up and explaining all the

[1] "This was the old fashion of the East, where the scholars had liberty to ask questions of their masters, and to move doubts as the professors were reading, or so soon as the lecture was done. Thus did our Saviour with the doctors (Luke ii. 46). So it is still in some European Universities."—W. W.

perplexities which harassed me: though ignorant of these, however, he might still have held the truth of piety, had he not been a Manichæan. For their books are full of lengthy fables[1] concerning the heaven and stars, the sun and moon, and I had ceased to think him able to decide in a satisfactory manner what I ardently desired,—whether, on comparing these things with the calculations I had read elsewhere, the explanations contained in the works of Manichæus were preferable, or at any rate equally sound? But when I proposed that these subjects should be deliberated upon and reasoned out, he

[1] We have referred in the note on iii. sec. 10, above, to the way in which the Manichæans parodied Scripture names. In these "fables" this is remarkably evidenced. "To these filthy rags of yours," says Augustine (*Con. Faust.* xx. 6), "you would unite the mystery of the Trinity; for you say that the Father dwells in a secret light, the power of the Son in the sun, and His wisdom in the moon, and the Holy Spirit in the air." The Manichæan doctrine as to the mixture of the divine nature with the substance of evil, and the way in which that nature was released by the "elect," has already been pointed out (see note iii. sec. 18, above). The part of sun and moon, also, in accomplishing this release, is alluded to in his *De Mor. Manich.* "This part of God," he says (c. xxxvi.), "is daily being set free in all parts of the world, and restored to its own domain. But in its passage upwards as vapour from earth to heaven, it enters plants, because their roots are fixed in the earth, and so gives fertility and strength to all herbs and shrubs." These parts of God, arrested in their rise by the vegetable world, were released, as above stated, by the "elect." All that escaped from them in the act of eating, as well as what was set free by evaporation, passed into the sun and moon, as into a kind of purgatorial state—they being purer light than the only recently emancipated good nature. In his letter to Januarius (*Ep.* lv. 6), he tells us that the moon's waxing and waning were said by the Manichæans to be caused by its receiving souls from matter as it were into a ship, and transferring them "into the sun as into another ship." The sun was called Christ, and was worshipped; and accordingly we find Augustine, after alluding to these monstrous doctrines, saying (*Con. Faust.* v. 11): "If your affections were set upon spiritual and intellectual good instead of material forms, you would not pay homage to the material sun as a divine substance and as the light [of wisdom]." Many other interesting quotations might be added, but we must content ourselves with the following. In his *Reply to Faustus* (xx. 6), he says: "You call the sun a ship, so that you are not only astray worlds off, as the saying is, but adrift. Next, while every one sees that the sun is round, which is the form corresponding from its perfection to his position among the heavenly bodies, you maintain that he is triangular [perhaps in allusion to the early symbol of the Trinity]: that is, that his light shines on the earth through a triangular window in heaven. Hence it is that you bend and bow your heads to the sun, while you worship not this visible sun, but some imaginary ship, which you suppose to be shining through a triangular opening."

very modestly did not dare to endure the burden. For he was aware that he had no knowledge of these things, and was not ashamed to confess it. For he was not one of those loquacious persons, many of whom I had been troubled with, who covenanted to teach me these things, and said nothing; but this man possessed a heart, which, though not right towards Thee, yet was not altogether false towards himself. For he was not altogether ignorant of his own ignorance, nor would he without due consideration be inveigled in a controversy, from which he could neither draw back nor extricate himself fairly. And for that I was even more pleased with him, for more beautiful is the modesty of an ingenuous mind than the acquisition of the knowledge I desired,—and such I found him to be in all the more abstruse and subtle questions.

13. My eagerness after the writings of Manichæus having thus received a check, and despairing even more of their other teachers,—seeing that in sundry things which puzzled me, he, so famous amongst them, had thus turned out,—I began to occupy myself with him in the study of that literature which he also much affected, and which I, as Professor of Rhetoric, was then engaged in teaching the young Carthaginian students, and in reading with him either what he expressed a wish to hear, or I deemed suited to his bent of mind. But all my endeavours by which I had concluded to improve in that sect, by acquaintance with that man, came completely to an end: not that I separated myself altogether from them, but, as one who could find nothing better, I determined in the meantime upon contenting myself with what I had in any way lighted upon, unless, by chance, something more desirable should present itself. Thus that Faustus, who had been to so many to their death,—neither willing nor witting it,—now began to loosen the snare in which I had been taken. For Thy hands, O my God, in the hidden design of Thy Providence, did not desert my soul; and out of the blood of my mother's heart, through the tears that she poured out by day and by night, was a sacrifice offered unto Thee for me; and by marvellous ways didst Thou deal with me.[1] It

[1] Joel ii. 26.

was Thou, O my God, who didst it, for the steps of a man are ordered by the Lord, and He shall dispose his way.[1] Or how can we procure salvation but from Thy hand, remaking what it hath made?

CHAP. VIII.—*He sets out for Rome, his mother in vain lamenting it.*

14. Thou dealedst with me, therefore, that I should be persuaded to go to Rome, and teach there rather what I was then teaching at Carthage. And how I was persuaded to do this, I will not fail to confess unto Thee; for in this also the profoundest workings of Thy wisdom, and Thy ever present mercy to usward, must be pondered and avowed. It was not my desire to go to Rome because greater advantages and dignities were guaranteed me by the friends who persuaded me into this,—although even at this period I was influenced by these considerations,—but my principal and almost sole motive was, that I had been informed that the youths studied more quietly there, and were kept under by the control of more rigid discipline, so that they did not capriciously and impudently rush into the school of a master not their own, into whose presence they were forbidden to enter unless with his consent. At Carthage, on the contrary, there was amongst the scholars a shameful and intemperate license. They burst in rudely, and, with almost furious gesticulations, interrupt the system which any one may have instituted for the good of his pupils. Many outrages they perpetrate with astounding phlegm, which would be punishable by law were they not sustained by custom; that custom showing them to be the more worthless, in that they now do, as according to law, what by Thy unchangeable law will never be lawful. And they fancy they do it with impunity, whereas the very blindness whereby they do it is their punishment, and they suffer far greater things than they do. The manners, then, which as a student I would not adopt,[2] I was compelled as a teacher to submit to from others; and so, I was too glad to go where all who knew anything about it assured me that similar things were not done. But Thou, "my refuge

[1] Ps. xxxvii. 23.

[2] See iii. sec. 6, note, above.

and my portion in the land of the living,"[1] didst while at Carthage goad me, so that I might thereby be withdrawn from it, and exchange my worldly habitation for the preservation of my soul; whilst at Rome Thou didst offer me enticements by which to attract me there, by men enchanted with this dying life,—the one doing insane actions, and the other making assurances of vain things; and, in order to correct my footsteps, didst secretly employ their and my perversity. For both they who disturbed my tranquillity were blinded by a shameful madness, and they who allured me elsewhere smacked of the earth. And I, who hated real misery here, sought fictitious happiness there.

15. But the cause of my going thence and going thither, Thou, O God, knewest, yet revealedst it not, either to me or to my mother, who grievously lamented my journey, and went with me as far as the sea. But I deceived her, when she violently restrained me either that she might retain me or accompany me, and I pretended that I had a friend whom I could not quit until he had a favourable wind to set sail. And I lied to my mother—and such a mother!—and got away. For this also Thou hast in mercy pardoned me, saving me, thus replete with abominable pollutions, from the waters of the sea, for the water of Thy grace, whereby, when I was purified, the fountains of my mother's eyes should be dried, from which for me she day by day watered the ground under her face. And yet, refusing to go back without me, it was with difficulty I persuaded her to remain that night in a place quite close to our ship, where there was an oratory[2] in memory of the blessed Cyprian. That night I secretly left, but she was not backward in prayers and weeping. And what was it, O Lord, that she, with such an abundance of tears, was asking of Thee, but that Thou wouldest not permit me to sail? But Thou, mysteriously counselling and hearing the real purpose of her desire, granted not what she then asked in order to make me what she was ever asking. The wind blew and filled our sails, and withdrew the shore from our sight; and she, wild with grief, was there on the morrow,

[1] Ps. cxlii. 5. [2] See vi. sec. 2, note, below.

and filled Thine ears with complaints and groans, which Thou didst disregard; whilst, by the means of my longings, Thou wert hastening me on to the cessation of all longing, and the gross part of her love to me was whipped out by the just lash of sorrow. But, like all mothers,—though even more than others,—she loved to have me with her, and knew not what joy Thou wert preparing for her by my absence. Being ignorant of this, she did weep and mourn, and in her agony was seen the inheritance of Eve,—seeking in sorrow what in sorrow she had brought forth. And yet, after accusing my perfidy and cruelty, she again continued her intercessions for me with Thee, returned to her accustomed place, and I to Rome.

CHAP. IX.—*Being attacked by fever, he is in great danger.*

16. And behold, there was I received by the scourge of bodily sickness, and I was descending into hell burdened with all the sins that I had committed, both against Thee, myself, and others, many and grievous, over and above that bond of original sin whereby we all die in Adam.[1] For none of these things hadst Thou forgiven me in Christ, neither had He "abolished" by His cross "the enmity"[2] which, by my sins, I had incurred with Thee. For how could He, by the crucifixion of a phantasm,[3] which I supposed

[1] 1 Cor. xv. 22. [2] Eph. ii. 15, and Col. i. 20, etc.

[3] The Manichæan belief in regard to the unreal nature of Christ's body may be gathered from Augustine's *Reply to Faustus*: "You ask," argues Faustus (xxvi. i.), "if Jesus was not born, how did He die? . . . In return I ask you, how did Elias not die, though he was a man? Could a mortal encroach upon the limits of immortality, and could not Christ add to His immortality whatever experience of death was required? . . . Accordingly, if it is a good argument that Jesus was a man because He died, it is an equally good argument that Elias was not a man because he did not die. . . . As, from the outset of His taking the likeness of man, He underwent in appearance all the experiences of humanity, it was quite consistent that He should complete the system by appearing to die." So that with him the whole life of Jesus was a "phantasm." His birth, circumcision, crucifixion, baptism, and temptation were (*ibid.* xxxii. 7) the mere result of the interpolation of crafty men, or sprung from the ignorance of the apostles, when as yet they had not reached perfection in knowledge. It is noticeable that Augustine, referring to Eph. ii. 15, substitutes His cross for His flesh, he, as a Manichæan, not believing in the real humanity of the Son of God. See iii. sec. 7, note, above.

Him to be? As true, then, was the death of my soul, as that of His flesh appeared to me to be untrue; and as true the death of His flesh as the life of my soul, which believed it not, was false. The fever increasing, I was now passing away and perishing. For had I then gone hence, whither should I have gone but into the fiery torments meet for my misdeeds, in the truth of Thy ordinance? She was ignorant of this, yet, while absent, prayed for me. But Thou, everywhere present, hearkened to her where she was, and hadst pity upon me where I was, that I should regain my bodily health, although still frenzied in my sacrilegious heart. For all that peril did not make me wish to be baptized, and I was better when, as a lad, I entreated it of my mother's piety, as I have already related and confessed.[1] But I had grown up to my own dishonour, and all the purposes of Thy medicine I madly derided,[2] who wouldst not suffer me, though such a one, to die a double death. Had my mother's heart been smitten with this wound, it never could have been cured. For I cannot sufficiently express the love she had for me, nor how she now travailed for me in the spirit with a far keener anguish than when she bore me in the flesh.

17. I cannot conceive, therefore, how she could have been healed if such a death of mine had transfixed the bowels of her love. Where then would have been her so earnest, frequent, and unintermitted prayers to Thee alone? But couldst Thou, most merciful God, despise the "contrite and humble heart"[3] of that pure and prudent widow, so constant in alms-deeds, so gracious and attentive to Thy saints, not permitting one day to pass without oblation at Thy altar, twice a day, at morning and even-tide, coming to Thy church without intermission—not for vain gossiping, nor old wives' "fables,"[4] but in order that she might listen to Thee in Thy sermons, and Thou to her in her prayers?[5] Couldst Thou—Thou by

[1] See i. sec. 10, above.

[2] See also iv. sec. 8, above, where he derides his friend's baptism.

[3] Ps. li. 19. [4] 1 Tim. v. 10.

[5] Watts gives the following note here:—"Oblations were those offerings of bread, meal, or wine, for making of the Eucharist, or of alms besides for the poor, which they, that live Christians every time they communicated brought to the church.

whose gift she was such—despise and disregard without succouring the tears of such a one, wherewith she entreated Thee not for gold or silver, nor for any changing or fleeting good, but for the salvation of the soul of her son? By no means, Lord. Assuredly Thou wert near, and wert hearing and doing in that method in which Thou hadst predetermined that it should be done. Far be it from Thee that Thou shouldst delude her in those visions and the answers she had from Thee,—some of which I have spoken of,[1] and others not,[2]—which she kept[3] in her faithful breast, and, always

where it was received by the deacons, who presented them to the priest or bishop. Here note: (1) They communicated daily; (2) they had service morning and evening, and two sermons a day many times," etc. An interesting trace of an old use in this matter of oblations is found in the Queen's Coronation Service. After other oblations had been offered, the Queen knelt before the Archbishop and presented to him "oblations" of bread and wine *for* the Holy Communion. See also Palmer's *Origines Liturgicæ*, iv. 8, who demonstrates by reference to patristic writers that the custom was universal in the primitive Church:—"But though all the churches of the East and West agreed in this respect, they differed in appointing the time and place at which the oblations of the people were received." It would appear from the following account of early Christian worship, that in the time of Justin Martyr the oblations were collected after the reception of the Lord's Supper. In his *First Apology* we read (c. lxvii.): "On the day called Sunday [τοῦ ἡλίου λεγομένη ἡμέρα] all who live in cities or in the country gather together to one place, and the memoirs of the apostles or the writings of the prophets are read, as long as time permits them. When the reader has ceased, the president [ὁ προεστὼς] verbally instructs, and exhorts to the imitation of these good things. Then we all rise together and pray [εὐχὰς ποιούμεθα], and, as we before said, when our prayer is ended, bread and wine and water are brought, and the president in like manner offers prayers and thanksgivings according to his ability [Kaye renders (p. 89) εὐχὰς ὁμοίως καὶ εὐχαριστίας, ἴσῃ δύναμις αὐτῷ, ἀναπέμπει, "with his utmost power"], and the people assent, saying Amen; and there is a distribution to each, and a participation of that over which thanks had been given, and to those who are absent a portion is sent by the deacons. And they who are well-to-do, and willing, give what each thinks fit; and what is collected [τὸ συλλεγόμενον] is deposited with the president, who succours the orphans and widows, and those who, through sickness or any other cause, are in want, and those who are in bonds, and the strangers sojourning among us, and, in a word, takes care of all who are in need." The whole passage is given, as portions of it will be found to have a bearing on other parts of the *Confessions*. Bishop Kaye's *Justin Martyr*, c. iv., may be referred to for his view of the controverted points in the passage. See also Bingham's *Antiquities*, ii. 2–9; and notes to vi. sec. 2, and ix. secs. 6 and 27, below.

[1] See above, iii. 11, 12. [2] *Ibid.* iii. 12. [3] Luke ii. 19.

petitioning, pressed upon Thee as Thine autograph. For Thou, "because Thy mercy endureth for ever,"[1] condescendest to those whose debts Thou hast pardoned, to become likewise a debtor by Thy promises.

CHAP. X.—*When he had left the Manichæans, he retained his depraved opinions concerning sin and the origin of the Saviour.*

18. Thou restoredst me then from that illness, and made sound the son of Thy handmaid meanwhile in body, that he might live for Thee, to endow him with a higher and more enduring health. And even then at Rome I joined those deluding and deluded "saints;" not their "hearers" only,—of the number of whom was he in whose house I had fallen ill, and had recovered,—but those also whom they designate "The Elect."[2] For it still seemed to me "that it was not we that sin, but that I know not what other nature sinned in us."[3] And it gratified my pride to be free from blame, and, after I had committed any fault, not to acknowledge that I had done any, —"that Thou mightest heal my soul because it had sinned against Thee;"[4] but I loved to excuse it, and to accuse something else (I wot not what) which was with me, but was not I. But assuredly it was wholly I, and my impiety had divided me against myself; and that sin was all the more incurable in that I *did* not deem myself a sinner. And execrable iniquity it was, O God omnipotent, that I would rather have Thee to be overcome in me to my destruction, than myself of Thee to salvation! Not yet, therefore, hadst Thou set a watch before my mouth, and kept the door of my lips, that my heart might not incline to wicked speeches, to make excuses of sins, with men that work iniquity[5]—and, therefore, was I still united with their "Elect."

19. But now, hopeless of making proficiency in that false doctrine, even those things with which I had decided upon contenting myself, providing that I could find nothing better, I now held more loosely and negligently. For I was half inclined to believe that those philosophers whom they call

[1] Ps. cxviii. 1.
[2] See iv. sec. 1, note, above.
[3] iv. sec. 26, note 2, above.
[4] Ps. xli. 4.
[5] Ps. cxli. 3, 4, *Old Vers.* See also Augustine's *Commentary on the Psalms*, where, using his Septuagint version, he applies this passage to the Manichæans.

"Academics"[1] were more sagacious than the rest, in that they held that we ought to doubt everything, and ruled that man had not the power of comprehending any truth; for so,

[1] "Amongst these philosophers," *i.e.* those who have founded their systems on denial, "some are satisfied with denying certainty, admitting at the same time probability, and these are the New Academics; the others, who are the Pyrrhonists, have denied even this probability, and have maintained that all things are equally certain and uncertain" (*Port. Roy. Log.* iv. 1). There are, according to the usual divisions, three Academies, the old, the middle, and the new; and some subdivide the middle and the new each into two schools, making five schools of thought in all. These begin with Plato, the founder (387 B.C.), and continue to the fifth school, founded by Antiochus (83 B.C.), who, by combining his teachings with that of Aristotle and Zeno, prepared the way for Neo-Platonism and its development of the dogmatic side of Plato's teaching. In the second Academic school, founded by Arcesilas,—of whom Aristo, the Stoic, parodying the line in the *Iliad* (vi. 181), Πρόσθε λέων, ὄπιθεν δὲ δράκων, μέσση δὲ χίμαιρα, said sarcastically he was "Plato in front, Pyrrho behind, and Diodorus in the middle,"—the "sceptical" tendency in Platonism began to develope itself, which, under Carneades, was expanded into the doctrine of the third Academic school. Arcesilas had been a pupil of Polemo when he was head of the old Academy. Zeno also, dissatisfied with the cynical philosophy of Crates, had learnt Platonic doctrine from Polemo, and was, as Cicero tells us (*De Fin.* iv. 16), greatly influenced by his teaching. Zeno, however, soon founded his own school of Stoical philosophy, which was violently opposed by Arcesilas (Cicero, *Acad. Post.* i. 12). Arcesilas, according to Cicero (*ibid.*), taught his pupils that we cannot know anything, not even that we are unable to know. It is exceedingly probable, however, that he taught esoterically the doctrines of Plato to those of his pupils he thought able to receive them, keeping them back from the multitude because of the prevalence of the new doctrine. This appears to have been Augustine's view when he had arrived at a fuller knowledge of their doctrines than that he possessed at the time referred to in his *Confessions*. In his treatises against the Academicians (iii. 17) he maintains the wisdom of Arcesilas in this matter. He says: "As the multitude are prone to rush into false opinions, and, from being accustomed to bodies, readily, but to their hurt, believe everything to be corporeal, this most acute and learned man determined rather to unteach those who had suffered from bad teaching, than to teach those whom he did not think teachable." Again, in the first of his *Letters*, alluding to these treatises, he says: "It seems to me to be suitable enough to the times in which they flourished, that whatever issued pure from the fountain-head of Platonic philosophy should be rather conducted into dark and thorny thickets for the refreshment of a very few *men*, than left to flow in open meadow-land, where it would be impossible to keep it clear and pure from the inroads of the vulgar herd. I use the word 'herd' advisedly, for what is more brutish than the opinion that the soul is *material*?" and more to the same purpose. In his *De Civ. Dei*, xix. 18, he contrasts the uncertainty ascribed to the doctrines of these teachers with the certainty of the Christian faith. See Burton's *Bampton Lectures*, note 33, and Archer Butler's *Ancient Philosophy*, ii. 313, 348, etc. See also vii. sec. 13, note, below.

not yet realizing their meaning, I also was fully persuaded that they thought just as they are commonly held to do. And I did not fail frankly to restrain in my host that assurance which I observed him to have in those fictions of which the works of Manichæus are full. Notwithstanding, I was on terms of more intimate friendship with them than with others who were not of this heresy. Nor did I defend it with my former ardour; still my familiarity with that sect (many of them being concealed in Rome) made me slower[1] to seek any other way,—particularly since I was hopeless of finding the truth, from which in Thy Church, O Lord of heaven and earth, Creator of all things visible and invisible, they had turned me aside,—and it seemed to me most unbecoming to believe Thee to have the form of human flesh, and to be bounded by the bodily lineaments of our members. And because, when I desired to meditate on my God, I knew not what to think of but a mass of bodies[2] (for what was not such did not seem to me to be), this was the greatest and almost sole cause of my inevitable error.

20. For hence I also believed evil to be a similar sort of substance, and to be possessed of its own foul and misshapen mass—whether dense, which they denominated earth, or thin and subtle, as is the body of the air, which they fancy some malignant spirit crawling through that earth. And because a piety—such as it was—compelled me to believe that the good God never created any evil nature, I conceived two masses, the one opposed to the other, both infinite, but the evil the more contracted, the good the more expansive. And from this mischievous commencement the other profanities followed on me. For when my mind tried to revert to the Catholic faith, I was cast back, since what I had held to be the Catholic faith was not so. And it appeared to me more devout to look upon Thee, my God,—to whom I make confession of Thy mercies,—as infinite, at least, on other sides, although on that side where the mass of evil was in opposition to Thee[3] I was compelled to confess Thee finite, than if on every side I should

[1] See iii. sec. 21, above.
[2] See iv. secs. 3, 12, and 31, above.
[3] See iv. 26, note 2, above.

67791

conceive Thee to be confined by the form of a human body. And better did it seem to me to believe that no evil had been created by Thee—which to me in my ignorance appeared not only some substance, but a bodily one, because I had no conception of the mind excepting as a subtle body, and that diffused in local spaces—than to believe that anything could emanate from Thee of such a kind as I considered the nature of evil to be. And our very Saviour Himself, also, Thine only-begotten,[1] I believed to have been reached forth, as it were, for our salvation out of the lump of Thy most effulgent mass, so as to believe nothing of Him but what I was able to imagine in my vanity. Such a nature, then, I thought could not be born of the Virgin Mary without being mingled with the flesh; and how that which I had thus figured to myself could be mingled without being contaminated, I saw not. I was afraid, therefore, to believe Him to be born in the flesh, lest I should be compelled to believe Him contaminated by the flesh.[2] Now will Thy spiritual ones blandly and lovingly smile at me if they shall read these my confessions; yet such was I.

CHAP. XI.—*Helpidius disputed well against the Manichæans as to the authenticity of the New Testament.*

21. Furthermore, whatever they had censured[3] in Thy Scriptures I thought impossible to be defended; and yet sometimes, indeed, I desired to confer on these several points with some one well learned in those books, and to try what he thought of them. For at this time the words of one Helpidius,

[1] See above, sec. 12, note.

[2] The dualistic belief of the Manichæan ever led him to contend that Christ only appeared in a resemblance of flesh, and did not touch its substance so as to be defiled. Hence Faustus characteristically speaks of the Incarnation (*Con. Faust.* xxxii. 7) as "the shameful birth of Jesus from a woman," and when pressed (*ibid.* xi. 1) with such passages as, Christ was "born of the seed of David according to the flesh" (Rom. i. 3), he would fall back upon what in these days we are familiar with as that "higher criticism," which rejects such parts of Scripture as it is inconvenient to receive. Paul, he said, then only "spoke as a child" (1 Cor. xiii. 11), but when he became a man in doctrine, he put away childish things, and then declared, "Though we have known Christ after the flesh, yet now henceforth know we Him no more." See above, sec. 16, note 3.

[3] See iii. sec. 14, above.

speaking and disputing face to face against the said Manichæans, had begun to move me even at Carthage, in that he brought forth things from the Scriptures not easily withstood, to which their answer appeared to me feeble. And this answer they did not give forth publicly, but only to us in private,—when they said that the writings of the New Testament had been tampered with by I know not whom, who were desirous of ingrafting the Jewish law upon the Christian faith;[1] but they themselves did not bring forward any uncorrupted copies.[2] But I, thinking of corporeal things, very much ensnared and in a measure stifled, was oppressed by those masses;[3] panting under which for the breath of Thy Truth, I was not able to breathe it pure and undefiled.

CHAP. XII.—*Professing Rhetoric at Rome, he discovers the fraud of his scholars.*

22. Then began I assiduously to practise that for which I came to Rome—the teaching of rhetoric; and first to bring together at my home some to whom, and through whom, I had begun to be known; when, behold, I learnt that other offences were committed in Rome which I had not to bear in Africa. For those subvertings by abandoned young men were not practised here, as I had been informed; yet, suddenly, said they, to evade paying their master's fees, many of the youths conspire together, and remove themselves to another,—breakers of faith, who, for the love of money, set a small value on justice. These also my heart "hated," though not with a "perfect hatred;"[4] for, perhaps, I hated them more in that I

[1] On this matter reference may be made to *Con. Faust.* xviii. 1, 3; xix. 6; xxxiii. 1, 3.

[2] They might well not like to give the answer in public, for, as Augustine remarks (*De Mor. Eccles. Cath.* sec. 14), every one could see "that this is all that is left for men to say when it is proved that they are wrong." The astonishment that he experienced now, that they did "not bring forward any uncorrupted copies," had fast hold of him, and after his conversion he confronted them on this very ground. "You ought to bring forward," he says (*ibid.* sec. 61), "another manuscript with the same contents, but incorrupt and more correct, with only the passage wanting which you charge with being spurious. . . . You say you will not, lest you be suspected of corrupting it. This is your usual reply, and a true one." See also *De Mor. Manich.* sec. 55; and *Con. Faust.* xi. 2, xiii. 5, xviii. 7, xxii. 15, xxxii. 16.

[3] See above, sec. 19, *Fin.*

[4] Ps. cxxxix. 22.

was to suffer by them, than for the illicit acts they committed. Such of a truth are base persons, and they are unfaithful to Thee, loving those transitory mockeries of temporal things, and vile gain, which begrimes the hand that lays hold on it; and embracing the fleeting world, and scorning Thee, who abidest, and invitest to return, and pardonest the prostituted human soul when it returneth to Thee. And now I hate such crooked and perverse men, although I love them if they are to be corrected so as to prefer the learning they obtain to money, and to learning Thee, O God, the truth and fulness of certain good and most chaste peace. But then was the wish stronger in me for my own sake not to suffer them evil, than was the wish that they should become good for Thine.

CHAP. XIII.—*He is sent to Milan, that he, about to teach Rhetoric, may be known by Ambrose.*

23. When, therefore, they of Milan had sent to Rome to the prefect of the city, to provide them with a teacher of rhetoric for their city, and to despatch him at the public expense, I made interest through those identical persons, drunk with Manichæan vanities, to be freed from whom I was going away,—neither of us, however, being aware of it,—that Symmachus, the then prefect, having proved me by proposing a subject, would send me. And to Milan I came, unto Ambrose the bishop, known to the whole world as among the best of men, Thy devout servant; whose eloquent discourse did at that time strenuously dispense unto Thy people the flour of Thy wheat, the "gladness" of Thy "oil," and the sober intoxication of Thy "wine."[1] To him was I unknowingly led by Thee, that by him I might knowingly be led to Thee. That man of God received me like a father, and looked with a benevolent and episcopal kindliness on my change of abode. And I began to love him, not at first, indeed, as a teacher of the truth,—which I entirely despaired of in Thy Church,—but as a man friendly to myself. And I studiously hearkened to him preaching to the people, not with the intent I should, but, as it were, trying to discover whether his eloquence came up to the fame thereof, or [illegible] fuller or

[1] Ps. iv. 7, and civ. 15.

lower than was asserted; and I hung on his words intently, but of the matter I was but as a careless and contemptuous spectator; and I was delighted with the pleasantness of his speech, more erudite, yet less cheerful and soothing in manner, than that of Faustus. Of the matter, however, there could be no comparison; for the latter was straying amid Manichæan deceptions, whilst the former was teaching salvation most soundly. But "salvation is far from the wicked,"[1] such as I then stood before him; and yet I was drawing nearer gradually and unconsciously.

CHAP. XIV.—*Having heard the Bishop, he perceives the force of the Catholic faith, yet doubts, after the manner of the modern Academics.*

24. For although I took no trouble to learn what he spake, but only to hear how he spake (for that empty care alone remained to me, despairing of a way accessible for man to Thee), yet, together with the words which I prized, there came into my mind also the things about which I was careless; for I could not separate them. And whilst I opened my heart to admit "how skilfully he spake," there also entered with it, but gradually, "and how truly he spake!" For first, these things also had begun to appear to me to be defensible; and the Catholic faith, for which I had fancied nothing could be said against the attacks of the Manichæans, I now conceived might be maintained without presumption; especially after I had heard one or two parts of the Old Testament explained, and often allegorically—which when I accepted literally, I was "killed" spiritually.[2] Many places, then, of those books having been expounded to me, I now blamed my despair in having believed that no reply could be made to those who hated and derided[3] the Law and the Prophets. Yet I did not then see that for that reason the Catholic way was to be held

[1] Ps. cxix. 155.

[2] 1 Cor. xiii. 12, and 2 Cor. iii. 6. See vi. sec. 6, note, below.

[3] He frequently alludes to this scoffing spirit, so characteristic of these heretics. As an example, he says (*in Ps.* cxlvi. 13): "There has sprung up a certain accursed sect of the Manichæans which derides the Scriptures it takes and reads. It wishes to censure what it does not understand, and by disturbing and censuring what it understands not has deceived many." See also sec. 16, and iv. sec. 8, above.

because it had its learned advocates, who could at length, and not irrationally, answer objections; nor that what I held ought therefore to be condemned because both sides were equally defensible. For that way did not appear to me to be vanquished; nor yet did it seem to me to be victorious.

25. Hereupon did I earnestly bend my mind to see if in any way I could possibly prove the Manichæans guilty of falsehood. Could I have realized a spiritual substance, all their strongholds would have been beaten down, and cast utterly out of my mind; but I could not. But yet, concerning the body of this world, and the whole of nature, which the senses of the flesh can attain unto, I, now more and more considering and comparing things, judged that the greater part of the philosophers held much the more probable opinions. So, then, after the manner of the Academics (as they are supposed),[1] doubting of everything and fluctuating between all, I decided that the Manichæans were to be abandoned; judging that, even while in that period of doubt, I could not remain in a sect to which I preferred some of the philosophers; to which philosophers, however, because they were without the saving name of Christ, I utterly refused to commit the cure of my fainting soul. I resolved, therefore, to be a catechumen[2] in the Catholic Church, which my parents had commended to me, until something settled should manifest itself to me whither I might steer my course.[3]

[1] See above, sec. 19, and note. [2] See vi. sec. 2, note, below.

[3] In his *Benefit of Believing*, Augustine adverts to the above experiences with a view to the conviction of his friend Honoratus, who was then a Manichæan.

BOOK SIXTH.

ATTAINING HIS THIRTIETH YEAR, HE, UNDER THE ADMONITION OF THE DISCOURSES OF AMBROSE, DISCOVERED MORE AND MORE THE TRUTH OF THE CATHOLIC DOCTRINE, AND DELIBERATES AS TO THE BETTER REGULATION OF HIS LIFE.

CHAP. I.—*His mother having followed him to Milan, declares that she will not die before her son shall have embraced the Catholic faith.*

1. O THOU, my hope from my youth,[1] where wert Thou to me, and whither hadst Thou gone? For in truth, hadst Thou not created me, and made a difference between me and the beasts of the field and fowls of the air? Thou hadst made me wiser than they, yet did I wander about in dark and slippery places, and sought Thee abroad out of myself, and found not the God of my heart;[2] and had entered the depths of the sea, and distrusted and despaired finding out the truth. By this time my mother, made strong by her piety, had come to me, following me over sea and land, in all perils feeling secure in Thee. For in the dangers of the sea she comforted the very sailors (to whom the inexperienced passengers, when alarmed, were wont rather to go for comfort), assuring them of a safe arrival, because she had been so assured by Thee in a vision. She found me in grievous danger, through despair of ever finding truth. But when I had disclosed to her that I was now no longer a Manichæan, though not yet a Catholic Christian, she did not leap for joy as at what was unexpected; although she was now reassured as to that part of my misery for which she had mourned me as one dead, but who would be raised to Thee, carrying me forth upon the bier of her thoughts, that Thou mightest say unto the widow's son, "Young man, I say unto Thee, arise," and he should revive, and begin to speak, and Thou

[1] Ps. lxxi. 5. [2] See iv. sec. 18, note, above.

shouldest deliver him to his mother.[1] Her heart, then, was not agitated with any violent exultation, when she had heard that to be already in so great a part accomplished which she daily, with tears, entreated of Thee might be done,—that though I had not yet grasped the truth, I was rescued from falsehood. Yea, rather, for that she was fully confident that Thou, who hadst promised the whole, wouldst give the rest, most calmly, and with a breast full of confidence, she replied to me, "She believed in Christ, that before she departed this life, she would see me a Catholic believer."[2] And thus much said she to me; but to Thee, O Fountain of mercies, poured she out more frequent prayers and tears, that Thou wouldest hasten Thy aid, and enlighten my darkness; and she hurried

[1] Luke vii. 12–15.

[2] *Fidelem Catholicum*—those who are baptized being usually designated *Fideles*. The following extract from Kaye's *Tertullian* (pp. 230, 231) is worthy of note:—"As the converts from heathenism, to use Tertullian's expression, were not born, but became Christians [*fiunt, non nascuntur, Christiani*], they went through a course of instruction in the principles and doctrines of the gospel, and were subjected to a strict probation before they were admitted to the rite of baptism. In this stage of their progress they were called catechumens, of whom, according to Suicer, there were two classes,—one called 'Audientes,' who had only entered upon their course, and begun to hear the word of God; the other, συνιστώμενοι, or 'Competentes,' who had made such advances in Christian knowledge and practice as to be qualified to appear at the font. Tertullian, however, appears either not to have known or to have neglected this distinction, since he applies the names of 'Audientes' and 'Auditores' indifferently to all who had not partaken of the rite of baptism. When the catechumens had given full proof of the ripeness of their knowledge, and of the stedfastness of their faith, they were baptized, admitted to the table of the Lord, and styled *Fideles*. The importance which Tertullian attached to this previous probation of the candidates for baptism, appears from the fact that he founds upon the neglect of it one of his charges against the heretics. 'Among them,' he says, 'no distinction is made between the catechumen and the faithful or confirmed Christian; the catechumen is pronounced fit for baptism before he is instructed; all come in indiscriminately; all hear, all pray together.'" There were certain peculiar forms used in the admission of catechumens; as, for example, anointing with oil, imposition of hands, and the consecration and giving of salt; and when, from the progress of Christianity, Tertullian's above description as to converts from heathenism had ceased to be correct, these forms were continued in many churches as part of the baptismal service, whether of infants or adults. See Palmer's *Origines Liturgicæ*, v. 1, and also i. sec. 17, above, where Augustine says, "I was signed with the sign of the cross, and was seasoned with His salt, even from the womb of my mother."

all the more assiduously to the church, and hung upon the words of Ambrose, praying for the fountain of water that springeth up into everlasting life.[1] For she loved that man as an angel of God, because she knew that it was by him that I had been brought, for the present, to that perplexing state of agitation[2] I was now in, through which she was fully persuaded that I should pass from sickness unto health, after an access, as it were, of a sharper fit, which doctors term the "crisis."

CHAP. II.—*She, on the prohibition of Ambrose, abstains from honouring the memory of the martyrs.*

2. When, therefore, my mother had at one time—as was her custom in Africa—brought to the oratories built in the memory of the saints[3] certain cakes, and bread, and wine, and

[1] John iv. 14.

[2] "Sermons," says Goodwin in his *Evangelical Communicant*, "are, for the most part, as showers of rain that water for the instant; such as may tickle the ear and warm the affections, and put the soul into a posture of obedience. Hence it is that men are ofttimes sermon-sick, as some are sea-sick; very ill, much troubled for the present, but by and by all is well again as they were."

[3] That is, as is explained further on in the section, the *Martyrs*. Tertullian gives us many indications of the veneration in which the martyrs were held towards the close of the second century. The anniversary of the martyr's death was called his *natalitium*, or natal day, as his martyrdom ushered him into eternal life, and *oblationes pro defunctis* were then offered. (*De Exhor. Cast.* c. 11; *De Coro.* c. 3.) Many extravagant things were said about the glory of martyrdom, with the view, doubtless, of preventing apostasy in time of persecution. It was described (*De Bap.* c. 16; and *De Pat.* c. 13) as a second baptism, and said to secure for a man immediate entrance into heaven, and complete enjoyment of its happiness. These views developed in Augustine's time into all the wildness of Donatism. Augustine gives us an insight into the customs prevailing in his day, and their significance, which greatly illustrates the present section. In his *De Civ. Dei*, viii. 27, we read: "But, nevertheless, we do not build temples, and ordain priests, rites, and sacrifices for these same martyrs; for they are not our gods, but their God is our God. Certainly we honour their reliquaries, as the memorials of holy men of God, who strove for the truth even to the death of their bodies, that the true religion might be made known, and false and fictitious religions exposed. . . . But who ever heard a priest of the faithful, standing at an altar built for the honour and worship of God over the holy body of some martyr, say in the prayers, I offer to thee a sacrifice, O Peter, or O Paul, or O Cyprian? For it is to God that sacrifices are offered at their tombs,—the God who made them both men and martyrs, and associated them with the angels in celestial honour; and the reason why we pay such honours to their memory is, that by so doing we may both give thanks to the true God for their victories, and, by recalling them afresh to remembrance, may stir our

was forbidden by the door-keeper, so soon as she learnt that it was the bishop who had forbidden it, she so piously and obediently acceded to it, that I myself marvelled how readily she could bring herself to accuse her own custom, rather than question his prohibition. For wine-bibbing did not take possession of her spirit, nor did the love of wine stimulate her to hatred of the truth, as it doth too many, both male and female, who nauseate at a song of sobriety, as men well drunk at a draught of water. But she, when she had brought her basket with the festive meats, of which she would taste herself first and give the rest away, would never allow herself more than one little cup of wine, diluted according to her own temperate palate, which, out of courtesy, she would taste. And if there were many oratories of departed saints that ought to be honoured in the same way, she still carried round with her the selfsame cup, to be used everywhere; and this, which was not only very much watered, but was also very tepid with carrying about, she would distribute by small sips to those around; for she sought their devotion, not pleasure. As soon, therefore, as she found this custom to be forbidden by that famous preacher and most pious prelate, even to those who would use it with moderation, lest thereby an occasion of excess[1] might be given to such as were drunken, and because

selves up to imitate them by seeking to obtain like crowns and palms, calling to our help that same God on whom they called. Therefore, whatever honours the religious may pay in the places of the martyrs, they are but honours rendered to their memory [*ornamenta memoriarum*], not sacred rites or sacrifices offered to dead men as to gods. And even such as bring thither food—which, indeed, is not done by the better Christians, and in most places of the world is not done at all—do so in order that it may be sanctified to them through the merits of the martyrs, in the name of the Lord of the martyrs, first presenting the food and offering prayer, and thereafter taking it away to be eaten, or to be in part bestowed upon the needy. But he who knows the one sacrifice of Christians, which is the sacrifice offered in those places, also knows that these are not sacrifices offered to the martyrs." He speaks to the same effect in Book xxii. sec. 10; and in his *Reply to Faustus* (xx. 21), who had charged the Christians with imitating the Pagans, "and appeasing the 'shades' of the departed with wine and food." See v. sec. 17, note.

[1] Following the example of Ambrose, Augustine used all his influence and eloquence to correct such shocking abuses in the churches. In his letter to Alypius, Bishop of Thagaste (when as yet only a presbyter assisting the venerable Valerius), he gives an account of his efforts to overcome them in the church

these, so to say, festivals in honour of the dead were very like unto the superstition of the Gentiles, she most willingly abstained from it. And in lieu of a basket filled with fruits of the earth, she had learned to bring to the oratories of the martyrs a heart full of more purified petitions, and to give all that she could to the poor;[1] that so the communion of the Lord's body might be rightly celebrated there, where, after the example of His passion, the martyrs had been sacrificed and crowned. But yet it seems to me, O Lord my God, and thus my heart thinks of it in thy sight, that my mother perhaps would not so easily have given way to the relinquishment of this custom had it been forbidden by another whom she loved not as Ambrose,[2] whom, out of regard for my salvation, she loved most dearly; and he loved her truly, on account of her most religious conversation, whereby, in good works so "fervent in spirit,"[3] she frequented the church; so that he

of Hippo. The following passage is instructive (*Ep.* xxix. 9):—"I explained to them the circumstances out of which this custom seems to have necessarily risen in the Church, namely, that when, in the peace which came after such numerous and violent persecutions, crowds of heathen who wished to assume the Christian religion were kept back, because, having been accustomed to celebrate the feasts connected with their worship of idols in revelling and drunkenness, they could not easily refrain from pleasures so hurtful and so habitual, it had seemed good to our ancestors, making for the time a concession to this infirmity, to permit them to celebrate, instead of the festivals which they renounced, other feasts in honour of the holy martyrs, which were observed, not as before with a profane design, but with similar self-indulgence."

[1] See v. sec. 17, note 5, above.

[2] On another occasion, when Monica's mind was exercised as to non-essentials, Ambrose gave her advice which has perhaps given origin to the proverb, "When at Rome, do as Rome does." It will be found in the letter to Casulanus (*Ep.* xxxvi. 32), and is as follows:—"When my mother was with me in that city, I, as being only a catechumen, felt no concern about these questions; but it was to her a question causing anxiety, whether she ought, after the custom of our own town, to fast on the Saturday, or, after the custom of the church of Milan, not to fast. To deliver her from perplexity, I put the question to the man of God whom I have first named. He answered, 'What else can I recommend to others than what I do myself?' When I thought that by this he intended simply to prescribe to us that we should take food on Saturdays,—for I knew this to be his own practice,—he, following me, added these words: 'When I am here I do not fast on Saturday, but when I am at Rome I do; whatever church you may come to, conform to its custom, if you would avoid either receiving or giving offence.'" We find the same incident referred to in *Ep.* liv. 3.

[3] Rom. xii. 11.

would often, when he saw me, burst forth into her praises, congratulating me that I had such a mother—little knowing what a son she had in me, who was in doubt as to all these things, and did not imagine the way of life could be found out.

CHAP. III.—*As Ambrose was occupied with business and study, Augustine could seldom consult him concerning the Holy Scriptures.*

3. Nor did I now groan in my prayers that Thou wouldest help me; but my mind was wholly intent on knowledge, and eager to dispute. And Ambrose himself I esteemed a happy man, as the world counted happiness, in that such great personages held him in honour; only his celibacy appeared to me a painful thing. But what hope he cherished, what struggles he had against the temptations that beset his very excellences, what solace in adversities, and what savoury joys Thy bread possessed for the hidden mouth of his heart when ruminating[1] on it, I could neither conjecture, nor had I experienced. Nor did he know my embarrassments, nor the pit of my danger. For I could not request of him what I wished as I wished, in that I was debarred from hearing and speaking to him by crowds of busy people, whose infirmities he devoted himself to. With whom when he was not engaged (which was but a little time), he either was refreshing his body with necessary sustenance, or his mind with reading. But while reading, his eyes glanced over the pages, and his heart

[1] In his *Reply to Faustus* (vi. 7), he, conformably with this idea, explains the division into clean and unclean beasts under the Levitical law symbolically. "No doubt," he says, "the animal is pronounced unclean by the law because it does not chew the cud, which is not a fault, but its nature. But the men of whom this animal is a symbol are unclean, not by nature, but from their own fault; because, though they gladly hear the words of wisdom, they never reflect on them afterwards. For to recall, in quiet repose, some useful instruction from the stomach of memory to the mouth of reflection, is a kind of spiritual rumination. The animals above mentioned are a symbol of those people who do not do this. And the prohibition of the flesh of these animals is a warning against this fault. Another passage of Scripture (Prov. xxi. 20) speaks of the precious treasure of wisdom, and describes ruminating as clean, and not ruminating as unclean: 'A precious treasure resteth in the mouth of a wise man, but a foolish man swallows it up. Symbols of this kind, either in words or in things, give useful and pleasant exercise to intelligent minds in the way of inquiry and comparison."

searched out the sense, but his voice and tongue were silent. Ofttimes, when we had come (for no one was forbidden to enter, nor was it his custom that the arrival of those who came should be announced to him), we saw him thus reading to himself, and never otherwise; and, having long sat in silence (for who durst interrupt one so intent?), we were fain to depart, inferring that in the little time he secured for the recruiting of his mind, free from the clamour of other men's business, he was unwilling to be taken off. And perchance he was fearful lest, if the author he studied should express aught vaguely, some doubtful and attentive hearer should ask him to expound it, or to discuss some of the more abstruse questions, as that, his time being thus occupied, he could not turn over as many volumes as he wished; although the preservation of his voice, which was very easily weakened, might be the truer reason for his reading to himself. But whatever was his motive in so doing, doubtless in such a man was a good one.

4. But verily no opportunity could I find of ascertaining what I desired from that Thy so holy oracle, his breast, unless the thing might be entered into briefly. But those surgings in me required to find him at full leisure, that I might pour them out to him, but never were they able to find him so; and I heard him, indeed, every Lord's day, "rightly dividing the word of truth"[1] among the people; and I was all the more convinced that all those knots of crafty calumnies, which those deceivers of ours had knit against the divine books, could be unravelled. But so soon as I understood, withal, that man made "after the image of Him that created him"[2] was not so understood by Thy spiritual sons (whom of the Catholic mother Thou hadst begotten again through grace), as though they believed and imagined Thee to be bounded by

[1] 2 Tim. ii. 15.

[2] Col. iii. 10, and Gen. i. 26, 27. And because we are created in the image of God, Augustine argues (*Serm.* lxxxviii. 5), we have the ability to see [illegible] know Him, just as, having eyes to see, we can look upon the sun. And here too (*Ep.* xcii. 3), "We shall see Him according to the measure [illegible] we shall be like Him; because now the measure in which we do not [illegible] to the measure of our unlikeness to Him."

CON.

human form,—although what was the nature of a spiritual substance[1] I had not the faintest or dimmest suspicion,—yet rejoicing, I blushed that for so many years I had barked, not against the Catholic faith, but against the fables of carnal imaginations. For I had been both impious and rash in this, that what I ought inquiring to have learnt, I had pronounced on condemning. For Thou, O most high and most near, most secret, yet most present, who hast not limbs some larger some smaller, but art wholly everywhere, and nowhere in space, nor art Thou of such corporeal form, yet hast Thou created man after Thine own image, and, behold, from head to foot is he confined by space.

CHAP. IV.—*He recognises the falsity of his own opinions, and commits to memory the saying of Ambrose.*

5. As, then, I knew not how this image of Thine should subsist, I should have knocked and propounded the doubt how it was to be believed, and not have insultingly opposed it, as if it were believed. Anxiety, therefore, as to what to retain as certain, did all the more sharply gnaw into my soul, the more shame I felt that, having been so long deluded and deceived by the promise of certainties, I had, with puerile error and petulance, prated of so many uncertainties as if they were certainties. For that they were falsehoods became apparent to me afterwards. However, I was certain that they were uncertain, and that I had formerly held them as certain when with a blind contentiousness I accused Thy Catholic Church, which though I had not yet discovered to teach truly, yet not to teach that of which I had so vehemently accused her. In this manner was I confounded and converted, and I rejoiced, O my God, that the one Church, the body of Thine only Son (wherein the name of Christ had been set upon me when an infant), did not appreciate these infantile trifles, nor maintained, in her sound doctrine, any tenet that would confine Thee, the Creator of all, in space—though ever so great and wide, yet bounded on all sides by the restraints of a human [illegible].

[illegible] also that the old Scriptures of the law and

[1] See iii. sec. 12, note, above.

the prophets were laid before me, to be perused, not now with that eye to which they seemed most absurd before, when I censured Thy holy ones for so thinking, whereas in truth they thought not so; and with delight I heard Ambrose, in his sermons to the people, oftentimes most diligently recommend this text as a rule,—"The letter killeth, but the Spirit giveth life;"[1] whilst, drawing aside the mystic veil, he spiritually laid

[1] 2 Cor. iii. 6. The spiritual or allegorical meaning here referred to is one that Augustine constantly sought, as did many of the early Fathers, both Greek and Latin. He only employs this method of interpretation, however, in a qualified way—never going to the lengths of Origen or Clement of Alexandria. He does not depreciate the letter of Scripture, though, as we have shown above (iii. sec. 14, note), he went as far as he well could in interpreting the history spiritually. He does not seem, however, quite consistent in his statements as to the relative prominence to be given to the literal and spiritual meanings, as may be seen by a comparison of the latter portions of secs. 1 and 3 of book xvii. of the *City of God*. His general idea may be gathered from the following passage in the 21st sec. of book xiii.:—"Some allegorize all that concerns paradise itself, where the first men, the parents of the human race, are, according to the truth of Holy Scripture, recorded to have been; and they understand all its trees and fruit-bearing plants as virtues and habits of life, as if they had no existence in the external world, but were only so spoken of or related for the sake of spiritual meanings. As if there could not be a real terrestrial paradise! As if there never existed these two women, Sarah and Hagar, nor the two sons who were born to [illegible] the one of the bond-woman, the other of the free, because the apostle [illegible] covenants were prefigured!; or as if water never flowed [illegible] it, because therein Christ can be seen in a [illegible] rock was Christ' (1 Cor. x. 4). [illegible] suitably put up

open that which, accepted according to the "letter," seemed to teach perverse doctrines—teaching herein nothing that offended me, though he taught such things as I knew not as yet whether they were true. For all this time I restrained my heart from assenting to anything, fearing to fall headlong; but by hanging in suspense I was the worse killed. For my desire was to be as well assured of those things that I saw not, as I was that seven and three are ten. For I was not so insane as to believe that this could not be comprehended; but I desired to have other things as clear as this, whether corporeal things, which were not present to my senses, or spiritual, whereof I knew not how to conceive except corporeally. And by believing I might have been cured, that so the sight of my soul being cleared,[1] it might in some way be directed towards Thy truth, which abideth always, and faileth in naught. But as it happens that he who has tried a bad physician fears to trust

life," as a perusal of the context will show, has nothing whatever to do with either "literal" or "spiritual" meanings. Augustine himself interprets it in one place (*De Spir. et Lit.* cc. 4, 5) as meaning the killing letter of the law, as compared with the quickening power of the gospel. "An opinion," to conclude with the thoughtful words of Alfred Morris on this chapter (*Words for the Heart and Life*, p. 202), "once common must therefore be rejected. Some still talk of 'letter' and [illegible] in a way which has no sanction here. The 'letter' with[illegible] ing of the text, the 'spirit' is its symbolic mean[illegible] an evident superiority to the [illegible] ses and hidden doc[illegible]

himself with a good one, so was it with the health of my soul, which could not be healed but by believing, and, lest it should believe falsehoods, refused to be cured—resisting Thy hands, who hast prepared for us the medicaments of faith, and hast applied them to the maladies of the whole world, and hast bestowed upon them so great authority.

CHAP. V.—*Faith is the basis of human life; man cannot discover that truth which Holy Scripture has disclosed.*

7. From this, however, being led to prefer the Catholic doctrine, I felt that it was with more moderation and honesty that it commanded things to be believed that were not demonstrated (whether it was that they could be demonstrated, but not to any one, or could not be demonstrated at all), than was the method of the Manichæans, where our credulity was mocked by audacious promise of knowledge, and then so many most fabulous and absurd things were forced upon belief because they were not capable of demonstration.[1] After that, O Lord, Thou, by little and little, with most gentle and most merciful hand, drawing and calming my heart, didst persuade me,—taking into consideration what a multiplicity of things which I had never seen, nor was present when they were enacted, like so many of the things in secular history, and so many accounts of places and cities which I had not seen; so many of friends, so many of physicians, so many now of these men, now of those, which unless we should believe, we should do nothing at all in this life; lastly, with how un-

[1] He similarly exalts the claims of the Christian Church over Manichæanism in his *Reply to Faustus* (xxxii. 19): "If you submit to receive a load of endless fictions at the bidding of an obscure and irrational authority, so that you believe all those things because they are written in the books which your misguided judgment pronounces trustworthy, though there is no evidence of their truth, why not rather submit to the evidence of the gospel, which is so well-founded, so confirmed, so generally acknowledged and admired, and which has an unbroken series of testimonies from the apostles down to our own day, that so you may have an intelligent belief, and may come to know that all your objections are the fruit of folly and perversity?" And again, in his *Reply to Manichæus' Fundamental Epistle* (sec. 18), alluding to the credulity required in those who accept Manichæan teaching on the mere authority of the teacher: "Whoever thoughtlessly yields this becomes a Manichæan, not by knowing undoubted truth, but by believing doubtful statements. Such were we when in our inexperienced youth we were deceived."

alterable an assurance I believed of what parents I was born, which it would have been impossible for me to know otherwise than by hearsay,—taking into consideration all this, Thou persuadedst me that not they who believed *Thy* books (which, with so great authority, Thou hast established among nearly all nations), but those who believed *them* not were to be blamed;[1] and that those men were not to be listened unto who should say to me, "How dost thou know that those Scriptures were imparted unto mankind by the Spirit of the one true and most true God?" For it was this same thing that was most of all to be believed, since no wranglings of blasphemous questions, whereof I had read so many amongst the self-contradicting philosophers, could once wring the belief from me that Thou art,—whatsoever Thou wert, though what I knew not,—or that the government of human affairs belongs to Thee.

8. Thus much I believed, at one time more strongly than another, yet did I ever believe both that Thou wert, and hadst a care of us, although I was ignorant both what was to be thought of Thy substance, and what way led, or led back to Thee. Seeing, then, that we were too weak by unaided reason to find out the truth, and for this cause needed the authority of the holy writings, I had now begun to believe that Thou wouldest by no means have given such excellency of authority to those Scriptures throughout all lands, had it not been Thy will thereby to be believed in, and thereby

[1] He has a like train of thought in another place (*De Fide Rer. quæ non Vid.* sec. 4): "If, then (harmony being destroyed), human society itself would not stand if we believe not that we see not, how much more should we have faith in divine things, though we see them not; which if we have it not, we do not violate the friendship of a few men, but the profoundest religion—so as to have as its consequence the profoundest misery." Again, referring to belief in Scripture, he argues (*Con. Faust.* xxxiii. 6) that, if we doubt its evidence, we may equally doubt that of any book, and asks, "How do we know the authorship of the works of Plato, Aristotle, Cicero, Varro, and other similar writers, but by the unbroken chain of evidence?" And once more he contends (*De Mor. Cath. Eccles.* xxix. 60) that, "The utter overthrow of all literature will follow, and there will be an end to all books handed down from the past, if what is supported by such a strong popular belief, and established by the uniform testimony of so many men and so many times, is brought into such suspicion that it is not allowed to have the credit and the authority of common history."

sought. For now those things which heretofore appeared incongruous to me in the Scripture, and used to offend me, having heard divers of them expounded reasonably, I referred to the depth of the mysteries, and its authority seemed to me all the more venerable and worthy of religious belief, in that, while it was visible for all to read it, it reserved the majesty of its secret[1] within its profound significance, stooping to all in the great plainness of its language and lowliness of its style, yet exercising the application of such as are not light of heart; that it might receive all into its common bosom, and through narrow passages waft over some few towards Thee, yet many more than if it did not stand upon such a height of authority, nor allured multitudes within its bosom by its holy humility. These things I meditated upon, and Thou wert with me; I sighed, and Thou heardest me; I vacillated, and Thou didst guide me; I roamed through the broad way[2] of the world, and Thou didst not desert me.

CHAP. VI.—*On the source and cause of true joy,—the example of the joyous beggar being adduced.*

9. I longed for honours, gains, wedlock; and Thou mockedst me. In these desires I underwent most bitter hardships, Thou being the more gracious the less Thou didst suffer anything which was not Thou to grow sweet [illegible] Behold my heart, O Lord, who wouldest that I s[hould] all this, and confess unto Thee. Now let my s[oul] Thee, which Thou hast freed from that fast-h[old] of death. How wretched was it! And Thou did[st] the feeling of its wound, that, forsaking all else, it [might] converted unto Thee,—who art above all, and without [Whom] all things would be naught,—be converted and be h[ealed]. How wretched was I at that time, and how didst Thou [deal] with me, to make me sensible of my wretchedness on that [day] wherein I was preparing to recite a panegyric on the Empe[ror]

[1] See i. sec. 10, note, above. [2] Matt. vii. 13.

[3] In the Benedictine edition it is suggested that this was probably Valent[inian] the younger, whose court was, according to Possidius (c. i.), at Milan when A[ugustine] was professor of rhetoric there, who writes (*Con. Litt. Petil.* iii. 25) t[hat] in that city recited a panegyric to Bauto, the consul, on the first of J[anuary], according to the requirements of his profession of rhetoric.

a lie, and lying was to be
I lied; and my heart panted
with the feverishness of con-
walking along one of the streets
or mendicant,—then, I imagine, with
nd joyous; and I sighed, and spake to
e of the many sorrows resulting from our
by all such exertions of ours,—as those
boured, dragging along, under the spur of
n of my own unhappiness, and by dragging
we yet aimed only to attain that very joyousness
ndicant had reached before us, who, perchance,
attain it! For what he had obtained through a
pence, the same was I scheming for by many a
and tortuous turning,—the joy of a temporary
For he verily possessed not true joy, but yet I, with
y ambitions, was seeking one much more untru[e]. And
he was joyous, I anxious; he free from care, I full
as. But should any one inquire of me whether I
rather be merry or fearful, I would reply, Merry.
, were I asked whether I would rather be such as he
or as I myself then was, I should elect to be myself,
beset with cares and alarms, but out of perversity;
in truth? For I ought not to prefer myself to
happened to be more learned than he, seeing that
therein, but sought rather to please men by it;
ot to instruct, but only to please. Wherefore also
n break my bones with the rod of Thy correction.[1]
Away with those, then, from my soul, who say unto it,
akes a difference from whence a man's joy is derived.
mendicant rejoiced in drunkenness; thou longedst to
e in glory." What glory, O Lord? That which is not
hee. For even as his was no true joy, so was mine no
glory;[2] and it subverted my soul more. He would

[1] Prov. xxii. 15.

[2] Here, as elsewhere, we have the feeling which finds its expression in i. above: "Thou hast formed us for Thyself, and our hearts are restless till they rest in Thee."

digest his drunkenness that same night, but many a night had I slept with mine, and risen again with it, and was to sleep again and again to rise with it, I know not how oft. It does indeed "make a difference whence a man's joy is derived." I know it is so, and that the joy of a faithful hope is incomparably beyond such vanity. Yea, and at that time was he beyond me, for he truly was the happier man; not only for that he was thoroughly steeped in mirth, I torn to pieces with cares, but he, by giving good wishes, had gotten wine, I, by lying, was following after pride. Much to this effect said I then to my dear friends, and I often marked in them how it fared with me; and I found that it went ill with me, and fretted, and doubled that very ill. And if any prosperity smiled upon me, I loathed to seize it, for almost before I could grasp it it flew away.

CHAP. VII.—*He leads to reformation his friend Alypius, seized with madness for the Circensian games.*

11. These things we, who lived like friends together, jointly deplored, but chiefly and most familiarly did I discuss them with Alypius and Nebridius, of whom Alypius was born in the same town as myself, his parents being of the highest ran[illegible] there, but he being younger than I. For he had stud[illegible] under me, first, when I taught in our own town, and after[illegible] at Carthage, and esteemed me highly, because I appe[illegible] him good and learned; and I esteemed him for his i[illegible] of virtue, which, in one of no great age, was [illegible] eminent. But the vortex of Carthaginian cus[illegible] whom these frivolous spectacles are hot[illegible] inveigled him into the madness of th[illegible] But while he was miserably tossed a[illegible] fessing rhetoric there, and had a [illegible] did not give ear to my teaching [illegible] that had arisen between me a[illegible] how fatally he doted upon t[illegible] that he seemed likely—if, [illegible] —to cast away his so great [illegible] advising, or by a sort of re[illegible] the kindness of a friend or [illegible]

I imagined that his sentiments towards me were the same as his father's; but he was not such. Disregarding, therefore, his father's will in that matter, he commenced to salute me, and, coming into my lecture-room, to listen for a little and depart.

12. But it slipped my memory to deal with him, so that he should not, through a blind and headstrong desire of empty pastimes, undo so great a wit. But Thou, O Lord, who governest the helm of all Thou hast created, hadst not forgotten him, who was one day to be amongst Thy sons, the President of Thy sacrament;[1] and that his amendment might plainly be attributed to Thyself, Thou broughtest it about through me, but I knowing nothing of it. For one day, when I was sitting in my accustomed place, with my scholars before me, he came in, saluted me, sat himself down, and fixed his attention on the subject I was then handling. It so happened that I had a passage in hand, which while I was explaining, a simile borrowed from the Circensian games occurred to me, as likely to make what I wished to convey pleasanter and plainer, imbued with a biting jibe at those whom that madness had enthralled. Thou knowest, O our God, that I had no thought at that time [illegible] curing Alypius of that plague. But he took it to himself, [illegible] thought that I would not have said it but for his sake. [illegible] what any other man would have made a ground of offence [illegible] me, this worthy young man took as a reason for being [illegible] himself, and for loving me more fervently. For [illegible] id it long ago, and written in Thy book, "Rebuke [illegible] he will love thee."[2] But I had not rebuked him, [illegible] akest use of all consciously or unconsciously, [illegible] Thyself knowest (and that order is right), [illegible] rt and tongue burning coals, by which [illegible] and cure the hopeful mind thus [illegible] t in Thy praises who meditates [illegible] m my inmost parts confess [illegible] rushed out from that [illegible] y plunged, and was blinded [illegible] e roused his mind with a

[illegible] nd sec. 15, note, below.

resolute moderation; whereupon all the filth of the Circensian pastimes[1] flew off from him, and he did not approach them further. Upon this, he prevailed with his reluctant father to let him be my pupil. He gave in and consented. And Alypius, beginning again to hear me, was involved in the same superstition as I was, loving in the Manichæans that ostentation of continency[2] which he believed to be true and unfeigned. It was, however, a senseless and seducing continency, ensnaring precious souls, not able as yet to reach the height of virtue, and easily beguiled with the veneer of what was but a shadowy and feigned virtue.

[1] The games in the provinces of the empire were on the same model as those held in the Circus Maximus at Rome, though not so imposing. This circus was one of those vast works executed by Tarquinius Priscus. Hardly a vestige of it at the present time remains, though the Cloaca Maxima, another of his stupendous works, has not, after more than 2500 years, a stone displaced, and still performs its appointed service of draining the city of Rome into the Tiber. In the circus were exhibited chariot and foot races, fights on horseback, representations of battles (on which occasion camps were pitched in the circus), and the Grecian athletic sports introduced after the conquest of that country. See also sec. 13, note, below.

[2] Augustine, in book v. sec. 9, above, refers to the reputed sanctity of Manichæus, and it may well be questioned whether the sect deserved that unmitigated reprobation he pours out upon them in his *De Moribus*, and in parts of his controversy with Faustus. Certain it is that Faustus laid claim, on behalf of his sect, to a very different moral character to that Augustine would impute to them. He says (*Con. Faust.* v. 1): "Do I believe the gospel? You ask me if I believe it, though my obedience to its commands shows that I do. I should rather ask you if you believe it, since you give no proof of your belief. I have left my father, mother, wife, and children, and all else that the gospel requires (Matt. xix. 29); and do you ask if I believe the gospel? Perhaps you do not know what is called the gospel. The gospel is nothing else than the preaching and the precept of Christ. I have parted with all gold and silver, and have left off carrying money in my purse; content with daily food; without anxiety for to-morrow; and without solicitude about how I shall be fed, or wherewithal I shall be clothed: and do you ask if I believe the gospel? You see me the blessings of the gospel (Matt. v. 3–11); and do you ask if I believe [illegible]? You see me poor, meek, a peacemaker, pure in heart, mourning, [illegible] thirsting, bearing persecutions and enmity for righteousness' sake; and do you doubt my belief in the gospel?" It is difficult to understand that Manichæanism can have spread as largely as it did at that time, if the asceticism of many amongst them had not been real. It may be noted that in his controversy with Fortunatus, Augustine strangely declines to discuss the charges of immorality that had been brought against the Manichæans; and in the last chapter of his *De Moribus*, it appears to be indicated that one, if not more, of those whose evil deeds are there spoken of had a desire to follow the rule of life laid down by Manichæus.

CHAP. VIII.—*The same when at Rome, being led by others into the amphitheatre, is delighted with the gladiatorial games.*

13. He, not relinquishing that worldly way which his parents had bewitched him to pursue, had gone before me to Rome, to study law, and there he was carried away in an extraordinary manner with an incredible eagerness after the gladiatorial shows. For, being utterly opposed to and detesting such spectacles, he was one day met by chance by divers of his acquaintance and fellow-students returning from dinner, and they with a friendly violence drew him, vehemently objecting and resisting, into the amphitheatre, on a day of these cruel and deadly shows, he thus protesting: "Though you drag my body to that place, and there place me, can you force me to give my mind and lend my eyes to these shows? Thus shall I be absent while present, and so shall overcome both you and them." They hearing this, dragged him on nevertheless, desirous, perchance, to see whether he could do as he said. When they had arrived thither, and had taken their places as they could, the whole place became excited with the inhuman sports. But he, shutting up the doors of his eyes, forbade his mind to roam abroad after such naughtiness; and would that he had shut his ears also! For, upon the fall of one in the fight, a mighty cry from the whole audience stirring him strongly, he, overcome by curiosity, and prepared as it were to despise and rise superior to it, no matter what it were, opened his eyes, and was struck with a deeper wound in his soul than the other, whom he desired to see, was in his body;[1] and he fell more miserably than he

[1] The scene of this episode was, doubtless, the great Flavian Amphitheatre, known by us at this day as the Colosseum. It stands in the valley between the Cœlian and Esquiline hills, on the site of a lake formerly attached to the palace of Nero. Gibbon, in his graphic way, says of the building (*Decline and Fall*, i. 355): "Posterity admires, and will long admire, the awful remains of the amphitheatre of Titus, which so well deserved the epithet of colossal. It was a building of an elliptic figure, five hundred and sixty-four feet in length, and four hundred and sixty-seven in breadth, founded on fourscore arches, and rising, with four successive orders of architecture, to the height of one hundred and forty feet. The outside of the edifice was encrusted with marble, and decorated with statues. The slopes of the vast concave which formed the inside were filled and surrounded with sixty or eighty rows of seats of marble, likewise covered with

on whose fall that mighty clamour was raised, which entered through his ears, and unlocked his eyes, to make way for the striking and beating down of his soul, which was bold rather than valiant hitherto; and so much the weaker in that it presumed on itself, which ought to have depended on Thee. For, directly he saw that blood, he therewith imbibed a sort of savageness; nor did he turn away, but fixed his eye, drinking in madness unconsciously, and was delighted with the guilty contest, and drunken with the bloody pastime. Nor was he now the same he came in, but was one of the throng he came unto, and a true companion of those who had brought him thither. Why need I say more? He looked, shouted, was excited, carried away with him the madness which would stimulate him to return, not only with those who first enticed him, but also before them, yea, and to draw in others. And

cushions, and capable of receiving with ease above fourscore thousand spectators. Sixty-four vomitories (for by that name the doors were very aptly distinguished) poured forth the immense multitude; and the entrances, passages, and staircases were contrived with such exquisite skill, that each person, whether of the senatorial, the equestrian, or the plebeian order, arrived at his destined place without trouble or confusion. Nothing was omitted which in any respect could be subservient to the convenience or pleasure of the spectators. They were protected from the sun and rain by an ample canopy occasionally drawn over their heads. The air was continually refreshed by the playing of fountains, and profusely impregnated by the grateful scent of aromatics. In the centre of the edifice, the arena, or stage, was strewed with the finest sand, and successively assumed the most different forms; at one moment it seemed to rise out of the earth, like the garden of the Hesperides, and was afterwards broken into the rocks and caverns of Thrace. The subterraneous pipes conveyed an inexhaustible supply of water; and what had just before appeared a level plain might be suddenly converted into a wide lake, covered with armed vessels and replenished with the monsters of the deep. In the decoration of these scenes the Roman emperors displayed their wealth and liberality; and we read, on various occasions, that the whole furniture of the amphitheatre consisted either of silver, or of gold, or of amber." In this magnificent building were enacted *venatios* or hunting scenes, sea-fights, and gladiatorial shows, in all of which the greatest lavishness was exhibited. The men engaged were for the most part either criminals or captives taken in war. On the occasion of the triumph of Trajan for his victory over the Dacians, it is said that ten thousand gladiators were engaged in combat, and that in the *naumachia* or sea-fight shown by Domitian, ships and men in force equal to two real fleets were engaged, at an enormous expenditure of human life. "If," says James Martineau (*Endeavours after the Christian Life*, pp. 261, 262), "you would witness a scene characteristic of the popular life of old, you must go to the amphitheatre of Rome, mingle with its eighty thousand spectators, and watch

from all this didst Thou, with a most powerful and most merciful hand, pluck him, and taughtest him not to repose confidence in himself, but in Thee—but not till long after.

CHAP. IX.—*Innocent Alypius, being apprehended as a thief, is set at liberty by the cleverness of an architect.*

14. But this was all being stored up in his memory for a medicine hereafter. As was that also, that when he was yet studying under me at Carthage, and was meditating at noon-day in the market-place upon what he had to recite (as scholars are wont to be exercised), Thou sufferedst him to be apprehended as a thief by the officers of the market-place. For no other reason, I apprehend, didst Thou, O our God, suffer it, but that he who was in the future to prove so great a man should now begin to learn that, in judging of causes, man should not with a reckless credulity readily be condemned

the eager faces of senators and people; observe how the masters of the world spend the wealth of conquest, and indulge the pride of power. See every wild creature that God has made to dwell, from the jungles of India to the mountains of Wales, from the forests of Germany to the deserts of Nubia, brought hither to be hunted down in artificial groves by thousands in an hour; behold the captives of war, noble, perhaps, and wise in their own land, turned loose, amid yells of insult, more terrible for their foreign tongue, to contend with brutal gladiators trained to make death the favourite amusement, and present the most solemn of individual realities as a wholesale public sport; mark the light look with which the multitude, by uplifted finger, demands that the wounded combatant be slain before their eyes; notice the troop of Christian martyrs awaiting hand in hand the leap from the tiger's den. And when the day's spectacle is over, and the blood of two thousand victims stains the ring, follow the giddy crowd as it streams from the vomitories into the street, trace its lazy course into the Forum, and hear it there scrambling for the bread of private indolence doled out by the purse of public corruption; and see how it suns itself to sleep in the open ways, or crawls into foul dens till morning brings the hope of games and merry blood again;—and you have an idea of the Imperial people, and their passionate living for the moment, which the gospel found in occupation of the world." The desire for these shows increased as the empire advanced. Constantine failed to put a stop to them at Rome, though they were not admitted into the Christian capital he established at Constantinople. We have already shown (*Ill. sec.* 2, note, above) how strongly attendance at stage-plays and scenes like these was condemned by the Christian teachers. The passion, however, for these exhibitions was so great, that they were only brought to an end after the monk Telemachus—horrified that Christians should witness such scenes—had been battered to death by the people in their rage at his flinging himself between the swordsmen to stop the combat. This tragic episode occurred in the year 403, at a show held in commemoration of a temporary success over the troops of Alaric.

by man. For as he was walking up and down alone before the judgment-seat with his tablets and pen, lo, a young man, one of the scholars, the real thief, privily bringing a hatchet, got in without Alypius' seeing him as far as the leaden bars which protect the silversmiths' shops, and began to cut away the lead. But the noise of the hatchet being heard, the silversmiths below began to make a stir, and sent to take in custody whomsoever they should find. But the thief, hearing their voices, ran away, leaving his hatchet, fearing to be taken with it. Now Alypius, who had not seen him come in, caught sight of him as he went out, and noted with what speed he made off. And, being curious to know the reasons, he entered the place, where, finding the hatchet, he stood wondering and pondering, when behold, those that were sent caught him alone, hatchet in hand, the noise whereof had startled them and brought them thither. They lay hold of him and drag him away, and, gathering the tenants of the market-place about them, boast of having taken a notorious thief, and thereupon he was being led away to appear before the judge.

15. But thus far was he to be instructed. For immed*ately, O Lord, Thou camest to the succour of his innocen*, whereof Thou wert the sole witness. For, as he was be*g led either to prison or to punishment, they were met i* a certain architect, who had the chief charge of the *blic buildings. They were specially glad to come across h*, by whom they used to be suspected of stealing the goods *s out of the market-place, as though at last to convince *n by whom these thefts were committed. He, however *ad at divers times seen Alypius at the house of a certai* *enator, whom he was wont to visit to pay his respects; *, recognising him at once, he took him aside by the *nd, and inquiring of him the cause of so great a misto*ne, heard the whole affair, and commanded all the rabble *en present (who were very uproarious and full of threat*ngs) to go with him. And they came to the house of t* young man who had committed the deed. There, before t* door, was a *d so young as not to refrain from disclo*ng the whole

through the fear of injuring his master. For he had followed his master to the market-place. Whom, so soon as Alypius recognised, he intimated it to the architect; and he, showing the hatchet to the lad, asked him to whom it belonged. "To us," quoth he immediately; and on being further interrogated, he disclosed everything. Thus, the crime being transferred to that house, and the rabble shamed, which had begun to triumph over Alypius, he, the future dispenser of Thy word, and an examiner of numerous causes in Thy Church,[1] went away better experienced and instructed.

CHAP. X.—*The wonderful integrity of Alypius in judgment. The lasting friendship of Nebridius with Augustine.*

16. Him, therefore, had I lighted upon at Rome, and he clung to me by a most strong tie, and accompanied me to Milan, both that he might not leave me, and that he might practise something of the law he had studied, more with a view of pleasing his parents than himself. There had he thrice sat as assessor with an uncorruptness wondered at by others, he rather wondering at those who could prefer gold to integrity. His character was tested, also, not only by the bait of covetousness, but by the spur of fear. At Rome, he was assessor to the Count of the Italian Treasury.[2] There was at that time a most potent senator, to whose favours many were indebted, of whom also many stood in fear. He would fain, by his usual power, have a thing granted him which was forbidden by the laws. This Alypius resisted; a bribe was promised, he scorned it with all his heart; threats were employed, he trampled them under foot,—all men being astonished at so rare a spirit, which neither coveted the friendship nor feared the enmity of a man at once so powerful and

[1] "Alypius became Bishop of Thagaste (Aug. *De Gestis c. Emerit.* secs. 1 and 2). On the necessity which bishops were under of hearing secular causes, and its use, see Bingham, ii. c. 7."—E. B. P.

[2] "The Italian High Treasurer of the Western Empire was called *Comes Sacrarum largitionum*. He had six other treasurers in so many provinces under him, whereof he of Italy was one under whom this Alypius had some office of judicature, something like (though far inferior) to our Baron of the Exchequer. See Sir Henry Spelman's *Glossary*, in the word *Comes*; and Cassiodor, Var. v. c. 40."—W. W.

so greatly famed for his innumerable means of doing good or ill. Even the judge whose councillor Alypius was, although also unwilling that it should be done, yet did not openly refuse it, but put the matter off upon Alypius, alleging that it was he who would not permit him to do it; for verily, had the judge done it, Alypius would have decided otherwise. With this one thing in the way of learning was he very nearly led away,—that he might have books copied for him at prætorian prices.[1] But, consulting justice, he changed his mind for the better, esteeming equity, whereby he was hindered, more gainful than the power whereby he was permitted. These are little things, but "He that is faithful in that which is least, is faithful also in much."[2] Nor can that possibly be void which proceedeth out of the mouth of Thy Truth. "If, therefore, ye have not been faithful in the unrighteous mammon, who will commit to your trust the true riches? And if ye have not been faithful in that which is another man's, who shall give you that which is your own?"[3] He, being such, did at that time cling to me, and wavered in purpose, as I did, what course of life was to be taken.

17. Nebridius also, who had left his native country near Carthage, and Carthage itself, where he had usually lived, leaving behind his fine paternal estate, his house, and his mother, who intended not to follow him, had come to Milan, for no other reason than that he might live with me in a most ardent search after truth and wisdom. Like me he sighed, like me he wavered, an ardent seeker after true life, and a most acute examiner of the most abstruse questions.[4] So were there three begging mouths, sighing out their wants one to the other, and waiting upon Thee, that Thou mightest give them their meat in due season.[5] And in all the bitter-

[1] *Pretiis prætorianis.* Du Cange says that "*Pretium regium* . . . the right of a king or lord to purchase commodities at a certain and definite price." This may perhaps help us to understand the phrase as above employed.

[2] Luke xvi. 10. [3] Luke xvi. 11, 12.

[4] Augustine makes a similar allusion to Nebridius' ardour in examining difficult questions, especially those which refer *ad doctrinam pietatis*, in his 98th Epistle.

[5] Ps. cxlv. 15.

ness which by Thy mercy followed our worldly pursuits, as we contemplated the end, why this suffering should be ours, darkness came upon us; and we turned away groaning and exclaiming, "How long shall these things be?" And this we often said; and saying so, we did not relinquish them, for as yet we had discovered nothing certain to which, when relinquished, we might betake ourselves.

CHAP. XI.—*Being troubled by his grievous errors, he meditates entering on a new life.*

18. And I, puzzling over and reviewing these things, most marvelled at the length of time from that my nineteenth year, wherein I began to be inflamed with the desire of wisdom, resolving, when I had found her, to forsake all the empty hopes and lying insanities of vain desires. And behold, I was now getting on to my thirtieth year, sticking in the same mire, eager for the enjoyment of things present, which fly away and destroy me, whilst I say, "To-morrow I shall discover it; behold, it will appear plainly, and I shall seize it: behold, Faustus will come and explain everything! O ye great men, ye Academicians, it is then true that nothing certain for the ordering of life can be attained! Nay, let us search the more diligently, and let us not despair. Lo, the things in the ecclesiastical books, which appeared to us absurd aforetime, do not appear so now, and may be otherwise and honestly interpreted. I will set my feet upon that step, where, as a child, my parents placed me, until the clear truth be discovered. But where and when shall it be sought? Ambrose has no leisure,—we have no leisure to read. Where are we to find the books? Whence or when procure them? From whom borrow them? Let set times be appointed, and certain hours be set apart for the health of the soul. Great hope has risen upon us the Catholic faith doth not teach what we conceived, and vainly accused it of. Her learned ones hold it as an abomination to believe that God is limited by the form of a human body. And do we doubt to 'knock,' in order that the rest may be 'opened'?[1] The mornings are taken up by our scholars; how do we employ the rest of

[1] Matt. vii. 7.

the day? Why do we not set about this? But when, then, pay our respects to our great friends, of whose favours we stand in need? When prepare what our scholars buy from us? When recreate ourselves, relaxing our minds from the pressure of care?"

19. "Perish everything, and let us dismiss these empty vanities, and betake ourselves solely to the search after truth! Life is miserable, death uncertain. If it creeps upon us suddenly, in what state shall we depart hence, and where shall we learn what we have neglected here? Or rather shall we not suffer the punishment of this negligence? What if death itself should cut off and put an end to all care and feeling? This also, then, must be inquired into. But God forbid that it should be so. It is not without reason, it is no empty thing, that the so eminent height of the authority of the Christian faith is diffused throughout the entire world. Never would such and so great things be wrought for us, if, by the death of the body, the life of the soul were destroyed. Why, therefore, do we delay to abandon our hopes of this world, and give ourselves wholly to seek after God and the blessed life? But stay! Even those things are enjoyable; and they possess some and no little sweetness. We must not abandon them lightly, for it would be a shame to return to them again. Behold, now is it a great matter to obtain some post of honour! And what more could we desire? We have crowds of influential friends, though we have nothing else, and if we make haste a presidentship may be offered us; and a wife with some money, that she increase not our expenses; and this shall be the height of desire. Many men, who are great and worthy of imitation, have applied themselves to the study of wisdom in the marriage state."

20. Whilst I talked of these things, and these winds veered about and tossed my heart hither and thither, the time passed on; but I was slow to turn to the Lord, and from day to day deferred to live in Thee, and deferred not daily to die in myself. Being enamoured of a happy life, I yet feared it in its own abode, and, fleeing from it, sought after it. I con-

ceived that I should be too unhappy were I deprived of the embracements of a woman;[1] and of Thy merciful medicine to cure that infirmity I thought not, not having tried it. As regards continency, I imagined it to be under the control of our own strength (though in myself I found it not), being so foolish as not to know what is written, that none can be continent unless Thou give it;[2] and that Thou wouldst give it, if with heartfelt groaning I should knock at Thine ears, and should with firm faith cast my care upon Thee.

CHAP. XII.—*Discussion with Alypius concerning a life of celibacy.*

21. It was in truth Alypius who prevented me from marrying, alleging that thus we could by no means live together, having so much undistracted leisure in the love of wisdom, as we had long desired. For he himself was so chaste in this matter that it was wonderful—all the more, too, that in his early youth he had entered upon that path, but had not clung to it; rather had he, feeling sorrow and disgust at it, lived from that time to the present most continently. But I opposed him with the examples of those who as married men had loved wisdom, found favour with God, and walked faithfully and lovingly with their friends. From the greatness of whose spirit I fell far short, and, enthralled with the disease of the flesh and its deadly sweetness, dragged my chain along, fearing to be loosed, and, as if it pressed my wound, rejected his kind expostulations, as it were the hand of

[1] "I was entangled in the life of this world, clinging to dull hopes of a beauteous wife, the pomp of riches, the emptiness of honours, and the other hurtful and destructive pleasures" (Aug. *De Util. Credendi*, sec. 3). "After I had shaken off the Manichæans and escaped, especially when I had crossed the sea, the Academics long detained me tossing in the waves, winds from all quarters beating against my helm. And so I came to this shore, and there found a pole-star to whom to entrust myself. For I often observed in the discourses of our priest [Ambrose], and sometimes in yours [Theodorus], that you had no corporeal notions when you thought of God, or even of the soul, which of all things is next to God. But I was withheld, I own, from casting myself speedily into the bosom of true wisdom by the alluring hopes of marriage and honours; meaning, when I had obtained these, to press (as few singularly happy had before me) with oar and sail into that haven, and there rest" (Aug. *De Vita Beata*, sec. 4).—E. B. P.

[2] Wisd. viii. 2, *Vulg.*

one who would unchain me. Moreover, it was by me that the serpent spake unto Alypius himself, weaving and laying in his path, by my tongue, pleasant snares, wherein his honourable and free feet[1] might be entangled.

22. For when he wondered that I, for whom he had no slight esteem, stuck so fast in the bird-lime of that pleasure as to affirm whenever we discussed the matter that it would be impossible for me to lead a single life, and urged in my defence when I saw him wonder that there was a vast difference between the life that he had tried by stealth and snatches (of which he had now but a faint recollection, and might therefore, without regret, easily despise), and my sustained acquaintance with it, whereto if but the honourable name of marriage were added, he would not then be astonished at my inability to contemn that course,—then began he also to wish to be married, not as if overpowered by the lust of such pleasure, but from curiosity. For, as he said, he was anxious to know what that could be without which my life, which was so pleasing to him, seemed to me not life but a penalty. For his mind, free from that chain, was astounded at my slavery, and through that astonishment was going on to a desire of trying it, and from it to the trial itself, and thence, perchance, to fall into that bondage whereat he was so astonished, seeing he was ready to enter into "a covenant

[1] "Paulinus says that though he lived among the people and sat over them, ruling the sheep of the Lord's fold, as a watchful shepherd, with anxious sleeplessness, yet by renunciation of the world, and denial of flesh and blood, he had made himself a wilderness, severed from the many, called among the few" (Ep. Aug. *Ep.* 24, sec. 2). St. Jerome calls him "his holy and venerable brother, Father (Papa) Alypius" (*Ep.* 39, *ibid.*). Earlier, Augustine speaks of him as "abiding in unity with him, to be an example to the brethren who wished to avoid the cares of this world" (*Ep.* 22); and to Paulinus (*Ep.* 27), [Romanianus] "is a relation of the venerable and truly blessed Bishop Alypius, whom you embrace with your whole heart deservedly; for whosoever thinks favourably of that man, thinks of the great mercy of God. Soon, by the help of God, I shall transfuse Alypius wholly into your soul [Paulinus had asked Alypius to write him his life, and Augustine had, at Alypius' request, undertaken to relieve him, and to do it]; for I feared chiefly lest he should shrink from laying open all which the Lord has bestowed upon him, lest, if read by any ordinary person (for it would not be read by you only), he should seem not so much to set forth the gifts of God committed to men, as to exalt himself."—E. B. P.

with death;"[1] and he that loves danger shall fall into it.[2] For whatever the conjugal honour be in the office of well-ordering a married life, and sustaining children, influenced us but slightly. But that which did for the most part afflict me, already made a slave to it, was the habit of satisfying an insatiable lust; him about to be enslaved did an admiring wonder draw on. In this state were we, until Thou, O most High, not forsaking our lowliness, commiserating our misery, didst come to our rescue by wonderful and secret ways.

CHAP. XIII.—*Being urged by his mother to take a wife, he sought a maiden that was pleasing unto him.*

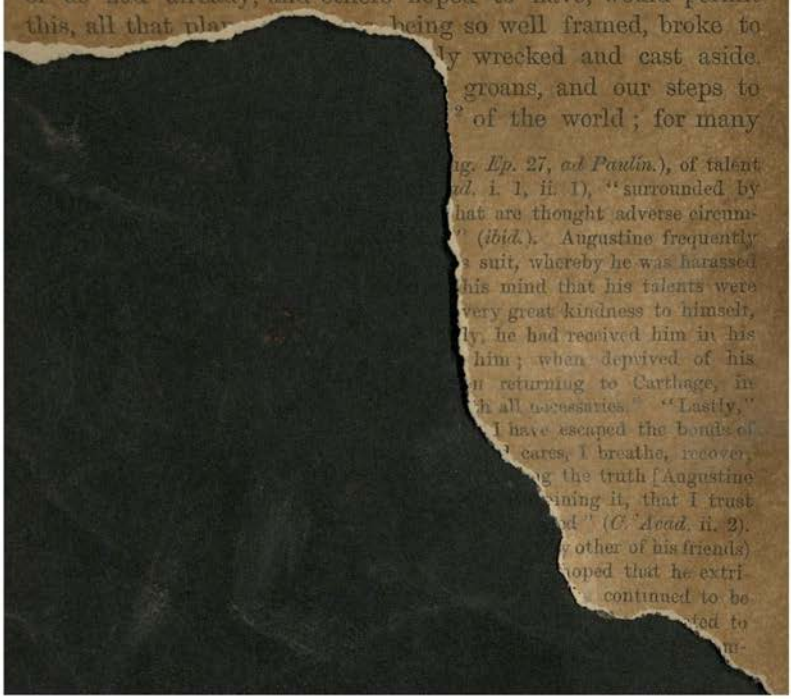
23. Active efforts were made to get me a wife. I wooed, I was engaged, my mother taking the greatest pains in the matter, that when I was once married, the health-giving baptism might cleanse me; for which she rejoiced that I was being daily fitted, remarking that her desires and Thy promises were being fulfilled in my faith. At which time, verily, both at my request and her own desire, with strong heartfelt cries did we daily beg of Thee that Thou wouldest by a vision disclose unto her something concerning my future marriage; but Thou wouldest not. She saw indeed certain vain and fantastic things, such as the earnestness of a human spirit, bent thereon, conjured up; and these she told me of, not with her usual confidence when Thou hadst shown her anything, but slighting them. For she could, she declared through some feeling which she could not express in words, discern the difference betwixt Thy revelations and the dreams of her own spirit. Yet the affair was pressed on, and a maiden sued who wanted two years of the marriageable age; and, as she was pleasing, she was waited for.

CHAP. XIV.—*The design of establishing a common household with his friends is speedily hindered.*

24. And many of us friends, consulting on and abhorring the turbulent vexations of human life, had considered and now almost determined upon living at ease and separate from the turmoil of men. And this was to be obtained in this way: we were to bring whatever we could severally procure, and

[1] Isa. xxviii. 15. [2] Ecclus. iii. 27.

make a common household, so that, through the sincerity of our friendship, nothing should belong more to one than the other; but the whole, being derived from all, should as a whole belong to each, and the whole unto all. It seemed to us that *this* society might consist of ten persons, some of *whom were very rich, especially* Romanianus,[1] our townsman, an intimate friend of mine from his childhood, whom grave business matters had then brought up to Court; who was the most earnest of us all for this project, and whose voice was of great weight in commending it, because his estate was far more ample than that of the rest. We had arranged, too, that two officers should be chosen yearly, for the providing of all necessary things, whilst the rest were left undisturbed. *But* when we began to reflect whether the wives which some of us had already, and others hoped to have, would permit this, all that plan, being so well framed, broke to



ly wrecked and cast aside. groans, and our steps to of the world; for many

g. *Ep.* 27, *ad Paulin.*), of talent *d.* i. 1, ii. 1), "surrounded by hat are thought adverse circum- " (*ibid.*). Augustine frequently suit, whereby he was harassed his mind that his talents were very great kindness to himself, ly, he had received him in his him; when deprived of his n returning to Carthage, in h all necessaries." "Lastly," I have escaped the bonds of cares, I breathe, recover, g the truth [Augustine ining it, that I trust d" (*C. Acad.* ii. 2). other of his friends) oped that he extri continued to be ed to

thoughts were in our heart, but Thy counsel standeth for ever.[1] Out of which counsel Thou didst mock ours, and preparedst Thine own, purposing to give us meat in due season, and to open Thy hand, and to fill our souls with blessing.[2]

CHAP. XV.—*He dismisses one mistress, and chooses another.*

25. Meanwhile my sins were being multiplied, and my mistress being torn from my side as an impediment to my marriage, my heart, which clave to her, was racked, and wounded, and bleeding. And she went back to Africa, making a vow unto Thee never to know another man, leaving with me my natural son by her. But I, unhappy one, who could not imitate a woman, impatient of delay, since it was not until two years' time I was to obtain her I sought,—being not so much a lover of marriage as a slave to lust, procured another (not a wife, though), that so by th habit the disease of my soul might vigour, or even increased, was that wound of mine by the separation from flammation and most ac pain became numbed, but

CHAP. XVI.—*The fear of death mortality of the soul, back in the opinions of Epicurus.*

26. Unto Thee be p of mercies! I became Thy right hand was mire, and to cleans did anything reca pleasures, but th which, amid al

[1] Ps. xxxiii. 11.
[2] Ju
th

breast. And in disputing with my friends, Alypius and Nebridius, concerning the nature of good and evil, I held that Epicurus had, in my judgment, won the palm, had I not believed that after death there remained a life for the soul, and places of recompense, which Epicurus would not believe.[1] And I demanded, "Supposing us to be immortal, and to be living in the enjoyment of perpetual bodily pleasure, and that without any fear of losing it, why, then, should we not be happy, or why should we search for anything else?"—not knowing that even this very thing was a part of my great misery, that, being thus sunk and blinded, I could not discern that light of honour and beauty to be embraced for its own sake,[2] which cannot be seen by the eye of the flesh, it being visible only to the inner man. Nor did I, unhappy one, consider out of what vein it emanated, that even these things, loathsome as they were, I with pleasure discussed with my friends. Nor could I, even in accordance with my then

[1] The ethics of Epicurus were a modified Hedonism (Diog. Laërt. *De Vitis*, etc., x. 123). With him the earth was a congeries of atoms (*ibid.* 38, 40), which atoms existed from eternity, and *formed themselves*, uninfluenced by the gods. The soul he held to be material. It was diffused through the body, and was in its nature somewhat like air. At death it was resolved into its original atoms, when the being ceased to exist (*ibid.* 63, 64). Hence death was a matter of indifference to man [ὁ θάνατος οὐδὲν πρὸς ἡμᾶς, *ibid.* 124, etc.]. In that great upheaval after the scholasticism of the Middle Ages, the various ancient philosophies were revived. This of Epicurus was disentombed and, as it were, vitalized by Gassendi, in the beginning of the seventeenth century; and it has a special importance from its bearing on the physical theories and investigations of modern times. Archer Butler, adverting to the inadequacy of the chief philosophical schools to satisfy the wants of the age in the early days of the planting of Christianity (*Lectures on Ancient Philosophy*, ii. 333), says of the Epicurean: "Its popularity was unquestioned; its adaptation to a luxurious age could not be doubted. But it was not formed to satisfy the wants of the time, however it might minister to its pleasures. It was, indeed, as it still continues to be, the tacit philosophy of the careless, and might thus number a larger army of disciples than any contemporary system. But its supremacy existed only when it estimated numbers, it ceased when tried by *weight*. . . . eminent men of Rome were often its avowed favourers; but they were for the most part men eminent in arms and statesmanship, rather than the influential directors of the world of speculation. Nor could the admirable poetic art of Lucretius, or the still more attractive ease of Horace, confer such strength or dignity upon the system as to enable it to compete with the new and mysterious elements now upon all sides gathering into conflict."

[2] See viii. sec. 17, note, below.

notions of happiness, make myself happy without friends, amid no matter how great abundance of carnal pleasures. And these friends assuredly I loved for their own sakes, and I knew myself to be loved of them again for my own sake. O crooked ways! Woe to the audacious soul which hoped that, if it forsook Thee, it would find some better thing! It hath turned and re-turned, on back, sides, and belly, and all was hard,[1] and Thou alone rest. And behold, Thou art near, and deliverest us from our wretched wanderings, and stablishest us in Thy way, and dost comfort us, and say, "Run; I will carry you, yea, I will lead you, and there also will I carry you."

[1] See above, iv. cc. 1, 10, and 12.

SEVENTH BOOK.

HE RECALLS THE BEGINNING OF HIS YOUTH, *i.e.* THE THIRTY-FIRST YEAR OF HIS AGE, IN WHICH VERY GRAVE ERRORS AS TO THE NATURE OF GOD AND THE ORIGIN OF EVIL BEING DISTINGUISHED, AND THE SACRED BOOKS MORE ACCURATELY KNOWN, HE AT LENGTH ARRIVES AT A CLEAR KNOWLEDGE OF GOD, NOT YET RIGHTLY APPREHENDING JESUS CHRIST.

CHAP. I.—*He regarded not God indeed under the form of a human body, but as a corporeal substance diffused through space.*

1. DEAD now was that evil and abominable youth of mine, and I was passing into early manhood: as I increased in years, the fouler became I in vanity, who could not conceive of any substance but such as I saw with my own eyes. I thought not of Thee, O God, under the form of a human body. Since the time I began to hear something of wisdom, I always avoided this; and I rejoiced to have found the same in the faith of our spiritual mother, Thy Catholic Church. But what else to imagine Thee I knew not. And I, a man, and such a man, sought to conceive of Thee, the sovereign and only true God; and I did in my inmost heart believe that Thou wert incorruptible, and inviolable, and unchangeable; because, not knowing whence or how, yet most plainly did I see and feel sure that that which may be corrupted must be worse than that which cannot, and what cannot be violated did I without hesitation prefer before that which can, and deemed that which suffers no change to be better than that which is changeable. Violently did my heart cry out against all my phantasms, and with this one blow I endeavoured to beat away from the eye of my mind all that unclean crowd which fluttered around it.[1] And lo, being scarce put off, they, in the twinkling of an eye, pressed in multitudes around me, dashed against my face, and beclouded it; so that, though

[1] See iii. sec. 12, iv. sects. 3 and 12, and v. sec. 19, above.

I thought not of Thee under the form of a human body, yet was I constrained to image Thee to be something corporeal in space, either infused into the world, or infinitely diffused beyond it,—even that incorruptible, inviolable, and unchangeable, which I preferred to the corruptible, and violable, and changeable; since whatsoever I conceived, deprived of this space, appeared as nothing to me, yea, altogether nothing, not even a void, as if a body were removed from its place and the place should remain empty of any body at all, whether earthy, terrestrial, watery, aerial, or celestial, but should remain a void place—a spacious nothing, as it were.

2. I therefore being thus gross-hearted, nor clear even to myself, whatsoever was not stretched over certain spaces, nor diffused, nor crowded together, nor swelled out, or which did not or could not receive some of these dimensions, I judged to be altogether nothing.[1] For over such forms as my eyes are wont to range did my heart then range; nor did I see that this same observation, by which I formed those same images, was not of this kind, and yet it could not have formed them had not itself been something great. In like manner did I conceive of Thee, Life of my life, as vast through infinite spaces, on every side penetrating the whole mass of the world, and beyond it, all ways, through immeasurable

[1] "For with what understanding can man apprehend God, who does not yet apprehend that very understanding itself of his own by which he desires to apprehend Him? And if he does already apprehend this, let him carefully consider that there is nothing in his own nature better than it; and let him see whether he can there see any outlines of forms, or brightness of colours, or greatness of space, or distance of parts, or extension of size, or any movements through intervals of place, or any such thing at all. Certainly we find nothing of all this in that, than which we find nothing better in our own nature, that is, in our own intellect, by which we apprehend wisdom according to our capacity. What, therefore, we do not find in that, which is our own best, we ought not to seek in Him, who is far better than that best of ours; that so we may understand God, if we are able, and as much as we are able, as good without quality, great without quantity, a creator though He lack nothing, ruling but from no position, sustaining all things without having them, in His wholeness everywhere yet without place, eternal without time, making things that are changeable without change of Himself, and without passion. Whoso thus thinks of God, although he cannot yet find out in all ways what He is, yet piously takes heed, as much as he is able, to think nothing of Him that He is not."—*De Trin.* v. 2.

and boundless spaces; so that the earth should have Thee, the heaven have Thee, all things have Thee, and they bounded in Thee, but Thou nowhere. For as the body of this air which is above the earth preventeth not the light of the sun from passing through it, penetrating it, not by bursting or by cutting, but by filling it entirely, so I imagined the body, not of heaven, air, and sea only, but of the earth also, to be pervious to Thee, and in all its greatest parts as well as smallest penetrable to receive Thy presence, by a secret inspiration, both inwardly and outwardly governing all things which Thou hast created. So I conjectured, because I was unable to think of anything else; for it was untrue. For in this way would a greater part of the earth contain a greater portion of Thee, and the less a lesser; and all things should so be full of Thee, as that the body of an elephant should contain more of Thee than that of a sparrow by how much larger it is, and occupies more room; and so shouldest Thou make the portions of Thyself present unto the several portions of the world, in pieces, great to the great, little to the little. But Thou art not such a one; nor hadst Thou as yet enlightened my darkness.

CHAP. II.—The disputation of Nebridius against the Manichæans, on the question "whether God be corruptible or incorruptible."

3. It was sufficient for me, O Lord, to oppose to those deceived deceivers and dumb praters (dumb, since Thy word sounded not forth from them) that which a long while ago, while we were at Carthage, Nebridius used to propound, at which all we who heard it were disturbed: "What could that reputed nation of darkness, which the Manichæans are in the habit of setting up as a mass opposed to Thee, have done unto Thee hadst Thou objected to fight with it? For had it been answered, 'It would have done Thee some injury,' then shouldest Thou be subject to violence and corruption; but if the reply were: 'It could do Thee no injury,' then was no cause assigned for Thy fighting with it; and so fighting as that a certain portion and member of Thee, or offspring of Thy very substance, should be blended with adverse powers and natures not of Thy creation, and be by them corrupted and

deteriorated to such an extent as to be turned from happiness into misery, and need help whereby it might be delivered and purged; and that this offspring of Thy substance was the soul, to which, being enslaved, contaminated, and corrupted, Thy word, free, pure, and entire, might bring succour; but yet also the word itself being corruptible, because it was from one and the same substance. So that should they affirm Thee, whatsoever Thou art, that is, Thy substance whereby Thou art, to be incorruptible, then were all these assertions false and execrable; but if corruptible, then that were false, and at the first utterance to be abhorred."[1] This argument, then, was enough against those who wholly merited to be vomited forth from the surfeited stomach, since they had no means of escape without horrible sacrilege, both of heart and tongue, thinking and speaking such things of Thee.

[1] Similar arguments are made use of in his controversy with Fortunatus (*Dis.* ii. 5), where he says, that as Fortunatus could find no answer, so neither could he when a Manichæan, and that this led him to the true faith. Again, in his *De Moribus* (sec. 25), where he examines the answers which had been given, he commences: "For this gives rise to the question, which used to throw us into great perplexity, even when we were your zealous disciples, nor could we find any answer,—what the race of darkness would have done to God, supposing He had refused to fight with it at the cost of such calamity to part of Himself. For if God would not have suffered any loss by remaining quiet, we thought it hard that we had been sent to endure so much. Again, if He would have suffered, His nature cannot have been incorruptible, as it behoves the nature of God to be." We have already, in the note to book iv. sec. 26, referred to some of the matters touched on in this section; but they call for further elucidation. The following passage, quoted by Augustine from Manichæus himself (*Con. Ep. Manich.* 13), discloses to us (1) their ideas as to the nature and position of the two kingdoms: "In one direction, on the border of this bright and holy region, there was a land of darkness, deep and vast in extent, where abode fiery bodies, destructive races. Here was boundless darkness flowing from the same source in immeasurable abundance, with the productions properly belonging to it. Beyond this were muddy, turbid waters, with their inhabitants; and inside of them were terrible and violent, with their prince and their progenitors. Then, again, a fiery region of destruction, with its chiefs and peoples. And similarly in [illegible] of this, a race full of smoke and gloom, where abode the dreadful prince and [illegible] all, having around him, innumerable princes, himself the mind and [illegible] them all. Such are the five natures of the region of corruption." Augustine also designates them (*ibid.* sec. 20) "the five dens of the race of darkness." The nation of darkness desires to possess the kingdom of light, and prepares to make war upon it: and in the controversy with Faustus we have (2) the beginning and issue of the war (*Con. Faust.* ii. 3; see also *De Hæres*, 46). Augustine

CHAP. III.—*That the cause of evil is the free judgment of the will.*

4. But I also, as yet, although I said and was firmly persuaded, that Thou our Lord, the true God, who madest not only our souls but our bodies, and not our souls and bodies alone, but all creatures and all things, wert uncontaminable and inconvertible, and in no part mutable; yet understood I not readily and clearly what was the cause of evil. And yet, whatever it was, I perceived that it must be so sought out as not to constrain me by it to believe that the immutable God was mutable, lest I myself should become the thing that I was seeking out. I sought, therefore, for it free from care, certain of the untruthfulness of what these asserted, whom I shunned with my whole heart; for I perceived that through seeking after the origin of evil, they were filled with malice, in that they liked better to think that Thy Substance did suffer evil than that their own did commit it.[1]

says: "You dress us for our benefit some wonderful First Man, who came down from the race of light, to war with the race of darkness, armed with his waters against the waters of the enemy, and with his fire against their fire, and with his winds against their winds." And again (*ibid.* sec. 5): "You say that he mingled with the principles of darkness in his conflict with the race of darkness, that by capturing these principles the world might be made out of the mixture. So that, by your profane fancies, Christ is not only mingled with heaven and all the stars, but conjoined and compounded with the earth and all its productions,—a Saviour no more, but needing to be saved by you, by your eating and disgorging Him. This foolish custom of making your disciples bring you food, that your teeth and stomach may be the means of relieving Christ, who is bound up in it, is a consequence of your profane fancies. You declare that Christ is liberated in this way,—not, however, entirely; for you hold that some tiny particles of [illegible] still remain in the excrement, to be mixed up and compounded again and again in various material forms, and to be released and purified at any rate by the fire in which the world will be burned up, if not before. Nay, even then, you say, Christ is not entirely liberated, but some extreme particles of His good and divine nature, which have been so defiled that they cannot be cleansed, are condemned to [illegible] for ever in the mass of darkness." The result of this commingling of [illegible] with the darkness was, that a certain portion and member of God was [illegible] from happiness into misery," and placed in bondage in the world, and [illegible] of help "whereby it might be delivered and purged." (See also *Contra Fort. Manich.* i. 1.) Reference may be made (3), for information as to the method by which the divine substance was released in the eating of the elect, to the notes on book iii. sec. 18, above; and for the influence of the sun and moon in accomplishing that release, to the note on book v. sec. 12, above.

[1] See iv. sec. 26, note, above.

5. And I directed my attention to discern what I now heard, that free will[1] was the cause of our doing evil, and Thy righteous judgment of our suffering it. But I was unable clearly to discern it. So, then, trying to draw the eye of my mind from that pit, I was plunged again therein, and trying often, was as often plunged back again. But this raised me towards Thy light, that I knew as well that I had a will as that I had life: when, therefore, I was willing or unwilling to do anything, I was most certain that it was none but myself that was willing and unwilling; and immediately I perceived that there was the cause of my sin. But what I did against my will I saw that I suffered rather than did, and that judged I not to be my fault, but my punishment; whereby, believing Thee to be most just, I quickly confessed myself to be not unjustly punished. But again I said: "Who made me? Was it not my God, who is not only good, but goodness itself? Whence came I then to will to do evil, and to be unwilling to do good, that there might be cause for my just punishment? Who was it that put this in me, and implanted in me the root of bitterness, seeing I was altogether made by my most sweet God? If the devil were the author, whence is that devil? And if he also, by his own perverse will, of a good angel became a devil, whence also was the evil will in him whereby he became a devil, seeing that the angel was made altogether good by that most good Creator?" By these reflections was I again cast down and stifled; yet not plunged into that hell of error (where no man confesseth unto Thee),[2] to think that Thou dost suffer evil, rather than that man doth it.

CHAP. IV.—*That God is not corruptible, who, if He were, would not be God at all.*

6. For I was so struggling to find out the rest, as having already found that what was incorruptible must be better than the corruptible; and Thee, therefore, whatsoever Thou wert, did I acknowledge to be incorruptible. For never [illegible] nor will be, a soul able to conceive of anything better than Thou, who art the highest and best good. But [illegible]

[1] See iii. sec. 12, note, and [illegible]
[2] Ps. vi. 5.

truly and certainly that which is incorruptible is to be preferred to the corruptible (like as I myself did now prefer it), then, if Thou were not incorruptible, I could in my thoughts have reached unto something better than my God. Where, then, I saw that the incorruptible was to be preferred to the corruptible, there ought I to seek Thee, and there observe "whence evil itself was," that is, whence comes the corruption by which Thy substance can by no means be profaned. For corruption, truly, in no way injures our God,—by no will, by no necessity, by no unforeseen chance,—because He is God, and what He wills is good, and Himself is that good; but to be corrupted is not good. Nor art Thou compelled to do anything against Thy will in that Thy will is not greater than Thy power. But greater should it be were Thou Thyself greater than Thyself; for the will and power of God is God Himself. And what can be unforeseen by Thee, who knowest all things? Nor is there any sort of nature but Thou knowest it. And what more should we say "why that substance which God is should not be corruptible," seeing that if it were so it could not be God?

CHAP. V.—Questions concerning the origin of evil in regard to God, who, since He is the chief good, cannot be the cause of evil.

7. And I sought "whence is evil?" And sought in an evil way; nor saw I the evil in my very search. And I set in order before the view of my spirit the whole creation, and whatever we can discern in it, such as earth, sea, air, stars, trees, living creatures; yea, and whatever in it we do not see, as the firmament of heaven, all the angels, too, and all the spiritual inhabitants thereof. But these very beings, as though they were bodies, did my fancy dispose in such and such places, and I made one huge mass of all Thy creatures, distinguished according to the kinds of bodies,—some of them being real bodies, some what I myself had feigned for spirits. And this mass I made huge,—not as it was, which I could not know, but as large as I thought well, yet every way finite. But Thee, O Lord, I imagined on every part environing and penetrating it, though every way infinite; as if there were a sea everywhere, and on every side through immensity nothing but an

infinite sea; and it contained within itself some sponge, huge, though finite, so that the sponge would in all its parts be filled from the immeasurable sea. So conceived I Thy creation to be itself finite, and filled by Thee, the Infinite. And I said, Behold God, and behold what God hath created; and God is good, yea, most mightily and incomparably better than all these; but yet He, who is good, hath created them good, and behold how He encircleth and filleth them. Where, then, is evil, and whence, and how crept it in hither? What is its root, and what its seed? Or hath it no being at all? Why, then, do we fear and shun that which hath no being? Or if we fear it needlessly, then surely is that fear evil whereby the heart is unnecessarily pricked and tormented,—and so much a greater evil, as we have naught to fear, and yet do fear. Therefore either that is evil which we fear, or the act of fearing is in itself evil. Whence, therefore, is it, seeing that God, who is good, hath made all these things good? He, indeed, the greatest and chiefest Good, hath created these lesser goods; but both Creator and created are all good. Whence is evil? Or was there some evil matter of which He made and formed and ordered it, but left something in it which He did not convert into good? But why was this? Was He powerless to change the whole lump, so that no evil should remain in it, seeing that He is omnipotent? Lastly, why would He make anything at all of it, and not rather by the same omnipotency cause it not to be at all? Or could it indeed exist contrary to His will? Or if it were from eternity, why did He permit it so to be for infinite spaces of times in the past, and was pleased so long after to make something out of it? Or if He wished now all of a sudden to do something, this rather should the Omnipotent have accomplished, that this evil matter should not be at all, and that He only should be the whole, true, chief, and infinite Good. Or if it were not good that He, who was good, should not also be the framer and creator of what was good, then that matter which was evil being removed, and brought to nothing, He might form good matter, whereof He might create all things. For He would not be omnipotent were He not able to create something good

without being assisted by that matter which had not been created by Himself.[1] Such like things did I revolve in my miserable breast, overwhelmed with most gnawing cares lest I should die ere I discovered the truth; yet was the faith of Thy Christ, our Lord and Saviour, as held in the Catholic Church, fixed firmly in my heart, unformed, indeed, as yet upon many points, and diverging from doctrinal rules, but yet my mind did not utterly leave it, but every day rather drank in more and more of it.

CHAP. VI.—*He refutes the divinations of the astrologers, deduced from the constellations.*

8. Now also had I repudiated the lying divinations and impious absurdities of the astrologers. Let Thy mercies, out of the depth of my soul, confess unto thee[2] for this also, O my God. For Thou, Thou altogether,—for who else is it that calls us back from the death of all errors, but that Life which knows not how to die, and the Wisdom which, requiring no light, enlightens the minds that do, whereby the universe is governed, even to the fluttering leaves of trees?—Thou providedst also for my obstinacy wherewith I struggled with Vindicianus,[3] an acute old man, and Nebridius, a young one of remarkable talent; the former vehemently declaring, and the latter frequently, though with a certain measure of doubt, saying, "That no art existed by which to foresee future things, but that men's surmises had oftentimes the help of luck, and that of many things which they foretold some came to pass unawares to the predicters, who lighted on it by their oft speaking." Thou, therefore, didst provide a friend for me, who was no negligent consulter of the astrologers, and yet not thoroughly skilled in those arts but, as I said, a curious consulter with them; and yet knowing somewhat, which he said he had heard from his father, which, how far it would tend to overthrow the estimation of that art, he knew not. This man, then, by name Firminius, having received a liberal education, and being well versed in rhetoric, consulted me, as one very dear to him, as to what I thought on some affairs of his, wherein his worldly hopes had risen, viewed with regard to

[1] See xi. sec. 7, note, below. [2] Ps. cvii. 8, *Vulg.* [3] See iv. sec. 5, note, above.

his so-called constellations; and I, who had now begun to lean in this particular towards Nebridius' opinion, did not indeed decline to speculate about the matter, and to tell him what came into my irresolute mind, but still added that I was now almost persuaded that these were but empty and ridiculous follies. Upon this he told me that his father had been very curious in such books, and that he had a friend who was as interested in them as he was himself, who, with combined study and consultation, fanned the flame of their affection for these toys, insomuch that they would observe the moment when the very dumb animals which bred in their houses brought forth, and then observed the position of the heavens with regard to them, so as to gather fresh proofs of this so-called art. He said, moreover, that his father had told him, that at the time his mother was about to give birth to him (Firminius), a female servant of that friend of his father's was also great with child, which could not be hidden from her master, who took care with most diligent exactness to know of the birth of his very dogs. And so it came to pass that (the one for his wife, and the other for his servant, with the most careful observation, calculating the days and hours, and the smaller divisions of the hours) both were delivered at the same moment, so that both were compelled to allow the very selfsame constellations, even to the minutest point, the one for his son, the other for his young slave. For so soon as the women began to be in travail, they each gave notice to the other of what was fallen out in their respective houses, and had messengers ready to despatch to one another so soon as they had information of the actual birth, of which they had easily provided, each in his own province, to give instant intelligence. Thus, then, he said, the messengers of the respective parties met one another in such equal distances from either house, that neither of them could discern any difference either in the position of the stars or other most minute points. And yet Firminius, born in a high estate in his parents' house, ran his course through the prosperous paths of this world, was increased in wealth, and elevated to honours; whereas that slave—the yoke of his condition being

unrelaxed—continued to serve his masters, as Firminius, who knew him, informed me.

9. Upon hearing and believing these things, related by so reliable a person, all that resistance of mine melted away; and first I endeavoured to reclaim Firminius himself from that curiosity, by telling him, that upon inspecting his constellations, I ought, were I to foretell truly, to have seen in them parents eminent among their neighbours, a noble family in its own city, good birth, becoming education, and liberal learning. But if that servant had consulted me upon the same constellations, since they were his also, I ought again to tell him, likewise truly, to see in them the meanness of his origin, the abjectness of his condition, and everything else altogether removed from and at variance with the former. Whence, then, looking upon the same constellations, I should, if I spoke the truth, speak diverse things, or if I spoke the same, speak falsely; thence assuredly was it to be gathered, that whatever, upon consideration of the constellations, was foretold truly, was not by art, but by chance; and whatever falsely, was not from the unskilfulness of the art, but the error of chance.

10. An opening being thus made, I ruminated within myself on such things, that no one of those dotards (who followed such occupations, and whom I longed to assail, and with derision to confute) might urge against me that Firminius had informed me falsely, or his father him: I turned my thoughts to those that are born twins, who generally come out of the womb so near one to another, that the small distance of time between them—how much force soever they may contend that it has in the nature of things—cannot be noted by human observation, or be expressed in those figures which the astrologer is to examine that he may pronounce the truth. Nor can they be true; for, looking into the same figures, he must have foretold the same of Esau and Jacob,[1] whereas the same did not happen to them. He must therefore speak falsely; or if truly, then, looking into the same figures, he

[1] He uses the same illustration when speaking of the *mathematici*, or astrologers, in his *De Doct. Christ.* ii. 33.

must not speak the same things. Not then by art, but by chance, would he speak truly. For Thou, O Lord, most righteous Ruler of the universe, the inquirers and inquired of knowing it not, workest by a hidden inspiration that the consulter should hear what, according to the hidden deservings of souls, he ought to hear, out of the depth of Thy righteous judgment, to whom let not man say, "What is this?" or "Why that?" Let him not say so, for he is man.

CHAP. VII.—*He is severely exercised as to the origin of evil.*

11. And now, O my Helper, hadst Thou freed me from those fetters; and I inquired, "Whence is evil?" and found no result. But Thou sufferedst me not to be carried away from the faith by any fluctuations of thought, whereby I believed Thee both to exist, and Thy substance to be unchangeable, and that Thou hadst a care of and wouldest judge men; and that in Christ, Thy Son, our Lord, and the Holy Scriptures, which the authority of Thy Catholic Church pressed upon me, Thou hadst planned the way of man's salvation to that life which is to come after this death. These things being safe and immoveably settled in my mind, I eagerly inquired, "Whence is evil?" What torments did my travailing heart then endure! What sighs, O my God! Yet even there were Thine ears open, and I knew it not; and when in stillness I sought earnestly, those silent contritions of my soul were strong cries unto Thy mercy. No man knoweth, but only Thou, what I endured. For what was that which was thence through my tongue poured into the ears of my most familiar friends? Did the whole tumult of my soul, for which neither time nor speech was sufficient, reach them? Yet went the whole into Thine ears, all of which I bellowed out from the sighings of my heart; and my desire was before Thee, and the light of mine eyes was not with me;[1] for that was within, I without. Nor was that in place, but my attention was directed to things contained in place; but there did I find no resting-place, nor did they receive me in such a way as that I could say, "It is sufficient, it is well;" nor did

[1] Ps. xxxvii. 9-11, *Vulg.*

they let me turn back, where it might be well enough with me. For to these things was I superior, but inferior to Thee; and Thou art my true joy when I am subjected to Thee, and Thou hadst subjected to me what Thou createdst beneath me.[1] And this was the true temperature and middle region of my safety, to continue in Thine image, and by serving Thee to have dominion over the body. But when I lifted myself proudly against Thee, and "ran against the Lord, even on His neck, with the thick bosses" of my buckler,[2] even these inferior things were placed above me, and pressed upon me, and nowhere was there alleviation or breathing space. They encountered my sight on every side in crowds and troops, and in thought the images of bodies obtruded themselves as I was returning to Thee, as if they would say unto me, "Whither goest thou, unworthy and base one?" And these things had sprung forth out of my wound; for thou humblest the proud like one that is wounded,[3] and through my own swelling was I separated from Thee; yea, my too much swollen face closed up mine eyes.

CHAP. VIII.—*By God's assistance he by degrees arrives at the truth.*

12. "But Thou, O Lord, shalt endure for ever,"[4] yet not for ever art Thou angry with us, because Thou dost commiserate our dust and ashes; and it was pleasing in Thy sight to reform my deformity, and by inward stings didst Thou disturb me, that I should be dissatisfied until Thou wert made sure to my inward sight. And by the secret hand of Thy remedy was my swelling lessened, and the disordered and darkened eyesight of my mind, by the sharp anointings of healthful sorrows, was from day to day made whole.

[1] Man can only control the forces of nature by yielding obedience to nature's laws; and our true joy and safety is only to be found in being "subjected" to God. So Augustine says in another place (*De Trin.* x. 7), the soul is enjoined to know itself, "in order that it may consider itself, and live according to its own nature; that is, seek to be regulated according to its own nature, viz. under Him to whom it ought to be subject, and above those things to which it is to be preferred; under Him by whom it ought to be ruled, above those things which it ought to rule."

[2] Job xv. 26. [3] Ps. lxxxix. 11, *Vulg.* [4] Ps. cii. 12.

CHAP. IX.—*He compares the doctrine of the Platonists concerning the Logos with the much more excellent doctrine of Christianity.*

13. And Thou, willing first to show me how Thou "resistest the proud, but givest grace unto the humble,"[1] and by how great an act of mercy Thou hadst pointed out to men the path of humility, in that Thy "Word was made flesh" and dwelt among men,—Thou procuredst for me, by the instrumentality of one inflated with most monstrous pride, certain books of the Platonists,[2] translated from Greek into Latin.[3] And therein

[1] Jas. iv. 6, and 1 Pet. v. 5.

[2] "This," says Watts, "was likely to be the book of Amelius the Platonist, who hath indeed this beginning of St John's Gospel, calling the apostle a barbarian." This Amelius was a disciple of Plotinus, who was the first to develope and formulate the Neo-Platonic doctrines, and of whom it is said that he would not have his likeness taken, nor be reminded of his birthday, because it would recall the existence of the body he so much despised. A popular account of the theories of Plotinus, and their connection with the doctrines of Plato and of Christianity respectively, will be found in Archer Butler's *Lectures on Ancient Philosophy*, vol. ii. pp. 348–358. For a more systematic view of his writings, see Ueberweg's *History of Philosophy*, sec. 68. Augustine alludes again in his *De Vita Beata* (sec. 4) to the influence the Platonic writings had on him at this time; and it is interesting to note how in God's providence they were drawing him to seek a fuller knowledge of Him, just as in his nineteenth year (book iii. sec. 7, above) the *Hortensius* of Cicero stimulated him to the pursuit of wisdom. Thus in his experience was exemplified the truth embodied in the saying of Clemens Alexandrinus.—"Philosophy led the Greeks to Christ, as the law did the Jews." Archbishop Trench, in his *Hulsean Lectures* (lecs. 1 and 3, 1846, "Christ the Desire of all Nations"), enters with interesting detail into this question, specially as it relates to the heathen world. "None," he says in lecture 3, "can thoughtfully read the early history of the Church without marking how hard the Jewish Christians found it to make their own the true idea of a Son of God, as indeed is witnessed by the whole Epistle to the Hebrews—how comparatively easy the Gentile converts; how the Hebrew Christians were continually in danger of sinking down into Ebionite heresies, making Christ but a man as other men, refusing to go on unto perfection, or to realize the truth of His higher nature; while, on the other hand, the genial promptness is as remarkable with which the Gentile Church welcomed and embraced the offered truth, 'God manifest in the flesh.' We feel that there must have been effectual preparations in the latter, which wrought its greater readiness for receiving and heartily embracing this truth when it arrived." The passage from Amelius the Platonist, referred to at the beginning of this note, is examined in Burton's *Bampton Lectures*, note 90. It has been adverted to by Eusebius, Theodoret, and perhaps by Augustine in the *De Civ. Dei*, x. 29, quoted in note 2, sec. 25, below. See Kayes' *Clement*, pp. 116–124.

[3] See i. sec. 23, note, above, and also his *Life*, in the last vol. of the Benedictine edition of his works, for a very fair estimate of his knowledge of Greek.

I read, not indeed in the same words, but to the selfsame effect,[1] enforced by many and divers reasons, that, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by Him; and without Him was not any thing made that was made." That which was made by

[1] The Neo-Platonic ideas as to the "Word" or Λόγος, which Augustine (1) contrasts during the remainder of this book with the doctrine of the gospel, had its germ in the writings of Plato. The Greek term expresses both *reason* and the *expression of reason* in speech; and the Fathers frequently illustrate, by reference to this connection between ideas and uttered words, the fact that the "Word" that was *with God* had an incarnate existence in the world as the "Word" *made flesh*. By the Logos of the Alexandrian school something very different was meant from the Christian doctrine as to the incarnation, of which the above can only be taken as a dim illustration. It has been questioned, indeed, whether the philosophers, from Plotinus to the Gnostics of the time of St. John, believed the *Logos* and the supreme God to have in any sense separate "personalities." Dr. Burton, in his *Bampton Lectures*, concludes that they did not (lect. vii. p. 215, and note 98; compare Dorner, *Person of Christ*, i. 27, Clark); and quotes Origen when he points out to Celsus, that "while the heathen use the reason of God as another term for God Himself, the Christians use the term *Logos* for the Son of God." Another point of difference which appears in Augustine's review of Platonism above, is found in the Platonist's discarding the idea of the *Logos* becoming man. This the very genius of their philosophy forbade them to hold, since they looked on matter as impure. (2) It has been charged against Christianity by Gibbon and other sceptical writers, that it has borrowed largely from the doctrines of Plato; and it has been said that this doctrine of the *Logos* was taken from them by Justin Martyr. This charge, says Burton (*ibid.* p. 194), "has laid open in its supporters more inconsistencies and more misstatements than any other which ever has been advanced." We have alluded in the note to book iii. sec. 8, above, to Justin Martyr's search after truth. He endeavoured to find it successively in the Stoical, the Peripatetic, the Pythagorean, and the Platonic schools; and he appears to have thought as highly of Plato's philosophy as did Augustine. He does not, however, fail to criticise his doctrine when inconsistent with Christianity (see Burton, *ibid.* notes 18 and 86). Justin Martyr has apparently been chosen for attack as being the earliest of the post-apostolic Fathers. Burton, however, shows that Ignatius, who knew St. John, and was bishop of Antioch thirty years before his death, used precisely the same expression as applied to Christ (*ibid.* p. 204). This would appear to be a conclusive answer to this objection. (3) It may be well to note here Burton's general conclusions as to the employment of this term *Logos* in St. John, since it occurs frequently in this part of the *Confessions*. Every one must have observed St. John's use of the term is peculiar as compared with the other apostles, but it is not always borne in mind that a generation probably elapsed between the date of his gospel and that of the other apostolic writings. In this interval the Gnostic heresy had made great advances; and it would appear that John, finding this term *Logos* prevalent when he wrote, in-

Him is "life; and the life was the light of men. And the light shineth in darkness; and the darkness comprehendeth it not."[1] And that the soul of man, though it "bears witness of the light,"[2] yet itself "is not that light;"[3] but the Word of God, being God, is that true light that lighteth every man that cometh into the world."[4] And that "He was in the world, and the world was made by Him, and the world knew Him not."[5] But that "He came unto His own, and His own received Him not.[6] But as many as received Him, to them gave He power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on His name."[7] This I did not read there.

14. In like manner, I read there that God the Word was born not of flesh, nor of blood, nor of the will of man, nor of the will of the flesh, but of God. But that "the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us,"[8] I read not there. For I discovered in those books that it was in many and divers ways said, that the Son was in the form of the Father, and "thought it not robbery to be equal with God," for that naturally He was the same substance. But that He emptied Himself, "and took upon Him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: and being found in fashion as a man, He humbled Himself, and became obedient unto death,

fused into it a nobler meaning, and pointed out to those being led away by this heresy that there was indeed One who might be called "the Word"—One who was not, indeed, God's mind, or as the word that comes from the mouth and passes away, but One who, while He had been "made flesh" like unto us, was yet co-eternal with God. "You will perceive," says Archer Butler (*Ancient Philosophy*, vol. ii. p. 10), "how natural, or rather how necessary, is such a process, when you remember that this is exactly what every teacher must do who speaks of God to a heathen; he adopts the term, but he refines and exalts its meaning. Nor, indeed, is the procedure different in any use whatever of language in sacred senses and for sacred purposes. It has been justly remarked, by (I think) Isaac Casaubon, that the principle of all these adaptations is expressed in the sentence of St. Paul, Ὃν ἀγνοοῦντες ἐνσεβεῖτε, τοῦτον ἐγὼ καταγγέλλω ὑμῖν." On the charge against Christianity of having borrowed from heathenism, reference may be made to Trench's *Hulsean Lectures*, lect. i. (1846); and for the sources of Gnosticism, and St. John's treatment of heresies as to the "Word," lects. ii. and v. in Mansel's *Gnostic Heresies* will be consulted with profit.

[1] John i. 1–5. [2] *Ibid.* i. 7, 8. [3] See note, sec. 23, below.
[4] John i. 9. [5] *Ibid.* i. 10. [6] *Ibid.* i. 11.
[7] *Ibid.* i. 12. [8] *Ibid.* i. 14.

even the death of the cross. Wherefore God also hath highly exalted Him" from the dead, "and given Him a name above every name; that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father;" [1] those books have not. For that before all times, and above all times, Thy only-begotten Son remaineth unchangeably co-eternal with Thee; and that of "His fulness" souls receive,[2] that they may be blessed; and that by participation of the wisdom remaining in them they are renewed, that they may be wise, is there. But that "in due time Christ died for the ungodly," [3] and that Thou sparedst not Thine only Son, but deliveredst Him up for us all,[4] is not there. "Because Thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes;" [5] that they "that labour and are heavy laden" might "come" unto Him and He might refresh them,[6] because He is "meek and lowly in heart." [7] "The meek will He guide in judgment; and the meek will He teach His way;" [8] looking upon our humility and our distress, and forgiving all our sins.[9] But such as are puffed up with the elation of would-be sublimer learning, do not hear Him saying, "Learn of Me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find rest unto your souls." [10] "Because that, when they knew God, they glorified Him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened. Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools." [11]

15. And therefore also did I read there, that they had changed the glory of Thy incorruptible nature into idols and divers forms,—"into an image made like to corruptible man, and to birds, and four-footed beasts, and creeping things," [12] namely, into that Egyptian food[13] for which Esau lost his birth-

[1] Phil. ii. 6-11. [2] John i. 16. [3] Rom. v. 6. [4] Rom. viii. 32.
[5] Matt. xi. 25. [6] *Ibid.* ver. 28. [7] *Ibid.* ver. 29. [8] Ps. xxv. 9.
[9] *Ibid.* ver. 18. [10] Matt. xi. 29. [11] Rom. i. 21, 22. [12] *Ibid.* i. 23.

[13] In the Benedictine edition we have reference to Augustine's *in Ps.* xlvi. 6, where he says: "We find the lentile is an Egyptian food, for it abounds in Egypt, whence the Alexandrian lentile is esteemed so as to be brought to our country, as it grew not here. Esau, by desiring Egyptian food, lost his birth-

right;[1] for that Thy first-born people worshipped the head of a four-footed beast instead of Thee, turning back in heart towards Egypt, and prostrating Thy image—their own soul—before the image "of an ox that eateth grass."[2] These things found I there; but I fed not on them. For it pleased Thee, O Lord, to take away the reproach of diminution from Jacob, that the elder should serve the younger;[3] and Thou hast called the Gentiles into Thine inheritance. And I had come unto Thee from among the Gentiles, and I strained after that gold which Thou willedst Thy people to take from Egypt, seeing that wheresoever it was it was Thine.[4] And to the Athenians

right; and so the Jewish people, of whom it is said they turned back in heart to Egypt, in a manner craved for lentiles, and lost their birthright." See Ex. xvi. 3; Num. xi. 5.

[1] Gen. xxv. 33, 34. [2] Ps. cvi. 20; Ex. xxxii. 1–6. [3] Rom. ix. 12.

[4] Similarly, as to all truth being God's, Justin Martyr says: "Whatever things were rightly said among all men are the property of us Christians" (*Apol.* ii. 13). In this he parallels what Augustine claims in another place (*De Doctr. Christ.* ii. 28): "Let every good and true Christian understand that wherever truth may be found, it belongs to his Master." Origen has a similar allusion to that of Augustine above (*Ep. ad Gregor.* vol. i. 30), but echoes the experience of our erring nature, when he says that the gold of Egypt more frequently becomes transformed into an idol, than into an ornament for the tabernacle of God. Augustine gives us at length his views on this matter in his *De Doctr. Christ.* ii. 60, 61: "If those who are called philosophers, and especially the Platonists, have said aught that is true and in harmony with our faith, we are not only not to shrink from it, but to claim it for our own use from those who have unlawful possession of it. For, as the Egyptians had not only the idols and heavy burdens which the people of Israel hated and fled from, but also vessels and ornaments of gold and silver, and garments, which the same people when going out of Egypt appropriated to themselves, designing them for a better use,—not doing this on their own authority, but by the command of God, the Egyptians themselves, in their ignorance, providing them with things which they themselves were not making a good use of (Ex. iii. 21, 22, xii. 35, 36); in the same way all branches of heathen learning have not only false and superstitious fancies and heavy burdens of unnecessary toil, which every one of us, when going out under the leadership of Christ from the fellowship of the heathen, ought to abhor and avoid, but they contain also liberal instruction, which is better adapted to the use of the truth, and some most excellent precepts of morality; and some truths in regard even to the worship of the One God are found among them. Now these are, so to speak, their gold and silver, which they did not create themselves, but dug out of the mines of God's providence which are everywhere scattered abroad, and are perversely and unlawfully prostituting to the worship of devils. These, therefore, the Christian, when he separates himself in spirit from the miserable fellowship of these men, ought to take away from them, and to

Thou saidst by Thy apostle, that in Thee "we live, and move, and have our being;" as one of their own poets has said.[1] And verily these books came from thence. But I set not my mind on the idols of Egypt, whom they ministered to with Thy gold,[2] "who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator."[3]

CHAP. X.—*Divine things are the more clearly manifested to him who withdraws into the recesses of his heart.*

16. And being thence warned to return to myself, I entered into my inward self, Thou leading me on; and I was able to do it, for Thou wert become my helper. And I entered, and with the eye of my soul (such as it was) saw above the same eye of my soul, above my mind, the Unchangeable Light.[4] Not this common light, which all flesh may look upon, nor, as it were, a greater one of the same kind, as though the brightness of this should be much more resplendent, and with its greatness fill up all things. Not like this was that light, but different, yea, very different from all these. Nor was it above my mind as oil is above water, nor as heaven above earth; but above it was, because it made me, and I below it, because I was made by it. He who knows the Truth knows that Light; and he that knows it knoweth eternity. Love knoweth

devote to their proper use in preaching the gospel. Their garments, also,—that is, human institutions such as are adapted to that intercourse with men which is indispensable in this life,—we must take and turn to a Christian use. And what else have many good and faithful men among our brethren done? Do we not see with what a quantity of gold and silver, and garments, Cyprian, that most persuasive teacher and most blessed martyr, was loaded when he came out of Egypt? How much Lactantius brought with him! And Victorinus, and Optatus, and Hilary, not to speak of living men! How much Greeks out of number have borrowed! And, prior to all these, that most faithful servant of God, Moses, had done the same thing; for of him it is written that he was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians (Acts vii. 22). . . . For what was done at the time of the exodus was no doubt a type prefiguring what happens now."

[1] Acts xvii. 28. [2] Hosea ii. 8. [3] Rom. i. 25.

[4] Not the "corporeal brightness" which as a Manichee he had believed in, and to which reference has been made in iii. secs. 10, 12, iv. sec. 3, and 2, above. Th[illegible] Christian belief he indicates in his *De Trin.* viii. 2 [illegible] Light (1 John i. 5), not in such way that these eyes see, but in [illegible] heart sees when it is said, 'He is Truth.'" See also note 1

it. O Eternal Truth, and true Love, and loved Eterni
Thou art my God; to Thee do I sigh both night and
When I first knew Thee, Thou liftedst me up, that I migh
there was that which I might see, and that yet it was n
that did see. And Thou didst beat back the infirmity of
sight, pouring forth upon me most strongly Thy beams of li
and I trembled with love and fear; and I found myself t
far off from Thee, in the region of dissimilarity, as if I he
this voice of Thine from on high: "I am the food of str
men; grow, and thou shalt feed upon me; nor shalt t
convert me, like the food of thy flesh, into thee, but t
shalt be converted into me." And I learned that Thou
iniquity dost correct man, and Thou dost make my sou
consume away like a spider.[2] And I said, "Is Truth, th
fore, nothing because it is neither diffused through space, fini
nor infinite?" And Thou criedst to me from afar, "Yes
verily, 'I AM THAT I AM.'"[3] And I heard this, as things are

[1] If we knew not God, he says, we could not love Him (*De Trin.* viii. 12); but in language very similar to that above, he tells us "we are men, created in the image of our Creator, whose eternity is true, and whose truth is eternal; whose love is eternal and true, and who Himself is the eternal, true, and adorable Trinity, without confusion, without separation" (*De Civ. Dei*, xi. 28); God, then, as even the Platonists hold, being the principle of all knowledge. "Let Him," he concludes, in his *De Civ. Dei* (viii. 4), "be sought in whom all things are secured to us, let Him be discovered in whom all truth becomes certain to us, let Him be loved in whom all becomes right to us."

[2] Ps. xxxix. 11, *Vulg.*

[3] Ex. iii. 14. Augustine, when in his *De Civ. Dei* (viii. 11, 12) he makes reference to this text, leans to the belief, from certain parallels between Plato's doctrines and those of the word of God, that he may have derived information concerning the Old Testament Scriptures from an interpreter when in Egypt. He says: "The most striking thing in this connection, and that which most of all inclines me almost to assent to the opinion that Plato was not ignorant of those writings, is the answer which was given to the question elicited from the holy Moses when the words of God were conveyed to him by the angel; for when he asked what was the name of that God who was commanding him to go and deliver the Hebrew people out of Egypt, this answer was given: 'I am who am; and thou shalt say to the children of Israel, He who *is* sent me unto you;' as though, compared with Him that truly *is*, because He is unchangeable, those things which have been created mutable *are* not,—a truth which Plato ... d, and most diligently commended. And I know not whether ... is anywhere to be found in the books of those who were before ... t book where it is said, 'I am who am; and thou shalt say

heard in the heart, nor was there room for doubt; and I should more readily doubt that I live than that Truth is not, which is "clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made."[1]

CHAP. XI.—*That creatures are mutable and God alone immutable.*

17. And I viewed the other things below Thee, and perceived that they neither altogether are, nor altogether are not. They are, indeed, because they are from Thee; but are not, because they are not what Thou art. For that truly is which remains immutably.[2] It is good, then, for me to cleave unto God,[3] for if I remain not in Him, neither shall I in myself; but He, remaining in Himself, reneweth all things.[4] And Thou art the Lord my God, since Thou standest not in need of my goodness.[5]

CHAP. XII.—*Whatever things the good God has created are very good.*

18. And it was made clear unto me that those things are good which yet are corrupted, which, neither were they supremely good, nor unless they were good, could be corrupted; because if supremely good, they were incorruptible, and if not good at all, there were nothing in them to be corrupted. For corruption harms, but, unless it could diminish goodness, it could not harm. Either, then, corruption harms not, which cannot

to the children of Israel, *Who is* sent me unto you.' But we need not determine from what source he learned these things,—whether it was from the books of the ancients who preceded him, or, as is more likely, from the words of the apostle (Rom. i. 20), 'Because that which is known of God has been manifested among them, for God hath manifested it to them. For His invisible things from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by those things which have been made, also His eternal power and Godhead.'"—*De Civ. Dei*, viii. 11, 12.

[1] Rom. i. 20.

[2] Therefore, he argues, is God called the I AM (*De Nat. Boni*, 19); for *omnitio facit non esse quod erat*. Similarly, we find him speaking in his *De Mor. Manich.* (c. i.): "For that exists in the highest sense of the word which continues always the same, which is throughout like itself, which cannot in any part be corrupted or changed, which is not subject to time, which admits of no variation in its present as compared with its former condition. This is existence in its true sense." See also note 3, p. 158.

[3] Ps. lxxiii. 28. [4] Wisd. vii. 27. [5] Ps. xvi.

be; or, what is most certain, all which is corrupted is deprived of good. But if they be deprived of all good, they will cease to be. For if they be, and cannot be at all corrupted, they will become better, because they shall remain incorruptibly. And what more monstrous than to assert that those things which have lost all their goodness are made better? Therefore, if they shall be deprived of all good, they shall no longer be. So long, therefore, as they are, they are good; therefore whatsoever is, is good. That evil, then, which I sought whence it was, is not any substance; for were it a substance, it would be good. For either it would be an incorruptible substance, and so a chief good, or a corruptible substance, which unless it were good it could not be corrupted. I perceived, therefore, and it was made clear to me, that Thou didst make all things good, nor is there any substance at all that was not made by Thee; and because all that Thou hast made are not equal, therefore all things are; because individually they are good, and altogether very good, because our God made all things very good.[1]

CHAP. XIII.—*It is meet to praise the Creator for the good things which are made in heaven and earth.*

19. And to Thee is there nothing at all evil, and not only to Thee, but to Thy whole creation; because there is nothing without which can break in, and mar that order which Thou hast appointed it. But in the parts thereof, some things, because they harmonize not with others, are considered evil;[2] whereas those very things harmonize with others, and are good, and in themselves are good. And all these things which do not harmonize together harmonize with the inferior part which we call earth, having its own cloudy and windy sky concordant to it. Far be it from me, then, to say, "These things should not be." For should I see nothing but these, I should indeed desire better; but yet, if only for these, ought I to praise Thee; for that Thou art to be praised is shown from the "earth, dragons, and all deeps; fire, and hail; snow, and

[1] Gen. i. 31, and Ecclus. xxxix. 21. Evil, with Augustine, is a "privation of good." See iii. sec. 12, note, above.

[2] See v. sec. 2, note 1, above, where Augustine illustrates the existence of good and evil by the lights and shades in a painting, etc.

vapours; stormy winds fulfilling Thy word; mountains, and all hills; fruitful trees, and all cedars; beasts, and all cattle; creeping things, and flying fowl; kings of the earth, and all people; princes, and all judges of the earth; both young men and maidens; old men and children," praise Thy name. But when, "from the heavens," these praise Thee, praise Thee, our God, "in the heights," all Thy "angels," all Thy "hosts," "sun and moon," all ye stars and light, "the heavens of heavens," and the "waters that be above the heavens," praise Thy name.[1] I did not now desire better things, because I was thinking of all; and with a better judgment I reflected that the things above were better than those below, but that all were better than those above alone.

CHAP. XIV.—*Being displeased with some part of God's creation, he conceives of two original substances.*

20. There is no wholeness in them whom aught of Thy creation displeaseth; no more than there was in me, when many things which Thou madest displeased me. And, because my soul dared not be displeased at my God, it would not suffer aught to be Thine which displeased it. Hence it had gone into the opinion of two substances, and resisted not, but talked foolishly. And, returning thence, it had made to itself a god, through infinite measures of all space; and imagined it to be Thee, and placed it in its heart, and again had become the temple of its own idol, which was to Thee an abomination. But after Thou hadst fomented the head of me unconscious of it, and closed mine eyes lest they should "behold vanity,"[2] I ceased from myself a little, and my madness was lulled to sleep; and I awoke in Thee, and saw Thee to be infinite, though in another way; and this sight was not derived from the flesh.

CHAP. XV.—*Whatever is, owes its being to God.*

21. And I looked back on other things, and I perceived that it was to Thee they owed their being, and that they were all bounded in Thee; but in another way, not as being in space, but because Thou holdest all things in Thine hand in

[1] Ps. cxlviii. 1–12. [2] Ps. cxix. 37.

truth: and all things are true so far as they have a being; nor is there any falsehood, unless that which is not is thought to be. And I saw that all things harmonized, not with their places only, but with their seasons also. And that Thou, who only art eternal, didst not begin to work after innumerable spaces of times; for that all spaces of times, both those which have passed and which shall pass, neither go nor come, save through Thee, working and abiding.[1]

CHAP. XVI.—*Evil arises not from a substance, but from the perversion of the will.*

22. And I discerned and found it no marvel, that bread which is distasteful to an unhealthy palate is pleasant to a healthy one; and that the light, which is painful to sore eyes, is delightful to sound ones. And Thy righteousness displeaseth the wicked; much more the viper and little worm, which Thou hast created good, fitting in with inferior parts of Thy creation; with which the wicked themselves also fit in, the more in proportion as they are unlike Thee, but with the superior creatures, in proportion as they become like to Thee.[2] And I inquired what iniquity was, and ascertained it not to be a substance, but a perversion of the will, bent aside from Thee, O God, the Supreme Substance, towards these lower things, and casting out its bowels,[3] and swelling outwardly.

CHAP. XVII.—*Above his changeable mind, he discovers the unchangeable Author of Truth.*

23. And I marvelled that I now loved Thee, and no phantasm instead of Thee. And yet I did not merit to enjoy my God, but was transported to Thee by Thy beauty, and presently torn away from Thee by mine own weight, sinking with grief into these inferior things. This weight was carnal custom. Yet was there a remembrance of Thee with me; nor did I any way doubt that there was one to whom I might cleave, but that I was not yet one who could cleave unto

[1] See xi. secs. 15, 16, 26, etc., below. [2] See v. sec. 2, note 1, above.

[3] Ecclus. x. 9. Commenting on this passage of the Apocrypha (*De Mus.* vi. 40), he says, that while the soul's happiness and life is in God, "what is to go into outer things, but to cast out its *inward parts*, that is, to place itself far from God—not by distance of place, but by the affection of the mind!"

Thee; for that the body which is corrupted presseth down the soul, and the earthly dwelling weigheth down the mind which thinketh upon many things.[1] And most certain I was that Thy "invisible things from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even Thy eternal power and Godhead."[2] For, inquiring whence it was that I admired the beauty of bodies whether celestial or terrestrial, and what supported me in judging correctly on things mutable, and pronouncing, "This should be thus, this not,"—inquiring, then, whence I so judged, seeing I did so judge, I had found the unchangeable and true eternity of Truth, above my changeable mind. And thus, by degrees, I passed from bodies to the soul, which makes use of the senses of the body to perceive; and thence to its inward[3] faculty, to which the bodily senses represent outward things, and up to which reach the capabilities of beasts; and thence, again, I passed on to the reasoning faculty,[4] unto which whatever is received from the senses of the body is referred to be judged, which also, finding itself to be variable in me, raised

[1] Wisd. ix. 15. [2] Rom. i. 20. [3] See above, sec. 10.

[4] Here, and more explicitly in sec. 25, we have before us what has been called the "trichotomy" of man. This doctrine Augustine does not deny in theory, but appears to consider (*De Anima*, iv. 32) it prudent to overlook in practice. The biblical view of psychology may well be considered here not only on its own account, but as enabling us clearly to apprehend this passage and that which follows it. It is difficult to understand how any one can doubt that St. Paul, when speaking in 1 Thess. v. 23, of our "*spirit, soul, and body* being preserved unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ," implies a belief in a kind of trinity in man. And it is very necessary to the understanding of other Scriptures that we should realize what special attributes pertain to the soul and the spirit respectively. It may be said, generally, that the soul (ψυχή) is that passionate and affectionate nature which is common to us and the inferior creatures, while the spirit (πνεῦμα) is the higher intellectual nature which is peculiar to man. Hence our Lord in His agony in the garden says (Matt. xxvi. 38), "My SOUL is exceeding *sorrowful*"—the soul being liable to emotions of pleasure and pain. In the same passage (ver. 41) he says to the apostles who had slept during His great agony, "The SPIRIT indeed is *willing*, but the flesh is weak," so that the spirit is the seat of the will. And that the spirit is also the seat of *consciousness* we gather from St. Paul's words (1 Cor. ii. 11), "What man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God." And it is *on the spirit of man that the Spirit of God operates*; whence we read (Rom. viii. 16), "The Spirit beareth witness with our spirit, that we are

itself up to its own intelligence, and from habit drew away my thoughts, withdrawing itself from the crowds of contradictory phantasms; that so it might find out that light[1] by which it

children of God." It is important to note that the word "flesh" (σὰρξ) has its special significance, as distinct from body. The word comes to us from the Hebrew through the Hellenistic Greek of the LXX., and in biblical language (see Bishop Pearson's *Præfatio Paranetica* to his edition of the LXX.) stands for our human nature with its worldly surroundings and liability to temptation; so that when it is said, "The Word was made flesh," we have what is equivalent to, "The Word put on human nature." It is, therefore, the flesh and the spirit that are ever represented in conflict one with the other when men are in the throes of temptation. So it must be while life lasts; for it is characteristic of our position in the world that we possess *soulish* bodies (to employ the barbarous but expressive word of Dr. Candlish in his *Life in a Risen Saviour*, p. 182), and only on the morning of the resurrection will the body be *spiritual* and suited to the new sphere of its existence: "It is sown a natural [ψυχικὸν, "soulish"] body, it is raised a spiritual [πνευματικὸν] body" (1 Cor. xv. 44); "for," as Augustine says in his *Enchiridion* (c. xci.), "just as now the body is called *animate* (or, using the Greek term, as above, instead of the Latin, "soulish"), though it is a body and not a soul, so then the body shall be called *spiritual*, though it shall be a body, not a spirit. . . . No part of our nature shall be in discord with another; but as we shall be free from enemies without, so we shall not have ourselves for enemies within." For further information on this most interesting subject, see Delitzsch, *Biblical Psychology*, ii. 4 ("The True and False Trichotomy"); Olshausen, *Opuscula Theologica*, iv. ("De Trichotomia"); and cc. 2, 17, and 18 of R. W. Evans' *Ministry of the Body*, where the subject is discussed with thoughtfulness and spiritual insight. This matter is also treated of in the introductory chapters of Schlegel's *Philosophy of Life*.

[1] That light which illumines the soul, he tells us in his *De Gen. ad Lit.* (xii. 31), is God Himself, from whom all light cometh; and, though created in His image and likeness, when it tries to discover Him, *palpitat infirmitate, et minus valet*. In sec. 13, above, speaking of Platonism, he describes it as holding "that the soul of man, though it 'bears witness of the Light,' yet itself 'is not that Light.'" In his *De Civ. Dei*, x. 2, he quotes from Plotinus (mentioned in note 2, sec. 13, above) in regard to the Platonic doctrine as to enlightenment from on high. He says: "Plotinus, commenting on Plato, repeatedly and strongly asserts that not even the soul, which they believe to be the soul of the world, derives its blessedness from any other source than we do, viz. from that Light which is distinct from it and created it, and by whose intelligible illumination it enjoys light in things intelligible. He also compares these spiritual things to the vast and conspicuous heavenly bodies, as if God were the sun, and the soul the moon; for they suppose that the moon derives its light from the sun. That great Platonist, therefore, says that the rational soul, or rather the intellectual soul,—in which class he comprehends the souls of the blessed immortals who inhabit heaven,—has no nature superior to it save God, the Creator of the world and the soul itself, and that these heavenly spirits

was besprinkled, when, without all doubting, it cried out, "that the unchangeable was to be preferred before the changeable;" whence also it knew that unchangeable, which, unless it had in some way known, it could have had no sure ground for preferring it to the changeable. And thus, with the flash of a trembling glance, it arrived at that which is. And then I saw Thy invisible things understood by the things that are made.[1] But I was not able to fix my gaze thereon; and my infirmity being beaten back, I was thrown again on my accustomed habits, carrying along with me naught but a loving memory thereof, and an appetite for what I had, as it were, smelt the odour of, but was not yet able to eat.

CHAP. XVIII.—*Jesus Christ, the Mediator, is the only way of safety.*

24. And I sought a way of acquiring strength sufficient to enjoy Thee; but I found it not until I embraced that "Mediator between God and man, the man Christ Jesus,"[2] "who is over all, God blessed for ever,"[3] calling unto me, and saying, "I am the way, the truth, and the life,"[4] and mingling that food which I was unable to receive with our flesh. For "the Word was made flesh,"[5] that Thy wisdom, by which Thou createdst all things, might provide milk for our infancy. For I did not grasp my Lord Jesus,—I, though humbled, grasped not the humble One;[6] nor did I know what lesson that infirmity of His would teach us. For Thy Word, the Eternal Truth, pre-eminent above the higher parts of Thy creation, derive their blessed life, and the [illegible]h, from the same source as ourselves, agreeing with the gospel wh[illegible]d, 'There was a man sent from God, whose name was John. The sam[illegible]or a witness, to bear witness of that Light, that through Him all [illegible]. He was not that Light, but that He might bear witness of the [illegible]ght. That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world' (John i. 6–9);—a distinction which sufficiently proves that the rational or intellectual soul, such as John had, cannot be its own light, but needs to receive illumination from another, the true Light. This John himself avows when he delivers his witness (*ibid.* 16): 'We have all received of His fulness.'" Comp. Tertullian, *De Testim. Anim.*, and the [illegible] to iv. sec. 25, above, where other references to God's being the Father of [illegible] are given.

[1] Rom. i. 20. [2] 1 Tim. ii. 5. [3] Rom. ix. [illegible]
[4] John xiv. 6. [5] John i. 14.
[6] Christ descended that we may ascend. See iv. sec. 19, notes 1 [illegible]

raises up those that are subject unto Itself; but in this lower world built for Itself a humble habitation of our clay, whereby He intended to abase from themselves such as would be subjected and bring them over unto Himself, allaying their swelling, and fostering their love; to the end that they might go on no further in self-confidence, but rather should become weak, seeing before their feet the Divinity weak by taking our "coats of skins;"[1] and wearied, might cast themselves down upon It, and It rising, might lift them up.

CHAP. XIX.—*He does not yet fully understand the saying of John, that "the Word was made flesh."*

25. But I thought differently, thinking only of my Lord Christ as of a man of excellent wisdom, to whom no man could be equalled; especially for that, being wonderfully born of a virgin, He seemed, through the divine care for us, to have attained so great authority of leadership,—for an example of contemning temporal things for the obtaining of immortality. But what mystery there was in, "The Word was made flesh,"[2]

[1] Gen. iii. 21. Augustine frequently makes these "coats of skin" symbolize the mortality to which our first parents became subject by being deprived of the tree of life (see iv. sec. 15, note 3, above); and in his *Enarr. in Ps.* (cili. 7, 8), he says they are thus symbolical inasmuch as the skin is only taken from animals when dead.

[2] We have already seen, in note 1, sec. 13, above, how this text (1) runs counter to Platonic beliefs as to the *Logos*. The following passage from Augustine's *De Civ. Dei*, x. 29, is worth putting on record in this connection:—"Are ye ashamed to be corrected? This is the vice of the proud. It is, forsooth, a degradation for learned men to pass [illegible] school of Plato to the discipleship of Christ, who by His Spirit ta[illegible]man to think and to say, 'In the beginning was the Word, and th[illegible] with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning w[illegible] All things were made by Him, and without Him was not any thing m[illegible]at was made. In Him was life; and the life was the light of men. And the light shineth in darkness; and the darkness comprehended it not' (John i. 1–5). The old saint Simplicianus, afterwards Bishop of Milan, used to tell me that a certain Platonist was in the habit of saying that this opening passage of the holy Gospel entitled, 'According to John,' should be written in letters of gold, and hung up in all churches in the most conspicuous place. But the proud scorn to take God for their [illegible], because 'the Word was made flesh and dwelt among us' (John i. 14). [illegible] with these miserable creatures it is not enough that they are sick, but [illegible]st of their sickness, and are ashamed of the medicine which could heal [illegible]nd doing so, they secure not elevation, but a more disastrous fall." [illegible]so, as Irenæus has remarked, (2) entirely opposes the false teaching of

I could not even imagine. Only I had learnt out of what is delivered to us in writing of Him, that He did eat, drink, sleep, walk, rejoice in spirit, was sad, and discoursed; that flesh alone did not cleave unto Thy Word, but with the human soul and body. All know thus who know the unchangeableness of Thy Word, which I now knew as well as I could, nor did I at all have any doubt about it. For, now to move the limbs of the body at will, now not; now to be stirred by some affection, now not; now by signs to enunciate wise sayings, now to keep silence, are properties of a soul and mind subject to change. And should these things be falsely written of Him, all the rest would risk the imputation, nor would there remain in those books any saving faith for the human race. Since, then, they were written truthfully, I acknowledged a perfect man to be in Christ—not the body of a man only, nor with the body a sensitive soul without a rational, but a very man; whom, not only as being a form of truth, but for a certain great excellency of human nature and a more perfect participation of wisdom, I decided was to be preferred before others. But Alypius imagined the Catholics to believe that God was so clothed with flesh, that, besides God and flesh, there was no soul in Christ, and did not think that a human mind was ascribed to Him. And, because He was thoroughly persuaded that the actions which were recorded of Him could not be performed except by a vital and rational creature, he moved the [illegible]ly towards the Christian faith. But, learning [illegible] this was the error of the Apollinarian heretics[1] [illegible]rejoiced in the Catholic faith,

the *Docetæ*, who, as their name imports, believed, with the Manichæans, that Christ only *appeared* to have a body; as was the case, they said, with the angels entertained by Abraham (see Burton's *Bampton Lectures*, lect. 6). It is curious to note here that Augustine maintained that the Angel of the Covenant was not an anticipation, as it were, of the incarnation of the Word, but only a created angel (*De Civ. Dei*, xvi. 29, and *De Trin.* iii. 11), thus unconsciously playing into the hands of the Arians. See Bull's *Def. Fid. Nic.* i. 1, sec. 2, etc., and iv. 3, sec. 14.

[1] The founder of this heresy was Apollinaris the younger, Bishop of Laodicea, whose erroneous doctrine was condemned at the Council of Constantinople, A.D. 381. Note 4, sec. 23, above, on the "trichotomy," affords help in understanding it. Apollinaris seems to have desired to exalt the Saviour, not to

and was conformed to it. But somewhat later it was, I confess, that I learned how in the sentence, "The Word was made flesh," the Catholic truth can be distinguished from the false-

detract from His honour, like Arius. Before his time men had written much on the divine and much on the human side of our Lord's nature. He endeavoured to show (see Dorner's *Person of Christ*, A. ii. 252, etc., Clark) in what the two natures united differed from human nature. He concluded that our Lord had no need of the human σῶμα, and that its place was supplied by the divine nature, so that God "the Word," the body and the ψυχή, constituted the being of the Saviour. Dr. Pusey quotes the following passages hereon:—"The faithful who believes and confesses in the Mediator a real human, *i.e.* our nature, although God the Word, taking it in a singular manner, sublimated it into the only Son of God, so that He who took it, and what He took, was one person in the Trinity. For, after man was assumed, there became not a quaternity but remained the Trinity, that assumption making in an ineffable way the truth of one person in God and man. Since we do not say that Christ is only God, as do the Manichæan heretics, nor only man, as the Photinian heretics, nor in such wise man as not to have anything which certainly belongs to human nature, whether the soul, or in the soul itself the rational mind, or the flesh not taken of the woman, but made of the Word, converted and changed into flesh, which three false and vain statements made three several divisions of the Apollinarian heretics; but we say that Christ is true God, born of God the Father, without any beginning of time, and also true man, born of a human mother in the fulness of time; and that His humanity, whereby He is inferior to the Father, does not derogate from His divinity, whereby He is equal to the Father" (*De Dono Persev.* sec. *ult.*). "There was formerly a heresy—its remnants perhaps still exist—of some called Apollinarians. Some of them said that that man whom the Word took when 'the Word was made flesh,' had not the human, *i.e.* rational (λογικὸν) mind, but was only a soul without human intelligence, but that the very Word of God was in that man instead of a mind. They were cast out,—the Catholic faith rejected th[illegible] made a heresy. It was established in the Catholic faith that [illegible] the wisdom of God took had nothing less than other men, with [illegible] integrity of man's nature, but as to the excellency of His person, ha[illegible] than other men. For other men may be said to be partakers of the Wo[illegible] of God, having the Word of God, but none of them can be called the Word of God, which He was called when it is said, '*The Word was made flesh*'" (*in Ps.* xxix., *Enarr.* iii. sec. 2). "But when they reflected that, if their doctrine were true, they must confess that the only-begotten Son of God, the Wisdom and Word of the Father, *by whom all things were made*, is believed to have taken a sort of brute with the figure of a human body, they were dissatisfied with themselves; yet not so as to amend, and confess that the whole man was assumed by the wisdom of God, without any diminution of nature, but still more boldly denied to Him the soul itself, and everything of any worth in man, and said that He only took human flesh" (*De* 83, *Div. Quæst.* qu. 80). Reference on the questions touched on in this note may be made to Neander's *Church History*, ii. 401, etc. (Clark); and Hagenbach, *History of Doctrines*, i. 270 (Clark).

hood of Photinus.[1] For the disapproval of heretics makes the tenets of Thy Church and sound doctrine to stand out boldly.[2] For there must be also heresies, that the approved may be made manifest among the weak.[3]

CHAP. XX.—*He rejoices that he proceeded from Plato to the Holy Scriptures, and not the reverse.*

26. But having then read those books of the Platonists, and being admonished by them to search for incorporeal truth, I saw Thy invisible things, understood by those things that are made;[4] and though repulsed, I perceived what that was, which through the darkness of my mind I was not allowed to contemplate,—assured that Thou wert, and wert infinite, and yet not diffused in space finite or infinite; and that Thou truly art, who art the same ever,[5] varying neither in part nor motion; and that all other things are from Thee, on this most sure ground alone, that they are. Of these things was I indeed assured, yet too weak to enjoy Thee. I chattered as one well skilled; but had I not sought Thy way in Christ our Saviour, I would have proved not skilful, but ready to perish. For now, filled with my punishment, I had begun to desire to seem wise; yet mourned I not, but rather was puffed up with knowledge.[6] For where was that charity building upon the

[1] See notes on pp. 152, 153.

[2] Archbishop Trench's words on this sentence in the *Confessions* (*Hulsean Lectures*, lect. v. 1845) have a special interest in the present attitude of the Roman Church:—"Doubtless there is a true idea of scriptural developments which has always been recognised, to which the great Fathers of the Church have set their seal; this, namely, that the Church, informed and quickened by the Spirit of God, more and more discovers what in Holy Scripture is given her: but not this, that she unfolds by an independent power anything further therefrom. She has always possessed what she now possesses of doctrine and truth, only not always with the same distinctness of consciousness. She has not added to her wealth, but she has become more and more aware of that wealth; her dowry has remained always the same, but that dowry was so rich and so rare that only little by little she has counted over and taken stock and inventory of her jewels. She has consolidated her doctrine, compelled to this by the challenge and provocation of enemies, or induced to it by the growing sense of her own needs." Perhaps no one, to turn from the Church to individual men, has been more indebted than was Augustine to controversies with heretics for the evolvement of truth.

[3] 1 Cor. xi. 19.

[4] Rom. i. 20.

[5] See sec. 17, note, above.

[6] 1 Cor. viii. 1.

"foundation" of humility, "which is Jesus Christ"?[1] Or, when would these books teach me it? Upon these, therefore, I believe, it was Thy pleasure that I should fall before I studied Thy Scriptures, that it might be impressed on my memory how I was affected by them; and that afterwards when I was subdued by Thy books, and when my wounds were touched by Thy healing fingers, I might discern and distinguish what a difference there is between presumption and confession,—between those who saw whither they were to go, yet saw not the way, and the way which leadeth not only to behold but to inhabit the blessed country.[2] For had I first been moulded in Thy Holy Scriptures, and hadst Thou, in the familiar use of them, grown sweet unto me, and had I afterwards fallen upon those volumes, they might perhaps have withdrawn me from the solid ground of piety; or, had I stood firm in that wholesome disposition which I had thence imbibed, I might have thought that it could have been attained by the study of those books alone.

CHAP. XXI.—*What he found in the sacred books which are not to be found in Plato.*

27. Most eagerly, then, did I seize that venerable writing of Thy Spirit, but more especially the Apostle Paul.[3]

[1] 1 Cor. iii. 11.

[2] We have already quoted a passage from Augustine's *Serm* above), where Christ as God is described as the country w is the way to go to it. The Fathers frequently point o with the philosophers that it little profited that they be attained unless they could learn the *way* to reac with this sentiment, Augustine says: "For it is Mediator and the Way. Since, if the way lieth betw place whither he goes, there is hope of his reaching or if he know not where it is, what boots it to k (*De Civ. Dei*, xi. 2). And again, in his *De T* use is it for the proud man, who, on that ac upon the ship of wood, to behold from afar h ow can it hurt the humble m hen he is actually coming to borne?"

Literally, "The w ; words which ration of Sc d word

difficulties vanished away, in which he at one time appeared to me to contradict himself, and the text of his discourse not to agree with the testimonies of the Law and the Prophets. And the face of that pure speech appeared to me one and the same; and I learned to "rejoice with trembling."[1] So I commenced, and found that whatsoever truth I had there read was declared here with the recommendation of Thy grace; that he who sees may not so glory as if he had not received[2] not only that which he sees, but also that he can see (for what hath he which he hath not received?); and that he may not only be admonished to see Thee, who art ever the same, but also may be healed, to hold Thee; and that he who from afar off is not able to see, may still walk on the way by which he may reach, behold, and possess Thee. For though a man "delight in the law of God after the inward man,"[3] what shall he do with that other law in his members which warreth against the law of his mind, and bringeth him into captivity to the law of sin, which is in his members?[4] For Thou art righteous, O Lord, but we have sinned and committed iniquity, and have done wickedly,[5] and Thy hand is grown heavy upon us, and we are justly delivered over unto that ancient sinner, the governor of death; for he induced our will to be like his will, whereby he remained not in Thy truth. What shall "wretched man" do? "Who shall deliver him from the body of this death," but Thy grace only, "through Jesus Christ our Lord,"[6] whom Thou ha[illegible] begotten co-eternal, and createdst[7] in the beginning of Thy wa[illegible]

equally clear, however, that he gave full recognition to the human eleme[illegible] the word. See *De Cons. Evang.* ii. 12, where both these aspects are p[illegible] discoverable. Compare also *ibid.* c. 24.

[1] Ps. ii. 11. [2] 1 Cor. iv. 7. [3] Rom. vii. 22. [4] *Ibid.* ver[illegible]

[5] Song of the Three Children, 4 *sq.* [6] Rom. vii. 24[illegible]

[7] Prov. viii. 22, as quoted from the old Italic version. It must not be[illegible] stood to teach that the Lord is a creature. (1) Augustine, as indeed is[illegible] in the *Confessions* above, understands the passage of the [illegible]carnation o[illegible] and in his *De Doct. Christ.* i. 38, he distinctly so ap[illegible]: "For Ch[illegible] desiring to be Himself the Way to those who [illegible] take a fleshly body. Whence also that [illegible] beginning of His way,'—that is, that [illegible] journey in Him." Again, in a re[illegible] makes a similar application o[illegible] it is said, 'The Lord [illegible]

in whom the Prince of this world found nothing worthy of death,[1] yet killed he Him, and the handwriting which was contrary to us was blotted out?[2] This those writings contain not. Those pages contain not the expression of this piety,—the tears of confession, Thy sacrifice, a troubled spirit, "a broken and a contrite heart,"[3] the salvation of the people, the espoused city,[4] the earnest of the Holy Ghost,[5] the cup of our redemption.[6] No man sings there, Shall not my soul be subject unto God? For of Him cometh my salvation, for He is my God and my salvation, my defender, I shall not be further moved.[7] No one there hears Him calling, "Come unto me all ye that labour." They scorn to learn of Him, because He is meek and lowly of heart;[8] for "Thou hast hid those things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes."[9] For it is one thing, from the mountain's wooded summit to see the land of peace,[10] and not to find the way thither,—in vain to attempt impassable ways, opposed and waylaid by fugitives and deserters, under their captain the "lion"[11] and the "dragon;"[12] and another to keep to the way that leads thither, guarded by the host of the heavenly general, where they rob not who have deserted the heavenly army, which they shun as torture. These things did in a wonderful manner sink into my bowels, when I read that

ding to the form of God, he said, 'I am the Truth;' and, according to the
of a servant, 'I am the Way.'" (2) Again, *creasti* is from the LXX. ἔκτισε,
t is that version's rendering in this verse of the Hebrew קָנָנִי. The *Vul-*
more correctly translating from the Hebrew, gives *possedit*, thus corre-
ing to our English version, "The Lord *possessed* me," etc. The LXX.
appear to have made an erroneous rendering here, for κτίζω is generally
t version the equivalent for בָּרָא, "to create," while קָנָה is usually ren-
by κτᾶσθαι, "to possess," "to acquire." It is true that Gesenius supposes
a few passages, and Prov. viii. 22 among them, קָנָה should be rendered
ate;" but
very passages our authorized version renders "to get,"
Dr. T
elles observes, referring to M'Call on the
cited for that sense, 'to possess' appears

14.
[3] Ps. li. 17.
[6] Ps. cxvi.
[9] Matt.
[12] R

"least of Thy apostles,"[1] and had reflected upon Thy works, and feared greatly.

[1] 1 Cor. xv. 9. In giving an account, remarks Pusey, of this period to his friend and patron Romanianus, St. Augustine seems to have blended together this and the history of his completed conversion, which was also wrought in connection with words in the same apostle, but the account of which he uniformly suppresses, for fear, probably, of injuring the individual to whom he was writing (see on book ix. sec. 4, note below). "Since that vehement flame which was about to seize me as yet was not, I thought that by which I was slowly kindled was the very greatest. When lo! certain books, when they had distilled a very few drops of most precious unguent on that tiny flame, it is past belief, Romanianus, past belief, and perhaps past what even you believe of me (and what could I say more?), nay, to myself also is it past belief, what a conflagration of myself they lighted. What ambition, what human show, what empty love of fame, or, lastly, what incitement or band of this mortal life could hold me then? I turned speedily and wholly back into myself. I cast but a glance, I confess, as one passing on, upon that religion which was implanted into us as boys, and interwoven with our very inmost selves; but she drew me unknowing to herself. So then, stumbling, hurrying, hesitating, I seized the Apostle Paul; 'for never,' said I, 'could they have wrought such things, or lived as it is plain they did live, if their writings and arguments were opposed to this so high good.' I read the whole most intently and carefully. But then, never so little light having been shed thereon, such a countenance of wisdom gleamed upon me, that if I could exhibit it—I say not to you, who ever hungeredst after her, though unknown—but to your very adversary (see book vi. sec. 24, note, above), casting aside and abandoning whatever now stimulates him so keenly to whatsoever pleasures, he would, amazed, panting, enkindled, fly to her Beauty." (*Con. Acad.* ii. 5).

BOOK EIGHTH.

HE FINALLY DESCRIBES THE THIRTY-SECOND YEAR OF HIS AGE, MEMORABLE OF HIS WHOLE LIFE, IN WHICH, BEING INST SIMPLICIANUS CONCERNING THE CONVERSION OF OTHERS, AND TH OF ACTING, HE IS, AFTER A SEVERE STRUGGLE, RENEWED IN MIND, AND IS CONVERTED UNTO GOD.

CHAP. I.—*He, now given to divine things, and yet entangled by the lu consults Simplicianus in reference to the renewing of his mind*

1. O MY GOD, let me with gratitude remember an unto Thee Thy mercies bestowed upon me. bones be steeped in Thy love, and let them say, Wh unto Thee, O Lord?[1] "Thou hast loosed my bonds, offer unto Thee the sacrifice of thanksgiving."[2] And ho hast loosed them I will declare; and all who worshi when they hear these things shall say: "Blessed be t in heaven and earth, great and wonderful is His name words had stuck fast into my breast, and I was hedge about by Thee on every side.[3] Of Thy eternal life I certain, although I had seen it "through a glass darkl no longer doubted that there was an incorrupti which was derived all oth substance re to be mor my

and Thy grace shone in him. I had also heard that from his very youth he had lived most devoted to Thee. Now he had grown into years, and by reason of so great age, passed in such zealous following of Thy ways, he appeared to me likely to have gained much experience; and so in truth he had. Out of which experience I desired him to tell me (setting before him my griefs) which would be the most fitting way for one afflicted as I was to walk in Thy way.

2. For the Church I saw to be full, and one went this way, and another that. But it was displeasing to me that I led a secular life; yea, now that my passions had ceased to excite me as of old with hopes of honour and wealth, a very grievous burden it was to undergo so great a servitude. For, compared with Thy sweetness, and the beauty of Thy house, which I loved,[1] those things delighted me no longer. But still very tenaciously was I held by the love of women; nor did the apostle forbid me to marry, although he exhorted me to something better, especially wishing that all men were as he himself was.[2] But I, being weak, made choice of the more agreeable place, and because of this alone was tossed up and down in all beside, faint and languishing with withering cares, because in other matters I was compelled, though unwilling, to agree to a married life, to which I was given up and enthralled. I had heard from the mouth of truth that "there be eunuchs, which have made themselves eunuchs for the kingdom of heaven's sake;" but, saith He, "he that is able to receive it, let him receive it."[3] Vain, assuredly, are all men in whom the knowledge of God is not, and who could not, out of the good things which are seen, find out Him who is good.[4] But I was no longer in that vanity; I had surmounted it, and

but tried and known' (*Ep.* 37), requests his 'remarks and corrections of such books of his which might chance to fall into his holy hands' (*ibid.*). St. Ambrose mentions his 'having traversed the whole world, for the sake of the faith, and of acquiring divine knowledge, and having given the whole period of his life to holy reading, night and day; that he had an acute mind, [illegible] took in intellectual studies, and was in the habit of proving how [illegible] the books of philosophy were gone astray from the truth,' *Ep.* 65, sec. [illegible] 52, ed. Ben. See also Tillemont, H. E. t. 10, Art. 'S. Simplicien.'"—E.

[1] Ps. xxvi. 8. [2] 1 Cor. vii. 7. [3] Matt. xix. 12. [4] Wisd. xiii. 1.

by the united testimony of Thy whole creation had found Thee, our Creator,[1] and Thy Word, God with Thee, and together with Thee and the Holy Ghost[2] one God, by whom Thou createdst all things. There is yet another kind of impious men, who "when they knew God, they glorified Him not as God, neither were thankful."[3] Into this also had I fallen; but Thy right hand held me up,[4] and bore me away, and Thou placedst me where I might recover. For Thou hast said unto man, "Behold, the fear of the Lord, that is wisdom;"[5] and desire not to seem wise,[6] because, "Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools."[7] But I had now found the goodly pearl,[8] which, selling all that I had,[9] I ought to have bought; and I hesitated.

CHAP. II.—*The pious old man rejoices that he read Plato and the Scriptures, and tells him of the rhetorician Victorinus having been converted to the faith through the reading of the sacred books.*

3. To Simplicianus then I went,—the father of Ambrose[10] (at that time a bishop) in receiving Thy grace, and whom he truly loved as a father. To him I narrated the windings of my error. But when I mentioned to him that I had read certain books of the Platonists, which Victorinus, sometime Professor of Rhetoric at Rome (who died a Christian, as I had been told), had translated into Latin, he congratulated me that I had not fallen upon the writings of other philosophers, which were full of fallacies and deceit, "after the rudiments

[1] See iv. sec. 18, and note, above.

[2] "And the Holy Ghost." These words, though in the text of the Benedictine edition, are not, as the editors point out, found in the majority of the best MSS.

[3] Rom. i. 21. [4] Ps. xviii. 35. [5] Job xxviii. 28.

[6] Prov. iii. 7. [7] Rom. i. 22.

[8] In his *Quæst. ex Matt.* 13, likewise, Augustine compares Christ to the pearl of great price, who is in every way able to satisfy the cravings of man.

[9] Matt. xiii. 46.

[10] Simplicianus succeeded Ambrose, 397 A.D. He has already been referred to, in the extract from *De Civ. Dei*, in note 2, p. 166, above, as "the old saint Simplicianus, afterwards Bishop of Milan." In *Ep.* 37, Augustine addresses him as "his father, most worthy of being cherished with respect and sincere affection." When Simplicianus is spoken of above as "the father of Ambrose in receiving Thy grace," reference is doubtless made to his having been instrumental in his conversion—he having "begotten" him "through the gospel" (1 Cor. iv. 15). Ambrose, when writing to him (*Ep.* 65), includes, "Vale, et nos parentis affectu dilige, ut facis."

of the world,"[1] whereas they,[2] in many ways, led to the belief in God and His word.[3] Then, to exhort me to the humility of Christ,[4] hidden from the wise, and revealed to little ones,[5] he spoke of Victorinus himself,[6] whom, whilst he was at Rome, he had known very intimately; and of him he related that about which I will not be silent. For it contains great praise of Thy grace, which ought to be confessed unto Thee, how that most learned old man, highly skilled in all the liberal sciences, who had read, criticised, and explained so many works of the philosophers; the teacher of so many noble senators; who also, as a mark of his excellent discharge of his duties, had (which men of this world esteem a great honour) both merited and obtained a statue in the Roman Forum, he, —even to that age a worshipper of idols, and a participator in

[1] Col. ii. 8. [2] *i.e.* the Platonists.

[3] In like manner Augustine, in his *De Civ. Dei* (viii. 5), says: "No philosophers come nearer to us than the Platonists;" and elsewhere, in the same book, he speaks, in exalted terms, of their superiority to other philosophers. When he speaks of the Platonists, he means the Neo-Platonists, from whom he conceived that he could best derive a knowledge of Plato, who had, by pursuing the Socratic method in concealing his opinions, rendered it difficult "to discover clearly what he himself thought on various matters, any more than it is to discover what were the real opinions of Socrates" (*ibid.* sec. 4). Whether Plato himself had or not knowledge of the revelation contained in the Old Testament Scriptures, as Augustine supposed (*De Civ. Dei*, viii. 11, 12), it is clear that the later Platonists were considerably affected by Judaic ideas, even as the philosophizing Jews were indebted to Platonism. This view has been embodied in proverb frequently found in the Fathers, Latin as well as Greek, Ἡ Πλάτων φιλ[illegible] ὃ Φίλων πλατωνίζει. Archer Butler, in the fourth of his *Lectures on A[illegible] Philosophy*, treats of the vitality of Plato's teaching and the causes of [illegible] fluence, and shows how in certain points there is a harmony between [illegible] and the precepts of the gospel. On the difficulty of unravelling the [illegible] of the Platonic philosophy, see Burton's *Bampton Lectures* (lect. 3).

[4] See iv. sec. 19, above. [5] Mat[illegible]

[6] "Victorinus, by birth an African, taught rhetoric at Ro[illegible] stantius, and in extreme old age, giving himself up to t[illegible] wrote some books against Arius, dialectically [and so] ver[illegible] not understood but by the learned, and a commentary o[illegible] (Jerome, *De Viris Ill.* c. 101). It is of the same, proba[illegible] (*De Viris Ill.* c. 60), "that he commented in a [illegible] inasmuch as he was a man taken up with secul[illegible] the Divine Scriptures by any teacher, he produ[illegible] little weight." Comp. Jerome, *Præf. in Comm.* [illegible] p. 179, *sq.* Some of his works are extant.—E.

the sacrilegious rites to which almost all the nobility of Rome were wedded, and had inspired the people with the love of

> "The dog Anubis, and a medley crew
> Of monster gods [who] 'gainst Neptune stand in arms,
> 'Gainst Venus and Minerva, steel-clad Mars,"[1]

whom Rome once conquered, now worshipped, all which old Victorinus had with thundering eloquence defended so many years,—he now blushed not to be the child of Thy Christ, and an infant at Thy fountain, submitting his neck to the yoke of humility, and subduing his forehead to the reproach of the Cross.

4. O Lord, Lord, who hast bowed the heavens and come down, touched the mountains and they did smoke,[2] by what means didst Thou convey Thyself into that bosom? He used to read, as Simplicianus said, the Holy Scripture, most studiously sought after and searched into all the Christian writings, and said to Simplicianus,—not openly, but secretly, and as a friend, —"Know thou that I am a Christian." To which he replied, "I will not believe it, nor will I rank you among the Christians unless I see you in the Church of Christ." Whereupon he replied derisively, "Is it then the walls that make Christians?" And this he often said, that he already was a Christian; and Simplicianus making the same answer, the conceit of the "walls" was by the other as often renewed. For he was [illegible]rful of offending his friends, proud demon-worshippers, from [illegible] height of whose Babylonian dignity, as from cedars of [illegible]non which had not yet been broken by the Lord,[3] he [illegible] a storm of enmity would descend upon him. But [illegible]at, from reading and inquiry, he had derived strength, [illegible]d lest he should be denied by Christ before the holy [illegible] now was afraid to confess Him before men,[4] and [illegible]imself guilty of a great fault in being ashamed [illegible]s[5] of the humility of Thy word, and not being

[1] Kennedys.

[2] Ps. cxliv. 5.

[3] Luke ix. 26.

[illegible]me of *sacrament*, or *mystery*, to everything which [illegible]roperty to unassisted reason, and another to faith. [illegible]'sacraments' of the Lord's Prayer, meaning the

ashamed of the sacrilegious rites of those proud demons, whose pride he had imitated and their rites adopted, he became bold-faced against vanity, and shame-faced toward the truth, and suddenly and unexpectedly said to Simplicianus,—as he himself informed me,—"Let us go to the church; I wish to be made a Christian." But he, not containing himself for joy, accompanied him. And having been admitted to the first sacraments of instruction,[1] he not long after gave in

hidden meaning conveyed therein, which could only be appreciated by a Christian. The Fathers sometimes speak of confirmation as a sacrament, because the chrism signified the grace of the Holy Ghost; and the imposition of hands was not merely a bare sign, but the form by which it was conveyed. See Bingham, book xii. c. 1, sec. 4. Yet at the same time they continually speak of *two* great sacraments of the Christian Church" (Palmer's *Origines Liturgicæ*, vol. ii. c. 6, sec. 1, p. 201).

[1] That is, he became a *catechumen*. In addition to the information on this subject, already given in the note to book vi. sec. 2, above, the following references to it may prove instructive. (1) Justin Martyr, describing the manner of receiving converts into the Church in his day, says (*Apol.* i. 61): "As many as are persuaded and believe that what we teach and say is true, and undertake to be able to live accordingly, are instructed to pray, and to entreat God with fasting for the remission of their sins that are past, we praying and fasting with them. Then they are brought by us where there is water, and are regenerated in the same manner in which we were ourselves regenerated. And this washing is called illumination, because they who learn these things are illuminated in their understandings." And again (*ibid.* 65): "We, after we have thus washed him who has been convinced and has assented to our teaching, bring him to the place where those who are called brethren are ass[illegible] order that we may offer hearty prayers, in common for ourselves a[illegible] baptized [illuminated] person, and for all others in e[illegible] ended the prayers, we salute one another with a kiss. [illegible] the president of the brethren bread, and a cup of w[illegible] he, taking them, gives praise and glory to the Fat[illegible] the name of the Son and of the Holy Ghost. . . [illegible] given thanks, and all the people have expressed [illegible] called by us deacons give to each of th[illegible] mixed with water over whi[illegible] are absent they co[illegible] [illegible]lled amon[illegible]

his name, that he might be regenerated by baptism,—Rome marvelling, and the Church rejoicing. The proud saw, and were enraged; they gnashed with their teeth, and melted away![1] But the Lord God was the hope of Thy servant, and He regarded not vanities and lying madness.[2]

5. Finally, when the hour arrived for him to make profession of his faith (which at Rome they who are about to approach Thy grace are wont to deliver[3] from an elevated place, in view of the faithful people, in a set form of words learnt by heart),[4] the presbyters, he said, offered Victorinus to

catechumenus, and gave him those six points of catechistical doctrine mentioned Heb. vi. 1, 2. When the time of baptism drew near, the young Christian came to give in his heathen name, which was presently registered, submitting himself to examination. On the eve, was he, in a set form, first, to renounce the devil, and to pronounce, I confess to Thee, O Christ, repeating the Creed with it, in the form here recorded. The time for giving in their names must be within the two first weeks in Lent; and the solemn day to renounce upon was Maundy Thursday. So bids the Council of Laodicea (Can. 45 and 46)." The *renunciation* adverted to by Watts in the above passage may be traced to an early [illegible] in the writings of the Fathers. It is mentioned by Tertullian, Ambrose, and Jerome; and "in the fourth century," says Palmer (*Origines Liturgicæ*, c. 6, sec. 2, where the authorities will be found), "the renunciation was made with great solemnity. Cyril of Jerusalem, speaking to those who had been recently baptized, said, 'First, you have entered into the vestibule of the baptistry, and, standing towards the west, you have heard, and been commanded, and stretch forth your hands, and renounce Satan as if he were present.' This rite of turning west at the renunciation of Satan is also spoken of by Jerome, Gregory, [illegible], and Ambrose; and it was sometimes performed with exsufflations and [illegible]mity to Satan, and rejection of him and his works. To [illegible]toms remain in the patriarchate of Constantinople, [illegible]ptism turn to the west to renounce Satan, stretching [illegible]g an exsufflation as a sign of enmity against him. [illegible]tioch and Jerusalem, Alexandria and Armenia, also [illegible] Satan with faces turned to the west."

[2] Ps. xxxi. 6, 14, 18.

[illegible]tion to his *Origi*[illegible]
[illegible]heart. T[illegible]

make his profession more privately, as the custom was to do to those who were likely, through bashfulness, to be afraid; but he chose rather to profess his salvation in the presence of the holy assembly.. For it was not salvation that he taught in rhetoric, and yet he had publicly professed that. How much less, therefore, ought he, when pronouncing Thy word, to dread Thy meek flock, who, in the delivery of his own words, had not feared the mad multitudes! So, then, when he ascended to make his profession, all, as they recognised him, whispered his name one to the other, with a voice of congratulation. And who was there amongst them that did not

the Lord. 'For other foundation can no man lay,' etc. Ye have received them, and given back [*reddidistis*] what ye ought to retain in heart and mind, what ye should repeat in your beds, think on in the streets, and forget not in your meals, and while sleeping in body, in heart watch therein. For this is the faith, and the rule of salvation, that 'We believe in God, the Father Almighty,'" etc. (Aug. *Serm.* 215, *in Redditione Symboli*). "On the Sabbath day [Saturday], wh[illegible]e shall keep a vigil through the mercy of God, ye will give back [*reddituri*] no[illegible] [Lord's] Prayer, but the Creed" (*Serm.* 58, sec. *ult.*). "What ye have briefly heard, ye ought not only to believe, but to commit to memory in so many words, and utter with your mouth" (*Serm.* 214, *in Tradit. Symb.* 3, sec. 2). "Nor, in order to retain the very words of the Creed, ought ye any wise to write it, but *to learn it thoroughly by hearing*, nor, when ye have learnt it, ought ye to write it, but always to keep and refresh it in your memories.—'This is my covenant, which I will make with them after those days,' saith the Lord; 'I will place my law in their minds, and in their hearts will I write it.' To convey [illegible] *the Creed is learnt by hearing, and not written* on tables or any [illegible] [illegible]t on the h[illegible] [illegible] 212, sec. 2). See the Roma[illegible]

know him? And there ran a low murmur through the mouths of all the rejoicing multitude, "Victorinus! Victorinus!" Sudden was the burst of exultation at the sight of him; and suddenly were they hushed, that they might hear him. He pronounced the true faith with an excellent boldness, and all desired to take him to their very heart—yea, by their love and joy they took him thither; such were the hands with which they took him.

CHAP. III.—*That God and the angels rejoice more on the return of one sinner than of many just persons.*

6. Good God, what passed in man to make him rejoice more at the salvation of a soul despaired of, and delivered from greater danger, than if there had always been hope of him, or the danger had been less? For so Thou also, O merciful Father, dost "joy over one sinner that repenteth, more than over ninety and nine just persons that need no repentance." And with much joyfulness do we hear, whenever we hear, how the lost sheep is brought home again on the Shepherd's shoulders, while the angels rejoice, and the drachma is restored to Thy treasury, the neighbours rejoicing with the woman who found it;[1] and the joy of the solemn service of Thy house constraineth to tears, when in Thy house it is read of Thy younger son that he "was dead, and is alive again, and was lost, and is found."[2] For Thou rejoicest both in us and [illegible]ngels, holy through holy charity. For Thou art [illegible] all things which abide [illegible]

who desire his safety are at once sick at heart: he recovers, though not able as yet to walk with his former strength, and there is such joy as was not before when he walked sound and strong. Yea, the very pleasures of human life—not those only which rush upon us unexpectedly, and against our wills, but those that are voluntary and designed—do men obtain by difficulties. There is no pleasure at all in eating and drinking unless the pains of hunger and thirst go before. And drunkards eat certain salt meats with the view of creating a troublesome heat, which the drink allaying causes pleasure. It is also the custom that the affianced bride should not immediately be given up, that the husband may not less esteem her whom, as betrothed, he longed not for.[1]

8. This law obtains in base and accursed joy; in that joy also which is permitted and lawful; in the sincerity of honest friendship; and in Him who was dead, and lived again, had been lost, and was found.[2] The greater joy is everywhere preceded by the greater pain. What meaneth this, O Lord my God, when Thou art an everlasting joy unto Thine own self, and some things about Thee are ever rejoicing in Thee?[3] [illegible] ion of things thus ebbs and [illegible] iled? Is this the fashion [illegible] ed to them, where [illegible] arth, from the [illegible] l to the [illegible] ttedst [illegible] on

that of Victorinus, return unto Thee, and approach, and are enlightened, receiving that light, which they that receive, receive power from Thee to become Thy sons?[1] But if they be less known among the people, even they that know them joy less for them. For when many rejoice together, the joy of each one is the fuller, in that they are incited and inflamed by one another. Again, because those that are known to many influence many towards salvation, and take the lead with many to follow them. And, therefore, do they also who preceded them much rejoice in regard to them, because they rejoice not in them alone. May it be averted that in Thy tabernacle the persons of the rich should be accepted before the poor, or the noble before the ignoble; since rather "Thou hast chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things which are mighty; and base things of the world, and things which are despised, hast Thou chosen, yea, and things which are not, to bring to naught things that are."[2] And yet, even that "least of the apostles,"[3] by whose tongue Thou soundest out these words, when Paulus the proconsul[4] [illegible] overcome by the apostle's warfare—was made [illegible] of Thy Christ, and becam[illegible] also, instead of Sa[illegible][5] in testimony [illegible] vercome [illegible] Lath[illegible]

by reason of their authority.[1] By how much the more welcome, then, was the heart of Victorinus esteemed, which the devil had held as an unassailable retreat, and the tongue of Victorinus, with which mighty and cutting weapon he had slain many; so much the more abundantly should Thy sons rejoice, seeing that our King hath bound the strong man,[2] and they saw his vessels taken from him and cleansed,[3] and made meet for Thy honour, and become serviceable for the Lord unto every good work.[4]

CHAP. V.—*Of the causes which alienate us from God.*

10. But when that man of Thine, Simplicianus, related this to me about Victorinus, I burned to imitate him; and it was for this end he had related it. But when he had added this also, that in the time of the Emperor Julian, there was a law made by which Christians were forbidden to teach grammar and oratory,[5] and he, in obedience to this

[1] "Satan makes choice of *persons of place and power*. These are either in the commonwealth or church. If he can, he will secure the throne and the pulpit, as the two forts that command the whole line. . . . A prince or a ruler may sl[illegible] a thousand; therefore saith Paul to Elymas, when he would have [illegible]e deputy from the faith, 'O full [illegible]ll subtilty, thou child of the [illegible]xiii. 10). [illegible] said, [illegible]ve learned this of [illegible]r fath[illegible] [illegible]nt t[illegible] the favour of [illegible] his side [illegible]

law,' chose rather to abandon the wordy school than Thy word, by which Thou makest eloquent the tongues of the dumb[1],—he appeared to me not more brave than happy, in having thus discovered an opportunity of waiting on Thee only, which thing I was sighing for, thus bound, not with the irons of another, but my own iron will. My will was the enemy master of, and thence had made a chain for me and bound me. Because of a perverse will was lust made; and lust indulged in became custom; and custom not resisted became necessity. By which links, as it were, joined together (whence I term it a "chain"), did a hard bondage hold me enthralled.[2]

the Christians, he endeavoured by *subtlety* to destroy their faith. In addition to the measures mentioned by Augustine above, he endeavoured to foment divisions in the Church by recalling the banished Donatists, and stimulating them to disseminate their doctrines, and he himself wrote treatises against it. In order, if possible, to counteract the influence of Christianity, he instructed his priests to imitate the Christians in their relief of the poor and care for the sick. But while in every way enacting measures of disability against the Christians, he showed great favour to the Jews, and with the view of confuting the predictions of Christ, went so far as to encourage them to rebuild the Temple.

[1] Wisd. x. 21.

[2] There would appear to be a law at work in the moral and spiritual worlds similar to that of gravitation in the natural, which "acts inversely as [illegible] of the distance." As we are [illegible] affected, for example, by events [illegible] hear us either [illegible] which [illegible] nal things, [illegible]

But that new will which had begun to develope in me, freely to worship Thee, and to wish to enjoy Thee, O God, the only sure enjoyment, was not able as yet to overcome my former wilfulness, made strong by long indulgence. Thus did my two wills, one old and the other new, one carnal, the other spiritual, contend within me; and by their discord they unstrung my soul.

11. Thus came I to understand, from my own experience, what I had read, how that "the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh."[1] I verily lusted both ways;[2] yet more in that which I approved in myself, than in that which I disapproved in myself. For in this last it was now rather not "I,"[3] because in much I rather suffered against my will than did it willingly. And yet it was through me that custom became more combative against me, because I had come willingly whither I willed not. And who, then, can with any justice speak against it, when just punishment follows the sinner?[4] Nor had I now any longer my wonted excuse, that, as yet I hesitated to be above the world and serve Thee, because my perception of the truth was uncertain; for now it was certain. But I, still bound to the earth, refused to be Thy soldier; and was as much afraid of being freed from all embarrassments, as we ought to fear to be embarrassed.

12. Thus with the baggage of the world [illegible] burdened, as when in slumber; and the [illegible] meditated upon Thee were like [illegible]

me, the latter pleased me and fettered me.[1] Nor had I aught to answer Thee calling to me, "Awake, thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall give thee light."[2] And to Thee showing me on every side, that what Thou saidst was true, I, convicted by the truth, had nothing at all to reply, but the drawling and drowsy words: "Presently, lo, presently;" "Leave me a little while." But "presently, presently," had no present; and my "leave me a little while" went on for a long while.[3] In vain did I "delight in Thy law after the inner man," when "another law in my members warred against the law of my mind, and brought me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members." For the law of sin is the violence of custom, whereby the mind is drawn and held, even against its will; deserving to be so held in that it so willingly falls into it. "O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death" but Thy grace only, through Jesus Christ our Lord?[4]

[1] *Illud placebat et vincebat; hoc libebat et vinciebat.* Watts renders freely, "But notwithstanding that former course pleased and overcame my reason, yet did this latter tickle and enthrall my senses."

[2] Eph. v. 14.

[3] As Bishop Wilberforce, eloquently describing this condition of mind, says, in his sermon on *The Almost Christian*, "New, strange wishes were rising in his heart. The Mighty One was brooding over its currents, was stirring up its tides, [illegible] overrule their troubled flow—to arise in open splendour on his eyes, [illegible]h His own blessed presence. And he himself was evidently [illegible]e; he was almost won; he was drawn towards that [illegible]ugh yielded. He even knew what was passing [illegible] of its importance, [illegible]

CHAP. VI.—*Pontitianus' account of Antony, the founder of Monachism, and of some who imitated him.*

13. And how, then, Thou didst deliver me out of the bonds of carnal desire, wherewith I was most firmly fettered, and out of the drudgery of worldly business, will I now declare and confess unto Thy name, "O Lord, my strength and my Redeemer."[1] Amid increasing anxiety, I was transacting my usual affairs, and daily sighing unto Thee. I resorted as frequently to Thy church as the business, under the burden of which I groaned, left me free to do. Alypius was with me, being after the third sitting disengaged from his legal occupation, and awaiting further opportunity of selling his counsel, as I was wont to sell the power of speaking, if it can be supplied by teaching. But Nebridius had, on account of our friendship, consented to teach under Verecundus, a citizen and a grammarian of Milan, and a very intimate friend of us all; who vehemently desired, and by the right of friendship demanded from our company, the faithful aid he greatly stood in need of. Nebridius, then, was not drawn to this by any desire of gain (for he could have made much more of his learning had he been so inclined), but, as a most sweet and kindly friend, he would not be wanting in an office of friendliness, and slight our request. But in this he acted very discreetly, taking care not to become known to those personages whom the world esteems great; thus avoiding distraction of mind, which he desired to have free and at leisure as many hours as possible, to search, or read, or hear something concerning wisdom.

14. Upon a certain day, then, Nebridius being away (why, I do not remember), lo, there came to the house to see Alypius and me, Pontitianus, a countryman of ours, in so far

of sin, but of man renewed and regenerated in Christ Jesus. This is the view constantly taken in his anti-Pelagian writings, which were published subsequently to the date of his *Confessions*; and indeed this change in interpretation probably arose from the pressure of the Pelagian controversy (see *Con. Duas Ep. Pel.* i. 10, secs. 18 and 22), and the fear lest the old view should too much favour the heretics, and their exaltation of the powers of the natural man to the disparagement of the influence of the grace of God.

[1] Ps. xix. 14.

as he was an African, who held high office in the emperor's court. What he wanted with us I know not, but we sat down to talk together, and it fell out that upon a table before us, used for games, he noticed a book; he took it up, opened it, and, contrary to his expectation, found it to be the Apostle Paul,—for he imagined it to be one of those books which I was wearing myself out in teaching. At this he looked up at me smilingly, and expressed his delight and wonder that he had so unexpectedly found this book, and this only, before my eyes. For he was both a Christian and baptized, and often prostrated himself before Thee our God in the church, in constant and daily prayers. When, then, I had told him that I bestowed much pains upon these writings, a conversation ensued on his speaking of Antony,[1] the Egyptian monk, whose

[1] It may be well here to say a few words in regard to Monachism and Antony's relation to it:—(1) There is much in the later Platonism, with its austerities and bodily mortifications (see vii. sec. 13, note 2, above), which is in common with the asceticism of the early Church. The Therapeutæ of Philo, indeed, of whom there were numbers in the neighbourhood of Alexandria in the first century, may be considered as the natural forerunners of the Egyptian monks. (2) Monachism, according to Sozomen (i. 12), had its origin in a desire to escape persecution by retirement into the wilderness. It is probable, however, that as in the case of Paul the hermit of Thebais, the desire for freedom from the cares of life, so that by contemplation and mortification of the body, the λόγος or inner reason (which was held to be an emanation of God) might be purified, had as much to do with the hermit life as a fear of persecution. Mosheim, indeed (*Eccl. Hist.* i. part 2, c. 3), supposes Paul to have been influenced entirely by these Platonic motions. (3) Antony was born in the district of Thebes, A.D. 251, and visited Paul in the Egyptian desert a little before his death. To Antony is the world indebted for establishing communities of monks, as distinguished from the solitary asceticism of Paul; he therefore is rightly viewed as the founder of Monachism. He appears to have known little more than how to speak his native Coptic, yet during his long life (said to have been 100 years) he by his fervent enthusiasm made for himself a name little inferior to that of the "king of men," Athanasius, whom in the time of the Arian troubles he stedfastly supported, and by whom his life has been handed down to us. Augustine, in his *De Doctr. Christ.* (Prol. sec. 4), speaks of him as "a just and holy man, who, not being able to read himself, is said to have committed the Scriptures to memory through hearing them read by others, and by dint of wise meditation to have arrived at a thorough understanding of them." (4) According to Sozomen (iii. 14), monasteries had not been established in Europe A.D. 340. They were, Baronius tells us, introduced into Rome about that date by Athanasius, during a visit to that city. Athanasius mentions "ascetics" as dwelling at Rome A.D. 355. Ambrose, Bishop of Milan, Martin, Bishop of Tours, and Jerome were enthusiastic supporters of

name was in high repute among Thy servants, though up to that time not familiar to us. When he came to know this, he lingered on that topic, imparting to us a knowledge of this man so eminent, and marvelling at our ignorance. But we were amazed, hearing Thy wonderful works most fully manifested in times so recent, and almost in our own, wrought in the true faith and the Catholic Church. We all wondered—we, that they were so great, and he, that we had never heard of them.

15. From this his conversation turned to the companies in the monasteries, and their manners so fragrant unto Thee, and of the fruitful deserts of the wilderness, of which we knew nothing. And there was a monastery at Milan[1] full of good brethren, without the walls of the city, under the fostering care of Ambrose, and we were ignorant of it. He went on with his relation, and we listened intently and in silence. He then related to us how on a certain afternoon, at Triers, when

the system. (5) Monachism in Europe presented more of its practical and less of its contemplative side, than in its cradle in the East. An example of how the monks of the East did work for the good of others is seen in the instance of the monks of Pachomius; still in this respect, as in matters of doctrine, the West has generally shown itself more practical than the East. Probably climate and the style of living consequent thereon have much to do with this. Sulpicius Severus (dial. i. 2, *De Vita Martini*) may be taken to give a quaint illustration of this, where he makes one of his characters say, as he hears of the mode of living of the Eastern monks, that their diet was only suited to angels. However mistaken we may think the monkish systems to be, it cannot be concealed that in the days of barbarism and semi-barbarism they were oftentimes centres of civilisation. Certainly [illegible] ating idea of meditative seclusion, there is much that is worthy [illegible]ation; for, as Farindon has it (*Works*, iv. 130), "They [monks] have been the [illegible] not only of holy men, but of heathen men. Thus did Tully, and Atticus, and Crassus make way to that honour and renown which they afterwards purchased in eloquence (Cicero, *De Officiis*, ii. 19, viii. 7); thus did they pass a *solitudine in scholas, a scholis in forum*,—'from their secret retirement into the schools, and from the schools into the pleading-place.'"

[1] Augustine, when comparing Christian with Manichæan asceticism, says in his *De Mor. Eccl. Cath.* (sec. 70), "I saw at Milan a lodging-house of saints, in number not a few, presided over by one presbyter, a man of great excellence and learning." In the previous note we have given the generally received opinion that the first monastery in Europe was established at Rome. It may be mentioned here that Muratori maintains that the institution was transplanted from the East first to Milan, others contend that the first European society was at Aquileia.

the emperor was taken up with seeing the Circensian games,[1] he and three others, his comrades, went out for a walk in the gardens close to the city walls, and there, as they chanced to walk two and two, one strolled away with him, while the other two went by themselves; and these, in their rambling, came upon a certain cottage inhabited by some of Thy servants, "poor in spirit," of whom "is the kingdom of heaven,"[2] where they found a book in which was written the life of Antony. This one of them began to read, marvel at, and be inflamed by it; and in the reading, to meditate on embracing such a life, and giving up his worldly employments to serve Thee. And these were of the body called "Agents for Public Affairs."[3] Then, suddenly being overwhelmed with a holy love and a sober sense of shame, in anger with himself, he cast his eyes upon his friend, exclaiming, "Tell me, I entreat thee, what end we are striving for by all these labours of ours. What is our aim? What is our motive in doing service? Can our hopes in court rise higher than to be ministers of the emperor? And in such a position, what is

[1] See vi. sec. 12, note 1, above.

[2] Matt. v. 3. Roman commentators are ever ready to use this text of Scripture as an argument in favour of monastic poverty, and some may be disposed from its context to imagine such an interpretation to be implied in this place. This, however, can hardly be so. Augustine constantly points out in his sermons, etc. in what the poverty that is pleasing to God consists. "Pauper Dei," he says (*in Ps.* cxxxi. 15), "in animo est, non in sæculo;" and his interpretation of this passage in his *Exposition of the Sermon on the Mount* (i. 3) is entirely opposed to the Roman view. We there read: "The poor in spirit are rightly understood here as meaning the humble and God-fearing, i.e. those who have not a spirit which puffeth up. Nor ought blessedness to begin at any other point whatever, if indeed it is to reach the highest wisdom. 'The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom' (Ps. cxi. 10); whereas, on the other hand also, 'pride' is entitled 'the beginning of all sin' (Ecclus. x. 13). Let the proud, therefore, seek after and love the kingdoms of the earth; but 'blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.'"

[3] "*Agentes in rebus.* There was a society of them still about the court. Their militia or employments were to gather in the emperor's tributes; to fetch in offenders; to do *Palatina obsequia*, offices of court, provide corn, etc., ride by errands like messengers of the chamber, lie abroad as spies and intelligencers. Some were often preferred to places of magistracy in the provinces; such were vivarii *Principes* or *Magistriani*. St. Hierome upon Abdias, c. 1, calls them qui attrectores. They succeeded the *Frumentarii*, between which two and the præcipient and the *Speculatores* there was not much difference."—W. W.

there not brittle, and fraught with danger, and by how many dangers arrive we at greater danger? And when arrive we thither? But if I desire to become a friend of God, behold, I am even now made it." Thus spake he, and in the pangs of the travail of the new life, he turned his eyes again upon the page and continued reading, and was inwardly changed where Thou sawest, and his mind was divested of the world, as soon became evident; for as he read, and the surging of his heart rolled along, he raged awhile, discerned and resolved on a better course, and now, having become Thine, he said to his friend, "Now have I broken loose from these hopes of ours, and am determined to serve God; and this, from this hour, in this place, I enter upon. If thou art reluctant to imitate me, hinder me not." The other replied that he would cleave to him, to share in so great a reward and so great a service. Thus both of them, being now Thine, were building a tower at the necessary cost,[1]—of forsaking all that they had and following Thee. Then Pontitianus, and he that had walked with him through other parts of the garden, came in search of them to the same place, and having found them, reminded them to return as the day had declined. But they, making known to him their resolution and purpose, and how such a purpose had sprung up and become confirmed in them, entreated them not to molest them, if they refused to join themselves unto them. But the others, no whit changed from their former selves, did, as he said, bewail themselves, and piously congratulate [illegible] recommending themselves to their prayers; and [illegible] declining towards earthly things, returned to [illegible] the other two setting their affections [illegible] remained in the cottage. And both of [illegible] who, when they heard of this, dedi[illegible]

CHAP. VII.—*He deplores* [illegible] *years, la*[illegible]

16. Such was [illegible] whilst he was [illegible]

unwilling to exercise self-scrutiny; and Thou didst set me face to face with myself, that I might behold how foul I was, and how crooked and sordid, bespotted and ulcerous. And I beheld and loathed myself; and whither to fly from myself I discovered not. And if I sought to turn my gaze away from myself, he continued his narrative, and Thou again opposedst me unto myself, and thrustedst me before my own eyes, that I might discover my iniquity, and hate it.[1] I had known it, but acted as though I knew it not,—winked at it, and forgot it.

17. But now, the more ardently I loved those whose healthful affections I heard tell of, that they had given up themselves wholly to Thee to be cured, the more did I abhor myself when compared with them. For many of my years (perhaps twelve) had passed away since my nineteenth, when, on the reading of Cicero's *Hortensius*,[2] I was roused to a desire for wisdom; and still I was delaying to reject mere worldly happiness, and to devote myself to search out that whereof not the finding alone, but the bare search,[3] ought to

[1] Ps. xxxvi. 2.

[2] See iii. sec. 7, above.

[3] It is interesting to compare with this passage the views contained in Augustine's three books, *Con. Academicos*,—the earliest of his extant works, and written about this time. Licentius there maintains that "the bare search" for truth renders a man happy, while Trygetius contends that "the finding alone" can produce happiness. Augustine does not agree with the doctrine of the former, and points out that we (the Academics) hold the probable to be attainable, it could not be so without [illegible] by which the probable is measured and known. And, in his *De Tr[illegible]* contends that he who seeks truth and finds it not, has not attai[illegible]d that though the grace of God be indeed guiding hi[illegible]plete happiness (*Retractations*, i. 2) till after death. P[illegible]y can be found than that evidenced the life of Vic[illegible]el, who rested in the practice of [illegible], and was con[illegible]iness, and a full unfolding of [illegible] mys[illegible]s les uns les autres, il declarait à toute sa doctrine. Un jour, déjà nommé, dit à l'évêque : le tous contre tous ; le plus utres est une bêtise.'—'Eh c'est une bêtise, l'âme enfermait donc, il y [illegible]ops prodigieuses

have been preferred before the treasures and kingdoms of this world, though already found, and before the pleasures of the body, though encompassing me at my will. But I, miserable young man, supremely miserable even in the very outset of my youth, had entreated chastity of Thee, and said, "Grant me chastity and continency, but not yet." For I was afraid lest Thou shouldest hear me soon, and soon deliver me from the disease of concupiscence, which I desired to have satisfied rather than extinguished. And I had wandered through perverse ways in a sacrilegious superstition; not indeed assured thereof, but preferring that to the others, which I did not seek religiously, but opposed maliciously.

18. And I had thought that I delayed from day to day to reject worldly hopes and follow Thee only, because there did not appear anything certain whereunto to direct my course. And now had the day arrived in which I was to be laid bare to myself, and my conscience was to chide me. "Where art thou, O my tongue? Thou saidst, verily, that for an uncertain truth thou wert not willing to cast off the baggage of va... Behold, now it is certain, and yet doth th... oppress thee; whereas they who neither h... selves out with searching after it, ... years and more in thinking thereo... unburdened, and gotten wing... inwardly consumed and mi... shame, while Ponti... having finished h... his way. And...

à Dieu, pour... contre l'étr... transfor... bean...

With what scourges of rebuke lashed I not my soul to make it follow me, struggling to go after Thee! Yet it drew back; it refused, and exercised not itself. All its arguments were exhausted and confuted. There remained a silent trembling; and it feared, as it would death, to be restrained from the flow of that custom whereby it was wasting away even to death.

CHAP. VIII.—*The conversation with Alypius being ended, he retires to the garden, whither his friend follows him.*

19. In the midst, then, of this great strife of my inner dwelling, which I had strongly raised up against my soul in the chamber of my heart,[1] troubled both in mind and countenance, I seized upon Alypius, and exclaimed: "What is wrong with us? What is this? What heardest thou? The unlearned start up and 'take' heaven,[2] and we, with our learning, but wanting heart, see where we wallow in flesh and blood! Because others have preceded us, are we ashamed to follow, and not rather ashamed at not following?" Some such [illegible] I gave utterance to, and in my excitement flung myself [illegible] he gazed upon me in silent astonishment. [illegible] my wonted tone, and my brow, cheeks, [illegible], all expressed my emotion more than [illegible] little garden belonging to our lodging. [illegible] whole house; for the master, [illegible] Thither had the tempest [illegible] might impede the [illegible] myself, until it [illegible] did not. But [illegible] I might [illegible] knowing [illegible] arden,

enter, extolling it to the skies. And we enter not therein by ships, or chariots, or feet, no, nor by going so far as I had come from the house to that place where we were sitting. For not to go only, but to enter there, was naught, else but to will to go, but to will it resolutely and thoroughly; not to stagger and sway about this way and that, a changeable and half-wounded will, wrestling, with one part falling as another rose.

20. Finally, in the very fever of my irresolution, I made many of those motions with my body which men sometimes desire to do, but cannot, if either they have not the limbs, or if their limbs be bound with fetters, weakened by disease, or hindered in any other way. Thus, if I tore my hair, struck my forehead, or if, entwining my fingers, I clasped my knee, this I did because I willed it. But I might have willed and not done it, if the power of motion in my limbs had not responded. So many things, then, I did, when to have the will was not to have the power, and I did not that which both with an unequalled desire I longed more to do, and which shortly when I should will I should have the power to do; because shortly when I should will, I should will thoroughly. For in such things the power was one with the will, and to will was to do, and yet was it not done; and more readily did the body obey the slightest wish of the soul in the moving its limbs at the order of the mind, than the soul obeyed itself to accomplish in the will alone this its great will.

CHAP. IX.—*That the mind commandeth the mind, but it willeth not entirely.*

21. Whence is this monstrous thing? And why is it? Let Thy mercy shine on me, that I may inquire, if so be the hiding-places of man's punishment, and the darkest contritions of the sons of Adam, may perhaps answer me. Whence is this monstrous thing? and why is it? The mind commands the body, and it obeys forthwith; the mind commands itself, and is resisted. The mind commands the hand to be moved, and such readiness is there that the command is scarce to be distinguished from the obedience. Yet the mind is mind, and the hand is body. The mind commands the mind to will, and yet, though it be

itself, it obeyeth not. Whence this monstrous thing? and why is it? I repeat, it commands itself to will, and would not give the command unless it willed; yet is not that done which it commandeth. But it willeth not entirely; therefore it commandeth not entirely. For so far forth it commandeth, as it willeth; and so far forth is the thing commanded not done, as it willeth not. For the will commandeth that there be a will;—not another, but itself. But it doth not command entirely, therefore that is not which it commandeth. For were it entire, it would not even command it to be, because it would already be. It is, therefore, no monstrous thing partly to will, partly to be unwilling, but an infirmity of the mind, that it doth not wholly rise, sustained by truth, pressed down by custom. And so there are two wills, because one of them is not entire; and the one is supplied with what the other needs.

CHAP. X.—*He refutes the opinion of the Manichæans as to two kinds of minds,—one good and the other evil.*

22. Let them perish from Thy presence,[1] O God, as "vain talkers and deceivers"[2] of the soul do perish, who, observing that there were two wills in deliberating, affirm that there are two kinds of minds in us,—one good, the other evil.[3] They themselves verily are evil when they hold these evil opinions; and they shall become good when they hold the truth, and shall consent unto the truth, that Thy apostle may say unto them, "Ye were sometimes darkness, but now are ye light in the Lord."[4] But they, desiring to be light, not "in the Lord," but in themselves, conceiving the nature of the soul to be the same as that which God is,[5] are made more gross darkness; for that through a shocking arrogancy they went farther from Thee, "the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world."[6] Take heed what you say, and blush for shame; draw near unto Him and be "lightened," and your faces shall not be

[1] Ps. lxviii. 2. [2] Titus i. 10.

[3] And that therefore they were not responsible for their evil deeds, it not being they that sinned, but the nature of evil in them. See iv. sec. 26, and note, above, where the Manichæan doctrines in this matter are fully treated.

[4] Eph. v. 8. [5] See iv. sec. 26, note, above. [6] John i. 9.

"ashamed."[1] I, when I was deliberating upon serving the Lord my God now, as I had long purposed,—I it was who willed, I who was unwilling. It was I, even I myself. I neither willed entirely, nor was entirely unwilling. Therefore was I at war with myself, and destroyed by myself. And this destruction overtook me against my will, and yet showed not the presence of another mind, but the punishment of mine own.[2] "Now, then, it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me,"[3]—the punishment of a more unconfined sin, in that I was a son of Adam.

23. For if there be as many contrary natures as there are conflicting wills, there will not now be two natures only, but many. If any one deliberate whether he should go to their conventicle, or to the theatre, those men[4] at once cry out, "Behold, here are two natures,—one good, drawing this way, another bad, drawing back that way; for whence else is this indecision between conflicting wills?" But I reply that both are bad—that which draws to them, and that which draws back to the theatre. But they believe not that will to be other than good which draws to them. Supposing, then, one [illegible] should deliberate, and through the conflict of his two [illegible] waver whether he should go to the theatre or to [illegible] not these also waver what to answer? [illegible] confess, which they are not willing to [illegible] which leads to our church is good, as well as [illegible] have received and are held by the mysteries [illegible] must imagine that there are two evil natures [illegible] minds in one man, at war one with the other; [illegible] not be true which they say, that there is one [illegible] other bad; or they must be converted to the truth, [illegible] ger deny that where any one deliberates, there is one [illegible] ating between conflicting wills.

[illegible] et them no more say, then, when they perceive two [illegible] to be antagonistic to each other in the same man, that [illegible] contest is between two opposing minds, of two opposing [illegible] bstances, from two opposing principles, the one good and the

[1] Ps. xxxiv. 5. [2] See v. sec. 2, note 6, above, and x. sec. 5, note, below.
[3] Rom. vii. 17. [4] The Manichæans.

other bad. For Thou, O true God, dost disprove, check, and convince them; likeas when both wills are bad, one deliberates whether he should kill a man by poison, or by the sword; whether he should take possession of this or that estate of another's, when he cannot both; whether he should purchase pleasure by prodigality, or retain his money by covetousness; whether he should go to the circus or the theatre, if both are open on the same day; or, thirdly, whether he should rob another man's house, if he have the opportunity; or, fourthly, whether he should commit adultery, if at the same time he have the means of doing so,—all these things concurring in the same point of time, and all being equally longed for, although impossible to be enacted at one time. For they rend the mind amid four, or even (among the vast variety of things men desire) more antagonistic wills, nor do they yet affirm that there are so many different substances. Thus also is it in wills which are good. For I ask them, is it a good thing to have delight in reading the apostle, or good to have delight in a sober psalm, or good to discourse on the gospel? To each of these they will answer, "It is good." What, then, if all equally delight us, and all at the same time? [illegible] different wills distract the mind, when [illegible] which he should rather choose? Yet a[ll] are at variance until one be fixed upo[n] united will may be borne, which before w[as] Thus, also, when above eternity delights u[s] of temporal good holds us down below, it [is] which willeth not that or this with an entire w[ill] fore torn asunder with grievous perplexities, wh[ile] it prefers that, but out of custom forbears not th[at]

CHAP. XI.—*In what manner the Spirit struggled with the flesh, b[ut] be freed from the bondage of vanity.*

25. Thus was I sick and tormented, accusing m[y]self more severely than was my wont, tossing and turning [in] my chain till that was utterly broken, whereby I now [was] but slightly, but still was held. And Thou, O Lord, pressed upon me in my inward parts by a severe mercy, redoubling the lashes of fear and shame, lest I should again give way,

and that same slender remaining tie not being broken off it should recover strength, and enchain me the faster. For I said mentally, "Lo, let it be done now, let it be done now." And as I spoke, I all but came to a resolve. I all but did it, yet I did it not. Yet fell I not back to my old condition, but took up my position hard by, and drew breath. And I tried again, and wanted but very little of reaching it, and somewhat less, and then all but touched and grasped it; and yet came not at it, nor touched, nor grasped it, hesitating to die unto death, and to live unto life; and the worse, whereto I had been habituated, prevailed more with me than the better, which I had not tried. And the very moment in which I was to become another man, the nearer it approached me, the greater horror did it strike into me; but it did not strike me back, nor turn me aside, but kept me in suspense.

26. The very toys of toys, and vanities of vanities, my old mistresses, still enthralled me; they shook my fleshly garment, and whispered softly, "Dost thou part with us? And from that moment shall we no more be with thee for ever? And from that moment shall not this or that be lawful for thee for ever?" And what did they suggest to me in the words "this or that?" What is it that they suggested, O my God? Let Thy mercy avert it from the soul of Thy servant. What impurities did they suggest! What shame! And now I far less than half heard them, not openly showing themselves and contradicting me, but muttering, as it were behind my back, and furtively plucking me as I was departing, to make me look back upon them. Yet they did delay me, so that I hesitated to burst and shake myself free from them, and to leap over whither I was called,—an unruly habit saying to me, "Dost thou think thou canst live without them?"

27. But now it said this very faintly; for on that side towards which I had set my face, and whither I trembled to go, did the chaste dignity of Continence appear unto me, cheerful, but not dissolutely gay, honestly alluring me to come and doubt nothing, and extending her holy hands, full of a multiplicity of good examples, to receive and embrace me. There were there so many young men and maidens, a multitude of

youth and every age, grave widows and ancient virgins, and Continence herself in all, not barren, but a fruitful mother of children of joys, by Thee, O Lord, her Husband. And she smiled on me with an encouraging mockery, as if to say, "Canst not thou do what these youths and maidens can? Or can one or other do it of themselves, and not rather in the Lord their God? The Lord their God gave me unto them. Why standest thou in thine own strength, and so standest not? Cast thyself upon Him; fear not, He will not withdraw that thou shouldest fall; cast thyself upon Him without fear, He will receive thee, and heal thee." And I blushed beyond measure, for I still heard the muttering of those toys, and hung in suspense. And she again seemed to say, "Shut up thine ears against those unclean members of thine upon the earth, that they may be mortified.[1] They tell thee of delights, but not as doth the law of the Lord thy God."[2] This controversy in my heart was naught but self against self. But Alypius, sitting close by my side, awaited in silence[3] the result of my unwonted emotion.

[1] Col. iii. 5.

[2] Ps. [illegible] *Old ver.*

[3] As in nature, the men of science tell [illegible] two atoms [illegible] at, while an inner magnetism draws them together [illegible] repul[illegible] apart, so it is with human souls. Into ou[illegible] [illegible] cannot enter. In the throes of conversio[illegible] [illegible] vants may assist, but He alone can bring [illegible] [illegible] in the case of Augustine. He felt that now ev[illegible] [illegible] nd would be a burden,—God alone could come near, [illegible] to heal the [illegible] wound of his spirit,—and Alypius was a friend who knew how to *keep silence*, and to await the issue of his friend's profound emotion. How comfortable a thing to find in those who would give consolation the spirit that animated the friends of Job, when "they sat down with him upon the ground seven days and seven nights, and *none spake a word unto him*; for they saw that his grief was very great" (Job ii. 13). Well has Rousseau said: "Les consolations indiscrètes ne font qu'aigrir les violentes afflictions. L'indifférence et la froideur trouvent aisément des paroles, mais la tristesse et *le silence* sont alors le vrai langage de l'amitié." A beautiful exemplification of this is found in Victor Hugo's portrait of Bishop Myriel, in *Les Misérables* (c. iv.), from which we have quoted a few pages back:—"Il savait s'asseoir et *se taire de longues heures* auprès de l'homme qui avait perdu la femme qu'il aimait, de la mère qui avait perdu son enfant. Comme il savait le moment de *se taire*, il savait aussi le moment de parler. O admirable consolateur! il ne cherchait pas à effacer la douleur par l'oubli, mais à la prendre et à la dignifier par l'espérance."

CHAP. XII.—*Having prayed to God, he pours forth a shower of tears, and, admonished by a voice, he opens the book and reads the words in* Rom. xiii. 13; *by which, being changed in his whole soul, he discloses the divine favour to his friend and his mother.*

28. But when a profound reflection had, from the secret depths of my soul, drawn together and heaped up all my misery before the sight of my heart, there arose a mighty storm, accompanied by as mighty a shower of tears. Which, that I might pour forth fully, with its natural expressions, I stole away from Alypius; for it suggested itself to me that solitude was fitter for the business of weeping.[1] So I retired to such a distance that even his presence could not be oppressive to me. Thus was it with me at that time, and he perceived it; for something, I believe, I had spoken, wherein the sound of my voice appeared choked with weeping, and in that state had I risen up. He then remained where we had been sitting, most completely astonished. I flung myself down, how, I know not, under a certain fig-tree, giving free course to my tears, and the streams of mine eyes gushed out, an acceptable sacrifice unto Thee.[2] And, not indeed in these words, yet to this effect, spake I much unto Thee,—"But Thou, O Lord, how long?"[3] "How long, Lord? Wilt Thou be angry for ever? Oh, remember not against us former iniquities;"[4] for I was held by them. I sent up these sorrowful words:—"How long, how long? To-morrow, and to-morrow? Why not now? Why is there not this hour an end to my uncleanness?"

29. I was saying these things and weeping in the most bitter contrition of my heart, when, lo, I heard the voice as of a boy or girl, I know not which, coming from a neighbouring house, chanting, and oft repeating, "Take up and read; take up and read." Immediately my countenance was changed, and I began most earnestly to consider whether it was usual for children in any kind of game to sing such words; nor could I remember ever to have heard the like. So, restraining the torrent of my tears, I rose up, interpreting it no other way than as a command to me from Heaven to open the book,

[1] See note 3, p. 63. [2] 1 Pet. ii. 5. [3] Ps. vi. 3. [4] Ps. lxxix. 5, 8.

and to read the first chapter I should light upon. For I had heard of Antony,[1] that, accidentally coming in whilst the gospel was being read, he received the admonition as if what was read were addressed to him, "Go and sell that thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven; and come and follow me."[2] And by such oracle was he forthwith converted unto Thee. So quickly I returned to the place where Alypius was sitting; for there had I put down the volume of the apostles, when I rose thence. I grasped, opened, and in silence read that paragraph on which my eyes first fell,—"Not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying; but put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof."[3] No further would I read, nor did I need; for instantly, as the sentence ended,—by a light, as it were, of security infused into my heart,—all the gloom of doubt vanished away.

30. Closing the book, then, and putting either my finger between, or some other mark, I now with a tranquil countenance made it known to Alypius. And he thus disclosed to me what was wrought in him, which I knew not. He asked to look at what I had read. I showed him; and he looked even further than I had read, and I knew not what. This it was, verily, "Him that is weak in the faith receive ye;"[4] which he applied to himself, and discovered. By this admonition was he strengthened; and by [illegible] resolution and purpose, very much in accord with his character (wherein, for the better, he was always far different from me), without any restless delay he joined me. Thence we go in to my mother. We make it known to her,—she rejoiceth. We relate how it came to pass,—she leapeth for joy, and triumpheth, and blesseth Thee, who art "able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think;"[5] for she perceived Thee to have given her more for me than she used to ask by her pitiful and most doleful groanings. For Thou didst so convert me unto Thyself, that I sought neither a wife, nor

[1] See his *Life* by St. Athanasius, secs. 2, 3.
[2] Matt. xix. 21.
[3] Rom. xiii. 13, 14.
[4] Rom. xiv. 1.
[5] Eph. iii. 20.

any other of this world's hopes,—standing in that rule of faith[1] in which Thou, so many years before, had showed me unto her in a vision. And thou didst turn her grief into a gladness,[2] much more plentiful than she had desired, and much dearer and chaster than she used to crave, by having grandchildren of my body.

[1] See book iii. sec. 19. [2] Ps. xxx. 11.

BOOK NINTH.

HE SPEAKS OF HIS DESIGN OF FORSAKING THE PROFESSION OF RHETORIC; OF THE DEATH OF HIS FRIENDS; NEBRIDIUS AND VERECUNDUS, OF HAVING RECEIVED BAPTISM IN THE THIRTY-THIRD YEAR OF HIS AGE; AND OF THE VIRTUES AND DEATH OF HIS MOTHER, MONICA.

CHAP. I.—*He praises God, the Author of safety, and Jesus Christ, the Redeemer, acknowledging his own wickedness.*

1. "O LORD, truly I am Thy servant; I am Thy servant, and the son of Thine handmaid: Thou hast loosed my bonds. I will offer to Thee the sacrifice of thanksgiving." Let my heart and my tongue praise Thee, and let all my bones say, "Lord, who is like unto Thee?"[2] Let them so say, and answer Thou me, and "say unto my soul, I am Thy salvation." Who am I, and what is my nature? How evil have not my deeds been; or if not my deeds, my words; or if not my words, my will? But Thou, O Lord, art good and merciful, and Thy right hand had respect unto the profoundness of my death, and removed from the bottom of my heart that abyss of corruption. And this was the result, that I willed not to do what I willed, and willed to do what thou willedst.[4] But where, during all those years, and out of what deep and secret retreat was my free will summoned forth in a moment, whereby I gave my neck to Thy "easy yoke," and my shoulders to Thy "light burden,"[5] O Christ Jesus, "my strength and my Redeemer"?[6] How sweet did it suddenly become to me to be without the delights of trifles! And what at one time I feared to lose, it was now a joy to me to put away.[7] For Thou didst cast them

[1] . vi. 16, 17. [2] *Ibid.* xxxv. 10. [3] *Ibid.* xxxv. 3.
[4] as, though a few MSS. have *nolebas;* and Watts accordingly renders
[5] xi. 30. [6] Ps. xix. 14.
[7] bishop Trench, in his exposition of the parable of the Hid Treasure, e man who found sold all that he had to buy, remarks on the passage

away from me, Thou true and highest sweetness. Thou didst cast them away, and instead of them didst enter in Thyself,[1]—sweeter than all pleasure, though not to flesh and blood; brighter than all light, but more veiled than all mysteries; more exalted than all honour, but not to the exalted in their own conceits. Now was my soul free from the gnawing cares of seeking and getting, and of wallowing and exciting the itch of lust. And I babbled unto Thee my brightness, my riches, and my health, the Lord my God.

CHAP. II.—*As his lungs were affected, he meditates withdrawing himself from public favour.*

2. And it seemed good to me, as before Thee, not tumultuously to snatch away, but gently to withdraw the service of my tongue from the talker's trade; that the young, who thought not on Thy law, nor on Thy peace, but on mendacious follies and forensic strifes, might no longer purchase at my mouth equipments for their vehemence. And opportunely there wanted but a few days unto the Vacation of the Vintage;[2] and I determined to endure them, in order to leave in the usual way, and, being redeemed by Thee, no more to return for sale. Our intention then was known to Thee; but to men—excepting our own friends—was it not known. For we had determined among ourselves not to let it get abroad to

of the *Confessions*: "Augustine excellently illustrates from his own experience this part of the parable. Describing the crisis of his own conversion, and how easy he found it, through this joy, to give up all those pleasures of sin that he had long dreaded to be obliged to renounce, which had long held him fast bound in the chains of evil custom, and which if he renounced, it had seemed to him as though life itself would not be worth the living, he exclaims, 'How sweet did it suddenly become to me,'" etc.

[1] His love of earthly things was expelled by the indwelling love of God, "for," as he says in his *De Musica*, vi. 52, "the love of the things of time could only be expelled by some sweetness of things eternal." Compare also Dr. Chalmers' sermon on *The Expulsive Power of a New Affection* (the ninth of his "Commercial Discourses"), where this idea is expanded.

[2] "In harvest and vintage time had the lawyers their vacation. So Minutius Felix. Scholars their *Non Terminus*, as here; yea, divinity lectures and catechizings then ceased. So Cyprian, *Ep.* 2. The law terms gave way also to the great festivals of the Church. Theodosius forbade any process to go out from fifteen days before Easter till the Sunday after. For the four Terms, see Caroli Calvi, *Capsula*, Act viii. p. 90."—W. W.

any; although Thou hadst given to us, ascending from the valley of tears,[1] and singing the song of degrees, "sharp arrows," and destroying coals, against the "deceitful tongue,"[2] which in giving counsel opposes, and in showing love consumes, as it is wont to do with its food.

3. Thou hadst penetrated our hearts with Thy charity, and we carried Thy words fixed, as it were, in our bowels; and the examples of Thy servant, whom of black Thou hadst made bright, and of dead, alive, crowded in the bosom of our thoughts, burned and consumed our heavy torpor, that we might not topple into the abyss; and they enkindled us exceedingly, that every breath of the deceitful tongue of the gainsayer might inflame us the more, not extinguish us. Nevertheless, because for Thy name's sake which Thou hast sanctified throughout the earth, this, our vow and purpose, might also find commenders, it looked like a vaunting of oneself not to wait for the vacation, now so near, but to leave beforehand a public profession, and one, too, under general observation; so that all who looked on this act of mine, and saw how near was the vintage-time I desired to anticipate, would talk of me a great deal as if I were trying to appear to be a great person. And what purpose would it serve that people should consider and dispute about my intention, and that our good should be evil spoken of?[3]

4. Furthermore, this very summer, from too great literary labour my lungs[4] began to be weak, and with difficulty to draw

[1] Ps. lxxxiv. 6.

[2] Ps. cxx. 3, 4, according to the *Old Ver.* This passage has many difficulties we need not enter into. The Vulgate, however, we may say, renders verse 3: "Quid detur tibi aut quid apponatur tibi ad linguam dolosam,"—that is, shall be given as a defence against the tongues of evil speakers. In this way Augustine understands it, and in his commentary on this place makes the fourth verse give the answer to the third. Thus, "sharp arrows" he interprets to be the word of God, and "destroying coals" those who, being converted to Him, have become examples to the ungodly.

[3] Rom. xiv. 16.

[4] In his *De Vita Beata*, sec. 4, and *Cont. Acad.* i. 3, he also alludes to this weakness of his chest. He was therefore led to give up his professorship, partly from this cause, and partly from a desire to devote himself more entirely to God's service. See also p. 173, note.

deep breaths; showing by the pains in my chest that they were affected, and refusing too loud or prolonged speaking. This had at first been a trial to me, for it compelled me almost of necessity to lay down that burden of teaching; or, if I could be cured and become strong again, at least to leave it off for a while. But when the full desire for leisure, that I might see that Thou art the Lord,[1] arose, and was confirmed in me, my God, Thou knowest I even began to rejoice that I had this excuse ready,—and that not a feigned one,—which might somewhat temper the offence taken by those who for their sons' good wished me never to have the freedom of sons. Full, therefore, with such joy, I bore it till that period of time had passed,—perhaps it was some twenty days,—yet they were bravely borne; for the cupidity which was wont to sustain part of this weighty business had departed, and I had remained overwhelmed had not its place been supplied by patience. Some of Thy servants, my brethren, may perchance say that I sinned in this, in that having once fully, and from my heart, entered on Thy warfare, I permitted myself to sit a single hour in the seat of falsehood. I will not contend. But hast not Thou, O most merciful Lord, pardoned and remitted this sin also, with my others, so horrible and deadly, in the holy water?

CHAP. III.—*He retires to the villa of his friend Verecundus, who was not yet a Christian, and refers to his conversion and death, as well as that of Nebridius.*

5. Verecundus was wasted with anxiety at that our happiness, since he, being most firmly held by his bonds, saw that he would lose our fellowship. For he was not yet a Christian, though his wife was one of the faithful;[2] and yet hereby, being more firmly enchained than by anything else, was he held back from that journey which we had commenced. Nor, he declared, did he wish to be a Christian on any other terms than those that were impossible. However, he invited us most courteously to make use of his country house so long as we should stay there. Thou, O Lord, wilt "recompense" him for this "at the resurrection of the just,"[3] seeing that Thou

[1] Ps. xlvi. 10. [2] See vi. sec. 1, note, above. [3] Luke xiv. 14.

hast already given him "the lot of the righteous."[1] For although, when we were absent at Rome, he, being overtaken with bodily sickness, and therein being made a Christian, and one of the faithful, departed this life, yet hadst Thou mercy on him, and not on him only, but on us also;[2] lest, thinking on the exceeding kindness of our friend to us, and unable to count him in Thy flock, we should be tortured with intolerable grief. Thanks be unto Thee, our God, we are Thine. Thy exhortations, consolations, and faithful promises assure us that Thou now repayest Verecundus for that country house at Cassiacum, where from the fever of the world we found rest in Thee, with the perpetual freshness of Thy Paradise, in that Thou hast forgiven him his earthly sins, in that mountain flowing with milk,[3] that fruitful mountain,—Thine own.

6. He then was at that time full of grief; but Nebridius was joyous. Although he also, not being yet a Christian, had fallen into the pit of that most pernicious error of believing Thy Son to be a phantasm,[4] yet, coming out thence, he held the same belief that we did; not as yet initiated in any of the sacraments of Thy Church, but a most earnest inquirer after truth.[5] Whom, not long after our conversion and regeneration by Thy baptism, he being also a faithful member of the Catholic Church, and serving Thee in perfect chastity and continency amongst his own people in Africa, when his whole household had been brought to Christianity through him, didst Thou release from the flesh; and now he lives in Abraham's bosom. Whatever that may be which is signified by that

[1] Ps. cxxv. 2. [2] Phil. ii. 27.

[3] Literally, *In monte incaseato*, "the mountain of curds," from the *Old Ver.* of Ps. lxviii. 16. The *Vulgate* renders *coagulatus*. But the Authorized Version is nearer the true meaning, when it renders גבננים, *hunched*, as "high." The LXX. renders it πεπυκνωμένον, *condensed*, as if from גְּבִינָה, *cheese*. This divergence arises from the unused root גָּבַן, *to be curved*, having derivatives meaning (1) "hunch-backed," when applied to the body, and (2) "cheese" or "curds," when applied to milk. Augustine, in his exposition of this place, makes the "mountain" to be Christ, and parallels it with Isa. ii. 2; and the "milk" he interprets of the grace that comes from Him for Christ's little ones: *Iste est mons incaseatus, propter parvulos gratia tanquam lacte nutriendos.*

[4] See v. 16, note, above. [5] See vi. 17, note 4, above.

bosom,[1] there lives my Nebridius, my sweet friend, Thy son, O Lord, adopted of a freedman; there he liveth. For what other place could there be for such a soul? There liveth he, concerning which he used to ask me much,—me, an inexperienced, feeble one. Now he puts not his ear unto my mouth, but his spiritual mouth unto Thy fountain, and drinketh as much as he is able, wisdom according to his desire,—happy without end. Nor do I believe that he is so inebriated with it as to forget me,[2] seeing Thou, O Lord, whom he drinketh, art mindful of us. Thus, then, were we comforting the sorrowing Verecundus (our friendship being untouched) concerning our conversion, and exhorting him to a faith according to his condition, I mean, his married state. And tarrying for Nebridius to follow us, which, being so near, he was just about to do, when, behold, those days passed over at last; for long and many they seemed, on account of my love of easeful liberty, that I might sing unto Thee from my very marrow. My heart said unto Thee,—I have sought Thy face; "Thy face, Lord, will I seek."[3]

CHAP. IV.—*In the country he gives his attention to literature, and explains the fourth Psalm in connection with the happy conversion of Alypius. He is troubled with toothache.*

7. And the day arrived on which, in very deed, I was to be released from the Professorship of Rhetoric, from which in intention I had been already released. And done it was; and

[1] Though Augustine, in his *Quæst. Evang.* ii. qu. 38, makes Abraham's bosom to represent the rest into which the Gentiles entered after the Jews had put it from them, yet he, for the most part, in common with the early Church (see *Serm.* xiv. 3; *Con. Faust.* xxxiii. 5; and *Eps.* clxiv. 7, and clxxxvii. Compare also Tertullian, *De Anima*, lviii.), takes it to mean the resting-place of the souls of the righteous after death. Abraham's bosom, indeed, is the same as the "Paradise" of Luke xxiii. 43. The souls of the faithful after they are delivered from the flesh are in "joy and felicity" (*De Civ. Dei*, i. 13, and xiii. 19); but they will not have "their perfect consummation and bliss both in *body and soul*" until the morning of the resurrection, when they shall be endowed with "spiritual *bodies*." See note p. 163; and for the difference between the ἅδης of Luke xvi. 23, that is, the place of departed spirits,—into which it is said in the Apostles' Creed Christ descended,—and γέεννα, or Hell, see Campbell on *The Gospels*, i. 253. In the A.V. both Greek words are rendered "Hell."

[2] See sec. 37, note, below.

[3] Ps. xxvii. 8.

Thou didst deliver my tongue whence Thou hadst already delivered my heart; and full of joy I blessed Thee for it, and retired with all mine to the villa.[1] What I accomplished there in writing, which was now wholly devoted to Thy service, though still, in this pause as it were, panting from the school of pride, my books testify,[2]—those in which I disputed with my friends, and those with myself alone[3] before Thee; and what with the absent Nebridius, my letters[4] testify. And when can I find time to recount all Thy great benefits which Thou bestowedst upon us at that time, especially as I am hasting on to still greater mercies? For my memory calls upon me, and pleasant it is to me, O Lord, to confess unto Thee, by what inward goads Thou didst subdue me, and how Thou didst make me low, bringing down the mountains and hills of my imaginations, and didst straighten my crookedness, and smooth my rough ways;[5] and by what means Thou also didst subdue that brother of my heart, Alypius, unto the name of Thy only-begotten, our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, which he at first refused to have inserted in our writings. For he rather desired that they should savour of the "cedars" of the schools, which the Lord hath now broken down,[6] than of the wholesome herbs of the Church, hostile to serpents.

8. What utterances sent I up unto Thee, my God, when I

[1] As Christ went into the wilderness after His baptism (Matt. iv. 1), and Paul into Arabia after his conversion (Gal. i. 17), so did Augustine here find in his retirement a preparation for his future work. He tells us of this time of his life (*De Ordin.* i. 6) that his habit was to spend the beginning or end, and often almost half the night, in watching and searching for truth, and says further (*ibid.* 29), that "he almost daily asked God with tears that his wounds might be healed, and often proved to himself that he was unworthy to be healed as soon as he wished."

[2] These books are (*Con. Acad.* i. 4) his three disputations *Against the Academics*; his *De Vita Beata*, begun (*ibid.* 6) "Idibus Novembris die ejus natali;" and (*Retract.* i. 3) his two books *De Ordine*.

[3] That is, his two books of *Soliloquies*. In his *Retractations*, i. 4, sec. 1, he tells us that in these books he held an argument, *ego interrogans, meipsum respondens, tanquam duo essemus, ratio et ego*.

[4] Several of these letters to Nebridius will be found in the two vols. of *Letters* in this series.

[5] Luke iii. 5. [6] Ps. xxix. 5.

read the Psalms of David,[1] those faithful songs and sounds of devotion which exclude all swelling of spirit, when new to Thy true love, at rest in the villa with Alypius, a catechumen like myself, my mother cleaving unto us,—in woman's garb truly, but with a man's faith, with the peacefulness of age, full of motherly love and Christian piety! What utterances used I to send up unto Thee in those Psalms, and how was I inflamed towards Thee by them, and burned to rehearse them, if it were possible, throughout the whole world, against the pride of the human race! And yet they are sung throughout the whole world, and none can hide himself from Thy heat.[2] With what vehement and bitter sorrow was I indignant at the Manichæans; whom yet again I pitied, for that they were ignorant of those sacraments, those medicaments, and were mad against the antidote which might have made them sane! I wished that they had been somewhere near me then, and, without my being aware of their presence, could have beheld my face, and heard my words, when I read the fourth Psalm in that time of my leisure,—how that psalm wrought upon me. When I called upon Thee, Thou didst hear me, O God of my righteousness; Thou hast enlarged me when I was in distress; have mercy upon me, and hear my prayer.[3] Oh that they might have heard what I uttered on these words, without my knowing whether they heard or no, lest they should think that I spake it because of them! For, of a truth, neither should I have said the same things, nor in the way I said them, if I had perceived that I was heard and seen by them; and had I spoken them, they would not so have received them as when I spake by and for myself before Thee, out of the private feelings of my soul.

9. I alternately quaked with fear, and warmed with hope, and with rejoicing in Thy mercy, O Father. And all these

[1] Reference may with advantage be made to Archbishop Trench's *Hulsean Lectures* (1845), who in his third lect., on "The Manifoldness of Scripture," adverts to this very passage, and shows in an interesting way how the Psalms have ever been to the saints of God, as Luther said, "a Bible in little," affording satisfaction to their needs in every kind of trial, emergency, and experience.

[2] P. xix. 6. [3] Ps. iv. 1.

passed forth, both by mine eyes and voice, when Thy good Spirit, turning unto us, said, O ye sons of men, how long will ye be slow of heart? "How long will ye love vanity, and seek after leasing?"[1] For I had loved vanity, and sought after leasing. And Thou, O Lord, hadst already magnified Thy Holy One, raising Him from the dead, and setting Him at Thy right hand,[2] whence from on high He should send His promise,[3] the Paraclete, "the Spirit of Truth."[4] And He had already sent Him,[5] but I knew it not; He had sent Him, because He was now magnified, rising again from the dead, and ascending into heaven. For till then "the Holy Ghost was not yet given, because that Jesus was not yet glorified."[6] And the prophet cries out, How long will ye be slow of heart? How long will ye love vanity, and seek after leasing? Know this, that the Lord hath magnified His Holy One. He cries out, "How long?" He cries out, "Know this," and I, so long ignorant, "loved vanity, and sought after leasing." And therefore I heard and trembled, because these words were spoken unto such as I remembered that I myself had been. For in those phantasms which I once held for truths was there "vanity" and "leasing." And I spake many things loudly and earnestly, in the sorrow of my remembrance, which, would that they who yet "love vanity and seek after leasing" had heard! They would perchance have been troubled, and have vomited it forth, and Thou wouldest hear them when they cried unto Thee;[7] for by a true[8] death in the flesh He died for us, who now maketh intercession for us[9] with Thee.

10. I read further, "Be ye angry, and sin not."[10] And how was I moved, O my God, who had now learned to "be angry" with myself for the things past, so that in the future I might not sin! Yea, to be justly angry; for that it was not another nature of the race of darkness[11] which sinned for me, as they affirm it to be who are not angry with themselves, and who

[1] Ps. iv. 23.
[2] Eph. i. 20.
[3] Luke xxiv. 49.
[4] John xiv. 16, 17.
[5] Acts ii. 1-4.
[6] John vii. 39.
[7] Ps. iv. 1.
[8] See v. 16, note, above.
[9] Rom. viii. 34.
[10] Eph. iv. 26.
[11] See iv. 26, note, above.

treasure up to themselves wrath against the day of wrath, and of the revelation of Thy righteous judgment.[1] Nor were my good things[2] now without, nor were they sought after with eyes of flesh in that sun;[3] for they that would have joy from without easily sink into oblivion, and are wasted upon those things which are seen and temporal, and in their starving thoughts do lick their very shadows. Oh, if only they were wearied out with their fasting, and said, "Who will show us any good?"[4] And we would answer, and they hear, O Lord, The light of Thy countenance is lifted up upon us.[5] For we are not that Light, which lighteth every man,[6] but we are enlightened by Thee, that we, who were sometimes darkness, may be light in Thee.[7] Oh that they could behold the internal Eternal,[8] which having tasted I gnashed my teeth that I could not show It to them, while they brought me their heart in their eyes, roaming abroad from Thee, and said, "Who will show us any good?" But there, where I was angry with myself in my chamber, where I was inwardly pricked, where I had offered my "sacrifice," slaying my old man, and beginning the resolution of a new life, putting my trust in Thee,—there hadst Thou begun to grow sweet unto me, and to "put gladness in my heart."[9] And I cried out as I read this outwardly, and felt it inwardly. Nor would I be increased[11] with worldly goods, wasting time and being wasted by time; whereas I possessed in Thy eternal simplicity other corn, and wine, and oil.[12]

11. And with a loud cry from my heart, I called out in the following verse, "Oh, in peace!" and "the self-same!"[13] Oh,

[1] Rom. ii. 5. [2] Ps. iv. 6. [3] See v. 12, note, above.
[4] Ps. iv. 6. [5] *Ibid.* [6] John i. 9. [7] Eph. v. 8.
[8] *Internum æternum*, but some MSS. read *internum lumen æternum*.
[9] Ps. iv. 5. [10] *Ibid.* ver. 7.
[11] That is, lest they should distract him from the true riches. For, as he says in his exposition of the fourth Psalm, "Cum dedita temporalibus voluptatibus anima semper exardescit cupiditate, nec satiari potest." He knew that the prosperity of the soul (3 John 2) might be injuriously affected by the prosperity of the body; and disregarding the lower life (βίος) and its "worldly goods," he proceeded on to increase the treasure he had within,—the true life (ζωή) which he had received from God. See also *Enarr. in Ps.* xxxviii. 6.
[12] Ps. iv. 7. [13] *Ibid.* ver. 8, *Vulg.*

what said he, "I will lay me down and sleep!"[1] For who shall hinder us, when "shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory?"[2] And Thou art in the highest degree "the self-same," who changest not; and in Thee is the rest which forgetteth all labour, for there is no other beside Thee, nor ought we to seek after those many other things which are not what Thou art; but Thou, Lord, only makest me to dwell in hope.[3] These things I read, and was inflamed; but discovered not what to do with those deaf and dead, of whom I had been a pestilent member, —a bitter and a blind declaimer against the writings be-honied with the honey of heaven and luminous with Thine own light; and I was consumed on account of the enemies of this Scripture.

12. When shall I call to mind all that took place in those holidays? Yet neither have I forgotten, nor will I be silent about the severity of Thy scourge, and the amazing quickness of Thy mercy.[4] Thou didst at that time torture me with tooth-ache;[5] and when it had become so exceeding great that I was not able to speak, it came into my heart to urge all my friends who were present to pray for me to Thee, the God of all manner of health. And I wrote it down on wax,[6] and gave it to them to read. Presently, as with submissive desire we bowed our knees, that pain departed. But what pain? Or how did it depart? I confess to being much afraid, my Lord my God, seeing that from my earliest years I had not

[1] Ps. iv. 8; in his comment whereon Augustine applies this passage as above.
[2] 1 Cor. xv. 54. [3] Ps. iv. 9, *Vulg.*
[4] Compare the beautiful Talmudical legend quoted by Jeremy Taylor (*Works*, viii. 397, Eden's ed.), that of the two archangels, Gabriel and Michael, Gabriel has two wings that he may "fly swiftly" (Dan. ix. 21) to bring the message of peace, while Michael has but one, that he may labour in his flight when he comes forth on his ministries of justice.
[5] In his *Soliloquies* (see note, sec. 7, above), he refers in i. 21 to this period. He there tells us that his pain was so great that it prevented his learning anything afresh, and only permitted him to revolve in his mind what he had already learnt. Compare De Quincey's description of the agonies he had to endure from toothache in his *Confessions of an Opium Eater*.
[6] That is, on the waxen tablet used by the ancients. The iron *stilus*, or pencil, used for writing, was pointed at one end and flattened at the other—the flattened circular end being used to erase the writing by smoothing down the wax. Hence *vertere stilum* signifies *to put out* or *correct*. See sec. 19, below.

experienced such pain. And Thy purposes were profoundly impressed upon me; and, rejoicing in faith, I praised Thy name. And that faith suffered me not to be at rest in regard to my past sins, which were not yet forgiven me by Thy baptism.

CHAP. V.—*At the recommendation of Ambrose, he reads the prophecies of Isaiah, but does not understand them.*

13. The vintage vacation being ended, I gave the citizens of Milan notice that they might provide their scholars with another seller of words; because both of my election to serve Thee, and my inability, by reason of the difficulty of breathing and the pain in my chest, to continue the Professorship. And by letters I notified to Thy bishop,[1] the holy man Ambrose, my former errors and present resolutions, with a view to his advising me which of Thy books it was best for me to read, so that I might be readier and fitter for the reception of such great grace. He recommended Isaiah the Prophet;[2] I believe, because he foreshows more clearly than others the gospel, and the calling of the Gentiles. But I, not understanding the first portion of the book, and imagining the whole to be like it, laid it aside, intending to take it up hereafter, when better practised in our Lord's words.

CHAP. VI.—*He is baptized at Milan with Alypius and his son Adeodatus. The book "De Magistro."*

14. Thence, when the time had arrived at which I was to give in my name,[3] having l[illegible] the country, we returned to Milan. Alypius also was [illegible]ed to be born again with [illegible] in Thee, being now clothe[illegible] the humility appropria[illegible] Thy sacraments, and being so brave a tamer of the bo[illegible] with unusual fortitude to tread the fi[illegible]

[1] *Antistiti.*

[2] In his *De Civ.* *Dei*, xviii. 29, he likewis[illegible] character of the writings of Isaiah.

[3] "They were baptized at Easter, and gave u[illegible] Sunday in Lent, the rest of which they were [illegible] prayer, and being examined in the scrutinies [illegible] Therefore went they to Milan, that the bish[illegible] Adjoining to the cathedrals were there certai[illegible] and be exercised in, till the day of baptism" [illegible] Bingham, x. 2, sec. 6; and above, note 2, p. [illegible] p. 180.

his naked feet. We took into our company the boy Adeodatus, born of me carnally, of my sin. Well hadst Thou made him. He was barely fifteen years, yet in wit excelled many grave and learned men.[1] I confess unto Thee Thy gifts, O Lord my God, Creator of all, and of exceeding power to reform our deformities; for of me was there naught in that boy but the sin. For that we fostered him in Thy discipline, Thou inspiredst us, none other,—Thy gifts I confess unto Thee. There is a book of ours, which is entitled *The Master*.[2] It is a dialogue between him and me. Thou knowest that all things there put into the mouth of the person in argument with me were his thoughts in his sixteenth year. Many others more wonderful did I find in him. That talent was a source of awe to me. And who but Thou could be the worker of such marvels? Quickly didst Thou remove his life from the earth; and now I recall him to mind with a sense of security, in that I fear nothing for his childhood or youth, or for his whole self. We took him coeval with us in Thy grace, to be educated in Thy discipline; and we were baptized,[3] and solicitude about our past life left us. Nor was I satiated in those days with the wondrous sweetness of considering the depth of Thy counsels concerning the salvation of the human race. How greatly did I weep in Thy hymns and canticles, deeply moved by the voices of Thy sweet-speaking Church! The voices flowed into

[1] In his *De Vita Beata*, sec. 6, he makes a similar allusion to the genius of
latus.

is book, in which he and his son ar[illegible]e interlocutors, will be found in
the Benedictine edition, and is by the editors assumed to be written about
[illegible]ives its argument in his *Retractations*, i. 12. He
ought, and discovered that there is no master who
od, as it is written in the gospel (Matt. xxiii. 10),
ist.'"

se, and tradition says, as he came out of the water,
Te Deum (ascribed by some to Ambrose), which,
Church is called "The Song of Ambrose and
. Pelag. i. 10, he speaks of Ambrose as being
rils were known throughout the whole Roman
im Jesu per evangelium ipse me genuit, et e
ationis accepi." See also the last sec. of his
ii. 23. In notes 3, p. 13, and 2, p. 108, will
f the early Church as to baptism.

mine ears, and the truth was poured forth into my heart, whence the agitation of my piety overflowed, and my tears ran over, and blessed was I therein.

CHAP. VII.—*Of the Church hymns instituted at Milan; of the Ambrosian persecution raised by Justina; and of the discovery of the bodies of two martyrs.*

15. Not long had the Church of Milan begun to employ this kind of consolation and exhortation, the brethren singing together with great earnestness of voice and heart. For it was about a year, or not much more, since Justina, the mother of the boy-Emperor Valentinian, persecuted [1] Thy servant Ambrose in the interest of her heresy, to which she had been seduced by the Arians. The pious people kept guard in the church, prepared to die with their bishop, Thy servant. There my mother, Thy handmaid, bearing a chief part of those cares and watchings, lived in prayer. We, still unmelted by the heat of Thy Spirit, were yet moved by the astonished and disturbed city. At this time it was instituted that, after the manner of the Eastern Church, hymns and psalms should be sung, lest the people should pine away in the tediousness of sorrow; which custom, retained from then till now, is imitated by many, yea, by almost all of Thy congregations throughout the rest of the world.

16. Then didst Thou by a vision make known to Thy renowned bishop [2] the spot where lay the bodies of Gervasius and Protasius, the martyrs (whom Thou hadst in Thy secret storehouse preserved uncorrupted for so many years), whom Thou mightest at the fitting time produce them to re[strain] feminine but royal fury. For when they were re[moved] dug up and with due honour transferre[d]

[1] The Bishop of Milan who preceded Ambrose [Auxentius] Valentinian the First approved the choice of Amb[rose] death, greatly troubled the Church. Ambrose s[ucceeded] over both Valentinian the Second and his b[rother] referred to above, says Pusey, was "to induc[e] church,—the Portian Basilica without the w[alls], new Basilica within the walls, which was larg[er]. *Serm. c. Auxentium de Basilicis Tradendis*, p[assim], mont, *Hist. Eccl. St. Ambroise*, art. 44–48, p[assim], at Milan. See next sec., the beginning of not[e].

[2] *Antistiti.*

Basilica, not only they who were troubled with unclean spirits (the devils confessing themselves) were healed, but a certain man also, who had been blind[1] many years, a well-known citizen of that city, having asked and been told the reason of the people's tumultuous joy, rushed forth, asking his guide to lead him thither. Arrived there, he begged to be permitted to touch with his handkerchief the bier of Thy saints, whose death is precious in Thy sight.[2] When he had done this, and put it to his eyes, they were forthwith opened. Thence did the fame spread; thence did Thy praises burn,—shine; thence was the mind of that enemy, though not yet enlarged to the wholeness of believing, restrained from the fury of persecuting. Thanks be to Thee, O my God. Whence and whither hast Thou thus led my remembrance, that I should confess these things also unto Thee,—great, though I, forgetful, had passed them over? And yet then, when the "savour" of Thy "ointments" was so fragrant, did we not "run after Thee."[3] And so I did the more abundantly weep at the singing of Thy hymns, formerly panting for Thee, and at last breathing in Thee, as far as the air can play in this house of grass.

CHAP. VIII.—*Of the conversion of Evodius, and the death of his mother when returning with him to Africa; and whose education he tenderly relates.*

17. Thou, who makest men to dwell of one mind in a house,[4] didst associate with us Evodius also, a young man of our city, who, when serving as an agent for Public Affairs,[5] converted unto Thee and baptized prior to us, and ...ing his secular service, prepared himself for Thine

...his, amongst other supposed miracles, in his *De Civ ...erm.* cclxxxvi. sec. 4, where he tells us that the man, ...y that he would for the remainder of his life serve ...es of the martyrs lay. St. Ambrose also examines ...one of his sermons. We have already referred ...n of these false miracles in the early Church. ...*tures on the Right Use of the Early Fathers*, is ... various passages in the Ante-Nicene Fathers ... in the Church is either expressed or implied. ... note on p. 485 of vol. ii. of the *City of God*,

[3] Cant. i. 3, 4.

[5] See viii. sec. 15, note, above.

We were together,[1] and together were we about to dwell with a holy purpose. We sought for some place where we might be most useful in our service to Thee, and were going back together to Africa. And when we were at the Tiberine Ostia my mother died. Much I omit, having much to hasten. Receive my confessions and thanksgivings, O my God, for innumerable things concerning which I am silent. But I will not omit aught that my soul has brought forth as to that Thy handmaid who brought me forth,—in her flesh, that I might be born to this temporal light, and in her heart, that I might be born to life eternal.[2] I will speak not of her gifts, but Thine in her; for she neither made herself nor educated herself. Thou createdst her, nor did her father nor her mother know what a being was to proceed from them. And it was the rod of Thy Christ, the discipline of Thine only Son, that trained her in Thy fear, in the house of one of Thy faithful ones, who was a sound member of Thy Church. Yet this good discipline did she not so much attribute to the diligence of her mother, as that of a certain decrepid maid-servant, who had carried about her father when an infant, as little ones are wont to be carried on the backs of elder girls. For which reason, and on account of her extreme age and very good character, was she much respected by the heads of that Christian house. Wher[illegible] was committed to her [illegible] of her master's daug[illegible]e with diligence per[illegible] and was earnest [illegible] when necessar[illegible] holy severity, [illegible] For, excepting [illegible] perately fed at [illegible] them though p[illegible] taking precauti[illegible] wholesome adv[illegible]

[1] We find from [illegible] *De Moribus Eccles[illegible]* wrote (*ibid.* 8, *seq.*) [illegible] books *De Libero A[illegible]*

[2] In his *De Vita [illegible]* was to his mother's [illegible]

not control of wine; but when you have come to be married, and made mistresses of storeroom and cellar, you will despise water, but the habit of drinking will remain." By this method of instruction, and power of command, she restrained the longing of their tender age, and regulated the very thirst of the girls to such a becoming limit, as that what was not seemly they did not long for.

18. And yet—as Thine handmaid related to me, her son—there had stolen upon her a love of wine. For when she, as being a sober maiden, was as usual bidden by her parents to draw wine from the cask, the vessel being held under the opening, before she poured the wine into the bottle, she would wet the tips of her lips with a little, for more than that her inclination refused. For this she did not from any craving for drink, but out of the overflowing buoyancy of her time of life, which bubbles up with sportiveness, and is, in youthful spirits, wont to be repressed by the gravity of elders. And so unto that little, adding daily littles (for "he that contemneth small things shall fall by little and little"),[1] she contracted such a habit as to drink off eagerly her little cup nearly full of wine. Where, then, was the sagacious old woman with her earnest restraint? Could anything prevail against a secret

[1] Eccl[illegible]s xix. 1. Augustine freque[illegible] [illegible]ndes to the subtle power of little [illegible] As when he says,—illustra[illegible] [illegible]clxxviii.) by the plagues of [illegible] tiny insects, if they be nu[illegible] [illegible]e as harmful as the bite of [illegible] and (*Serm.* lvi.) a b[illegible] [illegible]sed of tiny grains, will [illegible]rely as the [illegible] [illegible]ps (*Serm.* lviii.) mak[illegible] [illegible]ttle things must [illegible] [illegible]*tomy of Secret S*[illegible] [illegible]eat transgressio[illegible] [illegible]trength. The sn[illegible] [illegible]itudinous accumu[illegible] [illegible] seems to act as it is [illegible] He persuaded the [illegible]who, when they had [illegible]f little things have [illegible]istries. The Jews, [illegible]g how God by little [illegible]eater things. They [illegible]in the wilderness, to [illegible]eep of his inheritance,

disease if Thy medicine, O Lord, did not watch over us? Father, mother, and nurturers absent, Thou present, who hast created, who callest, who also by those who are set over us workest some good for the salvation of our souls, what didst Thou at that time, O my God? How didst Thou heal her? How didst Thou make her whole? Didst Thou not out of another woman's soul evoke a hard and bitter insult, as a surgeon's knife from Thy secret store, and with one thrust remove all that putrefaction?[1] For the maid-servant who used to accompany her to the cellar, falling out, as it happens, with her little mistress, when she was alone with her, cast in her teeth this vice, with very bitter insult, calling her a "wine-bibber." Stung by this taunt, she perceived her foulness, and immediately condemned and renounced it. Even as friends by their flattery pervert, so do enemies by their taunts often correct us. Yet Thou renderest not unto them what Thou dost by them, but what was proposed by them. For she, being angry, desired to irritate her young mistress, not to cure her; and did it in secret, either because the time and place of the dispute found them thus, or perhaps lest she herself should be exposed to danger for disclosing it so late. But Thou, Lord, Governor of heavenly and earthly things, who convertest to Thy purposes the deepest torrents, and disposest the turbulent current of the ages,[2] healest one soul by the unsoundness of [illegible] lest any man, when he remarks this, should attr[illegible] his own power if another, whom he wishes to be [illegible] so through a word of his.

[1] "'Animam opor[illegible] ass[illegible]ntationibus,' says St. Ambrose. Some errors and offences do rest salt upon a good man's integrity, that it may not putrefy with presumption."—Bishop Hacket's *Sermons*, p. 210.

[2] Not only is this true in private, but in public concerns. Even in the crucifixion of our Lord, the wicked rulers did (Acts iv. 26) what God's hand and God's counsel had before determined to be done. Perhaps by reason of His infinite knowledge it is that God, who knows our thoughts long before (Ps. cxxxix. 2, 4), weaves man's self-willed purposes into the pattern which His inscrutable Providence has before ordained. Or, to use Augustine's own words (*De Civ. Dei*, xxii. 2), "It is true that wicked men do many things contrary to God's will; but so great is His wisdom and power, that all things which seem adverse to His purpose do still tend towards those just and good ends and issues which He Himself has foreknown."

CHAP. IX.—*He describes the praiseworthy habits of his mother; her kindness towards her husband and her sons.*

19. Being thus modestly and soberly trained, and rather made subject by Thee to her parents, than by her parents to Thee, when she had arrived at a marriageable age, she was given to a husband whom she served as her lord. And she busied herself to gain him to Thee, preaching Thee unto him by her behaviour; by which Thou madest her fair, and reverently amiable, and admirable unto her husband. For she so bore the wronging of her bed as never to have any dissension with her husband on account of it. For she waited for Thy mercy upon him, that by believing in Thee he might become chaste. And besides this, as he was earnest in friendship, so was he violent in anger; but she had learned that an angry husband should not be resisted, neither in deed, nor even in word. But so soon as he was grown calm and tranquil, and she saw a fitting moment, she would give him a reason for her conduct, should he have been excited without cause. In short, while many matrons, whose husbands were more gentle, carried the marks of blows on their dishonoured faces, and would in private conversation blame the lives of their husbands, she would blame their tongues, monishing them gravely, as if in jest: "That from the hour they heard what are called the matrimonial tablets[1] read to them, they should think of them as instruments whereby they were made servants; so, being aware[illegible]ful of their condition, they ought not to set themselves in opposition to their lords." And when they, knowing what a husband she endured, marvelled that it had never been reported, nor appeared by

[1] That is, not only from the time of actual marriage, but from the time of betrothal, when the contract was written upon tablets (see note 4, p. 216), and signed by the contracting parties. The future wife was then called *sponsa sperata* or *pacta*. Augustine alludes to this above (viii. sec. 7), when he says, "It is also the custom that the affianced bride (*pacta sponsa*) should not immediately be given up, that the husband may not less esteem her whom, as betrothed, he longed not for" (*non suspiraverit sponsus*). It should be remembered, in reading this section, that women amongst the Romans were not confined after the Eastern fashion of the Greeks to separate apartments, but had charge of the domestic arrangements and the training of the children.

any indication, that Patricius had beaten his wife, or that there had been any domestic strife between them, even for a day, and asked her in confidence the reason of this, she taught them her rule, which I have mentioned above. They who observed it experienced the wisdom of it, and rejoiced; those who observed it not were kept in subjection, and suffered.

20. Her mother-in-law, also, being at first prejudiced against her by the whisperings of evil-disposed servants, she so conquered by submission, persevering in it with patience and meekness, that she voluntarily disclosed to her son the tongues of the meddling servants, whereby the domestic peace between herself and her daughter-in-law had been agitated, begging him to punish them for it. When, therefore, he had—in conformity with his mother's wish, and with a view to the discipline of his family, and to ensure the future harmony of its members—corrected with stripes those discovered, according to the will of her who had discovered them, she promised a similar reward to any who, to please her, should say anything evil to her of her daughter-in-law. And, none now daring to do so, they lived together with a wonderful sweetness of mutual good-will.

21. This great gift Thou bestowedst also, my God, my mercy, upon that good handmaid of Thine, out of whose womb Thou createdst me, even that, whenever she could, she showed herself such a peacemaker between any differing and discordant spirits, that when she had heard on both sides most bitter things, such as swelling and undigested discord is wont to give vent to, when the crudities of enmities are breathed out in bitter speeches to a present friend against an absent enemy, she would disclose nothing about the one unto the other, save what might avail to their reconcilement. A small good this might seem to me, did I not know to my sorrow countless persons, who, through some horrible and far-spreading infection of sin, not only disclose to enemies mutually enraged the things said in passion against each other, but add some things that were never spoken at all; whereas, to a generous man, it ought to seem a small thing not to incite or increase the enmities of men by ill-speaking, unless he endeavour likewise by kind words to extinguish them. Such a one was she,—

Thou, her most intimate Instructor, teaching her in the school of her heart.

22. Finally, her own husband, now towards the end of his earthly existence, did she gain over unto Thee; and she had not to complain of that in him, as one of the faithful, which, before he became so, she had endured. She was also the servant of Thy servants. Whosoever of them knew her, did in her much magnify, honour, and love Thee; for that through the testimony of the fruits of a holy conversation, they perceived Thee to be present in her heart. For she had "been the wife of one man," had requited her parents, had guided her house piously, was "well-reported of for good works," had "brought up children,"[1] as often travailing in birth of them[2] as she saw them swerving from Thee. Lastly, to all of us, O Lord (since of Thy favour Thou sufferest Thy servants to speak), who, before her sleeping in Thee,[3] lived associated together, having received the grace of Thy baptism, did she devote care such as she might if she had been mother of us all; served us as if she had been child of all.

CHAP. X.—*A conversation he had with his mother concerning the kingdom of heaven.*

23. As the day now approached on which she was to depart this life (which day Thou knewest, we did not), it fell out—Thou, as I believe, by Thy secret ways arranging it—that she and I stood alone, leaning in a certain window, from which the garden of the house we occupied at Ostia could be seen; at which place, removed from the crowd, we were resting ourselves for the voyage, after the fatigues of a long journey. We then were conversing alone very pleasantly; and, "forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before,"[4] we were seeking between ourselves in the presence of the Truth, which Thou art, of what nature the eternal life of the saints would be, which eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither hath entered into the heart of man.[5] But yet we opened wide the mouth of our heart, after those superual streams of Thy fountain,

[1] 1 Tim. v. 4, 9, 10, 14. [2] Gal. iv. 19. [3] 1 Thess. iv. 14.
[4] Phil. iii. 13. [5] 1 Cor. ii. 9; Isa. lxiv. 4.

"the fountain of life," which is "with Thee;"[1] that being sprinkled with it according to our capacity, we might in some measure weigh so high a mystery.

24. And when our conversation had arrived at that point, that the very highest pleasure of the carnal senses, and that in the very brightest material light, seemed by reason of the sweetness of that life not only not worthy of comparison, but not even of mention, we, lifting ourselves with a more ardent affection towards "the Self-same,"[2] did gradually pass through all corporeal things, and even the heaven itself, whence sun, and moon, and stars shine upon the earth; yea, we soared higher yet by inward musing, and discoursing, and admiring Thy works; and we came to our own minds, and went beyond them, that we might advance as high as that region of unfailing plenty, where Thou feedest Israel[3] for ever with the food of truth, and where life is that Wisdom by whom all these things are made, both which have been, and which are to come; and she is not made, but is as she hath been, and so shall ever be; yea, rather, to "have been," and "to be hereafter," are not in her, but only "to be," seeing she is eternal, for to "have been" and "to be hereafter" are not eternal. And while we were thus speaking, and straining after her, we slightly touched her with the whole effort of our heart; and we sighed, and there left bound "the first-fruits of the Spirit;"[4] and returned to the noise of our own mouth, where the word uttered has both beginning and end. And what is like unto Thy Word, our Lord, who remaineth in Himself without becoming old, and "maketh all things new"?[5]

25. We were saying, then, If to any man the tumult of the flesh were silenced,—silenced the phantasies of earth, waters, and air,—silenced, too, the poles; yea, the very soul be silenced to herself, and go beyond herself by not thinking of herself,—silenced fancies and imaginary revelations, every tongue, and every sign, and whatsoever exists by passing away, since, if any could hearken, all these say, "We created not ourselves, but were created by Him who abideth for ever:"

[1] Ps. xxxvi. 9. [2] Ps. iv. 8, *Vulg.* [3] Ps. lxxx. 5.
[4] Rom. viii. 23. [5] Wisd. vii. 27.

If, having uttered this, they now should be silenced, having only quickened our ears to Him who created them, and He alone speak not by them, but by Himself, that we may hear His word, not by fleshly tongue, nor angelic voice, nor sound of thunder, nor the obscurity of a similitude, but might hear Him—Him whom in these we love—without these, likeas we two now strained ourselves, and with rapid thought touched on that Eternal Wisdom which remaineth over all. If this could be sustained, and other visions of a far different kind be withdrawn, and this one ravish, and absorb, and envelope its beholder amid these inward joys, so that his life might be eternally like that one moment of knowledge which we now sighed after, were not this "Enter thou into the joy of Thy Lord"?[1] And when shall that be? When we shall all rise again; but all shall not be changed.[2]

26. Such things was I saying; and if not after this manner, and in these words, yet, Lord, Thou knowest, that in that day when we were talking thus, this world with all its delights grew contemptible to us, even while we spake. Then said my mother, "Son, for myself, I have no longer any pleasure in aught in this life. What I want here further, and why I am here, I know not, now that my hopes in this world are satisfied. There was indeed one thing for which I wished to tarry a little in this life, and that was that I might see thee a Catholic Christian before I died.[3] My God has exceeded this abundantly, so that I see thee despising all earthly felicity, made His servant,—what do I here?"

[1] Matt. xxv. 21. [2] 1 Cor. xv. 51, however, is, "we *shall* all be changed."

[3] Dean Stanley (*Canterbury Sermons*, serm. 10) draws the following, amongst other lessons, from God's dealings with Augustine. "It is an example," he says, "like the conversion of St. Paul, of the fact that from time to time God calls His servants not by gradual, but by sudden changes. These conversions are, it is true, the exceptions and not the rule of Providence, but such examples as Augustine show us that we must acknowledge the truth of the exceptions when they do occur. It is also an instance how, even in such sudden conversions, previous good influences have their weight. The prayers of his mother, the silent influence of his friend, the high character of Ambrose, the preparation for Christian truth in the writings of heathen philosophers, were all laid up, as it were, waiting for the spark, and, when it came, the fire flashed at once through every corner of his soul."

CHAP. XI.—*His mother, attacked by fever, dies at Ostia.*

27. What reply I made unto her to these things I do not well remember. However, scarcely five days after, or not much more, she was prostrated by fever; and while she was sick, she one day sank into a swoon, and was for a short time unconscious of visible things. We hurried up to her; but she soon regained her senses, and gazing on me and my brother as we stood by her, she said to us inquiringly, "Where was I?" Then looking intently at us stupefied with grief, "Here," saith she, "shall you bury your mother." I was silent, and refrained from weeping; but my brother said something, wishing her, as the happier lot, to die in her own country and not abroad. She, when she heard this, with anxious countenance arrested him with her eye, as savouring of such things, and then gazing at me, "Behold," saith she, "what he saith;" and soon after to us both she saith, "Lay this body anywhere, let not the care for it trouble you at all. This only I ask, that you will remember me at the Lord's altar, wherever you be." And when she had given forth this opinion in such words as she could, she was silent, being in pain with her increasing sickness.

28. But, as I reflected on Thy gifts, O thou invisible God, which Thou instillest into the hearts of Thy faithful ones, whence such marvellous fruits do spring, I did rejoice and give thanks unto Thee, calling to mind what I knew before, how she had ever burned with anxiety respecting her burial-place, which she had provided and prepared for herself by the body of her husband. For as they had lived very peacefully together, her desire had also been (so little is the human mind capable of grasping things divine) that this should be added to that happiness, and be talked of among men, that after her wandering beyond the sea, it had been granted her that they both, so united on earth, should lie in the same grave. But when this uselessness had, through the bounty of Thy goodness, begun to be no longer in her heart, I knew not, and I was full of joy admiring what she had thus disclosed to me; though indeed in that our conversation in the window also,

when she said, "What do I here any longer?" she appeared not to desire to die in her own country. I heard afterwards, too, that at the time we were at Ostia, with a maternal confidence she one day, when I was absent, was speaking with certain of my friends on the contemning of this life, and the blessing of death; and when they—amazed at the courage which Thou hadst given to her, a woman—asked her whether she did not dread leaving her body at such a distance from her own city, she replied, "Nothing is far to God; nor need I fear lest He should be ignorant at the end of the world of the place whence He is to raise me up." On the ninth day, then, of her sickness, the fifty-sixth year of her age, and the thirty-third of mine, was that religious and devout soul set free from the body.

CHAP. XII.—*How he mourned his dead mother.*

29. I closed her eyes; and there flowed a great sadness into my heart, and it was passing into tears, when mine eyes at the same time, by the violent control of my mind, sucked back the fountain dry, and woe was me in such a struggle! But, as soon as she breathed her last, the boy Adeodatus burst out into wailing, but, being checked by us all, he became quiet. In like manner also my own childish feeling, which was, through the youthful voice of my heart, finding escape in tears, was restrained and silenced. For we did not consider it fitting to celebrate that funeral with tearful plaints and groanings;[1] for on such wise are they who die unhappy, or

[1] For this would be to sorrow as those that have no hope. Chrysostom accordingly frequently rebukes the Roman custom of hiring persons to wail for the dead (see *e.g. Hom.* xxxii. *in Matt.*); and Augustine in Serm. 2 of his *De Consol. Mor.* makes the same objection, and also reproves those Christians who imitated the Romans in wearing black as the sign of mourning. But still (as in his own case on the death of his mother) he admits that there is a grief at the departure of friends that is both natural and seemly. In a beautiful passage in his *De Civ. Dei* (xix. 8), he says: "That he who will have none of this sadness must, if possible, have no friendly intercourse. . . . Let him burst with ruthless insensibility the bonds of every human relationship;" and he continues: "Though the cure is effected all the more easily and rapidly the better condition the soul is in, we must not on this account suppose that there is nothing at all to heal." See p. 234, note 1, below.

are altogether dead, wont to be mourned. But she neither died unhappy, nor did she altogether die. For of this were we assured by the witness of her good conversation, her "faith unfeigned,"[1] and other sufficient grounds.

30. What, then, was that which did grievously pain me within, but the newly-made wound, from having that most sweet and dear habit of living together suddenly broken off? I was full of joy indeed in her testimony, when, in that her last illness, flattering my dutifulness, she called me "kind," and recalled, with great affection of love, that she had never heard any harsh or reproachful sound come out of my mouth against her. But yet, O my God, who madest us, how can the honour which I paid to her be compared with her slavery for me? As, then, I was left destitute of so great comfort in her, my soul was stricken, and that life torn apart as it were, which, of hers and mine together, had been made but one.

31. The boy then being restrained from weeping, Evodius took up the Psalter, and began to sing—the whole house responding—the Psalm, "I will sing of mercy and judgment: unto Thee, O Lord."[2] But when they heard what we were doing, many brethren and religious women came together; and whilst they whose office it was were, according to custom, making ready for the funeral, I, in a part of the house where I conveniently could, together with those who thought that I ought not to be left alone, discoursed on what was suited to the occasion; and by this alleviation of truth mitigated the anguish known unto Thee—they being unconscious of it, listened intently, and thought me to be devoid of any sense

[1] 1 Tim. i. 5.

[2] Ps. ci. 1. "I suppose they continued to the end of Psalm cii. This was the primitive fashion: Nazianzen says that his speechless sister Gorgonia's lips muttered the fourth Psalm: 'I will lie down in peace and sleep.' As St. Austen lay a dying, the company prayed (Possid.). That they had prayers between the departure and the burial, see Tertull. *De Anima*, c. 51. They used to sing both at the departure and burial. Nazianzen, *Orat.* 10, says, the dead Cæsarius was carried from hymns to hymns. The priests were called to sing (Chrysost. *Hom.* 70, *ad Antioch*). They sang the 116th Psalm usually (see Chrysost. *Hom.* 4, *in* c. 2, *ad Hebræos*)."—W. W. See also note, p. 237, below.

of sorrow. But in Thine ears, where none of them heard, did I blame the softness of my feelings, and restrained the flow of my grief, which yielded a little unto me; but the paroxysm returned again, though not so as to burst forth into tears, nor to a change of countenance, though I knew what I repressed in my heart. And as I was exceedingly annoyed that these human things had such power over me,[1] which in the due order and destiny of our natural condition must of necessity come to pass, with a new sorrow I sorrowed for my sorrow, and was wasted by a twofold sadness.

32. So, when the body was carried forth, we both went and returned without tears. For neither in those prayers which we poured forth unto Thee when the sacrifice of our redemption[2] was offered up unto Thee for her,—the dead body being now placed by the side of the grave, as the custom there is, prior to its being laid therein,—neither in their prayers did I shed tears; yet was I most grievously sad in secret all the day, and with a troubled mind entreated Thee, as I was able, to heal my sorrow, but Thou didst not; fixing I believe, in my memory by this one lesson the power of the bonds of all habit, even upon a mind which now feeds not upon a fallacious word. It appeared to me also a good thing to go and bathe, I having heard that the bath [*balneum*] took its name from the Greek βαλανεῖον, because it drives trouble from the mind. Lo, this also I confess unto Thy mercy, "Father of the fatherless,"[3] that I bathed, and felt the same as before I had done so. For the bitterness of my grief exuded not from my heart. Then I slept, and on awaking found my grief not a little mitigated; and as I lay alone upon

[1] In addition to the remarks quoted in note, p. 230, see Augustine's recognition of the naturalness and necessity of exercising human affections, such as sorrow, in his *De Civ. Dei*, xiv. 9.

[2] "Here my Popish translator says, that the sacrifice of the mass was offered for the dead. That the ancients had communion with their burials, I confess. For what [illegible] (1) To testify their dying in the communion of the Church. (2) To give thanks for their departure. (3) To pray God to give them place in Paradise, (4) and a part in the first resurrection; but not as a propitiatory sacrifice to deliver them out of purgatory, which the mass is now only meant for." W. See also note, p. 237.

[3] Psalm lxviii. 5.

my bed, there came into my mind those true verses of Thy Ambrose, for Thou art—

"Deus creator omnium,
Polique rector, vestiens
Diem decoro lumine,
Noctem sopora gratia;
Artus solutos ut quies
Reddat laboris usui,
Mentesque fessas allevet,
Luctusque solvat anxios."[1]

33. And then little by little did I bring back my former thoughts of Thine handmaid, her devout conversation towards Thee, her holy tenderness and attentiveness towards us, which was suddenly taken away from me; and it was pleasant to me to weep in Thy sight, for her and for me, concerning her and concerning myself. And I set free the tears which before I repressed, that they might flow at their will, spreading them beneath my heart; and it rested in them, for Thy ears were nigh me,—not those of man, who would have put a scornful interpretation on my weeping. But now in writing I confess it unto Thee, O Lord! Read it who will, and interpret how he will; and if he finds me to have sinned in weeping for my mother during so small a part of an hour,—that mother who was for a while dead to mine eyes, who had for many years wept for me, that I might live in Thine eyes,—let him not laugh at me, but rather, if he be a man of a noble charity, let him weep for my sins against Thee, the Father of all the brethren of Thy Christ.

[1] Rendered as follows in a translation of the first ten books of the *Confessions*, described on the title-page as "Printed by J. C., for John Crook, and are to be sold at the sign of the 'Ship,' in St. Paul's Churchyard. 1660":—

"O God, the world's great Architect,
Who dost heaven's rowling orbs direct;
Cloathing the day with beauteous light,
And with sweet slumbers silent night,
When wearied limbs new vigour gain
From rest, new labours to sustain;
When hearts oppressed do meet relief,
And anxious minds forget their grief."

See x. sec. 52, below, where this hymn is referred to.

CHAP. XIII.—*He entreats God for her sins, and admonishes his readers to remember her piously.*

34. But,—my heart being now healed of that wound, in so far as it could be convicted of a carnal [1] affection,—I pour out unto Thee, O our God, on behalf of that Thine handmaid, tears of a far different sort, even that which flows from a spirit broken by the thoughts of the dangers of every soul that dieth in Adam. And although she, having been "made alive" in Christ [2] even before she was freed from the flesh, had so lived as to praise Thy name both by her faith and conversation, yet dare I not say [3] that from the time Thou didst regenerate her by baptism, no word went forth from her mouth against Thy precepts.[4] And it hath been declared by Thy Son, the Truth, that "Whosoever shall say to his brother, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire." [5] And woe even unto the praiseworthy life of man, if, putting away mercy, Thou shouldest in-

[1] Rom. viii. 7.

[2] 1 Cor. xv. 22. The universalists of every age have interpreted the word "all" here so as to make salvation by Christ Jesus extend to every child of Adam. If their interpretation were true, Monica's spirit need not have been troubled at the thought of the danger of unregenerate souls. But Augustine in his *De Civ. Dei*, xiii. 23, gives the import of the word: "Not that all who die in Adam shall be members of Christ,—for the great majority shall be punished in eternal death,—but he uses the word 'all' in both clauses because, as no one dies in an animal body except in Adam, *so no one is quickened a spiritual body save in Christ.*" See x. sec. 68, note 1, below.

[3] For to have done so would have been to go perilously near to the heresy of the Pelagians, who laid claim to the possibility of attaining perfection in this life by the power of free-will, and without the assistance of divine grace; and went even so far, he tells us (*Ep.* clxxvi. 2), as to say that those who had so attained need not utter the petition for forgiveness in the Lord's Prayer,—*ut ei non sit jam necessarium dicere "Dimitte nobis debita nostra."* Those in our own day who enunciate perfectionist theories,—though, it is true, not denying the grace of God as did these,—may well ponder Augustine's forcible words in his *De Peccc. Mer. et Rem.* iii. 13: "Optandum est ut fiat, conandum est ut fiat, supplicandum est ut fiat; non tamen quasi factum fuerit, contendam." We are indeed commanded to be perfect (Matt. v. 48); and the philosophy underlying the command is embalmed in the words of the proverb, "Aim high, and you will strike high." But he who lives nearest to God will have the humility of heart which will make him ready to confess that in His sight he is a "miserable sinner." Some interesting remarks on this subject will be found in Augustine's *De Civ. Dei*, xiv. 9, on the text, "If we say we have no sin," etc. (1 John i. 8.) On sins after baptism, see note on next section.

[4] Matt. xii. 36.

[5] Matt. v. 22.

vestigate it. But because Thou dost not narrowly inquire after sins, we hope with confidence to find some place of indulgence with Thee. But whosoever recounts his true merits[1] to Thee, what is it that he recounts to Thee but Thine own gifts? Oh, if men would know themselves to be men; and that "he that glorieth" would "glory in the Lord!"[2]

35. I then, O my Praise and my Life, Thou God of my heart, putting aside for a little her good deeds, for which I joyfully give thanks to Thee, do now beseech Thee for the sins of my mother. Hearken unto me, through that Medicine of our wounds who hung upon the tree, and who, sitting at Thy right hand, "maketh intercession for us."[3] I know that she acted mercifully, and from the heart[4] forgave her debtors their debts; do Thou also forgive her debts,[5] whatever she contracted during so many years since the water of salvation. Forgive her, O Lord, forgive her, I beseech Thee; "enter not into judgment" with her.[6] Let Thy mercy be exalted above Thy justice,[7] because Thy words are true, and Thou hast promised mercy unto "the merciful;"[8] which Thou gavest them to be who wilt "have mercy" on whom Thou wilt "have mercy," and wilt "have compassion" on whom Thou hast had compassion.[9]

[1] There is a passage parallel to this in his *Ep.* to Sextus (cxciv. 19). "Merits" therefore would appear to be used simply in the sense of good actions. Compare sec. 17, above, xiii. sec. 1, below, and *Ep.* xv. That righteousness is not by merit, appears from *Ep.* cxciv.; *Ep.* clxxvii., to Innocent; and *Serm.* ccxciii.

[2] 2 Cor. x. 17. [3] Rom. viii. 34. [4] Matt. xviii. 35.

[5] Matt. vi. 12. Augustine here as elsewhere applies this petition in the Lord's Prayer to the forgiveness of *sins after baptism*. He does so constantly. For example, in his *Ep.* cclxv. he says: "We do not ask for those to be forgiven which we doubt not were forgiven in baptism; but those which, though small, are frequent, and spring from the frailty of human nature." Again, in his *Con. Ep. Parmen.* ii. 10, after using almost the same words, he points out that it is a prayer against *daily* sins; and in his *De Civ. Dei*, xxi. 27, where he examines the passage in relation to various erroneous beliefs, he says it "was a *daily* prayer He [Christ] was teaching, and it was certainly to disciples already justified He was speaking. What, then, does He mean by 'your sins' (Matt. vi. 14), but those sins from which not even you *who are justified and sanctified can be free?*" See note on the previous section; and also for the feeling in the early Church as to sins after baptism, the note on i. sec. 17, above.

[6] Ps. cxliii. 2. [7] Jas. ii. 13. [8] Matt. v. 7. [9] Rom. ix. 15.

36. And I believe Thou hast already done that which I ask Thee; but "accept the free-will offerings of my mouth, O Lord."[1] For she, when the day of her dissolution was near at hand, took no thought to have her body sumptuously covered, or embalmed with spices; nor did she covet a choice monument, or desire her paternal burial-place. These things she entrusted not to us, but only desired to have her name remembered at Thy altar, which she had served without the omission of a single day;[2] whence she knew that the holy sacrifice was dispensed, by which the handwriting that was against us is blotted out;[3] by which the enemy was triumphed over,[4] who, summing up our offences, and searching for something to bring against us, found nothing in Him[5] in whom we conquer. Who will restore to Him the innocent blood? Who will repay Him the price with which He bought us, so as to take us from Him? Unto the sacrament of which our ransom did Thy handmaid bind her soul by the bond of faith. Let none separate her from Thy protection. Let not the "lion" and the "dragon"[6] introduce himself by force or fraud. For she will not reply that she owes nothing, lest she be convicted and got the better of by the wily deceiver; but she will answer that her "sins are forgiven"[7] by Him to whom no one is able to repay that price which He, owing nothing, laid down for us.

37. May she therefore rest in peace with her husband, before or after whom she married none; whom she obeyed, with patience bringing forth fruit[8] unto Thee, that she might gain him also for Thee. And inspire, O my Lord my God, inspire Thy servants my brethren, Thy sons my masters, whom with voice and heart and writings I serve, that so many of them as shall read these confessions may at Thy altar remember Monica, Thy handmaid, together with Patricius, her sometime husband, by whose flesh Thou introducedst me into this life, in what manner I know not. May they with pious affection be

[1] Ps. cxix. 108. [2] See v. sec. 17, above. [3] Col. ii. 14.
[4] See his *De Trin.* xiii. 18, the passage beginning, "What then is the righteousness by which the devil was conquered?"
[5] John xiv. 30. [6] Ps. xci. 13. [7] Matt. ix. 2. [8] Luke viii. 15.

mindful of my parents in this transitory light, of my brethren that are under Thee our Father in our Catholic mother, and of my fellow-citizens in the eternal Jerusalem, which the wandering of Thy people sigheth for from their departure until their return. That so my mother's last entreaty to me may, through my confessions more than through my prayers, be more abundantly fulfilled to her through the prayers of many.[1]

[1] The origin of prayers for the dead dates back probably to the close of the second century. In note 3, p. 109, we have quoted from Tertullian's *De Corona Militis*, where he says, "Oblationes pro defunctis pro natalitiis annua die facimus." In his *De Monogamia*, he speaks of a widow praying for her departed husband, that "he might have rest, and be a partaker in the first resurrection." From this time a *catena* of quotations from the Fathers might be given, if space permitted, showing how, beginning with early expressions of *hope* for the dead, there, in process of time, arose *prayers* even for the unregenerate, until at last there was developed purgatory on the one side, and creature-worship on the other. That Augustine did not entertain the idea of creature-worship will be seen from his *Ep.* to Maximus, xvii. 5. In his *De Dulcit. Quæst.* 2 (where he discusses the whole question), he concludes that prayer must not be made for all, because all have not led the same life in the flesh. Still, in his *Enarr. in Ps.* cviii. 17, he argues from the case of the rich man in the parable, that the departed do certainly "have a care for us." Aerius, towards the close of the fourth century, objected to prayers for the dead, chiefly on the ground (see Usher's *Answer to a Jesuit*, iii. 258) of their uselessness. In the Church of England, as will be seen by reference to Keeling's *Liturgiæ Britannicæ*, pp. 210, 335, 339, and 341, prayers for the dead were eliminated from the second Prayer Book; and to the prudence of this step Palmer bears testimony in his *Origines Liturgicæ*, iv. 10, justifying it on the ground that the retaining of these prayers implied a belief in her holding the doctrine of purgatory. Reference may be made to Epiphanius, *Adv. Hær.* 75; Bishop Bull, *Sermon* 3; and Bingham, xv. 3, secs. 15, 16, and xxiii. 3, sec. 13.

BOOK TENTH.

HAVING MANIFESTED WHAT HE WAS AND WHAT HE IS, HE SHOWS THE GREAT FRUIT OF HIS CONFESSION; AND BEING ABOUT TO EXAMINE BY WHAT METHOD GOD AND THE HAPPY LIFE MAY BE FOUND, HE ENLARGES ON THE NATURE AND POWER OF MEMORY. THEN HE EXAMINES HIS OWN ACTS, THOUGHTS, AND AFFECTIONS, VIEWED UNDER THE THREEFOLD DIVISION OF TEMPTATION; AND COMMEMORATES THE LORD, THE ONE MEDIATOR OF GOD AND MEN.

CHAP. I.—*In God alone is the hope and joy of man.*

1. LET me know Thee, O Thou who knowest me; let me know Thee, as I am known.[1] O Thou strength of my soul, enter into it, and prepare it for Thyself, that Thou mayest have and hold it without "spot or wrinkle."[2] This is my hope, "therefore have I spoken;"[3] and in this hope do I rejoice, when I rejoice soberly. Other things of this life ought the less to be sorrowed for, the more they are sorrowed for; and ought the more to be sorrowed for, the less men do sorrow for them. For behold, "Thou desirest truth,"[4] seeing that he who does it "cometh to the light."[5] This wish I to do in confession in my heart before Thee, and in my writing before many witnesses.

CHAP. II.—*That all things are manifest to God. That confession unto Him is not made by the words of the flesh, but of the soul, and the cry of reflection.*

2. And from Thee, O Lord, unto whose eyes the depths of man's conscience are naked,[6] what in me could be hidden though I [illegible] unwilling to confess to Thee? For so should I hide [illegible]m myself, not myself from Thee. But now, because [illegible]ing witnesseth that I am dissatisfied with myself, Thou

[illegible]iii. 12. [illegible]. [2] Eph. v. 27. [3] Ps. cxvi. 10. [5] John iii. 20. [6] Heb. iv. 13.

shinest forth, and satisfiest, and art beloved and desired; that I may blush for myself, and renounce myself, and choose Thee, and may neither please Thee nor myself, except in Thee. To Thee then, O Lord, am I manifest, whatever I am, and with what fruit I may confess unto Thee I have spoken. Nor do I it with words and sounds of the flesh, but with the words of the soul, and that cry of reflection which Thine ear knoweth. For when I am wicked, to confess to Thee is naught but to be dissatisfied with myself; but when I am truly devout, it is naught but not to attribute it to myself, because Thou, O Lord, dost "bless the righteous;"[1] but first Thou justifiest him "ungodly."[2] My confession, therefore, O my God, in Thy sight, is made unto Thee silently, and yet not silently. For in noise it is silent, in affection it cries aloud. For neither do I give utterance to anything that is right unto men which Thou hast not heard from me before, nor dost Thou hear anything of the kind from me which Thyself saidst not first unto me.

CHAP. III.—*He who confesseth rightly unto God best knoweth himself.*

3. What then have I to do with men, that they should hear my confessions, as if they were going to cure all my diseases?[3] A people curious to know the lives of others, but slow to correct their own. Why do they desire to hear from me what I am, who are unwilling to hear from Thee what they are? And how can they tell, when they hear me of myself, whether I speak the truth, seeing that no man knoweth what is in man, "save the spirit of man which is in him"?[4] But if they hear from Thee aught concerning themselves, they will not be able to say, "The [illegible] what is it to hear from Thee of themselves?" And who is he that knows [illegible] "false," unless he himself lieth? [illegible] eth all things"[5] (amongst those [illegible] with itself it maketh one), I [illegible] that men may hear [illegible]

whether I confess the truth, yet do they believe me whose ears charity openeth unto me.

4. But yet do Thou, my most secret Physician, make clear to me what fruit I may reap by doing it. For the confessions of my past sins,—which Thou hast "forgiven" and "covered,"[1] that Thou mightest make me happy in Thee, changing my soul by faith and Thy sacrament,—when they are read and heard, stir up the heart, that it sleep not in despair and say, "I cannot;" but that it may awake in the love of Thy mercy and the sweetness of Thy grace, by which he that is weak is strong,[2] if by it he is made conscious of his own weakness. As for the good, they take delight in hearing of the past errors of such as are now freed from them; and they delight, not because they are errors, but because they have been and are so no longer. For what fruit, then, O Lord my God, to whom my conscience maketh her daily confession, more confident in the hope of Thy mercy than in her own innocency,—for what fruit, I beseech Thee, do I confess even to men in Thy presence by this book what I am at this time, not what I have been? For that fruit I have both seen and spoken of, but what I am at this time, at the very moment of making my confessions, divers people desire to know, both who knew me who knew me not,—who have heard of or from me,—but ear is not at my heart, where I am whatsoever I am. e desirous, then, of hearing me confess what I am where they can neither stretch eye, nor ear, nor mind; it as those willing to believe,—but will they For charity, by which they are good, says unto lo not lie in my confessions, and she in them

s Confessions he may do good, he considers oth

uit do they desire this? Do they ey learn how near, by Thy gift, I for me, when they learn how weight? To such w

many thanks should be given to Thee on our behalf,[1] and that by many Thou shouldest be entreated for us. Let the fraternal soul love that in me which Thou teachest should be loved, and lament that in me which Thou teachest should be lamented. Let a fraternal and not an alien soul do this, nor that "of strange children, whose mouth speaketh vanity, and their right hand is a right hand of falsehood,"[2] but that fraternal one which, when it approves me, rejoices for me, but when it disapproves me, is sorry for me; because whether it approves or disapproves it loves me. To such will I declare myself; let them breathe freely at my good deeds, and sigh over my evil ones. My good deeds are Thy institutions and Thy gifts, my evil ones are my delinquencies and Thy judgments.[3] Let them breathe freely at the one, and sigh over the other; and let hymns and tears ascend into Thy sight out of the fraternal hearts—Thy censers.[4] And do Thou, O Lord, who takest delight in the incense of Thy holy temple, have mercy upon me according to Thy great mercy,[5] "for Thy name's sake;"[6] and on no account leaving what Thou hast begun in me, do Thou complete what is imperfect in me.

6. Thus is the fruit of my confessions, not of what I was, but of what I am, that I may confess this not before Thee only, in a secret exultation with trembling, and a secret sorrow with hope, but in the ears also of the believing sons of men—partakers of my joy, and sharers of my mortality, my fellow citizens and the companions of my pilgrimage, those who [illegible] before, and those that are to follow after, and the co[illegible] my way. These are Thy servants, my brethren, [illegible] Thou wishest to be Thy sons; my masters, who [illegible] commanded me to serve, if I desire to live [illegible]

[1] 2 Cor. i. 11.

[2] In note 6, p. 83, we have seen how God makes [illegible] Reference may also be made to Augustine's *C[illegible]* where he argues that "the [illegible] in his [illegible]

But this Thy word were little to me did it command in speaking, without going before in acting. This then do I both in deed and word, this I do under Thy wings, in too great danger, were it not that my soul, under Thy wings, is subject unto Thee, and my weakness known unto Thee. I am a little one, but my Father liveth for ever, and my Defender is "sufficient"[1] for me. For He is the same who begat me and who defends me; and Thou Thyself art all my good; even Thou, the Omnipotent, who art with me, and that before I am with Thee. To such, therefore, whom Thou commandest me to serve will I declare, not what I was, but what I now am, and what I still am. But neither do I judge myself.[2] Thus then I would be heard.

CHAP. V.—*That man knoweth not himself wholly.*

7. For it is Thou, Lord, that judgest me;[3] for although no "man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him,"[4] yet is there something of man which "the spirit of man which is in him" itself knoweth not. But Thou, Lord, who hast made him, knowest him wholly. I indeed, though in Thy sight I despise myself, and reckon "myself but dust and ashes,"[5] yet know something concerning Thee, which I know not concerning myself. And assuredly "now we see through a glass darkly," not yet "face to face."[6] ong, therefore, as I be "absent" from Thee, I am more t" with myself than with Thee;[7] and yet know I that t not suffer violence;[8] but for myself I know not ations I am able to resist, and what I am not able.[9] hope, because Thou art faithful, who wilt not pted above that we are able, but wilt with make a way to escape, that we may be

[1] 2 Cor. iv. 4. [4] 1 Cor. ii. 11.
[6] v. 6.

able to bear it.[1] I would therefore confess what I know concerning myself; I will confess also what I know not concerning myself. And because what I do know of myself, I know by Thee enlightening me; and what I know not of myself, so long I know not until the time when my "darkness be as the noonday"[2] in Thy sight.

CHAP. VI.—*The love of God, in His nature superior to all creatures, is acquired by the knowledge of the senses and the exercise of reason.*

8. Not with uncertain, but with assured consciousness do I love Thee, O Lord. Thou hast stricken my heart with Thy word, and I loved Thee. And also the heaven, and earth, and all that is therein, behold, on every side they say that I should love Thee; nor do they cease to speak unto all, "so that they are without excuse."[3] But more profoundly wilt Thou have mercy on whom Thou wilt have mercy, and compassion on whom Thou wilt have compassion,[4] otherwise do both heaven and earth tell forth Thy praises to deaf ears. But what is it that I love in loving Thee? Not corporeal beauty, nor the splendour of time, nor the radiance of the light, so pleasant to our eyes, nor the sweet melodies of songs of all kinds, nor the fragrant smell of flowers, and ointments, and spices, not manna and honey, not limbs pleasant to the embracements of flesh. I love not these things when I love my God; and yet I love a certain kind of light, and sound, and fragrance, and food, and embracement in loving my God, who is the light, sound, fragrance, food, and embracement of my inner man—where that light shineth unto my soul which no place can contain, where that soundeth which time snatcheth not away, where there is a fragrance which no breeze disperseth, where there is a food which no eating can diminish, and where that clingeth which no satiety can sunder. This is what I love, when I love my God.

9. And what is this? I asked the earth; and it answered, "I am not He;" and whatsoever are therein made the same confession. I asked the sea and the deeps, and the creeping things that lived, and they replied, "We are not thy God, seek higher than we." I asked the breezy air, and the

[1] 1 Cor. x. 13. [2] Isa. lviii. 10. [3] Rom. i. 20. [4] Rom. ix. 15.

universal air with its inhabitants answered, "Anaximenes[1] was deceived, I am not God." I asked the heavens, the sun, moon, and stars; "Neither," say they, "are we the God whom thou seekest." And I answered unto all these things which stand about the door of my flesh, "Ye have told me concerning my God, that ye are not He; tell me something about Him." And with a loud voice they exclaimed, "He made us." My questioning was my observing of them; and their beauty was their reply.[2] And I directed my thoughts to myself, and said, "Who art thou?" And I answered, "A man." And lo, in me there appear both body and soul, the one without, the other within. By which of these should I seek my God, whom I had sought through the body from earth to heaven, as far as I was able to send messengers—the beams of mine eyes? But the better part is that which is inner; for to it, as both president and judge, did all these my corporeal messengers render the answers of heaven and earth and all things therein, who said, "We are not God, but He made us." These things was my inner man cognizant of by the ministry of the outer; I, the inner man, knew all this—I, the soul, through the senses of my body. I asked the vast bulk of the earth of my God, and it answered me, "I am not He, but He made me."

10. Is not this beauty visible to all whose senses are unimpaired? Why then doth it not speak the same things unto all? Animals, the very small and the great, see it, but they are unable to question it, because their senses are not endowed with reason to enable them to judge on what they report. But men can question it, so that "the invisible things of Him . . . are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made;"[3] but by loving them, they are brought into sub-

[1] Anaximenes of Miletus was born about 520 B.C. According to his philosophy the air was animate, and from it, as from a first principle, all things in heaven, earth, and sea sprung, first by condensation (πύκνωσις), and after that by a process of rarefaction (ἀραιώσεις). See *Eg.*, xviii. 23; and Aristotle, *Phys.* iii. 4. Compare this theory and that of Epicurus (p. 137, above) with those of modern physicists; and see thereon *The Unseen Universe*, arts. 85, etc., and 117, etc.

[2] *In Ps.* cxliv. 13, the earth he describes as "dumb," but as speaking to us while we meditate upon its beauty—*Ipsa inquisitio interrogatio est.*

[3] Rom. i. 20.

jection to them; and subjects are not able to judge. Neither do the creatures reply to such as question them, unless they can judge; nor will they alter their voice (that is, their beauty),[1] if so be one man only sees, another both sees and questions, so as to appear one way to this man, and another to that; but appearing the same way to both, it is mute to this, it speaks to that—yea, verily, it speaks unto all; but they only understand it who compare that voice received from without with the truth within. For the truth declareth unto me, "Neither heaven, nor earth, nor any body is thy God." This, their nature declareth unto him that beholdeth them. "They are a mass; a mass is less in part than in the whole." Now, O my soul, thou art my better part, unto thee I speak; for thou animatest the mass of thy body, giving it life, which no body furnishes to a body; but thy God is even unto thee the Life of life.

CHAP. VII.—*That God is to be found neither from the powers of the body nor of the soul.*

11. What then is it that I love when I love my God? Who is He that is above the head of my soul? By my soul itself will I mount up unto Him. I will soar beyond that power of mine whereby I cling to the body, and fill the whole structure of it with life. Not by that power do I find my God; for then the horse and the mule, "which have no understanding,"[2] might find Him, since it is the same power by which their bodies also live. But there is another power, not that only by which I quicken, but that also by which I endow with sense my flesh, which the Lord hath made for me; bidding the eye not to hear, and the ear not to see; but that, for me to see by, and this, for me to hear by; and to each of the other senses its own proper seat and office, which being different, I, the single mind, do through them govern. I will soar also beyond this power of mine; for this the horse and mule possess, for they too discern through the body.

CHAP. VIII.—*Of the nature and the amazing power of memory.*

12. I will soar, then, beyond this power of my nature also, ascending by degrees unto Him who made me. And I enter

[1] See note 2 to previous section.

[2] Ps. xxxii. 9.

the fields and roomy chambers of memory, where are the treasures of countless images, imported into it from all manner of things by the senses. There is treasured up whatsoever likewise we think, either by enlarging or diminishing, or by varying in any way whatever those things which the sense hath arrived at; yea, and whatever else hath been entrusted to it and stored up, which oblivion hath not yet engulfed and buried. When I am in this storehouse, I demand that what I wish should be brought forth, and some things immediately appear; others require to be longer sought after, and are dragged, as it were, out of some hidden receptacle; others, again, hurry forth in crowds, and while another thing is sought and inquired for, they leap into view, as if to say, "Is it not we, perchance?" These I drive away with the hand of my heart from before the face of my remembrance, until what I wish be discovered making its appearance out of its secret cell. Other things suggest themselves without effort, and in continuous order, just as they are called for,—those in front giving place to those that follow, and in giving place are treasured up again to be forthcoming when I wish it. All of which takes place when I repeat a thing from memory.

13. All these things, each of which entered by its own avenue, are distinctly and under general heads there laid up; as, for example, light, and all colours and forms of bodies, by the eyes; sounds of all kinds by the ears; all smells by the passage of the nostrils; all flavours by that of the mouth; and by the sensation of the whole body is brought in what is hard or soft, hot or cold, smooth or rough, heavy or light, whether external or internal to the body. All these doth that great receptacle of memory, with its many and indescribable departments, receive, to be recalled and brought forth when required; each entering by its own door, is laid up in it. And yet the things themselves do not enter it, but only the images of the things perceived are there ready at hand for thought to recall. And who can tell how these images are formed, notwithstanding that it is evident by which of the senses each has been fetched in and treasured up? For even while I live in darkness and silence, I can bring out colours

in memory if I wish, and discern between black and white, and what others I wish; nor yet do sounds break in and disturb what is drawn in by mine eyes, and which I am considering, seeing that they also are there, and are concealed,—laid up, as it were, apart. For these too I can summon if I please, and immediately they appear. And though my tongue be at rest, and my throat silent, yet can I sing as much as I will; and those images of colours, which notwithstanding are there, do not interpose themselves and interrupt when another treasure is under consideration which flowed in through the ears. So the remaining things carried in and heaped up by the other senses, I recall at my pleasure. And I discern the scent of lilies from that of violets while smelling nothing; and I prefer honey to grape-syrup, a smooth thing to a rough, though then I neither taste nor handle, but only remember.

14. These things do I within, in that vast chamber of my memory. For there are nigh me heaven, earth, sea, and whatever I can think upon in them, besides those which I have forgotten. There also do I meet with myself, and recall myself,—what, when, or where I did a thing, and how I was affected when I did it. There are all which I remember, either by personal experience or on the faith of others. Out of the same supply do I myself with the past construct now this, now that likeness of things, which either I have experienced, or, from having experienced, have believed; and thence again future actions, events, and hopes, and upon all these again do I meditate as if they were present. "I will do this or that," say I to myself in that vast womb of my mind, filled with the images of things so many and so great, "and this or that shall follow upon it." "Oh that this or that might come to pass!" "God avert this or that!" Thus speak I to myself; and when I speak, the images of all I speak about are present, out of the same treasury of memory; nor could I say anything at all about them were the images absent.

15. Great is this power of memory, exceeding great, O my God,—an inner chamber large and boundless! Who has plumbed the depths thereof? Yet it is a power of mine, and appertains unto my nature; nor do I myself grasp all that I

am. Therefore is the mind too narrow to contain itself. And where should that be which it doth not contain of itself? Is it outside and not in itself? How is it, then, that it doth not grasp itself? A great admiration rises upon me; astonishment seizes me. And men go forth to wonder at the heights of mountains, the huge waves of the sea, the broad flow of the rivers, the extent of the ocean, and the courses of the stars, and omit to wonder at themselves; nor do they marvel that when I spoke of all these things, I was not looking on them with my eyes, and yet could not speak of them unless those mountains, and waves, and rivers, and stars which I saw, and that ocean which I believe in, I saw inwardly in my memory, and with the same vast spaces between as when I saw them abroad. But I did not by seeing appropriate them when I looked on them with my eyes; nor are the things themselves with me, but their images. And I knew by what corporeal sense each made impression on me.

CHAP. IX.—*Not only things, but also literature and images, are taken from the memory, and are brought forth by the act of remembering.*

16. And yet are not these all that the illimitable capacity of my memory retains. Here also is all that is apprehended of the liberal sciences, and not yet forgotten—removed as it were into an inner place, which is not a place; nor are they the images which are retained, but the things themselves. For what is literature, what skill in disputation, whatsoever I know of all the many kinds of questions there are, is so in my memory, as that I have not taken in the image and left the thing without, or that it should have sounded and passed away like a voice imprinted on the ear by that trace, whereby it might be recorded, as though it sounded when it no longer did so; or as an odour while it passes away, and vanishes into wind, affects the sense of smell, whence it conveys the image of itself into the memory, which we realize in recollecting; or like food, which assuredly in the belly hath now no taste, and yet hath a kind of taste in the memory, or like anything that is by touching felt by the body, and which even when removed from us is imagined by the memory. For these things themselves are not put into it, but the images

ly are caught up, with a marvellous quickness, and it were, in most wonderful garners, and wonderfully orth when we remember.

—Literature is not introduced to the memory through the senses, but is brought forth from its more secret places.

But truly when I hear that there are three kinds of s, "Whether a thing is?—what it is?—of what kind it do indeed hold fast the images of the sounds of which ords are composed, and I know that those sounds through the air with a noise, and now are not. But ings themselves which are signified by these sounds I r arrived at by any sense of the body, nor ever perceived otherwise than by my mind; and in my memory have d up not their images, but themselves, which, how they d into me, let them tell if they are able. For I examine gates of my flesh, but find not by which of them they ed. For the eyes say, "If they were coloured, we anced them." The ears say, "If they sounded, we gave tice of them." The nostrils say, "If they smell, they passed n by us." The sense of taste says, "If they have no flavour, ask not me." The touch says, "If it have not body, I handled it not, and if I never handled it, I gave no notice of it." Whence and how did these things enter into my memory? I know not how. For when I learned them, I gave not credit to the heart of another man, but perceived them in my own; and I approved them as true, and committed them to it, laying them up, as it were, whence I might fetch them when I willed. There, then, they were, even before I learned them, but were not in my memory. Where were they, then, or wherefore, when they were spoken, did I acknowledge them, and say, "So it is, it is true," unless as being already in the memory, though so put back and concealed, as it were, in more secret caverns, that had they not been drawn forth by the advice of another I would not, perchance, have been able to conceive of them?

CHAP. XI.—*What it is to learn and to think.*

18. Wherefore we find that to learn these things, whose

images we drink not in by our senses, but perceive [illegible] they are by themselves, without images, is nothing [illegible] meditation as it were to concentrate, and by observing [illegible] care that those notions which the memory did before [illegible] scattered and confused, be laid up at hand, as it were, [illegible] same memory, where before they lay concealed, scatter[illegible] neglected, and so the more easily present themselves [illegible] mind well accustomed to observe them. And how [illegible] things of this sort does my memory retain which ha[illegible] found out already, and, as I said, are, as it were, laid up r[illegible] hand, which we are said to have learned and to have k[illegible] which, should we for small intervals of time cease to r[illegible] they are again so submerged and slide back, as it were, [illegible] the more remote chambers, that they must be evolved th[illegible] again as if new (for other sphere they have none), and [illegible] be marshalled [*cogenda*] again that they may become k[illegible] that is to say, they must be collected [*colligenda*], as it [illegible] from their dispersion; whence we have the word *cog*[illegible] For *cogo* [*I collect*] and *cogito* [*I re-collect*] have the sa[illegible] relation to each other as *ago* and *agito*, *facio* and *factito*. B[illegible] the mind has appropriated to itself this word [cogitation], so that not that which is collected anywhere, but what is collected,[1] that is marshalled,[2] in the mind, is properly said to be "cogitated."[3]

Chap. xii.—*On the recollection of things mathematical.*

19. The memory containeth also the reasons and innumerable laws of numbers and dimensions, none of which hath any sense of the body impressed, seeing they have neither colour, nor sound, nor taste, nor smell, nor sense of touch. I have heard the sound of the words by which these things are signified when they are discussed; but the sounds are one thing, the things another. For the sounds are one thing in Greek, another in Latin; but the things themselves are neither Greek, nor Latin, nor any other language. I have seen the lines of the craftsmen, even the finest, like a spider's w[illegible]; but these are of another kind, they are not the images of

[1] Colligitur. [2] Cogitur. [3] Cogitari.

those which the eye of my flesh showed me; he knoweth them who, without any idea whatsoever of a body, perceives them within himself. I have also observed the numbers of the things with which we number all the senses of the body; but those by which we number are of another kind, nor are they the images of these, and therefore they certainly are. Let him who sees not these things mock me for saying them; and I will pity him, whilst he mocks me.

CHAP. XIII.—*Memory retains all things.*

20. All these things I retain in my memory, and how I learnt them I retain. I retain also many things which I have heard most falsely objected against them, which though they be false, yet is it not false that I have remembered them; and I remember, too, that I have distinguished between those truths and these falsehoods uttered against them; and I now see that it is one thing to distinguish these things, another to remember that I often distinguished them, when I often reflected upon them. I both remember, then, that I have often understood these things, and what I now distinguish and comprehend I store away in my memory, that hereafter I may remember that I understood it now. Therefore also I remember that I have remembered; so that if afterwards I shall call to mind that I have been able to remember these things, it will be through the power of memory that I shall call it to mind.

CHAP. XIV.—*Concerning the manner in which joy and sadness may be brought back to the mind and memory.*

21. This same memory contains also the affections of my mind; not in the manner in which the mind itself contains them when it suffers them, but very differently according to a power peculiar to memory. For without being joyous, I remember myself to have had joy; and without being sad, I call to mind my past sadness; and that of which I was once afraid, I remember without fear; and without desire recall a former desire. Again, on the contrary, I at times remember when joyous my past sadness, and when sad my joy. Which is not to be wondered at as regards the body; for the mind

is one thing, the body another. If I, therefore, when happy, recall some past bodily pain, it is not so strange a thing. But now, as this very memory itself is mind (for when we give orders to have a thing kept in memory, we say, "See that you bear this in mind;" and when we forget a thing, we say, "It did not enter my mind," and, "It slipped from my mind," thus calling the memory itself mind), as this is so, how comes it to pass that when being joyful I remember my past sorrow, the mind has joy, the memory sorrow,—the mind, from the joy that is in it, is joyful, yet the memory, from the sadness that is in it, is not sad? Does not the memory perchance belong unto the mind? Who will say so? The memory doubtless is, so to say, the belly of the mind, and joy and sadness like sweet and bitter food, which, when entrusted to the memory, are, as it were, passed into the belly, where they can be reposited, but cannot taste. It is ridiculous to imagine these to be alike; and yet they are not utterly unlike.

22. But behold, out of my memory I educe it, when I affirm that there be four perturbations of the mind,—desire, joy, fear, sorrow; and whatsoever I shall be able to dispute on these, by dividing each into its peculiar species, and by defining it, there I find what I may say, and thence I educe it; yet am I not disturbed by any of these perturbations when by remembering them I call them to mind; and before I recollected and reviewed them, they were there; wherefore by remembrance could they be brought thence. Perchance, as meat is in ruminating brought up out of the [illegible] calling to mind are these educed from the memory. Why then, does not the disputant, thus recollecting, perceive in the mouth of his meditation the sweetness of joy or the bitterness of sorrow? Is the comparison unlike in this because not like in all points? For who would willingly discourse on these subjects, if, as often as we name sorrow or fear, we should be compelled to be sorrowful or fearful? And yet we could never speak of them, did we not find in our memory not merely the sounds of the names according to the images imprinted on it by the senses of the body, but the notions of the things themselves, which we never received by

any door of the flesh, but which the mind itself, recognising by the experience of its own passions, entrusted to the memory, or else which the memory itself retained without their being entrusted to it.

CHAP. XV.—*In memory there are also images of things which are absent.*

23. But whether by images or no, who can well affirm? For I name a stone, I name the sun, and the things themselves are not present to my senses, but their images are near to my memory. I name some pain of the body, yet it is not present when there is no pain; yet if its image were not in my memory, I should be ignorant what to say concerning it, nor in arguing be able to distinguish it from pleasure. I name bodily health when sound in body; the thing itself indeed is present with me, but unless its image also were in my memory, I could by no means call to mind what the sound of this name signified. Nor would sick people know, when health was named, what was said, unless the same image were retained by the power of memory, although the thing itself were absent from the body. I name numbers whereby we enumerate; and not their images, but they themselves are in my memory. I name the image of the sun, and this, too, is in my memory. For I do not recall the image of that image, but itself, for the image itself is present when I remember it. I name memory, and I know what I name. But where do I know it, except in the memory itself? Is it also present to itself by its image, and not by itself?

CHAP. XVI.—*The privation of memory is forgetfulness.*

24. When I name forgetfulness, and know, too, what I name, whence should I know it if I did not remember it? I do not say the sound of the name, but the thing which it signifies; which, had I forgotten, I could not know what that sound signified. When, therefore, I remember memory, then is memory present with itself, through itself. But when I remember forgetfulness, there are present both memory and forgetfulness,—memory, whereby I remember, forgetfulness, which I remember. But what is forgetfulness but the privation

of memory? How, then, is that present for me to remember, since, when it is so, I cannot remember? But if what we remember we retain in memory, yet, unless we remembered forgetfulness, we could never at the hearing of the name know the thing meant by it, then is forgetfulness retained by memory. Present, therefore, it is, lest we should forget it; and being so, we do forget. Is it to be inferred from this that forgetfulness, when we remember it, is not present to the memory through itself, but through its image; because, were forgetfulness present through itself, it would not lead us to remember, but to forget? Who now will investigate this? Who shall understand how it is?

25. Truly, O Lord, I labour therein, and labour in myself. I am become a troublesome soil that requires overmuch labour. For we are not now searching out the tracts of heaven, or measuring the distances of the stars, or inquiring about the weight of the earth. It is I myself—I, the mind—who remember. It is not much to be wondered at, if what I myself am not be far from me. But what is nearer to me than myself? And, behold, I am not able to comprehend the force of my own memory, though I cannot name myself without it. For what shall I say when it is plain to me that I remember forgetfulness? Shall I affirm that that which I remember is not in my memory? Or shall I say that forgetfulness is in my memory with the view of my not forgetting? Both of these are most absurd. What third view is there? How can I assert that the image of forgetfulness is retained by my memory, and not forgetfulness itself when I remember it? And how can I assert this, seeing that when the image of anything is imprinted on the memory, the thing itself must of necessity be present first by which that image may be imprinted? For thus do I remember Carthage; thus, all the places to which I have been; thus, the faces of men whom I have seen, and things reported by the other senses; thus, the health or sickness of the body. For when these objects were present, my memory received images from them, which, when they were present, I might gaze on and reconsider in my mind, as I remembered them when they were absent. If,

therefore, forgetfulness is retained in the memory through its image, and not through itself, then itself was once present, that its image might be taken. But when it was present, how did it write its image on the memory, seeing that forgetfulness by its presence blots out even what it finds already noted? And yet, in whatever way, though it be incomprehensible and inexplicable, yet most certain I am that I remember also forgetfulness itself, whereby what we do remember is blotted out.

CHAP. XVII.—*God cannot be attained unto by the power of memory, which beasts and birds possess.*

26. Great is the power of memory; very wonderful is it, O my God, a profound and infinite manifoldness; and this thing is the mind, and this I myself am. What then am I, O my God? Of what nature am I? A life various and manifold, and exceeding vast. Behold, in the numberless fields, and caves, and caverns of my memory, full without number of numberless kinds of things, either through images, as all bodies are; or by the presence of the things themselves, as are the arts; or by some notion or observation, as the affections of the mind are, which, even though the mind doth not suffer, the memory retains, while whatsoever is in the memory is also in the mind: through all these do I run to and fro, and fly; I penetrate on this side and that, as far as I am able, and nowhere is there an end. So great is the power of memory, so great the power of life in man, whose life is mortal. What then shall I do, O Thou my true life, my God? I will pass even beyond this power of mine which is called memory,—I will pass beyond it, that I may proceed to Thee, O Thou sweet Light. What sayest Thou to me? Behold, I am soaring by my mind towards Thee who remainest above me. I will also pass beyond this power of mine which is called memory, wishful to reach Thee whence Thou canst be reached, and to cleave unto Thee whence it is possible to cleave unto Thee. For even beasts and birds possess memory, else could they never find their lairs and nests again, nor many other things to which they are used; neither indeed could they become used to anything, but by their memory. I will pass, then,

beyond memory also, that I may reach Him who has separated me from the four-footed beasts and the fowls of the air, making me wiser than they. I will pass beyond memory also, but where shall I find Thee, O Thou truly good and assured sweetness? But where shall I find Thee? If I find Thee without memory, then am I unmindful of Thee. And how now shall I find Thee, if I do not remember Thee?

CHAP. XVIII.—*A thing when lost could not be found unless it were retained in the memory.*

27. For the woman who lost her drachma, and searched for it with a lamp,[1] unless she had remembered it, would never have found it. For when it was found, whence could she know whether it were the same, had she not remembered it? I remember to have lost and found many things; and this I know thereby, that when I was searching for any of them, and was asked, "Is this it?" "Is that it?" I answered "No," until such time as that which I sought were offered to me. Which had I not remembered,—whatever it were,—though it were offered me, yet would I not find it, because I could not recognise it. And thus it is always, when we search for and find anything that is lost. Notwithstanding, if anything be by accident lost from the sight, not from the memory, —as any visible body,—the image of it is retained within, and is searched for until it be restored to sight; and when it is found, it is recognised by the image which is within. Nor do we say that we have found what we had lost unless we recognise it; nor can we recognise it unless we remember it. But this, though lost to the sight, was retained in the memory.

CHAP. XIX.—*What it is to remember.*

28. But how is it when the memory itself loses anything, as it happens when we forget anything and try to recall it? Where finally do we search, but in the memory itself? And there, if perchance one thing be offered for another, we refuse it, until we meet with what we seek; and when we do, we exclaim, "This is it!" which we should not do unless we

[1] Luke xv. 8.

knew it again, nor should we recognise it unless we remembered it. Assuredly, therefore, we had forgotten it. Or, had not the whole of it slipped our memory, but by the part by which we had hold was the other part sought for; since the memory perceived that it did not revolve together as much as it was accustomed to do, and halting, as if from the mutilation of its old habit, demanded the restoration of that which was wanting. For example, if we see or think of some man known to us, and, having forgotten his name, endeavour to recover it, whatsoever other thing presents itself is not connected with it; because it was not used to be thought of in connection with him, and is consequently rejected, until that is present whereon the knowledge reposes fittingly as its accustomed object. And whence, save from the memory itself, does that present itself? For even when we recognise it as put in mind of it by another, it is thence it comes. For we do not believe it as something new, but, as we recall it, admit what was said to be correct. But if it were entirely blotted out of the mind, we should not, even when put in mind of it, recollect it. For we have not as yet entirely forgotten what we remember that we have forgotten. A lost notion, then, which we have entirely forgotten, we cannot even search for.

CHAP. XX.—*We should not seek for God and the happy life unless we had known it.*

29. How, then, do I seek Thee, O Lord? For when I seek Thee, my God, I seek a happy life.[1] I will seek Thee, that my soul may live.[2] For my body liveth by my soul, and my soul liveth by Thee. How, then, do I seek a happy life, seeing that it is not mine till I can say, "It is enough!" in that place where I ought to say it? How do I seek it? Is it by remembrance, as though I had forgotten it, knowing too that I had forgotten it? or, longing to learn it as a thing unknown, which either I had never known, or had so forgotten it as not even to remember that I had forgotten it? Is not a happy life the thing that all desire, and is there any one who altogether desires it not? But where did they acquire the knowledge of it, that they so desire it? Where have they

[1] See note, p. 75, above. [2] Amos v. 4.

seen it, that they so love it? Truly we have it, but how I know not. Yea, there is another way in which, when any one hath it, he is happy; and some there be that are happy in hope. These have it in an inferior kind to those that are happy in fact; and yet are they better off than they who are happy neither in fact nor in hope. And even these, had they it not in some way, would not so much desire to be happy, which that they do desire is most certain. How they come to know it, I cannot tell, but they have it by some kind of knowledge unknown to me, who am in much doubt as to whether it be in the memory; for if it be there, then have we been happy once; whether all individually, or as in that man who first sinned, in whom also we all died,[1] and from whom we are all born with misery, I do not now ask; but I ask whether the happy life be in the memory? For did we not know it, we should not love it. We hear the name, and we all acknowledge that we desire the thing; for we are not delighted with the sound only. For when a Greek hears it spoken in Latin, he does not feel delighted, for he knows not what is spoken; but we are delighted,[2] as he too would be if he heard it in Greek; because the thing itself is neither Greek nor Latin, which Greeks and Latins, and men of all other tongues, long so earnestly to obtain. It is then known unto all, and could they with one voice be asked whether they wished to be happy, without doubt they would all answer that they would. And this could not be unless the thing itself, of which it is the name, were retained in their memory.

CHAP. XXI.—*How a happy life may be retained in the memory.*

30. But is it so as one who has seen Carthage remembers it? No. For a happy life is not visible to the eye, because it is not a body. Is it, then, as we remember numbers? No. For he that hath these in his knowledge strives not to attain further; but a happy life we have in our knowledge, and, therefore, do we love it, while yet we wish further to attain it that we may be happy. Is it, then, as we remember

[1] 1 Cor. xv. 22; see p. 234, note 2, and note p. 68, above.

[2] That is, as knowing Latin.

eloquence? No. For although some, when they hear this name, call the thing to mind, who, indeed, are not yet eloquent, and many who wish to be so, whence it appears to be in their knowledge; yet have these by their bodily perceptions noticed that others are eloquent, and been delighted with it, and long to be so,—although they would not be delighted save for some interior knowledge, nor desire to be so unless they were delighted,—but a happy life we can by no bodily perception make experience of in others. Is it, then, as we remember joy? It may be so; for my joy I remember, even when sad, like as I do a happy life when I am miserable. Nor did I ever with perception of the body either see, hear, smell, taste, or touch my joy; but I experienced it in my mind when I rejoiced; and the knowledge of it clung to my memory, so that I can call it to mind, sometimes with disdain and at others with desire, according to the difference of the things wherein I now remember that I rejoiced. For even from unclean things have I been bathed with a certain joy, which now calling to mind, I detest and execrate; at other times, from good and honest things, which, with longing, I call to mind, though perchance they be not nigh at hand, and then with sadness do I call to mind a former joy.

31. Where and when, then, did I experience my happy life, that I should call it to mind, and love and long for it? Nor is it I alone or a few others who wish to be happy, but truly all; which, unless by certain knowledge we knew, we should not wish with so certain a will. But how is this, that if two men be asked whether they would wish to serve as soldiers, one, it may be, would reply that he would, the other that he would not; but if they were asked whether they would wish to be happy, both of them would unhesitatingly say that they would; and this one would wish to serve, and the other not, from no other motive but to be happy? Is it, perchance, that as one joys in this, and another in that, so do all men agree in their wish for happiness, as they would agree, were they asked, in wishing to have joy,—and this joy they call a happy life? Although, then, one pursues joy in this way, and another in

that all have one goal, which they strive to attain, namely, to have joy. This life, being a thing which no one can say he has not experienced, it is on that account found in the memory, and recognised whenever the name of a happy life is heard.

CHAP. XXII.—*A happy life is to rejoice in God, and for God.*

32. Let it be far, O Lord,—let it be far from the heart of Thy servant who confesseth unto Thee; let it be far from me to think myself happy, be the joy what it may. For there is a joy which is not granted to the "wicked,"[1] but to those who worship Thee thankfully, whose joy Thou Thyself art. And the happy life is this,—to rejoice unto Thee, in Thee, and for Thee; this it is, and there is no other.[2] But those who think there is another follow after another joy, and that not the true one. Their will, however, is not turned away from some shadow of joy.

CHAP. XXIII.—*All wish to rejoice in the Truth.*

33. It is not, then, certain that all men wish to be happy, since those who wish not to rejoice in Thee, which is the only happy life, do not verily desire the happy life. Or do all desire this, but because "the flesh lusteth against the spirit, and the spirit against the flesh," so that they "cannot do the things that they would,"[3] they fall upon that which they are able to do, and with that are content; because that which they are not able to do, they do not so will as to make them able?[4] For I ask of every man, whether he would rather rejoice in truth or in falsehood. They will no more hesitate to say, "in truth" than to say, "that they wish to be happy." For a happy life is joy in the truth. For this is joy in Thee, who art "the truth,"[5] O God, "my light,"[6] "the health of

[1] Isa. xlviii. 22.

[2] Since "life eternal is the supreme good," as he remarks in his *De Civ. Dei*, xix. 1. Compare also *ibid.* viii. sec. 8, where he argues that the highest good is God, and that he who loves Him is in the enjoyment of that good. See also note on the chief good, p. 75, above.

[3] Gal. v. 17.

[4] See viii. sec. 20, above.

[5] John xiv. 6.

[6] Ps. xxvii. 1.

my countenance, and my God."[1] All wish for this happy life; this life do all wish for, which is the only happy one; joy in the truth do all wish for.[2] I have had experience of many who wished to deceive, but not one who wished to be deceived. Where, then, did they know this happy life, save where they knew also the truth? For they love it, too, since they would not be deceived. And when they love a happy life, which is naught else but joy in the truth, assuredly they love also the truth; which yet they would not love were there not some knowledge of it in the memory. Wherefore, then, do they not rejoice in it? Why are they not happy? Because they are more entirely occupied with other things which rather make them miserable, than that which would make them happy, which they remember so little of. For there is yet a little light in men; let them walk—let them "walk," that the "darkness" seize them not.[3]

34. Why, then, doth truth beget hatred,[4] and that man of thine,[5] preaching the truth, become an enemy unto them, whereas a happy life is loved, which is naught else but joy in the truth; unless that truth is loved in such a sort as that those who love aught else wish that to be the truth which they love, and, as they are willing to be deceived, are unwilling to be convinced that they are so? Therefore do they hate the truth for the sake of that thing which they love instead of the truth. They love truth when she shines on them, and hate her when she rebukes them. For, because they are not willing to be deceived, and wish to deceive, they love her when she reveals herself, and hate her when she reveals them. On that account shall she so requite them, that those who were unwilling to be discovered by her she both discovers against their will, and discovers not herself unto them. Thus, thus, truly thus doth the human mind, so blind and sick, so base and unseemly, desire to lie concealed, but wishes not that anything should be concealed from it. But

[1] Ps. xlii. 11. [2] See sec. 29, above. [3] John xii. 35.

[4] "Veritas parit odium." Compare Terence, *Andria*, i. 1, 41: "Obsequium amicos, veritas odium parit."

[5] John viii. 40.

the opposite is rendered unto it,—that itself is not concealed from the truth, but the truth is concealed from it. Yet, even while thus wretched, it prefers to rejoice in truth rather than in falsehood. Happy then will it be, when, no trouble intervening, it shall rejoice in that only truth by whom all things else are true.

CHAP. XXIV.—*He who finds truth, finds God.*

35. Behold how I have enlarged in my memory seeking Thee, O Lord; and out of it have I not found Thee. Nor have I found aught concerning Thee, but what I have retained in memory[1] from the time I learned Thee. For from the time I learned Thee have I never forgotten Thee. For where I found truth, there found I my God, who is the Truth itself,[1] which from the time I learned it have I not forgotten. And thus since the time I learned Thee, Thou abidest in my memory; and there do I find Thee whensoever I call Thee to remembrance, and delight in Thee. These are my holy delights, which Thou hast bestowed upon me in Thy mercy, having respect unto my poverty.

CHAP. XXV.—*He is glad that God dwells in his memory.*

36. But where in my memory abidest Thou, O Lord, where lost Thou there abide? What manner of chamber hast Thou there formed for Thyself? What sort of sanctuary hast Thou erected for Thyself? Thou hast granted this honour to my memory, to take up Thy abode in it; but in what quarter of it Thou abidest, I am considering. For in calling Thee to mind,[2] I soared beyond those parts of it which the beasts also possess, since I found Thee not there amongst the images of corporeal things; and I arrived at those parts where I had committed the affections of my mind, nor there did I find Thee. And I entered into the very seat of my mind, which it has in my memory, since the mind remembers itself

[1] See iv. c. 12, and vii. c. 10, above.

[2] In connection with Augustine's views as to memory, Locke's *Essay on the Human Understanding*, ii. 10, and Stewart's *Philosophy of the Human Mind*, c. 6, may be profitably consulted.

also—nor wert Thou there. For as Thou art not a bodily image, nor the affection of a living creature, as when we rejoice, condole, desire, fear, remember, forget, or aught of the kind; so neither art Thou the mind itself, because Thou art the Lord God of the mind; and all these things are changed, but Thou remainest unchangeable over all, yet vouchsafest to dwell in my memory, from the time I learned Thee. But why do I now seek in what part of it Thou dwellest, as if truly there were places in it? Thou dost dwell in it assuredly, since I have remembered Thee from the time I learned Thee, and I find Thee in it when I call Thee to mind.

CHAP. XXVI.—*God everywhere answers those who take counsel of Him.*

37. Where, then, did I find Thee, so as to be able to learn Thee? For Thou wert not in my memory before I learned Thee. Where, then, did I find Thee, so as to be able to learn Thee, but in Thee above me? Place there is none; we go both "backward" and "forward,"[1] and there is no place. Everywhere, O Truth, dost Thou direct all who consult Thee, and dost at once answer all, though they consult Thee on divers things. Clearly dost Thou answer, though all do not with clearness hear. All consult Thee upon whatever they wish, though they hear not always that which they wish. He is Thy best servant who does not so much look to hear that from Thee which he himself wisheth, as to wish that which he heareth from Thee.

CHAP. XXVII.—*He grieves that he was so long without God.*

38. Too late did I love Thee, O Fairness, so ancient, and yet so new! Too late did I love Thee! For behold, Thou wert within, and I without, and there did I seek Thee; I, unlovely, rushed heedlessly among the things of beauty Thou madest.[2] Thou wert with me, but I was not with Thee. Those things kept me far from Thee, which, unless they were in Thee, were not. Thou calledst, and criedst aloud, and forcedst open my deafness. Thou didst gleam and shine, and chase

[1] Job xxiii. 8. [2] See p. 70, note 3, above.

away my blindness. Thou didst exhale odours, and I drew in my breath and do pant after Thee. I tasted, and do hunger and thirst. Thou didst touch me, and I burned for Thy peace.

CHAP. XXVIII.—*On the misery of human life.*

39. When I shall cleave unto Thee with all my being, then shall I in nothing have pain and labour; and my life shall be a real life, being wholly full of Thee. But now since he whom Thou fillest is the one Thou liftest up, I am a burden to myself, as not being full of Thee. Joys of sorrow contend with sorrows of joy; and on which side the victory may be I know not. Woe is me! Lord, have pity on me. My evil sorrows contend with my good joys; and on which side the victory may be I know not. Woe is me! Lord, have pity on me. Woe is me! Lo, I hide not my wounds; Thou art the Physician, I the sick; Thou merciful, I miserable. Is not the life of man upon earth a temptation?[1] Who is he that wishes for vexations and difficulties? Thou commandest them to be endured, not to be loved. For no man loves what he endures, though he may love to endure. For notwithstanding he rejoices to endure, he would rather there were naught for him to endure.[2] In adversity, I desire prosperity; in prosperity, I fear adversity. What middle place, then, is there between these, where human life is not a temptation? Woe unto the prosperity of this world, once and again, from fear of misfortune and a corruption of joy! Woe unto the adversities of this world, once and again, and for the third time, from the desire of prosperity; and

[1] Job vii. 1. The *Old Ver.* rendering צָבָא by *tentatio*, after the LXX. πειρατήριον. The *Vulg.* has *militia*, which = "warfare" in margin of A. V.

[2] "It will not be safe," says Anthony Farindon (vol. iv. *Christ's Temptation*, serm. 107), "for us to challenge and provoke a temptation, but to arm and prepare ourselves against it; to stand upon our guard, and neither to offer battle nor yet refuse it. *Sapiens feret ista, non eliget*: 'It is the part of a wise man not to seek for evil, but to *endure* it.' And to this end it concerneth every man to exercise τὴν πνευματικὴν σύνεσιν, 'his spiritual wisdom,' that he may discover *Spiritûs ductiones et diaboli seductiones*, 'the Spirit's leadings and the devil's seducements.'" See also Augustine's *Serm.* lxxvi. 4, and p. 83, note 6, above.

because adversity itself is a hard thing, and makes shipwreck of endurance! Is not the life of man upon earth a temptation, and that without intermission?[1]

CHAP. XXIX.—*All hope is in the mercy of God.*

40. And my whole hope is only in Thy exceeding great mercy. Give what Thou commandest, and command what Thou wilt. Thou imposest continency upon us,[2] "nevertheless, when I perceived," saith one, "that I could not otherwise obtain her, except God gave her me; . . . that was a point of wisdom also to know whose gift she was."[3] For by continency are we bound up and brought into one, whence we were scattered abroad into many. For he loves Thee too little who loves aught with Thee, which he loves not for Thee.[4] O love, who ever burnest, and art never quenched! O charity, my God, kindle me! Thou commandest continency; give what Thou commandest, and command what Thou wilt.

CHAP. XXX.—*Of the perverse images of dreams, which he wishes to have taken away.*

41. Verily, Thou commandest that I should be continent from the "lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life."[5] Thou hast commanded me to abstain from

[1] We have ever to endure temptation, either in the sense of a *testing*, as when it is said, "God did tempt Abraham" (Gen. xxii. 1); or with the additional idea of *yielding* to the temptation, and so committing sin, as in the use of the word in the Lord's Prayer (Matt. vi. 13); for, as Dyke says in his *Michael and the Dragon* (Works, i. 203, 204): "No sooner have we bathed and washed our souls in the waters of *Repentance*, but we must presently expect the fiery darts of Satan's temptations to be driving at us. What we get and gain from Satan by *Repentance*, he seeks to regain and recover by his *Temptations*. We must not think to pass quietly out of Egypt without Pharaoh's pursuit, nor to travel the wilderness of this world without the opposition of the Amalekites." Compare Augustine, *In Ev. Joann.* Tract. xliii. 6, and *Serm.* lvii. 9. See also p. 82, note, above.

[2] In his 38th *Sermon*, he distinguishes between *continentia* and *sustinentia*: the first guarding us from the allurements of worldliness and sin, while the second enables us to endure the troubles of life.

[3] Wisd. viii. 21.

[4] In his *De Trin.* ix. 13 (*"In what desire and love differ"*), he says, that when the creature is loved for itself, and the love of it is not referred to its Creator, it is desire (*cupiditas*) and not true love. See also p. 207, note 1, above.

[5] 1 John ii. 16. Dilating on Ps. viii. he makes these three roots of sin to

concubinage; and as to marriage itself, Thou hast advised something better than Thou hast allowed. And because Thou didst give it, it was done; and that before I became a dispenser of Thy sacrament. But there still exist in my memory—of which I have spoken much—the images of such things as my habits had fixed there; and these rush into my thoughts, though strengthless, when I am awake; but in sleep they do so not only so as to give pleasure, but even to obtain consent, and what very nearly resembles reality.[1] Yea, to such an extent prevails the illusion of the image, both in my soul and in my flesh, that the false persuade me, when sleeping, unto that which the true are not able when waking. Am I not myself at that time, O Lord my God? And there is yet so much difference between myself and myself, in that instant wherein I pass back from waking to sleeping, or return from sleeping to waking! Where, then, is the reason which when waking resists such suggestions? And if the things themselves be forced on it, I remain unmoved. Is it shut up with the eyes? Or is it put to sleep with the bodily senses? But whence, then, comes it to pass, that even in slumber we often resist, and, bearing our purpose in mind, and continuing most chastely in it, yield no assent to such allurements? And there is yet so much difference that, [illegible] happeneth otherwise, upon awaking we return to [illegible] conscience; and by this same diversity do we disco[illegible]s not we that did it, while we still feel sorry tha[illegible]ay it was done in us.

correspond to the threefold nature of our Lord's temptation in the wilderness. See also p. 85, note 5, above.

[1] In Augustine's view, then, dreams appear to result from our thoughts and feelings when awake. In this he has the support of Aristotle (*Ethics*, i. 13), as also that of Solomon, who says (Eccles. v. 3), "A dream cometh through the multitude of business." An apt illustration of this is found in the life of the great Danish sculptor, Thorwaldsen. It is said that he could not satisfy himself with his models for *The Christ*, in the Frauenkirche at Copenhagen,—as Da Vinci before him was *never* able to paint the face of the Christ in His noble fresco of the Last Supper,—and that it was only in consequence of a dream (that dream doubtless the result of his stedfast search for an ideal) that this great work was accomplished. But see *Ep.* clix.

42. Is not Thy hand able, O Almighty God, to heal all the diseases of my soul,[1] and by Thy more abundant grace to quench even the lascivious motions of my sleep? Thou wilt increase in me, O Lord, Thy gifts more and more, that my soul may follow me to Thee, disengaged from the bird-lime of concupiscence; that it may not be in rebellion against itself, and even in dreams not simply not, through sensual images, commit those deformities of corruption, even to the pollution of the flesh, but that it may not even consent unto them. For it is no great thing for the Almighty, who is "able to do . . . above all that we ask or think,"[2] to bring it about that no such influence—not even so slight a one as a sign might restrain—should afford gratification to the chaste affection even of one sleeping; and that not only in this life, but at my present age. But what I still am in this species of my ill, have I confessed unto my good Lord; rejoicing with trembling[3] in that which Thou hast given me, and bewailing myself for that wherein I am still imperfect; trusting that Thou wilt perfect Thy mercies in me, even to the fulness of peace, which both that which is within and that which is without[4] shall have with Thee, when death is swallowed up in victory.[5]

CHAP. XXXI.—*About to speak of the temptations of the lust of the flesh, he first complains of the lust of eating and drinking.*

43. There is an [illegible] evil of the day that I would were "sufficient" unto [illegible]ting and drinking we repair the daily decays [illegible]til Thou destroyest both food and st[illegible]h, wi[illegible]t destroy my want with an amazing satiety, and [illegible]clothe this corruptible with an eternal incorruption.[7] But now is necessity sweet unto me, and against this sweetness do I fight, lest I be enthralled; and I carry on a daily war by fastings,[8] oftentimes "bringing

[1] Ps. ciii. 3. [2] Eph. iii. 20. [3] Ps. ii. 11. [4] See note 3, p. 234, above.
[5] 1 Cor. xv. 54. [6] Matt. vi. 34. [7] 1 Cor. xv. 54.
[8] In Augustine's time, and indeed till the Council of Orleans, A.D. 538, fasting appears to have been left pretty much to the individual conscience. We find Tertullian in his *De Jejunio* lamenting the slight observance it received during his day. We learn, however, from the passage in Justin Martyr [illegible] in the note on p. 179, above, that in his time it was enjoined as a preparation for Baptism.

my body into subjection,"[1] and my pains are expelled by pleasure. For hunger and thirst are in some sort pains; they consume and destroy like unto a fever, unless the medicine of nourishment relieve us. The which, since it is at hand through the comfort we receive of Thy gifts, with which land and water and air serve our infirmity, our calamity is called pleasure.

44. This much hast Thou taught me, that I should bring myself to take food as medicine. But during the time that I am passing from the uneasiness of want to the calmness of satiety, even in the very passage doth that snare of concupiscence lie in wait for me. For the passage itself is pleasure, nor is there any other way of passing thither, whither necessity compels us to pass. And whereas health is the reason of eating and drinking, there joineth itself as an handmaid a perilous delight, which mostly tries to precede it, in order that I may do for her sake what I say I do, or desire to do, for health's sake. Nor have both the same limit; for what is sufficient for health is too little for pleasure. And oftentimes it is doubtful whether it be the necessary care of the body which still asks nourishment, or whether a sensual snare of desire offers its ministry. In this uncertainty does my unhappy soul rejoice, and therein prepares an excuse as a defence, glad that it doth not appear what may be sufficient for the moderation of healt[illegible]er the pretence of health it may conceal the [illegible]leasure. These temptations do I daily endea[illegible], and I summon Thy right hand to my hel[illegible] my excitements to Thee, because as yet I have no resolve in this matter.

45. I hear the voice of my God commanding, let not "your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting and drunkenness."[2] "Drunkenness," it is far from me; Thou wilt have mercy, that it approach not near unto me. But "surfeiting" sometimes creepeth upon Thy servant; Thou wilt have mercy, that it may be far from me. For no man can be continent unless Thou give it.[3] Many things which we pray for dost give us; and what good soever we receive before we

[1] ix. 27. [2] Luke xxi. 34. [3] Wisd. viii. 21.

prayed for it, do we receive from Thee, and that we might afterwards know this did we receive it from Thee. Drunkard was I never, but I have known drunkards to be made sober men by Thee. Thy doing, then, was it, that they who never were such might not be so, as from Thee it was that they who have been so heretofore might not remain so always; and from Thee, too, was it, that both might know from whom it was. I heard another voice of Thine, "Go not after thy lusts, but refrain thyself from thine appetites."[1] And by Thy favour have I heard this saying likewise, which I have much delighted in, "Neither if we eat, are we the better; neither if we eat not, are we the worse;"[2] which is to say, that neither shall the one make me to abound, nor the other to be wretched. I heard also another voice, "For I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, therewith to be content. I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound. I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth [illegible] a soldier of the celestial camp—not dust as we [illegible]her, C[illegible]d, "that we are dust,"[4] and that [illegible]an;[5] and he "was lost, and is [illegible] his own power, seeing that [illegible]ngs through the affla[illegible] "I can'

40. Thou hast taught me, good Father, that "unto the pure all things are pure;"[1] but "it is evil for that man who eateth with offence;"[2] "and that every creature of Thine is good, and nothing to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving;"[3] and that "meat commendeth us not to God;"[4] and that no man should "judge us in meat or in drink;"[5] and that he that eateth, let him not despise him that eateth not; and let not him that eateth not judge him that eateth.[6] These things have I learned, thanks and praise be unto Thee, O my God and Master, who dost knock at my ears and enlighten my heart; deliver me out of all temptation. It is not the uncleanness of meat that I fear, but the uncleanness of lusting. I know that permission was granted unto Noah to eat every kind of flesh[7] that was good for food;[8] that Elias was fed with flesh;[9] that John, endued with a wonderful abstinence, was not polluted by the living creatures (that is, the locusts) which he fed on. I know, too, that Esau was deceived [illegible] longing for lentiles,[11] and that David took blame [illegible] for desiring water,[12] and that our Lord was [illegible] flesh but bread.[13] And the people [illegible] also deserved reproof, not because [illegible] their desire for food, [illegible]

Placed, [illegible]

he who is not in some degree carried away beyond the bounds of necessity? Whoever he is, he is great; let him magnify Thy name. But I am not such a one, "for I am a sinful man."[1] Yet do I also magnify Thy name; and He who hath "overcome the world"[2] maketh intercession to Thee for my sins,[3] accounting me among the "feeble members" of His body,[4] because Thine eyes saw that of him which was imperfect; and in Thy book all shall be written.[5]

CHAP. XXXII.—*Of the charms of perfumes which are more easily overcome.*

48. With the attractions of odours I am not much troubled. When absent I do not seek them; when present I do not refuse them; and am prepared ever to be without them. At any rate thus I appear to myself; perchance I am deceived. For that also is a lamentable darkness wherein my capacity [illegible] is in me is concealed, so that my mind, making inquiry [illegible] herself concerning her own powers, ventures not readily [illegible] herself; because that which is already in it is, for the [illegible] concealed, unless experience reveal it. And no man [illegible] secure[6] in this life, the whole of which is called [illegible] who could be made better from worse, [illegible] made worse. Our sole hope, our [illegible] promise, is Thy mercy.

[illegible], says of all transient things, [illegible] and duties of life, [illegible] a lover."

[illegible] 1 Cor. xii. 22.

[illegible] mmenting on it

[illegible] ion," p.

[illegible] n i

CHAP. XXXIII.—*He overcame the pleasures of the ear, although in the church he frequently delighted in the song, not in the thing sung.*

49. The delights of the ear had more powerfully inveigled and conquered me, but Thou didst unbind and liberate me. Now, in those airs which Thy words breathe soul into, when sung with a sweet and trained voice, do I somewhat repose; yet not so as to cling to them, but so as to free myself when I wish. But with the words which are their life do they, that they may gain admission into me, strive after a place of some honour in my heart; and I can hardly assign them a fitting one. Sometimes I appear to myself to give them more respect than is fitting, as I perceive that our minds are more devoutly and earnestly elevated into a flame of piety by the holy words themselves when they are thus sung, than when they are not; and that all affections of our spirit, by their own diversity, have their appropriate measures in the voi[illegible] and singing, wherewith by I know not what secret rel[illegible] ship they are stimulated. But the gratification of my [illegible] to which the mind ought never to be given over to b[illegible] vated, often beguiles me, while the sense do[illegible] reason as to follow her patiently; b[illegible] merely for her sake, it strives ev[illegible] be her leader. Thus in th[illegible] afterwards do I know it[illegible]

50. Sometim[illegible] deception, I er[illegible] so much as [illegible] which Day[illegible] [illegible]

custom. Thus vacillate I between dangerous pleasure and tried soundness; being inclined rather (though I pronounce no irrevocable opinion upon the subject) to approve of the use of singing in the church, that so by the delights of the ear the weaker minds may be stimulated to a devotional frame. Yet when it happens to me to be more moved by the singing than by what is sung, I confess myself to have sinned criminally, and then I would rather not have heard the singing. See now the condition I am in! Weep with me, and weep for me, you who so control your inward feelings as that good results ensue. As for you who do not thus act, these things concern you not. But Thou, O Lord my God, give ear, behold and see, and have mercy upon me, and heal me,[1]—Thou, in whose sight I am become a puzzle to myself; and "this is my infirmity."[2]

CHAP. XXXIV.—*Of the very dangerous allurements of the eyes; on account of beauty of form, God, the Creator, is to be praised.*

51. There remain the delights of these eyes of my flesh, concerning which to make my confessions in the hearing of the ears of Thy temple, those fraternal and devout ears; and so to conclude the temptations of "the lust of the flesh"[3] which still assail me, groaning and desiring to be clothed upon with my house from heaven.[4] The eyes delight in fair and varied forms, and bright and pleasing colours. Suffer not these to take possession of my soul; let God rather possess it, He who made these things "very good"[5] indeed; yet is He my good, not these. And these move me while awake, during the day; nor is rest from them granted me, as there is from the voices of melody, sometimes, in silence, from them all. For that queen of colours, the light, flooding all that we look upon, whatever I be during the day, gliding past me in manifold forms, doth soothe me when busied about other things, and not noticing it. And so strongly doth it insinuate itself, that if it be suddenly withdrawn it is looked for longingly, and if long absent doth sadden the mind.

52. O Thou Light, which Tobias saw,[6] when, his eyes being closed, he taught his son the way of life; himself going before

[1] Ps. vi. 2. [2] Ps. lxxvii. 10. [3] 1 John ii. 16.
[4] 2 Cor. v. 2. [5] Gen. i. 31. [6] Tobit iv.

with the feet of charity, never going astray. Or that which Isaac saw, when his fleshly "eyes were dim, so that he could not see"[1] by reason of old age; it was permitted him, not knowingly to bless his sons, but in blessing them to know them. Or that which Jacob saw, when he too, blind through great age, with an enlightened heart, in the persons of his own sons, threw light upon the races of the future people, presignified in them; and laid his hands, mystically crossed, upon his grandchildren by Joseph, not as their father, looking outwardly, corrected them, but as he himself distinguished them.[2] This is the light, the only one, and all those who see and love it are one. But that corporeal light of which I was speaking seasoneth the life of the world for her blind lovers, with a tempting and fatal sweetness. But they who know how to praise Thee for it, "O God, the world's great Architect,"[3] take it up in Thy hymn, and are not taken up with it[4] in their sleep. Such desire I to be. I resist seductions of the eyes, lest my feet with which I advance on Thy way be entangled; and I raise my invisible eyes to Thee, that Thou wouldst be pleased to "pluck my feet out of the net."[5] Thou dost continually pluck them out, for they are ensnared. Thou never ceasest to pluck them out, but I constantly remain fast in the snares set all around me; because Thou "that keepest Israel shall neither slumber nor sleep."[6]

33. What numberless things, made by divers arts and manufactures, both in our apparel, shoes, vessels, and every kind of work, in pictures, too, and sundry images, and these going far beyond necessary and moderate use and holy signification, have men added for the enthrallment of the eyes; following outwardly what they make, forsaking inwardly Him by whom they were made, yea, and destroying that which they themselves were made! But I, O my God and my Joy, do hence also sing a hymn unto Thee, and offer a sacrifice

[1] Gen. xxvii. 1. [2] Gen. xlviii. 13–19.

[3] From the beginning of the hymn of St. Ambrose, part of which is quoted, ix. sec. 32, above.

[4] *Assumunt eam, in hymno tuo, non absumuntur ab ea.*

[5] Ps. xxv. 15. [6] Ps. cxxi. 4.

praise unto my Sanctifier,[1] because those beautiful patterns, which through the medium of men's souls are conveyed into their artistic hands,[2] emanate from that Beauty which is above our souls, which my soul sigheth after day and night. But as for the makers and followers of those outward beauties, they from thence derive the way of approving them, but not of using them.[3] And though they see Him not, yet is He there, that they might not go astray, but keep their strength for Thee,[4] and not dissipate it upon delicious lassitudes. And I, though I both say and perceive this, impede my course with such beauties, but Thou dost rescue me, O Lord, Thou dost rescue me; "for Thy loving-kindness is before mine eyes."[5] For I am taken miserably, and Thou rescuest me mercifully; sometimes not perceiving it, in that I had come upon them hesitatingly; at other times with pain, because I was held fast by them.

CHAP. XXXV.—*Another kind of temptation is curiosity, which is stimulated by the lust of the eyes.*

54. In addition to this there is another form of temptation, more complex in its peril. For besides that concupiscence of the flesh which lieth in the gratification of all senses and pleasures, wherein its slaves who "are far from Thee perish,"[6] there pertaineth to the soul, through the same senses of the body, a certain vain and curious longing, cloaked under the name of knowledge and learning, not of having pleasure in the flesh, but of making experiments through the flesh. This longing, since it originates in an appetite for knowledge, and the sight being the chief amongst the senses in the acquisition of knowledge, is called in divine language, "the lust of the eyes."[7] For seeing belongeth properly to the eyes; yet we apply this word to the other senses also, when we exercise them in the search after knowledge. For we do not say, Listen how it glows, smell how it glisteus, taste how it shines, or feel how it flashes, since all these are said to be seen. And yet

[1] *Sanctificatori meo*, but some MSS. have *sacrificatori*.
[2] See xi. sec. 7, and note, below.
[3] See note 4, sec. 40, above.
[4] Ps. lviii. 10, *Vulg.*
[5] Ps. xxvi. 3.
[6] Ps. lxxiii. 27.
[7] 1 John ii. 16.

we say not only, See how it shineth, which the eyes alone can perceive; but also, See how it soundeth, see how it smelleth, see how it tasteth, see how hard it is. And thus the general experience of the senses, as was said before, is termed "the lust of the eyes," because the function of seeing, wherein the eyes hold the pre-eminence, the other senses by way of similitude take possession of, whensoever they seek out any knowledge.

55. But by this is it more clearly discerned, when pleasure and when curiosity is pursued by the senses; for pleasure follows after objects that are beautiful, melodious, fragrant, savoury, soft; but curiosity, for experiment's sake, seeks the contrary of these,—not with a view of undergoing uneasiness, but from the passion of experimenting upon and knowing them. For what pleasure is there to see, in a lacerated corpse, that which makes you shudder? And yet if it lie near, we flock thither, to be made sad, and to turn pale. Even in sleep they fear lest they should see it. Just as if when awake any one compelled them to go and see it, or any report of its beauty had attracted them! Thus also is it with the other senses, which it were tedious to pursue. From this malady of curiosity are all those strange sights exhibited in the theatre. Hence do we proceed to search out the secret powers of nature (which is beside our end), which to know profits not,[1] and wherein men desire nothing but to know. Hence, too, with that same end of perverted knowledge we consult magical arts. Hence, again, even in religion itself, is God tempted, when signs and wonders are eagerly asked of Him,—not desired for any saving end, but to make trial only.

56. In this so vast a wilderness, replete with snares and

[1] Augustine's great end was to attain the knowledge of God. Hence, in his *Soliloquia*, i. 7, we read: "Deum et animam scire cupio. Nihilne plus? Nihil omnino." And he only esteemed the knowledge of physical laws so far as they would lead to Him. (See v. sec. 7, above, and the note there.) In his *De Ordine*, ii. 14, 15, etc., writing at the time of his conversion, he had contended that the knowledge of the liberal sciences would lead to a knowledge of the divine wisdom; but in his *Retractations* (i. 3, sec. 2) he regrets this, pointing out that while many holy men have not this knowledge, many who have it are not holy. Compare also *Enchir.* c. 16; *Serm.* lxviii. 1, 2; and *De Civ. Dei*, ix. 22.

dangers, lo, many of them have I lopped off, and expelled from my heart, as Thou, O God of my salvation, hast enabled me to do. And yet when dare I say, since so many things of this kind buzz around our daily life,—when dare I say that no such thing makes me intent to see it, or creates in me vain solicitude? It is true that the theatres never now carry me away, nor do I now care to know the courses of the stars, nor hath my soul at any time consulted departed spirits; all sacrilegious oaths I abhor. O Lord my God, to whom I owe all humble and single-hearted service, with what subtlety of suggestion does the enemy influence me to require some sign from Thee! But by our King, and by our pure and chaste country Jerusalem, I beseech Thee, that as any consenting unto such thoughts is far from me, so may it always be farther and farther. But when I entreat Thee for the salvation of any, the end I aim at is far otherwise, and Thou who doest what Thou wilt, givest and wilt give me willingly to "follow" Thee.[1]

57. Nevertheless, in how many most minute and contemptible things is our curiosity daily tempted, and who can number how often we succumb? How often, when people are narrating idle tales, do we begin by tolerating them, lest we should give offence unto the weak; and then gradually we listen willingly! I do not now-a-days go to the circus to see a dog chasing a hare;[2] but if by chance I pass such a coursing in the fields, it possibly distracts me even from some serious thought, and draws me after it,—not that I turn the body of my beast aside, but the inclination of my mind. And except Thou, by demonstrating to me my weakness, dost speedily warn me, either through the sight itself by some reflection to rise to Thee, or wholly to despise and pass it by, I, vain one, am absorbed by it. How is it, when sitting at home, a lizard catching flies, or a spider entangling them as they rush into her nets, oftentimes arrests me? Is the feeling of curiosity

[1] John xxi. 22.

[2] In allusion to those *venatios*, or hunting scenes, in which the less savage animals were slain. These were held in the circus, which was sometimes planted for the occasion, so as to resemble a forest. See Smith's *Greek and Roman Antiquities*, under "Venatio," and vi. sec. 13, note, above.

not the same because these are such tiny creatures? From them I proceed to praise Thee, the wonderful Creator and Disposer of all things; but it is not this that first attracts my attention. It is one thing to get up quickly, and another not to fall, and of such things is my life full; and my only hope is in Thy exceeding great mercy. For when this heart of ours is made the receptacle of such things, and bears crowds of this abounding vanity, then are our prayers often interrupted and disturbed thereby; and whilst in Thy presence we direct the voice of our heart to Thine ears, this so great a matter is broken off by the influx of I know not what idle thoughts.

CHAP. XXXVI.—*A third kind is "pride," which is pleasing to man, not to God.*

58. Shall we, then, account this too amongst such things as are to be lightly esteemed, or shall anything restore us to hope, save Thy complete mercy, since Thou hast begun to change us? And Thou knowest to what extent Thou hast already changed me, Thou who first healest me of the lust of vindicating myself, that so Thou mightest forgive all my remaining "iniquities," and heal all my "diseases," and redeem my life from corruption, and crown me with "loving-kindness and ten[der] [mer]cies" and satisfy my desire with "good things."[1] [Who] my pride with Thy fear, and subdue my [neck] And now I bear it, and it is "light" [as] hast Thou promised, and made it, and [so] though I knew it not, when I feared [the] Lord,—Thou who alone reignest without [pride] art the only true Lord, who hast no lord,—h[ast] of temptation left me, or can it leave me du[ring]

59. The desire to be feared and loved of m[en] view than that I may experience a joy therein [which] is a miserable life, and unseemly ostentation. Hen[ce] it arises that we do not love Thee, nor devoutly [fear] And therefore dost Thou resist the proud, but gives [grace] unto the humble:[3] and Thou thunderest upon the amb[itious] designs of the world, and "the foundations of the h[ills] tremble."[4] Because now certain offices of human societ[y]

[1] Ps. ciii. 3–5. [2] Matt. xi. 30. [3] Jas. iv. 6. [4] Ps. xviii. 7.

render it necessary to be loved and feared of men, the adversary of our true blessedness presseth hard upon us, everywhere scattering his snares of "well done, well done;" that while acquiring them eagerly, we may be caught unawares, and disunite our joy from Thy truth, and fix it on the deceits of men; and take pleasure in being loved and feared, not for Thy sake, but in Thy stead, by which means, being made like unto him, he may have them as his, not in harmony of love, but in the fellowship of punishment; who aspired to exalt his throne in the north,[1] that dark and cold they might serve him, imitating Thee in perverse and distorted ways. But we, O Lord, lo, we are Thy "little flock;"[2] do Thou possess us, stretch Thy wings over us, and let us take refuge under them. Be Thou our glory; let us be loved for Thy sake, and Thy word feared in us. They who desire to be commended of men when Thou blamest, will not be defended of men when Thou judgest; nor will they be delivered when Thou condemnest. But when not [illegible] sinner is praised in the desires of his soul, nor he blessed [illegible] doeth [illegible]ustly,[3] but a man is praised for some gift that [illegible]u hast bestowed upon him, and he is more gratified at the [illegible] than that he possesses the gift for which he is [illegible]e is praised while Thou blamest. And better [illegible]praised than the one who was praised. For [illegible]n was pleasing to the one, while the other [illegible] with the gift of man than that of God.

[illegible]XVII.—*He is forcibly goaded on by the love of praise.*

[illegible] by these temptations, O Lord, are we daily t[illegible] [illegible]asingly are we tried. Our daily "furnace [illegible]man tongue. And in this respect also dost T[illegible] [illegible]mand us to be continent. Give what Thou [illegible] command what Thou wilt. Regarding this [illegible] knowest the groans of my heart, and the [illegible] For I am not able to ascertain how [illegible] plague, and I stand in great fear of [illegible]

[1] Isa. xiv. 13, 14. [2] Luke xii. 32.
[4] Isa. xlviii. [illegible]
[5] Ps. xix.

Thine eyes perceive, though mine do not. For in other kinds of temptations I have some sort of power of examining myself; but in this, hardly any. For, both as regards the pleasures of the flesh and an idle curiosity, I see how far I have been able to hold my mind in check when I do without them, either voluntarily or by reason of their not being at hand;[1] for then I inquire of myself how much more or less troublesome it is to me not to have them. Riches truly which are sought for in order that they may minister to some one of these three "lusts,"[2] or to two, or the whole of them, if the mind be not able to see clearly whether, when it hath them, it despiseth them, they may be cast on one side, that so it may prove itself. But if we desire to test our power of doing without praise, need we live ill, and that so flagitiously and immoderately as that every one who knows us shall detest us? What greater madness than this can be either said or conceived? But if praise both is wont and ought to be the companion of a good life and of good works, we shou as little forego its companionship as a good life itself. unless a thing be absent, I do not know whether I shall contented or troubled at being without it.

61. What, then, do I confess unto Thee, O kind of temptation? What, save that I am praise, but more with the truth itself tha were I to have my choice, whether I had fa ay on all things, be praised by all men, o assured in the truth, be blamed by all, I oose. Yet would I be unwilling that the a er should even add to my joy for any g et I admit that it doth increase it, and, more dispraise doth diminish it. And when I am dis his misery of mine, an excuse presents itself to Thou, God, knowest, for it renders me it is not continency alone that Thou

he points out that adversity also, when it him how far his heart is set on worldly discredit."

hast enjoined upon us, that is, from what things to hold back our love, but righteousness also, that is, upon what to bestow it, and hast wished us to love not Thee only, but also our neighbour,[1]—often, when gratified by intelligent praise, I appear to myself to be gratified by the proficiency or towardliness of my neighbour, and again to be sorry for evil in him when I hear him dispraise either that which he understands not, or is good. For I am sometimes grieved at mine own praise, either when those things which I am displeased at in myself be praised in me, or even lesser and trifling goods are more valued than they should be. But, again, how do I know whether I am thus affected, because I am unwilling that he who praiseth me should differ from me concerning myself—not as being moved with consideration for him, but because the same good things which please me in myself are more pleasing to me when they also please another? For, in a sort, I am not praised when my judgment of myself is not praised; since either those things which are displeasing to me are praised, or those more so which are less pleasing to me. Am I then uncertain of myself in this matter?

62. Behold, O Truth, in Thee do I see that I ought not to be moved at my own praises for my own sake, but for my neighbour's good. And whether it be so, in truth I know not. For concerning this I know less of myself than dost Thou. I beseech Thee now, O my God, to reveal to me myself also, that I may confess unto my brethren, who are to pray for me, what I find in myself weak. Once again let me more diligently examine myself.[2] If, in mine own praise, I am moved with consideration for my neighbour, why am I less moved if some other man be unjustly dispraised than if it be myself? Why am I more irritated at that reproach which is

[1] Lev. xix. 18. See book xii. secs. 35, 41, below.

[2] It may be well, in connection with the striking piece of soul-anatomy in this and the last two sections, to advert to other passages in which Augustine speaks of the temptation arising from the praise of men. In *Serm.* cccxxxix. 1, he says that he does not altogether dislike praise when it comes from the good, though feeling it to be a snare, and does not reject it: "Ne *ingrati* sint quibus prædico." That is, as he says above, he accepted it for his "neighbour's good," since, had his neighbour not been ready to give praise, it would have indicated

cast upon myself, than at that which is with equal injustice cast upon another in my presence? Am I ignorant of this also? or does it remain that I deceive myself,[1] and do not the "truth"[2] before Thee in my heart and tongue? Put such madness far from me, O Lord, lest my mouth be to me the oil of sinners, to anoint my head.[3]

CHAP. XXXVIII.—*Vain-glory is the highest danger.*

63. "I am poor and needy,"[4] yet better am I while in secret groanings I displease myself, and seek for Thy mercy, until what is lacking in me be renewed and made complete, even up to that peace of which the eye of the proud is ignorant. Yet the word which proceedeth out of the mouth, and actions known to men, have a most dangerous temptation from the love of praise, which, for the establishing of a certain excellency of our own, gathers together solicited suffrages. It tempts, even when within I reprove myself for it, on the very ground that it is reproved; and often man glories more vainly of the very scorn of vain-glory; wherefore it is not any longer scorn of vain-glory whereof it glories, for he does not truly contemn it when he inwardly glories.

CHAP. XXXIX.—*Of the vice of those who, while pleasing themselves, displease God.*

64. Within also, within is another evil, arising out of the same kind of temptation; whereby they become empty who please themselves in themselves, although they please not, or displease, or aim at pleasing others. But in pleasing them-

a wrong condition of heart in him. We are, therefore, as he argues in his *De Serm. Dom. in Mon.* ii. 1, 2, 6, to see that the *design* of our acts be not that men should see and praise us (compare also *Enarr. in Ps.* lxv. 2). If they praise us it is well, since it shows that their heart is right; but if we "act rightly only *because* of the praise of men" (Matt. vi. 2, 5), we seek our own glory and not that of God. See also *Serms.* xciii. 9, clix. 10, etc.; and *De Civ. Dei*, v. 13, 14.

[1] Gal. vi. 3. [2] 1 John i. 8.

[3] Ps. cxli. 5, according to the *Vulg.* and LXX. The Authorized Version (with which the *Targum* is in accord) gives the more probable sense, when it makes the oil to be that of the righteous and not that of the sinner: "Let the righteous smite me, it shall be a kindness; and let him reprove me, it shall be an excellent oil, which shall not break my head."

[4] Ps. cix. 22.

selves, they much displease Thee, not merely taking pleasure in things not good as if they were good, but in Thy good things as though they were their own; or even as if in Thine, yet as though of their own merits; or even as if though of Thy grace, yet not with friendly rejoicings, but as envying that grace to others.[1] In all these and similar perils and labours Thou perceivest the trembling of my heart, and I rather feel my wounds to be cured by Thee than not inflicted by me.

CHAP. XI.—*The only safe resting-place for the soul is to be found in God.*

65. Where hast Thou not accompanied me, O Truth, teaching me both what to avoid and what to desire, when I submitted to Thee what I could perceive of sublunary things, and asked Thy counsel? With my external senses, as I could, I viewed the world, and noted the life which my body derives from me, and these my senses. Thence I advanced inwardly into the recesses of my memory,—the manifold rooms, wondrously full of multitudinous wealth; and I considered and was afraid, and could discern none of these things without Thee, and found none of them to be Thee. Nor was I myself the discoverer of these things,—I, who went over them all, and laboured to distinguish and to value everything according to its dignity, accepting some things upon the report of my senses, and questioning about others which I felt to be mixed up with myself, distinguishing and numbering the reporters themselves, and in the vast storehouse of my memory investigating some things, laying up others, taking out others. Neither was I myself when I did this (that is, that ability of mine whereby I did it), nor was it Thou, for Thou art that never-failing light which I took counsel of as to them all, whether they were what they were, and what was their worth; and I heard Thee teaching and commanding me. And this I do often; this is a delight to me, and, as far as I

[1] See his *De Civ. Dei*, v. 20, where he compares the truly pious man, who attributes all his good to God's mercy, "giving thanks for what in him is healed, and pouring out prayers for the healing of that which [illegible]," with the philosophers who make their chief end pleasure or [illegible]

[2] See xii. sec. 35, below.

can get relief from necessary duties, to this gratification do I resort. Nor in all these which I review when consulting Thee, find I a secure place for my soul, save in Thee, into whom my scattered members may be gathered together, and nothing of me depart from Thee.[1] And sometimes Thou dost introduce me to a most rare affection, inwardly, to an inexplicable sweetness, which, if it should be perfected in me, I know not to what point that life might not arrive. But by these wretched weights[2] of mine do I relapse into these things, and am sucked in by my old customs, and am held, and sorrow much, yet am much held. To such an extent does the burden of habit press us down. In this way I can be, but will not; in that I will, but cannot,—on both ways miserable.

CHAP. XLII.—*Having conquered his triple desire, he arrives at salvation.*

66. And thus have I reflected upon the wearinesses of my sins, in that threefold "lust,"[3] and have invoked Thy right hand to my aid. For with a wounded heart have I seen Thy brightness, and being beaten back I exclaimed, "Who can attain unto it?" "I am cut off from before Thine eyes."[4] Thou art the Truth, who presidest over all things, but I, through my covetousness, wished not to lose Thee, but with Thee wished to possess a lie; as no one wishes so to speak falsely as himself to be ignorant of the truth. So then I lost Thee, because Thou deignest not to be enjoyed with a lie.

CHAP. XLIII.—*In what manner many sought the Mediator.*

67. Whom could I find to reconcile me to Thee? Was I to solicit the angels? By what prayer? By what sacraments? Many striving to return unto Thee, and not able of themselves, have, as I am told, tried this, and have fallen into a longing for curious visions,[5] and were held worthy to be deceived.

[1] See ix. sec. 10, note, above, and xi. sec. 39, below.
[2] Heb. xii. 1.
[3] See sec. 41, note 5, above.
[4] Ps. xxxi. 22.
[5] It would be easy so to do, since even amongst believers, as we find from Evodius' letter to Augustine (*Ep.* clvi.), there was a prevalent belief that the bl[illegible] the earth, and that visions had an important bearing on [illegible] also Augustine's answer to Evodius, in *Ep.* clix.; Chrysos[illegible]; and on Visions, see sec. 41, note, above.

For they, being exalted, sought Thee by the pride of learning, thrusting themselves forward rather than beating their breasts, and so by correspondence of heart drew unto themselves the princes of the air,[1] the conspirators and companions in pride, by whom, through the power of magic,[2] they were deceived, seeking a mediator by whom they might be cleansed; but none was there. For the devil it was, transforming himself into an angel of light.[3] And he much allured proud flesh, in that he had no fleshly body. For they were mortal, and sinful; but Thou, O Lord, to whom they arrogantly sought to be reconciled, art immortal, and sinless. But a mediator between God and man ought to have something like unto God, and something like unto man; lest being in both like unto man, he should be far from God; or if in both like unto God, he should be far from man, and so should not be a mediator. That deceitful mediator, then, by whom in Thy secret judgments pride deserved to be deceived, hath one thing in common with man, that is, sin; another he would appear to have with God, and, not being clothed with mortality of flesh, would boast that he was immortal.[4] But since "the wages of sin is death,"[5] this hath he in common with men, that together with them he should be condemned to death.

CHAP. XLIII.—*That Jesus Christ, at the same time God and man, is the true and most efficacious Mediator.*

68. But the true Mediator, whom in Th[illegible]t mercy Thou hast pointed out to the humble, and d[illegible] example[6] also they might learn the [illegible] ator between God and [illegible] between mortal[illegible] with men, ju[illegible] ness is lif[illegible] with G[illegible]

willed to have in common with them.[1] Hence He was pointed out to holy men of old; to the intent that they, through faith in His Passion to come,[2] even as we through faith in that which is past, might be saved. For as man He was Mediator; but as the Word He was not between,[3] because equal to God, and God with God, and together with the Holy Spirit[4] one God.

69. How hast Thou loved us,[5] O good Father, who sparedst not Thine only Son, but deliveredst Him up for us wicked ones![6]

[1] Not that our Lord is to be supposed, as some have held, to have been under the law of death in Adam, because "in Adam all die" (1 Cor. xv. 22; see the whole of c. 23, in *De Civ. Dei*, xiii., and compare ix. sec. 34, note 2, above); for he says in *Serm.* ccxxxii. 5: "As there was nothing in us from which life could spring, so there was nothing in Him from which death could come." He *laid down* His life (John x. 18), and as being partaker of the divine nature, could *see no corruption* (Acts ii. 27). This is the explanation Augustine gives in his comment on Ps. lxxxv. 5 (quoted in the next section) of Christ's being "free among the dead." So also in his *De Trin.* xiii. 18, he says he was thus free because "solus enim a debito mortis liber est mortuus." The true analogy between the first and second Adam is surely then to be found in our Lord's being free from the law of death by reason of His divine nature, and Adam before his transgression being able to avert death by partaking of the Tree of Life. Christ was, it is true, a child of Adam, but a child of Adam miraculously born. See note, p. 68, above.

[2] See *De Trin.* iv. 2; and Trench, *Hulsean Lectures* (1845), latter part of lect. iv.

[3] *Medius*, alluding to *mediator* immediately before. See his *De Civ. Dei*, ix. 15, and xi. 2, for an en[illegible]gement of this distinction between Christ as man and [illegible] [illegible]pare also *De Trin.* i. 20 and xiii. 13; and Mansel, [illegible]te 20.

[illegible] *sancto.*

[illegible] own hymn, "change the wrath [illegible] passage in *Ev. Joh. Tract.* [illegible] the reconcilement [illegible] conciled us unto [illegible] *rmerly hated*, [illegible] by become [illegible] we were [illegible] mity [illegible] hen [illegible] t

How hast Thou loved us, for whom
robbery to be equal with Thee, "bec
even the death of the cross;"[1] He alon
that had power to lay down His life, u
for us was He unto Thee both Victor a
as being the Victim; for us was He un
Sacrifice, and Priest as being the Sacrifi
Thy sons, by being born of Thee, and s
then, is my hope strongly fixed on Him,
all my diseases[4] by Him who sitteth at T
maketh intercession for us;[5] else should
For numerous and great are my infirmi
great are they; but Thy medicine is g
that Thy Word was removed from u
of ourselves had He not been "ma

70. Terrified by my sins ar
resolved in my heart, and m
but Thou didst forbid m
therefore, Christ "died for
henceforth live unto themse
them."[9] Behold, O Lord, I
may live, and "behold wond
Thou knowest my unskilfuln
me, and heal me. Thine only
all the treasures of wisdom and
me with His blood. Let not the pr

Authorized Version has it; and
Ev. Joh. Tract. cx. 2, it
"that they all ma
me," limits "
"Ipsi sunt
predestin
Bompto

sinners and the immo
st with God; that because t
and peace. He might, by r
od, cancel the death of justifie

[1] Phil. ii. 2. [2] See note, p. 59, above.

[4] In his *De Civ. Dei*, x. 24, in speaking of the
mystery unintelligible to Porphyry's pride, he has a
speaks of the "true and benignant Mediator," and
ful mediators." See vii. sec. 24, above.

[5] Rom. vi. 23.

[6] See notes 3, p. 63, and 1 and 3, p. 72, above.

nsom, and eat and drink, and distri-
be satisfied from Him, together with
isfied, and they praise the Lord that

ding to his Manichæanism and the sinfulness of
Answer to Petilian, iii. 11, 20, etc., and *Serm.* 3,
udes at length to the charges brought against him,
own confessions in book iii. above.
ine probably alludes here to the Lord's Supper, in
ral Patristic interpretation.

B

THE DESIGN OF HIS CONF[illegible] DECLARED, HE SEEKS FROM GOD THE KNOWLEDGE OF THE [illegible]TURES, AND BEGINS TO EXPOUND THE WORDS OF GENESIS I. [illegible]CERNING THE CREATION OF THE WORLD. THE QUESTIONS OF RASH DIS[illegible]ERS BEING REFUTED, "WHAT DID GOD BEFORE HE CREATED THE WORLD?" THAT HE MIGHT THE BETTER OVERCOME HIS OPPONENTS, HE ADDS A COPIOUS DISQUISITION CONCERNING TIME.

CHAP. I.—*By confession he desires to stimulate towards God his own love and that of his readers.*

1. O LORD, since eternity is Thine, art Thou ignorant of the things which I say unto Thee? Or seest Thou at the time that which cometh to pass in time? Why, therefore, do I place before Thee so many relations of things? Not surely that Thou mightest know them through me, but that I may awaken my own love and that of my readers towards Thee, that we may all say, "Great is the Lord, and greatly to be praised."[1] I have already said, and shall say, for the love of Thy love do I this. For we also pray, and yet Truth says, "Your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask Him."[2] Therefore do we make known unto Thee our love, in confessing unto Thee our own miseries and Thy mercies upon us, that Thou mayest free us altogether, since Thou hast begun, that we may cease to be wretched in ourselves, and that we may be blessed in Thee; since Thou hast called us, that we may be poor in spirit, and meek, and mourners, and hungering and athirst after righteousness, and merciful, and pure in heart, and peacemakers.[3] Behold, I have told unto Thee many things, which I could and which I would, for Thou first wouldest that I should confess unto Thee, the Lord my God, for Thou art good, since Thy "mercy endureth for ever."[4]

[1] Ps. xcvi. 4. See note 3, page 1, above.
[2] Matt. vi. 8.
[3] Matt. v. 3-9.
[4] Ps. cxviii. 1.

...ptures he may

...ue of my pen to
...ors, and comforts,
...preach Thy Word
...people? And if
...drops[2] of time are
...neditate in Thy law,
...ge and ignorance, the
...remains of my dark-
...strength. And I would
...should flow away, which
I find free from the necessities of refreshing my body, and the care of my mind, and of the service which we owe to men, and which, though we owe not, even yet we pay.[3]

3. O Lord my God, hear my prayer, and let Thy mercy regard my longing, since it burns not (as for myself alone, but because it desires to benefit brotherly charity; and Thou seest into my heart, that so it is. I would sacrifice to Thee the

[1] He very touchingly alludes in *Serm.* cccly. 2 to the way in which he was forced against his will (as was frequently the custom in those days), first, to become a presbyter (A.D. 391), and, four years later, coadjutor to Valerius, Bishop of Hippo (*Ep.* xxxi. 4, and *Ep.* ccxiii. 4), whom on his death he succeeded. His own wish was to establish a monastery, and to this end he sold his patrimony, "which consisted of only a few small fields" (*Ep.* cxxvi. 7). He absolutely dreaded to become a bishop, and as he knew his name was highly esteemed in the Church, he avoided cities in which the see was vacant. His former backsliding had made him humble; and he tells us in the sermon above referred to, "Cavebam hoc, et agebam quantam poteram, ut in loco humili salvarer *ne in alto periclitarer*." Augustine also alludes to his ordination in *Ep.* xxi., addressed to Bishop Valerius.

[2] "He alludes to the hour-glasses of his time, which went by water, as ours do now by sand."—W. W.

[3] Augustine, in common with other bishops, had his time much invaded by those who sought his arbitration or judicial decision in secular matters, and in his *De Op. Monach.* sec. 37, he says, what many who have much mental toil will readily appreciate, that he would rather have spent the time not occupied in prayer and the study of the Scriptures in working with his hands, and avoid the monks, than have to bear these *tumultuosissimas perplexitates*. In the year 426 we find him (*Ep.* ccxiii.) designating Eraclius, in public assembly, as his successor in the see, and to relieve him (though, meanwhile, remaining a presbyter) of these anxious duties. See vi. sec. 15, and note 1, above; and also *ibid.* sec. 3.

service of my thought and tongue; and do Thou give what I may offer unto Thee. For "I am poor and needy,"[1] Thou rich unto all that call upon Thee,[2] who free from care carest for us. Circumcise from all rashness and from all lying my inward and outward lips.[3] Let Thy Scriptures be my chaste delights. Neither let me be deceived in them, nor deceive out of them.[4] Lord, hear and pity, O Lord my God, light of the blind, and strength of the weak; even also light of those that see, and strength of the strong, hearken unto my soul, and hear it crying "out of the depths."[5] For unless Thine ears be present in the depths also, whither shall we go? whither shall we cry? "The day is Thine, and the night also is Thine."[6] At Thy nod the moments flee by. Grant thereof space for our meditations amongst the hidden things of Thy law, nor close it against us who knock. For not in vain hast Thou willed that the obscure secret of so many pages should be written. Nor is it that those forests have not their harts,[7] betaking

[1] Ps. lxxxvi. 1. [2] Rom. x. 12. [3] Ex. vi. 12.

[4] Augustine is always careful to distinguish between the certain truths of faith and doctrine which all may know, and the mysteries of Scripture which all have not the ability equally to apprehend. "Among the things," he says (*De Doctr. Christ.* ii. 14), "that are plainly laid down in Scripture, are to be found all matters that concern faith, and the manner of life." As to the Scriptures that are obscure he is slow to come to conclusions, lest he should "be deceived in them or deceive out of them." In his *De Gen. ad Lit.* i. 37, he gives a useful warning against forcing our own meaning on Scripture in doubtful questions, and, *ibid.* viii. 5, we have the memorable words: "Melius est dubitare de rebus occultis, quam litigare de incertis." For examples of how careful he is in such matters not to go beyond what is written, see his answer to the question raised by Evodius,—a question which reminds us of certain modern speculations (see *The Unseen Universe*, arts. 61, 201, etc.),—whether the soul on departing from the body has not still a body of some kind, and at least some of the senses proper to a body; and also (*Ep.* clxiv.) his endeavours to unravel Evodius' difficulties as to Christ's preaching to the spirits in prison (1 Pet. iii. 18–21). Similarly, he says, as to the Antichrist of 2 Thess. ii. 1–7 (*De Civ. Dei*, xx. 19): "I frankly confess I know not what he means. I will, nevertheless, mention such conjectures as I have heard or read." See notes, pp. 48 and 115, above.

[5] Ps. cxxx. 1. [6] Ps. lxxiv. 16.

[7] Ps. xlix. 9. In his comment on this place as given in the Old Version, "vox Domini perficientis cervos," he makes the forest with its thick darkness to symbolize the mysteries of Scripture, while the harts ruminating thereon represent the pious Christian meditating on those mysteries (see I. sec. 3, note, above). In this same passage he speaks of those who are [illegible] perfected as overcom-

themselves therein, and ranging, and walking, and feeding, lying down, and ruminating. Perfect me, O Lord, and reveal them unto me. Behold, Thy voice is my joy, Thy voice surpasseth the abundance of pleasures. Give that which I love, for I do love; and this hast Thou given. Abandon not Thine own gifts, nor despise Thy grass that thirsteth. Let me confess unto Thee whatsoever I shall have found in Thy books, and let me hear the voice of praise, and let me imbibe Thee, and reflect on the wonderful things of Thy law;[1] even from the beginning, wherein Thou madest the heaven and the earth, unto the everlasting kingdom of Thy holy city that is with Thee.

4. Lord, have mercy on me and hear my desire. For I think that it is not of the earth, nor of gold and silver, and precious stones, nor gorgeous apparel, nor honours and powers, nor the pleasures of the flesh, nor necessaries for the body, and this life of our pilgrimage; all which are added to those that seek Thy kingdom and Thy righteousness.[2] Behold, O Lord my God, whence is my desire. The unrighteous have told me of delights, but not such as Thy law, O Lord.[3] Behold whence is my desire. Behold, Father, look and see, and approve; and let it be pleasing in the sight of Thy mercy, that I may find grace before Thee, that the secret things of Thy Word may be opened unto me when I knock.[4] I beseech, by our Lord Jesus Christ, Thy Son, "the Man of Thy right hand, the Son of man, whom Thou madest strong for Thyself,"[5] as Thy Mediator and ours, through whom Thou hast sought us, although not seeking Thee, but didst seek us that we might seek Thee,[6]—Thy Word through whom Thou hast made all things,[7] and amongst them me also,—

ing the poisoned tongues. This is an allusion to the fabled power the stags had of enticing serpents from their holes by their breath, and then destroying them. Augustine is very fond of this kind of fable from natural history. In his *Enarr. in Ps.* cxxix. and cxli., we have similar allusions to the supposed habits of stags; and, *ibid.* ci., we have the well-known fable of the pelican in its charity reviving its young, and feeding them with its own blood. This use of fables was very common with the mediæval writers, and those familiar with the writings of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries will recall many illustrations of it amongst the preachers of those days.

[1] Ps. xxvi. 7.
[2] Matt. vi. 33.
[3] Ps. cxix. 85.
[4] See p. 8, note, above.
[5] Ps. lxxx. 17.
[6] See note 1, p. 72, above.
[7] John i. 3.

Thy Only-begotten, through whom Thou hast called to adoption the believing people, and therein me also. I beseech Thee through Him, who sitteth at Thy right hand, and "maketh intercession for us,"[1] "in whom are hid all treasures of wisdom and knowledge."[2] Him[3] do I seek in Thy books. Of Him did Moses write;[4] this saith Himself; this saith the Truth.

CHAP. III.—*He begins from the creation of the world—not understanding the Hebrew text.*

5. Let me hear and understand how in the beginning Thou didst make the heaven and the earth.[5] Moses wrote this; he wrote and departed,—passed hence from Thee to Thee. Nor now is he before me; for if he were I would hold him, and ask him, and would adjure him by Thee that he would open unto me these things, and I would lend the ears of my body to the sounds bursting forth from his mouth. And should he speak in the Hebrew tongue, in vain would it beat on my senses, nor would aught touch my mind; but if in Latin, I should know what he said. But whence should I know whether he said what was true? But if I knew this even, should I know it from him? Verily within me, within in the chamber of my thought, Truth, neither Hebrew,[6] nor Greek, nor Latin, nor barbarian, without the organs of voice and tongue, without the sound of syllables, would say, "He speaks the truth," and I, forthwith assured of it, confidently would say

[1] Rom. viii. 34. [2] Col. ii. 3.

[3] Many MSS., however, read *ipsos*, and not *ipsum*.

[4] John v. 4–6. [5] Gen. i. 1.

[6] Augustine was not singular amongst the early Fathers in not knowing Hebrew, for of the Greeks only Origen, and of the Latins Jerome, knew anything of it. We find him confessing his ignorance both here and elsewhere (*Enarr. in Ps.* cxxxvi. 7, and *De Doctr. Christ.* ii. 22); and though he recommends knowledge of Hebrew as well as Greek, to correct "the endless diversity" of translators" (*De Doctr. Christ.* ii. 16), he speaks as strongly against in his *Apology for the Septuagint*, in favour of the claim of "biblical and canonical authority" (*Eps.* xxviii., lxxi., xviii. 42, 43; *De Doctr. Christ.* ii. 22). He discountenanced translation, probably from fear of giving offence, and lxxi. 5, not without cause. From the tumult he upon Jerome's version being read, the outcry would as when, on the change of the old style of reckoning clamoured to have back their eleven days!

unto that man of Thine, "Thou speakest the truth." As, then, I cannot inquire of him, I beseech Thee,—Thee, O Truth, full whom he spake truth,—Thee, my God, I beseech, forgive my sins; and do Thou, who didst give to that Thy servant to speak these things, grant to me also to understand them.

CHAP. IV.—*Heaven and earth cry out that they have been created by God.*

6. Behold, the heaven and earth are; they proclaim that they were made, for they are changed and varied. Whereas whatsoever hath not been made, and yet hath being, hath nothing in it which there was not before; this is what it is to be changed and varied. They also proclaim that they made not themselves; "therefore we are, because we have been made; we were not therefore before we were, so that we could have made ourselves." And the voice of those that speak is in itself an evidence. Thou, therefore, Lord, didst make these things; Thou who art beautiful, for they are beautiful; Thou who art good, for they are good; Thou who art, for they are. Nor even so are they beautiful, nor good, nor are they, as Thou their Creator art; compared with whom they are neither beautiful, nor good, nor are at all.[1] These things we know, thanks be to Thee. And our knowledge, compared with Thy knowledge, is ignorance.

CHAP. V.—*God created the world not from any certain matter, but in His own word.*

7. But how didst Thou make the heaven and the earth, and what was the instrument of Thy so mighty work? For it was not as a human worker fashioning body from body, ording to the fancy of his mind, in somewise able to assign which it perceives in itself by its inner eye.[2] And uld he be able to do this, hadst not Thou made

of Aristotle that excellence of character is the proper ection as we recognise such excellence in others are we hem (see Sidgwick's *Methods of Ethics*, book iv. c. 5, the creature, how much more should it be so of the n of all that we can conceive of goodness and truth. *De Vera Relig.* 57, and an extract from Athanese n's *Bampton Lectures*, note 73.
ec. 53, above.

that mind? And he assigns to it already existing, and as it were having a being, a form, as clay, or stone, or wood, or gold, or such like. And whence should these things be, hadst not Thou appointed them? Thou didst make for the workman his body,—Thou the mind commanding the limbs,—Thou the matter whereof he makes anything,[1]—Thou the capacity whereby he may apprehend his art, and see within what he may do without,—Thou the sense of his body, by which, as by an interpreter, he may from mind unto matter convey that which he doeth, and report to his mind what may have been done, that it within may consult the truth, presiding over itself, whether it be well done. All these things praise Thee, the Creator of all. But how dost Thou make them? How, O God, didst Thou make heaven and earth? Truly, neither in the heaven nor in the earth didst Thou make heaven and earth; nor in the air, nor in the waters, since these also belong to the heaven and the earth; nor in the whole world didst Thou make the whole world; because there was no place wherein it could be made before it was made, that it might be; nor didst Thou hold anything in Thy hand wherewith to make heaven and earth. For whence couldest Thou have what Thou hadst not made, whereof to make anything? For what is, save because Thou art? Therefore Thou didst speak and they were made,[2] and in Thy Word Thou madest these things.[3]

CHAP. VI.—*He did not, however, create it by a sounding and passing*

8. But how didst Thou speak? Was it in that way in which the voice came from the cloud, saying, "This is My beloved Son"?[4] For that voice was uttered and passed

[1] That is, the artificer makes, God creates. The creation of matter is distinctively a doctrine of revelation. The ancient philosophers believed in the eternity of matter. As Lucretius puts it (i. 51): "Nullam rem e nihilo gigni divinitus unquam." See Burton, *Bampton Lectures*, lect. iii. and notes 1 and Mansel, *Bampton Lectures*, lect. iii. note 12. See also p. 77, note, the Manichæan doctrine as to the ὕλη; and *The Unseen Universe*, 151, and 160, for the modern doctrine of "continuity." See also *mentary* on Gen. i. 1.

[2] Ps. xxxiii. 9. [3] *Ibid.* ver. 6.

began and ended. The syllables sounded and passed by, the second after the first, the third after the second, and thence in order, until the last after the rest, and silence after the last. Hence it is clear and plain that the motion of a creature expressed it, itself temporal, obeying Thy eternal will. And these thy words formed at the time, the outer ear conveyed to the intelligent mind, whose inner ear lay attentive to Thy eternal word. But it compared these words sounding in time with Thy eternal word in silence, and said, "It is different, very different. These words are far beneath me, nor are they, since they flee and pass away; but the Word of my Lord remaineth above me for ever." If, then, in sounding and fleeting words Thou didst say that heaven and earth should be made, and didst thus make heaven and earth, there was already a corporeal creature before heaven and earth by whose temporal motions that voice might take its course in time. But there was nothing corporeal before heaven and earth; or if there were, certainly Thou without a transitory voice hadst created that whence Thou wouldest make the passing voice, by which to say that the heaven and the earth should be made. For whatsoever that were of which such a voice was made, unless it were made by Thee, it could not be at all. By what word of Thine was it decreed that a body ... be made, whereby these words might be made?

VII.—*By His co-eternal Word He speaks, and all things are done.*

... callest us, therefore, to understand the Word, God ... God,[1] which is spoken eternally, and by it are ... spoken eternally. For what was spoken was not ... and another spoken until all were spoken; but all ... at once and for ever. For otherwise have we time ... change, and not a true eternity, nor a true immortality. ... know, O my God, and give thanks. I know, I confess ... Thee, O Lord, and whosoever is not unthankful to certain ... knows and blesses Thee with me. We know, O Lord, ... since in proportion as anything is not what it was, ... it was not, in that proportion does it die and

[1] John i. 1.

arise. Not anything, therefore, of Thy Word giveth place and cometh into place again, because it is truly immortal and eternal. And, therefore, unto the Word co-eternal with Thee, Thou dost at once and for ever say all that Thou dost say; and whatever Thou sayest shall be made, is made; nor dost Thou make otherwise than by speaking; yet all things are not made both together and everlasting which Thou makest by speaking.

CHAP. VIII.—*That Word itself is the beginning of all things, in the which we are instructed as to evangelical truth.*

10. Why is this, I beseech Thee, O Lord my God? I see it, however; but how I shall express it, I know not, unless that everything which begins to be and ceases to be, then begins and ceases when in Thy eternal Reason it is known that it ought to begin or cease where nothing beginneth or ceaseth. The same is Thy Word, which is also "the Beginning," because also It speaketh unto us.[1] Thus, in the gospel He speaketh through the flesh; and this sounded outwardly in the ears of men, that it might be believed and sought inwardly, and that it might be found in the eternal Truth, where the good and only Master teacheth all His disciples. There, O Lord, I hear Thy voice, the voice of one speaking unto me, since He speaketh unto us who teacheth us. But He that

[1] John viii. 25, *Old Ver.* Though some would read, *Qui et loquitur*, making it correspond to the Vulgate, instead of *Quia et loquitur*, as above, the latter is doubtless the correct reading, since we find the text similarly quoted *In Ev. Joh. Tract.* xxxviii. 11, where he enlarges on "The Beginning," comparing *principium* with ἀρχή. It will assist to the understanding of this section to refer to the early part of the note on p. 153, above, where the Platonic view of the *Logos*, as ἐνδιάθετος and προφορικός, or in the "bosom of the Father" and "made flesh," is given; which terminology, as Dr. Newman tells us (*Arians*, pt. i. c. 2, sec. 4), was accepted by the Church. Augustine, consistently with this idea, says (on John viii. 25, as above): "For if the Beginning, as it [illegible] had remained so with the Father as not to receive the form of [illegible] speak as man with men, how could they have believed in Him, [illegible] hearts could not have heard the word intelligently without [illegible] would appeal to their senses? Therefore, said He, believe me [illegible] ing; for that you may believe, I not only am, but also [illegible] man, as quoted above, may be referred to for the signifi[illegible] to the Son, and *ibid.* sec. 3, also, on the "Word." [illegible] here "voice" and the "Word," compare Aug. *In Joann.* ii. 36.

teacheth us not, although He speaketh, speaketh not to us. Moreover, who teacheth us, unless it be the immutable Truth? For even when we are admonished through a changeable creature, we are led to the Truth immutable? There we learn truly while we stand and hear Him, and rejoice greatly "because of the Bridegroom's voice,"[1] restoring us to that whence we are. And, therefore, the Beginning, because unless It remained, there would not, where we strayed, be whither to return. But when we return from error, it is by knowing that we return. But that we may know, He teacheth us, because He is the Beginning and speaketh unto us.

CHAP. IX.—*Wisdom and the Beginning.*

11. In this Beginning, O God, hast Thou made heaven and earth,—in Thy Word, in Thy Son, in Thy Power, in Thy Wisdom, in Thy Truth, wondrously speaking and wondrously making. Who shall comprehend? who shall relate it? What is that which shines through me, and strikes my heart without injury, and I both shudder and burn? I shudder inasmuch as I am unlike it; and I burn inasmuch as I am like it. It is Wisdom itself that shines through me, clearing my cloudiness, which again overwhelms me, fainting from it, in the darkness and amount of my punishment. For my strength is brought down in need,[2] so that I cannot endure my blessings, until Thou, O Lord, who hast been gracious to all mine iniquities, heal also all mine infirmities; because Thou shalt also redeem my life from corruption, and crown me with Thy loving-kindness and mercy, and shalt satisfy my desire with good things, because my youth shall be renewed like the eagle's.[3] For by hope we are saved; and through patience [illegible] Thy promises.[4] Let him that is able hear [illegible]ursing within. I will with confidence cry out [illegible]racle, How wonderful are Thy works, O Lord, [illegible]ast Thou made them all.[5] And this Wisdom is [illegible]d in that Beginning hast Thou made heaven

[1] Ps. xxxi. 10. [3] Ps. ciii. 3-5.
24.

CHAP. X.—*The rashness of those who inquire what God did before He created heaven and earth.*

12. Lo, are they not full of their ancient way, who say to us, "What was God doing before He made heaven and earth? *For if*" say they, "He were unoccupied, and did nothing, why does He not for ever also, and from henceforth, cease from working, as in times past He did? For if any new motion [illegible] arisen in God, and a new will, to form a creature which [illegible] had never before formed, however can that be a true [illegible] where there ariseth a will which was not before? [illegible] God is not a creature, but before the creature; [illegible] could be created unless the will of the [illegible] before it. The will of God, therefore, pertaineth [illegible] ery Substance. But if anything hath arisen in the [illegible] ance of God which was not before, that Substance is not [illegible] uly called eternal. But if it was the eternal will of God [illegible] that the creature should be, why was not the creature also from eternity?"

CHAP. XI.—*They who ask this have not as yet known the eternity of God, which is exempt from the relation of time.*

13. Those who say these things do not as yet understand Thee, O Thou Wisdom of God, Thou light of souls; not as yet do they understand how these things be made which are made by and in Thee. They even endeavour to comprehend things eternal; but as yet their heart flieth about in the past and future motions of things, and is still wavering. Who shall hold it and fix it, that it may rest a little, and by degrees catch the glory of that ever-standing eternity, and compare it with the times which never stand, and see that it is incomparable; and that a long time cannot become lon[illegible] save from the many motions that pass by, which [illegible] the same instant be prolonged; but that in t[illegible] nothing passeth away, but that the whole is prese[illegible] time is wholly present; and let him see that al[illegible] is forced on by the future, and that all the future [illegible] from the past, and that all, both past and future, [illegible] and issues from that which is always present? [illegible] hold the heart of man, that it may stand still, and

the still-standing eternity, itself neither future nor past, uttereth the times future and past? Can my hand accomplish this, or the hand of my mouth by persuasion bring about a thing so great?[1]

CHAP. XII.—*What God did before the creation of the world.*

14. Behold, I answer to him who asks, "What was God doing before He made heaven and earth?" I answer not, as a certain person is reported to have done facetiously [illegible] ing the pressure of the question), "He was preparing," he, "for those who pry into mysteries." It [illegible] perceive, another to laugh,—these things I [illegible] more willingly would I have answered, "I know [illegible] know not," than that I should make him a laughing-stock who asketh deep things, and gain praise as one who answers false things. But I say that Thou, our God, art the Creator of every creature; and if by the term "heaven and earth" every creature is understood, I boldly say, "That before God made heaven and earth, He made not anything. For if He did, what did He make unless the creature?" And would that I knew whatever I desire to know to my advantage, as I know that no creature was made before any creature was made.

CHAP. XIII.—*Before the times created by God, times were not.*

15. But if the roving thought of any one should wander through the images of bygone time, and wonder that Thou, the God Almighty, and All-creating, and All-sustaining, the Architect of heaven and earth, didst for innumerable ages refrain from so great a work before Thou wouldst make it, let him awake and consider that he wonders at false things. For [illegible] could innumerable ages pass by which Thou didst not [illegible] e Thou art the Author and Creator of all ages? Or [illegible] should those be which were not made by Thee? [illegible] ould they pass by if they had not been? Since Thou art the Creator of all times, if any time was [illegible] u madest heaven and earth, why is it said that Thou [illegible] in from working? For that very time Thou madest,

[1] See note 1, p. 318, below.

nor could times pass by before Thou madest times. But if before heaven and earth there was no time, why is it asked, What didst Thou then? For there was no "then" when time was not.

16. Nor dost Thou by time precede time; else wouldest not Thou precede all times. But in the excellency of an ever-present eternity, Thou precedest all times past, and survivest all future times, because they are future, and when they have come they will be past; but "Thou art the same, and Thy years shall have no end."[1] Thy years neither go nor come; but ours both go and come, that all may come. All Thy years stand at once, since they do stand; nor were they when departing excluded by coming years, because they pass not away; but all these of ours shall be when all shall cease to be. Thy years are one day, and Thy day is not daily, but to-day; because Thy to-day yields not with to-morrow, for neither doth it follow yesterday. Thy to-day is eternity; therefore didst Thou beget the Co-eternal, to whom Thou saidst, "This day have I begotten Thee."[2] Thou hast made all time; and before all times Thou art, nor in any time was there not time.

CHAP. XIV.—*Neither time past nor future, but the present only, really is.*

17. At no time, therefore, hadst Thou not made anything, because Thou hadst made time itself. And no times are co-eternal with Thee, because Thou remainest for ever; but should these continue, they would not be times. For what is time? Who can easily and briefly explain it? Who even in thought can comprehend it, even to the pronouncing of a word concerning it? But what in speaking do we refer to more familiarly and knowingly than time? And certainly we understand when we speak of it; we understand also when we hear it spoken of by another. What, then, is time? If no one ask of me, I know; if I wish to explain to him who asks, I know not. Yet I say with confidence, that I know that if nothing passed away, there would not be past time; and if nothing were coming, there would not be future time; and if nothing were, there would not be present time. Those two

[1] Ps. cii. 27. [2] Ps. ii. 7, and Heb. v. 5.

times, therefore, past and future, how are they, when even the past now is not, and the future is not as yet? But should the present be always present, and should it not pass into time past, time truly it could not be, but eternity. If, then, time present—if it be time—only comes into existence because it passes into time past, how do we say that even this is, whose cause of being is that it shall not be—namely, so that we cannot truly say that time is, unless because it tends not to be?

CHAP. XV.—*There is only a moment of present time.*

18. And yet we say that "time is long and time is short;" nor do we speak of this save of time past and future. A long time past, for example, we call a hundred years ago; in like manner a long time to come, a hundred years hence. But a short time past we call, say, ten days ago; and a short time to come, ten days hence. But in what sense is that long or short which is not? For the past is not now, and the future is not yet. Therefore let us not say, "It is long;" but let us say of the past, "It hath been long," and of the future, "It will be long." O my Lord, my light, shall not even here Thy truth deride man? For that past time which was long, was it long when it was already past, or when it was as yet present? For then it might be long when there was that which could be long, but when past it no longer was; wherefore that could not be long which was not at all. Let us not, therefore, say, "Time past hath been long;" for we shall not find what may have been long, seeing that since it was past it is not: but let us say "that present time was long, because when it was present it was long." For it had not as yet passed away so as not to be, and therefore there was that which could be long. But after it passed, that ceased also to be long which ceased to be.

19. Let us therefore see, O human soul, whether present time can be long; for to thee is it given to perceive and to measure periods of time. What wilt thou reply to me? Is a hundred years when present a long time? See, first, whether a hundred years can be present. For if the first year of these is current, that is present, but the other ninety are future, and therefore they are not as yet. But if the

second year is current, one is already past, the other present, the rest future. And thus, if we fix on any middle year of this hundred as present, those before it are past, those after it are future; wherefore a hundred years cannot be present. See at least whether that year itself which is current can be present. For if its first month be current, the rest are future; if the second, the first hath already passed, and the remainder are not yet. Therefore neither is the year which is current as a whole present; and if it is not present as a whole, then the year is not present. For twelve months make the year, of which each individual month which is current is itself present, but the rest are either past or future. Although neither is that month which is current present, but one day only: if the first, the rest being to come, if the last, the rest being past; if any of the middle, then between past and future.

20. Behold, the present time, which alone we found could be called long, is abridged to the space scarcely of one day. But let us discuss even that, for there is not one day present as a whole. For it is made up of four-and-twenty hours of night and day, whereof the first hath the rest future, the last hath them past, but any one of the intervening hath those before it past, those after it future. And that one hour passeth away in fleeting particles. Whatever of it hath flown away is past, whatever remaineth is future. If any portion of time be conceived which cannot now be divided into even the minutest particles of moments, this only is that which may be called present; which, however, flies so rapidly from future to past, that it cannot be extended by any delay. For if it be extended, it is divided into the past and future; bu the present hath no space. Where, therefore, is the ti which we may call long? Is it future? Indeed we do say, "It is long," because it is not yet, so as to be but we say, "It will be long." When, then, will it be if even then, since as yet it is future, it will no because what may be long is not as yet; but it when from the future, which as yet is not, have begun to be, and will have become pre

could be that which may be long; then doth the present time cry out in the words above that it cannot be long.

CHAP. XVI.—*Time can only be perceived or measured while it is passing.*

21. And yet, O Lord, we perceive intervals of times, and we compare them with themselves, and we say some are longer, others shorter. We even measure by how much shorter or longer this time may be than that; and we answer, "That this is double or treble, while that is but once, or only as much as that." But we measure times passing when we measure them by perceiving them; but past times, which now are not, or future times, which as yet are not, who can measure them? Unless, perchance, any one will dare to say, that that can be measured which is not. When, therefore, time is passing, it can be perceived and measured; but when it has passed, it cannot, since it is not.

CHAP. XVII.—*Nevertheless there is time past and future.*

22. I ask, Father, I do not affirm. O my God, rule and guide me. "Who is there who can say to me that there are not three times (as we learned when boys, and as we have taught boys), the past, present, and future, but only present, because these two are not? Or are they also; but when from future it becometh present, cometh it forth from some secret place, and when from the present it becometh past, doth it retire into anything secret? For where have they, who have foretold future things, seen these things, if as yet they are not? For that which is not cannot be seen. And they who relate things past could not relate them as true, did they not perceive them in their mind. Which things, if they were nought, they could in no wise be discerned. There are therefore things both future and past.

CHAP. XVIII.—*Past and future times cannot be thought of but as present.*

Suffer me, O Lord, to seek further; O my Hope, let not those be confounded. For if there are times past and future, I desire to know where they are. But if as yet I know not, still know, wherever they are, that they are

not there as future or past, but as present. For if there also they be future, they are not as yet there; if even there they be past, they are no longer there. Wheresoever, therefore, they are, whatsoever they are, they are only so as present. Although past things are related as true, they are drawn out from the memory,—not the things themselves, which have passed, but the words conceived from the images of the things which they have formed in the mind as footprints in their passage through the senses. My childhood, indeed, which no longer is, is in time past, which now is not; but when I call to mind its image, and speak of it, I behold it in the present, because it is as yet in my memory. Whether there be a like cause of foretelling future things, that of things which as yet are not the images may be perceived as already existing, I confess, my God, I know not. This certainly I know, that we generally think before on our future actions, and that this premeditation is present; but that the action whereon we premeditate is not yet, because it is future; which when we shall have entered upon, and have begun to do that which we were premeditating, then shall that action be, because then it is not future, but present.

24. In whatever manner, therefore, this secret preconception of future things may be, nothing can be seen, save what is. But what now is is not future, but present. When, therefore, they say that things future are seen, it is not themselves, which as yet are not (that is, which are future); but their causes or their signs perhaps are seen, the which already are. Therefore, to those already beholding them, they are not future, but present, from which future things conceived in the mind are foretold. Which conceptions again now are, and they who foretell those things behold these conceptions present before them. Let now so multitudinous a variety of things afford me some example. I behold daybreak; I foretell that the sun is about to rise. That which I behold is present; what I foretell is future,—not that the sun is future, which already is; but his rising, which is not yet. Yet even its rising I could not predict unless I had an image of it [illegible] mind, as now I have while I speak. But that

see in the sky is not the rising of the sun, although it may go before it, nor that imagination in my mind; which two are seen as present, that the other which is future may be foretold. Future things, therefore, are not as yet; and if they are not as yet, they are not. And if they are not, they cannot be seen at all; but they can be foretold from things present which now are, and are seen.

CHAP. XIX.—*We are ignorant in what manner God teaches future things.*

25. Thou, therefore, Ruler of Thy creatures, what is the method by which Thou teachest souls those things which are future? For Thou hast taught Thy prophets. What is that way by which Thou, to whom nothing is future, dost teach future things; or rather of future things dost teach present? For what is not, of a certainty cannot be taught. Too far is this way from my view; it is too mighty for me, I cannot attain unto it;[1] but by Thee I shall be enabled, when Thou shalt have granted it, sweet light of my hidden eyes.

CHAP. XX.—*In what manner time may properly be designated.*

26. But what now is manifest and clear is, that neither are there future nor past things. Nor is it fitly said, "There are three times, past, present, and future;" but perchance it might be fitly said, "There are three times; a present of things past, a present of things present, and a present of things future." For these three do somehow exist in the soul, and otherwise I see them not: present of things past, memory; present of things present, sight; present of things future, expectation. If of these things we are permitted to speak, I see three times, and I grant there are three. It may also be said, "There are three times, past, present, and future," as usage falsely has it. See, I trouble not, nor gainsay, nor reprove; provided always that which is said may be understood, that neither the future, nor that which is past, now is. For there are but few things which we speak properly, many things improperly; but what we may wish to say is

[illegible]od.

[1] Ps. cxxxix. 6.

CHAP. XXI.—*How time may be measured.*

27. I have just now said, then, that we measure times as they pass, that we may be able to say that this time is twice as much as that one, or that this is only as much as that, and so of any other of the parts of time which we are able to tell by measuring. Wherefore, as I said, we measure times as they pass. And if any one should ask me, "Whence dost thou know?" I can answer, "I know, because we measure; nor can we measure things that are not; and things past and future are not." But how do we measure present time, since it hath not space? It is measured while it passeth; but when it shall have passed, it is not measured; for there will not be aught that can be measured. But whence, in what way, and whither doth it pass while it is being measured? Whence, but from the future? Which way, save through the present? Whither, but into the past? From that, therefore, which as yet is not, through that which hath no space, into that which now is not. But what do we measure, unless time in some space? For we say not single, and double, and triple, and equal, or in any other way in which we speak of time, unless with respect to the spaces of times. In what space, then, do we measure passing time? Is it in the future, whence it passeth over? But what yet we measure not, is not. Or is it in the present, by which it passeth? But no space, we do not measure. Or in the past, whither it passeth? But that which is not now, we measure not.

CHAP. XXII.—*He prays God that He would explain this most entangled enigma.*

28. My soul yearns to know this most entangled enigma. Forbear to shut up, O Lord my God, good Father,—through Christ I beseech Thee,—forbear to shut up these things, both usual and hidden, from my desire, that it may be hin[dered] from penetrating them; but let them dawn through [Thy] enlightening mercy, O Lord. Of whom shall I in[quire] cerning these things? And to whom shall I with[more] tage confess my ignorance than to Thee, [to] studies, so vehemently kindled [to]

not troublesome? Give that which I love; for I do love, and this hast Thou given me. Give, Father, who truly knowest to give good gifts unto Thy children.[1] Give, since I have undertaken to know, and trouble is before me until Thou dost open it.[2] Through Christ, I beseech Thee, in His name, Holy of Holies, let no man interrupt me. For I believed, and therefore do I speak.[3] This is my hope; for this do I live, that I may contemplate the delights of the Lord.[4] Behold, Thou hast made my days old,[5] and they pass away, and in what manner I know not. And we speak as to time and time, times and times,—"How long is the time since he said this?" "How long the time since he did this?" and, "How long the time since I saw that?" and, "This syllable hath double the time of that single short syllable." These words we speak, and these we hear; and we are understood, and we understand. They are most manifest and most usual, and the same things again lie hid too deeply, and the discovery of them is new.

CHAP. XXIII.—*That time is a certain extension.*

29. I have heard from a learned man that the motions of the sun, moon, and stars constituted time, and I assented not.[6] For why should not rather the motions of all bodies be time? What if the lights of heaven should cease, and a potter's wheel run round, would there be no time by which we might measure those revolutions, and say either that it turned with equal pauses, or, if it were moved at one time more slowly, at

[1] Matt. vii. 11. [2] Ps. lxxiii. 16. [3] Ps. cxvi. 10.
[4] Ps. xxvii. 4. [5] Ps. xxxix. 5.
[6] Compare Gillies (*Analysis of Aristotle*, v. 2, p. 138): "As our conception of space originates in that of body, and our conception of motion in that of space, so our conception of time originates in that of motion; and particularly in those regular and equable motions carried on in the heavens, the parts of which, from their perfect similarity to each other, are correct measures of the continuous and positive quantity called Time, with which they are conceived to co-exist. Time, then, may be defined the perceived number of successive movements; for, as space contains the greater or lesser quantity of things numbered, so time [illegible] greater or lesser quantity of motion performed." And with this [illegible]'s definition of time (*Ancient Metaphysics*, vol. i. book 4, chap. [illegible]he duration of things that exist in succession by the [illegible]e xii. sec. 40, and note, below.

another more quickly, that some revolutions were longer, others less so? Or while we were saying this, should we not also be speaking in time? Or should there in our words be some syllables long, others short, but because those sounded in a longer time, these in a shorter? God grant to men to see in a small thing ideas common to things great and small. Both the stars and luminaries of heaven are "for signs and for seasons, and for days and years."[1] No doubt they are; but neither should I say that the circuit of that wooden wheel was a day, nor yet should he say that therefore there was no time.

30. I desire to know the power and nature of time, by which we measure the motions of bodies, and say (for example) that this motion is twice as long as that. For, I ask, since "day" declares not the stay only of the sun upon the earth, according to which day is one thing, night another, but also its entire circuit from east even to east,—according to which we say, "So many days have passed" (the nights being included when we say "so many days," and their spaces not counted apart),—since, then, the day is finished by the motion of the sun, and by his circuit from east to east, I ask, whether the motion itself is the day, or the period in which that motion is completed, or both? For if the first be the day, then would there be a day although the sun should finish that course in so small a space of time as an hour. If the second, then that would not be a day if from one sunrise to another there were but so short a period as an hour, but the sun must go round four-and-twenty times to complete a day. If both, neither could that be called a day if the sun should run his entire round in the space of an hour; nor that, while the sun stood still, so much time should pass as the sun is accustomed to accomplish his whole course in from morning to morning. I shall not therefore now ask what that is which is called day, but what time is, by which measuring the circuit of the sun, should say that it was accomplished in half the space of time it was wont, if it were completed in so small a space as twelve hours; and

[1] Gen. i. 14.

ing both times, we should call that single, this double time, although the sun should run his course from east to east sometimes in that single, sometimes in that double time. Let no man then tell me that the motions of the heavenly bodies are times, because, when at the prayer of one the sun stood still in order that he might achieve his victorious battle, the sun stood still, but time went on. For in such space of time as was sufficient was that battle fought and ended.[1] I see that time, then, is a certain extension. But do I see it, or do I seem to see it? Thou, O Light and Truth, wilt show me.

CHAP. XXIV.—*That time is not a motion of a body which we measure by time.*

31. Dost Thou command that I should assent, if any one should say that time is "the motion of a body?" Thou dost not command me. For I hear that no body is moved but in time. This Thou sayest; but that the very motion of a body is time, I hear not; Thou sayest it not. For when a body is moved, I by time measure how long it may be moving from the time in which it began to be moved till it left off. And if I saw not whence it began, and it continued to be moved, so that I see not when it leaves off, I cannot measure unless, perchance, from the time I began until I cease to see. But if I look long, I only proclaim that the time is long, but not how long it may be; because when we say, "How long," we speak by comparison, as, "This is as long as that," or, "This is double as long as that," or any other thing of the kind. But if we were able to note down the distances of places whence and whither cometh the body which is moved, or its parts, if it moved as in a wheel, we can say in how much time the motion of the body or its part, from this place unto that, was performed. Since, then, the motion of a body is one thing, [illegible]y which we measure how long it is another, who can[illegible] which of these is rather to be called time? For, [illegible] a body be sometimes moved, sometimes stand still, [illegible]ure not its motion only, but also its standing still, by [illegible]d we say "It stood still as much as it moved;" or, [illegible]twice or thrice as long as it moved;" and if

[1] Josh. x. 12-14.

any other space which our measuring hath either determined or imagined, more or less, as we are accustomed to say. Time, therefore, is not the motion of a body.

CHAP. XXV.—*He calls on God to enlighten his mind.*

32. And I confess unto Thee, O Lord, that I am as yet ignorant as to what time is, and again I confess unto Thee, O Lord, that I know that I speak these things in time, and that I have already long spoken of time, and that very "long" is not long save by the stay of time. How, then, know I this, when I know not what time is? Or is it, perchance, that I know not in what wise I may express what I know? Alas for me, that I do not at least know the extent of my own ignorance! Behold, O my God, before Thee I lie not. As I speak, so is my heart. Thou shalt light my candle; Thou, O Lord my God, wilt enlighten my darkness.[1]

CHAP. XXVI.—*We measure longer events by shorter in time.*

33. Doth not my soul pour out unto Thee truly in confession that I do measure times? But do I thus measure, O my God, and know not what I measure? I measure the motion of a body by time; and the time itself do I not measure? But, in truth, could I measure the motion of a body, how long it is, and how long it is in coming from [illegible] place to that, unless I should measure the ti[illegible]? How, therefore, d[illegible] do we by a sh[illegible] cubit[illegible]

made up of so many verses; long verses, because they consist of so many feet; long feet, because they are prolonged by so many syllables; a long syllable, because double a short one." But neither thus is any certain measure of time obtained; since it is possible that a shorter verse, if it be pronounced more fully, may take up more time than a longer one, if pronounced more hurriedly. Thus for a stanza, thus for a foot, thus for a syllable. Whence it appeared to me that time is nothing else than protraction; but of what I know not. It is wonderful to me, if it be not of the mind itself. For what do I measure, I beseech Thee, O my God, even when I say either indefinitely, "This time is longer than that;" or even definitely, "This is double that"? That I measure time, I know. But I measure not the future, for it is not yet; nor do I measure the present, because it is extended by no space; nor do I measure the past, because it no longer is. What, therefore, do I measure? Is it times passing, not past? For thus had I said.

CHAP. XXVII.—*Times are measured in proportion as they pass by.*

34. Persevere, O my mind, and give earnest heed. God is our helper; He made us, and not we ourselves.[1] Give heed, where truth dawns. Lo, suppose the voice of a body begins to sound, and does sound, and sounds on, and lo! it ceases, [illegible] silence, and that voice is past and [illegible] it sounded, and [illegible] not; and now [illegible] whil[illegible]

shall have ceased to sound, it will be already past, and there will not be that which can be measured. Let us measure it truly, and let us say how much it is. But as yet it sounds, nor can it be measured, save from that instant in which it began to sound, even to the end in which it left off. For the interval itself we measure from some beginning unto some end. On which account, a voice which is not yet ended cannot be measured, so that it may be said how long or how short it may be; nor can it be said to be equal to another, or single or double in respect of it, or the like. But when it is ended, it no longer is. In what manner, therefore, may it be measured? And yet we measure times; still not those which as yet are not, nor those which no longer are, nor those which are protracted by some delay, now those [illegible] have no limits. We, therefore, measure [illegible] nor past, nor present, nor the[illegible] measure times.

35. *Deus Creator* [illegible] alternates betw[illegible] then, the [illegible]

I do this, unless because they have past, and are ended. Therefore do I not measure themselves, which now are not, but something in my memory, which remains fixed.

36. In thee, O my mind, I measure times.[1] Do not overwhelm me with thy clamour. That is, do not overwhelm thyself with the multitude of thy impressions. In thee, I say, I measure times; the impression which things as they pass by make on thee, and which, when they have past by, remains, that I measure as time present, not those things which have passed by, that the impression should be made. This I measure when I measure times. Either, then, these are times, or I do not measure times. What when we sure silence, and say that this silence hath lasted as long ? Do we not extend our thought to the if it sounded, so that we may be able the intervals of silence in a oth the voice and tongue and verses, and e concern-

it hath sounded, and will sound. For what of it is already finished hath verily sounded, but what remains will sound; and thus does it pass on, until the present intention carry over the future into the past; the past increasing by the diminution of the future, until, by the consumption of the future, all be past.

CHAP. XXVIII.—*Time in the human mind, which expects, considers, and remembers.*

37. But how is that future diminished or consumed which as yet is not? Or how doth the past, which is no longer, increase, unless in the mind which enacteth this there are three things done? For it both expects, and considers, and remembers, that that which it expecteth, through that which it considereth, may pass into that which it remembereth. Who, therefore, denieth that future things as yet are not? But yet there is already in the mind the expectation of things future. And who denies that past things are now no longer? But, however, there is still in the mind the memory of things past. And who denies that time present wants space, because it passeth away in a moment? But yet our consideration endureth, through which that which may be present may proceed to become absent. Future time, which is not, is not therefore long; but a "long future" is "a long expectation of the future." Nor is time past, which is now no longer, long; but a long past is "a long memory of the past."

38. I am about to repeat a psalm that I know. Before I begin, my attention is extended to the whole; but when I have begun, as much of it as becomes past by my saying it is extended in my memory; and the life of this action of mine is divided between my memory, on account of what I have repeated, and my expectation, on account of what I am about to repeat; yet my consideration is present with me, by which that which was future may be carried over, that it may become past. Which the more it is done and repeated, by so much (expectation being shortened) the memory is enlarged, until the whole expectation be exhausted, when the whole action being ended shall have passed into memory. And what takes place in the entire psalm, takes

in each individual part of it, and in each individual syllable; this holds in the longer action, of which that psalm is perchance a portion; the same holds in the whole life of man, of which all the actions of man are parts; the same holds in the whole age of the sons of men, of which all the lives of man are parts.

CHAP. XXIX.—*That human life is a distraction, but that through the mercy of God he was intent on the prize of his heavenly calling.*

39. But "because Thy loving-kindness is better than life,"[1] behold, my life is but a distraction,[2] and Thy right hand upheld me[3] in my Lord, the Son of man, the Mediator between Thee,[4] The One, and us the many,—in many distractions amid many things,—that through Him I may apprehend in whom I have been apprehended, and may be re-collected from my old days, following The One, forgetting the things that are past; and not distracted, but drawn on,[5] not to those things which shall be and shall pass away, but to those things which are before,[6] not distractedly, but intently, I follow on for the prize of my heavenly calling,[7] where I may hear the voice of Thy praise, and contemplate Thy delights,[8] neither coming nor passing away. But now are my years spent in mourning.[9] And Thou, O Lord, art my comfort, my Father

[1] Ps. lxiii. 3.

[2] *Distentio.* It will be observed that there is a play on the word throughout the section.

[3] Ps. lxiii. 8.

[4] 1 Tim. ii. 5.

[5] *Non distentus sed extentus.* So in *Serm.* cclv. 6, we have: "Unde nos *extendat*, ne multa *distendant*, et abrumpant ab uno."

[6] Phil. iii. 13.

[7] Phil. iii. 14. Many wish to attain the prize who never earnestly pursue it. [illegible] may be said here in view of the subject of this book, that there is [illegible] delusion than that which possesses the idle and the worldly as to the [illegible]ce in ameliorating their condition. They have "good intentions," [illegible] time in the future may do for them what it has not in the past. [illegible]ime merely affords an opportunity for energy and life to work. [illegible]ucid and nervous thinker, Bishop Copleston (*Remains*, p. 123): [illegible]mmonest errors is to regard *time* as an *agent*. But in reality [illegible]ng, and *is* nothing. We use it as a compendious expression for [illegible]s which operate slowly and imperceptibly; but, unless some [illegible]s in action, no change takes place in the lapse of one thousand [illegible]op of water encased in a cavity of silex."

[8] Ps. xxvii. 4.

everlasting. But I have been divided amid times, the order of which I know not; and my thoughts, even the inmost bowels of my soul, are mangled with tumultuous varieties, until I flow together unto Thee, purged and molten in the fire of Thy love.[1]

CHAP. XXX.—*Again he refutes the empty question, "What did God before the creation of the world?"*

40. And I will be immoveable, and fixed in Thee, in my mould, Thy truth; nor will I endure the questions of men, who by a penal disease thirst for more than they can hold, and say, "What did God make before He made heaven and earth?" Or, "How came it into His mind to make anything, when He never before made anything?" Grant to them, O Lord, to think well what they say, and to see that where there is no time, they cannot say "never." What, therefore, He is said "never to have made," what else is it but to say, that in no time was it made? Let them therefore see that there could be no time without a created being,[2] and let them cease to speak that vanity. Let them also be extended unto those things which are before,[3] and understand that Thou, the eternal Creator of all times, art before all times, and that no times are co-eternal with Thee, nor any creature, even if there be any creature beyond all times.

CHAP. XXXI.—*How the knowledge of God differs from that of man.*

41. O Lord my God, what is that secret place of T[illegible] mystery, and how far thence have the consequences [illegible] transgressions cast me? Heal my eyes, that I [illegible] Thy light. Surely, if there be a mi[illegible] in knowledge and foreknowledge, to[illegible] future are so known as one psal[illegible] mind is exceedingly wonderful, a[illegible] whatever is so past, and whate[illegible] no more concealed from Hi[illegible]

when singing that psalm, what and how much of it had been sung from the beginning, what and how much remained unto the end. But far be it that Thou, the Creator of the universe, the Creator of souls and bodies,—far be it that Thou shouldest know all things future and past. Far, far more wonderfully, and far more mysteriously, Thou knowest them.[1] For it is not as the feelings of one singing known things, or hearing a known song, are—through expectation of future words, and in remembrance of those that are past—varied, and his senses divided, that anything happeneth unto Thee, unchangeably eternal, that is, the truly eternal[2] Creator of minds. As, then, Thou in the Beginning knewest the heaven and the earth without any change of Thy knowledge, so in the Beginning didst Thou make heaven and earth without any distraction of Thy action.[3] Let him who understandeth confess unto Thee; and let him who understandeth not, confess unto Thee. Oh, how exalted art Thou, and yet the humble in heart are Thy dwelling-place; for Thou raisest up those that are bowed down,[4] and they whose exaltation Thou art fall not.

[1] Dean Mansel's argument, in his *Bampton Lectures*, as to our knowledge of the Infinite, is well worthy of consideration. He refers to Augustine's views on the subject of this book in note 13 to his third lecture, and in the text itself says: "The limited character of all existence which can be conceived as having a continuous duration, or as made up of successive moments, is so far manifest, that it has been assumed almost as an axiom, by philosophical theologians, that in the existence of God there is no distinction between past, present, and future. 'In the changes of things,' says Augustine, 'there is a past [illegible] future; in God there is a present, in which neither past nor future can [illegible]ternity,' says Boethius, 'is the perfect possession of interminable life, [illegible]at life at once;' and Aquinas, accepting the definition, adds, [illegible] sug[illegible]ut exists all together.' But whether this asser- [illegible] this we have no means of ascertaining), it is [illegible]e is altogether inconceivable by us, and that [illegible] represent not thought but the refusal to [illegible] below.

[illegible] are arranged and fixed; and when He [illegible] He doth nothing but what He foreknew [illegible]g. *in Ps.* cvi. 35). With this passa[illegible] [illegible]*ctures*, lect[illegible]

BOOK TWELFTH.

HE CONTINUES HIS EXPLANATION OF THE FIRST CHAPTER OF GENESIS ACCORDING TO THE SEPTUAGINT, AND BY ITS ASSISTANCE HE ARGUES, ESPECIALLY, CONCERNING THE DOUBLE HEAVEN, AND THE FORMLESS MATTER OUT OF WHICH THE WHOLE WORLD MAY HAVE BEEN CREATED; AFTERWARDS OF THE INTERPRETATIONS OF OTHERS NOT DISALLOWED, AND SETS FORTH AT GREAT LENGTH THE SENSE OF THE HOLY SCRIPTURE.

CHAP. I.—*The discovery of truth is difficult, but God has promised that he who seeks shall find.*

1. My heart, O Lord, affected by the words of Thy Holy Scripture, is much busied in this poverty of my life; and therefore, for the most part, is the want of human intelligence copious in language; because inquiry speaks more than discovery, and because demanding is longer than obtaining, and the hand that knocks is more active than the hand that receives. We hold the promise; who shall break it? "If God be for us, who can be against us?"[1] "Ask, and ye shall have; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you: for every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened."[2] These are Thine own promises; and who need fear to be deceived where the Truth promiseth?

CHAP. II.—*Of the double heaven,—the visible, and the heaven of heavens.*

2. The weakness of my tongue confesseth unto Thy Highness, seeing that Thou madest heaven and earth. This heaven which I see, and this earth upon which I tread (from which is this earth that I carry about me), Thou hast made. But where is that heaven of heavens,[3] O Lord, of which we hear in

[1] Rom. viii. 31. [2] Matt. vii. 7, 8.

[3] That is, not the atmosphere which surrounds the earth, as when we say, "the birds of heaven" (Jer. iv. 25), "the dew of heaven" (Gen. xxvii. 28); nor that

the words of the Psalm, The heaven of heavens are the Lord's, but the earth hath He given to the children of men?[1] Where is the heaven, which we behold not, in comparison of which all this, which we behold, is earth? For this corporeal whole, not as a whole everywhere, hath thus received its beautiful figure in these lower parts, of which the bottom is our earth; but compared with that heaven of heavens, even the heaven of our earth is but earth; yea, each of these great bodies is not absurdly called earth, as compared with that, I know not what manner of heaven, which is the Lord's, not the sons' of men.

CHAP. III.—*Of the darkness upon the deep, and of the invisible and formless earth.*

3. And truly this earth was invisible and formless,[2] and there was I know not what profundity of the deep upon which there was no light,[3] because it had no form. Therefore didst Thou command that it should be written, that darkness was upon the face of the deep; what else was it than the absence of light?[4] For had there been light, where should it have been save by being above all, showing itself aloft, and enlightening? Where, therefore, light was as yet not, why was it that darkness was present, unless because light was absent? Darkness therefore was upon it, because the light above was absent; as silence is there present where sound is not. And what is it to have silence there, but not to have sound there? Hast not Thou, O Lord, taught this soul which confesseth unto Thee? Hast not Thou taught me, O Lord, that before Thou didst form and separate this formless matter,

"firma[illegible] of heaven" (Gen. i. 17) in which the stars have their courses; nor [illegible]h th[illegible] an[illegible]gether; but that "third heaven" to which Paul was "caught up" [illegible] in his rapture, and where God most manifests His glory, and the [illegible]n homage.

[illegible]6, after the LXX., Vulgate, and Syriac.

7. And [illegible] as rendered by the *Old Ver.* from the LXX.: ἀόρατος καὶ ἀκατασ-
Thee, fron[illegible]alisch in his *Commentary* translates תֹּהוּ וָבֹהוּ: "dreariness and
how muc[illegible]

unto The[illegible]ler should keep in mind in reading what follows the Manichæan
Lord, [illegible]o the king[illegible]s of light and darkness. See notes, pp. 56, 142, above.
[illegible]are *De Civ. D*[illegible] xi. 9, 10.

there was nothing, neither colour, nor figure, nor body, nor spirit? Yet not altogether nothing; there was a certain formlessness without any shape.

CHAP. IV.—*From the formlessness of matter, the beautiful world has arisen.*

4. What, then, should it be called, that even in some ways it might be conveyed to those of duller mind, save by some conventional word? But what, in all parts of the world, can be found nearer to a total formlessness than the earth and the deep? For, from their being of the lowest position, they are less beautiful than are the other higher parts, all transparent and shining. Why, therefore, may I not consider the formlessness of matter—which Thou hadst created without shape, whereof to make this shapely world—to be fittingly intimated unto men by the name of earth invisible and formless?

CHAP. V.—*What may have been the form of matter.*

5. So that when herein thought seeketh what the sens may arrive at, and saith to itself, "It is no intelligible for such as life or justice, because it is the matter of bodies; n perceptible by the senses, because in the invisible and for less there is nothing which can be seen and felt;—wh human thought saith these things to itself, it may endeavo either to know it by being ignorant, or by knowing it to b ignorant.

CHAP. VI.—*He confesses that at one time he himself thought erroneously of matter.*

6. But were I, O Lord, by my mouth and by my pen to confess unto Thee the whole, whatever Thou hast t concerning that matter, the name of which hearin hand, and not understanding (they who could not t it telling me of it), I conceived[1] it as having innume varied forms. And therefore did I not conceive it; revolved in disturbed order foul and horrible "fo yet "forms;" and I called it formless, not that it lack but because it had such as, did it appear, my mind wo

[1] See iii. sec. 11, and p. 142, note, above.

from, as unwonted and incongruous, and at which human weakness would be disturbed. But even that which I did conceive was formless, not by the privation of all form, but in comparison of more beautiful forms; and true reason persuaded me that I ought altogether to remove from it all remnants of any form whatever, if I wished to conceive matter wholly without form; and I could not. For sooner could I imagine that that which should be deprived of all form was not at all, than conceive anything between form and nothing, —neither formed, nor nothing, formless, nearly nothing. And my mind hence ceased to question my spirit, filled (as it was) with the images of formed bodies, and changing and varying them according to its will; and I applied myself to the bodies themselves, and looked more deeply into their mutability, by which they cease to be what they had been, and begin to be what they were not; and this same transit from form into form I have looked upon to be through some formless condition, not through a very nothing; but I desired to know, not to guess. And if my voice and my pen should confess e whole unto Thee, whatsoever knots Thou hast untied for e concerning this question, who of my readers would endure take in the whole? Nor yet, therefore, shall my heart ase to give Thee honour, and a song of praise, for those ings which it is not able to express. For the mutability of utable things is itself capable of all those forms into which utable things are changed. And this mutability, what is it? s it soul? Is it body? Is it the outer appearance of soul or body? Could it be said, "Nothing were something" and "That which is, is not," I would say that this were it, and yet in some manner was it already, since it could receive these visible and compound shapes.

HAP. VII.—*Out of nothing God made heaven and earth.*

whence and in what manner was this, unless from whom are all things, in so far as they are? But by h the farther from Thee, so much the more unlike e; for it is not distance of place. Thou, therefore, O ho art not one thing in one place, and otherwise in

another, but the Self-same, and the Self-same, and the Self-same,[1] Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty, didst in the beginning,[2] which is of Thee, in Thy Wisdom, which was born of Thy Substance, create something, and that out of nothing.[3] For Thou didst create heaven and earth, not out of Thyself, for then they would be equal to Thine Only-begotten, and thereby even to Thee;[4] and in no wise would it be right that anything should be equal to Thee which was not of Thee. And aught else except Thee there was not whence Thou mightest create these things, O God, One Trinity, and Trine Unity; and, therefore, out of nothing didst Thou create heaven and earth,—a great thing and a small,—because Thou art Almighty and Good, to make all things good, even the great heaven and the small earth. Thou wast, and there was nought else from which Thou didst create heaven and earth; two such things, one near unto Thee, the other near to nothing,[5]—one to which Thou shouldest be superior, the other to which nothing should be inferior.

CHAP. VIII.—*Heaven and earth were made "in the beginning;" afterwards the world, during six days, from shapeless matter.*

8. But that heaven of heavens was for Thee, O Lord, and the earth, which Thou hast given to the sons of men to be seen and touched, was not such as now we see and touch. For it was invisible and "without form,"[7] and there was the deep over which there was not light; or, darkness was over the deep, that is, more than in the deep. For this deep of waters, now visible, has, even in its depths, a light suitable to its nature perceptible in some manner unto fishes and creeping things in the bottom of it. But the entire deep was almost nothing, since hitherto it was altogether formless; yet there was then that which could be formed. For Thou, O Lord, hast made the world of a formless matter, which matter, out

[1] See ix. sec 11, above.
[2] See p. 297, note, above.
[3] See p. 295, and note, above.
[4] In the beginning of sec. 10, book xi. of his *De Civ. Dei*, he similarly argues that the world was, not like the Son, "begotten of the simple good, but "created." See also note, p. 77, above.
[5] "Because at the first creation, it had no form nor thing in it."—W. W.
[6] Ps. cxv. 16.
[7] Gen. i. 2.

of nothing, Thou hast made almost nothing, out of which to make those great things which we, sons of men, wonder at. For very wonderful is this corporeal heaven, of which firmament, between water and water, the second day after the creation of light, Thou saidst, Let it be made, and it was made.[1] Which firmament Thou calledst heaven, that is, the heaven of this earth and sea, which Thou madest on the third day, by giving a visible shape to the formless matter which Thou madest before all days. For even already hadst Thou made a heaven before all days, but that was the heaven of this heaven; because in the beginning Thou hadst made heaven and earth. But the earth itself which Thou hadst made was formless matter, because it was invisible and without form, and darkness was [illegible]on the deep. Of which invisible and formless earth, of which [illegible]mlessness, of which almost nothing, Thou mightest make all [illegible]ese things of which this changeable world consists, and yet [illegible]nsisteth not; whose very changeableness appears in this, [illegible] times can be observed and numbered in it. Because times [illegible]made by the changes of things, while the shapes whose [illegible] is the invisible earth aforesaid, are varied and turned.

[illegible]—*That the heaven of heavens was an intellectual creature, but that the [illegible]h was invisible and formless before the days that it was made.*

[illegible] therefore the Spirit, the Teacher of Thy servant,[2] [illegible]elates that Thou didst in the Beginning create [illegible] and earth, is silent as to times, silent as to days. For, doubtless, that heaven of heavens, which Thou in the Beginning didst create, is some intellectual creature, which, although in no wise co-eternal unto Thee, the Trinity, is yet a partaker of Thy eternity, and by reason of the sweetness of that most happy contemplation of Thyself, doth greatly restrain its own mutability, and without any failure, from the time in which it was created, in clinging unto Thee, surpasses all the rolling change of times. But this shapelessness—this earth invisible and without form—has not itself been numbered among the days. For where there is no shape nor order, nothing either cometh or goeth; and where this is not, there certainly are no days, nor any vicissitude of spaces of times.

[1] Gen. i. 6–8. [2] Of Moses.

CHAP. X.—*He begs of God that he may live in the true light, and may be instructed as to the mysteries of the sacred books.*

10. Oh, let Truth, the light of my heart,[1] not my own darkness, speak unto me! I have descended to that, and am darkened. But thence, even thence, did I love Thee. I went astray, and remembered Thee. I heard Thy voice behind me bidding me return, and scarcely did I hear it for the tumults of the unquiet ones. And now, behold, I return burning and panting after Thy fountain. Let no one prohibit me; of this will I drink, and so have life. Let me not be my own life; from myself have I badly lived,—death was I unto myself; in Thee do I revive. Do Thou speak unto me; do Thou discourse unto me. In Thy books have I believed, and their words are very deep.[2]

CHAP. XI.—*What may be discovered to him by God.*

11. Already hast Thou told me, O Lord, with a strong voice, in my inner ear, that Thou art eternal, having alone immortality.[3] Since Thou art not changed by any shape or motion, nor is Thy will altered by times, because no will which changes is immortal. This in Thy sight is clear to me, and let it become more and more clear, I beseech Thee; and in that manifestation let me abide more soberly under Thy wings. Likewise hast Thou said to me, O Lord, with a strong voice, in my inner ear, that Thou hast made all natures and substances, which are not what Thou Thyself art, and yet they are: and that only is not from Thee which is not, and the motion of the will from Thee who art, to that which in a less degree is, because such motion is guilt and sin;[4] and that no

[1] See note 2, p. 76, above.

[2] As Gregory the Great has it, Revelation is a river broad and deep, "[illegible] et agnus ambulet, et elephas natet." And these deep things of God are learned only by patient searching. We must, says St. Chrysostom (*De Serm.* ii.), dive down into the sea as those who would fetch up pearls from the depths. The very mysteriousness of Scripture is, doubtless, intended by God to stimulate us to search the Scriptures, and to strengthen our spiritual insight (*Enarr. in Ps.* cxlvi. 6). See note also, p. 8; p. 291, note 4, above; and the notes on pp. 370, 371, below.

[3] 1 Tim. vi. 16.

[4] For Augustine's view of evil as a "privation of good," see p. 46, [illegible] 3,

one's sin doth either hurt Thee, or disturb the order of Thy rule,[1] either first or last. This, in Thy sight, is clear to me, and let it become more and more clear, I beseech Thee; and in that manifestation let me abide more soberly under Thy wings.

12. Likewise hast Thou said to me, with a strong voice, in my inner ear, that that creature, whose will Thou alone art, is not co-eternal unto Thee, and which, with a most persevering purity[2] drawing its support from Thee, doth, in no place and at no time, put forth its own mutability;[3] and Thyself being ever present with it, unto Whom with its entire affection it holds itself, having no future to expect nor conveying into the past what it remembereth, is varied by no change, nor extended into any times.[4] O blessed one,—if any such there be,—in clinging unto Thy Blessedness; blest in Thee, its everlasting Inhabitant and its Enlightener! Nor do I find what the heaven of heavens, which is the Lord's, can be better called than Thine house, which contemplateth Thy delight without any defection of going forth to another; a pure mind, most peacefully one, by that stability of peace of holy spirits,[5] the citizens of Thy city "in the heavenly places," above these heavenly places which are seen.[6]

13. Whence the soul, whose wandering has been made far away, may understand, if now she thirsts for Thee, if now her tears have become bread to her, while it is daily said unto her "Where is thy God?"[7] if she now seeketh of Thee one thing, and desireth that she may dwell in Thy house all the days of her life.[8] And what is her life but Thee? And what are Thy days but Thy eternity, as Thy years which fail not, because Thou art the same? Hence, therefore, can the soul, which is able, understand how far beyond all times Thou art eternal; [illegible] Thy house, which has not wandered from Thee, although

[illegible]nd with it compare vii. sec. 22, above; *Con. Secundin.* c. 12; and *De* [illegible]*b.* ii. 53. Parker, in his *Theism, Atheism*, etc. p. 119, contends that [illegible]uself must in some way be the author of evil, and a similar view is maint[illegible]y Schleiermacher, *Christliche Glaube*, sec. 80.

[illegible] ii. sec. 18, and v. sec. 2, notes 2, 6, above.

[illegible]e iv. sec. 3, and note 1, above.

[illegible]e xi. sec. 38, above, and sec. 18, below.

[illegible]h. [illegible] 20, etc.

[2] See sec. 19, below.

[3] See xiii. sec. 50, below.

[7] Ps. xlii. 2, 3, 10.

[8] Ps. xxvii. 4.

it be not co-eternal with Thee, yet by continually and unfailingly clinging unto Thee, suffers no vicissitude of times. This in Thy sight is clear unto me, and may it become more and more clear unto me, I beseech Thee; and in this manifestation may I abide more soberly under Thy wings.

14. Behold, I know not what shapelessness there is in those changes of these last and lowest creatures. And who shall tell me, unless it be some one who, through the emptiness of his own heart, wanders and is staggered by his own fancies? Who, unless such a one, would tell me that (all figure being diminished and consumed), if the formlessness only remain, through which the thing was changed and was turned from one figure into another, that that can exhibit the changes of times? For surely it could not be, because without the change of motions times are not, and there is no change where there is no figure.

CHAP. XII.—*From the formless earth God created another heaven and a visible and formed earth.*

15. Which things considered as much as Thou givest, O my God, as much as Thou excitest me to "knock," and as much as Thou openest unto me when I knock,[1] two things I find which Thou hast made, not within the compass of time, since neither is co-eternal with Thee. One, which is so formed that, without any failing of contemplation, without any interval of change, although changeable, yet not changed, it may fully enjoy Thy eternity and unchangeableness; the other, which was so formless, that it had not that by which it could be changed from one form into another, either of motion or of repose, whereby it might be subject unto time. But this Thou didst not leave to be formless, since before all days, in the beginning Thou createdst heaven and earth,—these two things of which I spoke.[2] But the earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep.[3] By which words its formlessness is conveyed unto us,—that by degrees those [illegible] be drawn on which cannot wholly conceive the [illegible] all form without coming to nothing,—whence [illegible] might be created, and another earth visible and [illegible] and water beautifully ordered, and whatever beside [illegible]

[1] Matt. vii. 7. [2] Gen. i. 1. [3] Gen. i. 2.

formation of this world, recorded to have been, not without days, created; because such things are so that in them the vicissitudes of times may take place, on account of the appointed changes of motions and of forms.[1]

CHAP. XIII.—*Of the intellectual heaven and formless earth, out of which, on another day, the firmament was formed.*

16. Meanwhile I conceive this, O my God, when I hear Thy Scripture speak, saying, In the beginning God made heaven and earth; but the earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep, and not stating on what day Thou didst create these things. Thus, meanwhile, do I conceive, that it is on account of that heaven of heavens, that intellectual heaven, where to understand is to know all at once,—not "in part," not "darkly," not "through a glass,"[2] but as a whole, in manifestation, "face to face;" not this thing now, that anon, but (as has been said) to know at once without any change of times; and on account of the invisible and formless earth, without any change of times; which change is wont to have "this thing now, that anon," because, where there is no form there can be no distinction between "this" or "that;"—it is, then, on account of these two,—a primitively formed, and a wholly formless; the one heaven, but the heaven of heavens, the other earth, but the earth invisible and formless;—on account of these two do I meanwhile conceive that Thy Scripture said without mention of days, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth." For immediately it added of what earth it spake. And when on the second day the firmament is recorded to have been created, and called heaven, it suggests to us of which heaven He spake before without mention of days.

CHAP. XIV.—*Of the depth of the Sacred Scripture, and its enemies.*

Wonderful is the depth of Thy oracles, whose surface inviting the little ones; and yet wonderful is the God, wonderful is the depth.[3] It is awe to look ve of honour, and a tremor of love. The enemies

[1] See, 40, below.
[2] 1 Cor. xiii. 12.
[3] , note 4, and p. 325, note 2, above. See also Trench, *Hulsean*), lect. 6, "The Inexhaustibility of Scripture."

thereof I hate vehemently.[1] Oh, if Thou wouldest slay them with Thy two-edged sword,[2] that they be not its enemies! For thus do I love, that they should be slain unto themselves that they may live unto Thee. But behold others not reprovers, but praisers of the book of Genesis,—"The Spirit of God," say they, "Who by His servant Moses wrote these things, willed not that these words should be thus understood. He willed not that it should be understood as Thou sayest, but as we say." Unto whom, O God of us all, Thyself being Judge, do I thus answer.

CHAP. XV.—*He argues against adversaries concerning the heaven of heavens.*

18. "Will you say that these things are false, which, with a strong voice, Truth tells me in my inner ear, concerning the very eternity of the Creator, that His substance is in no wise changed by time, nor that His will is separate from His substance? Wherefore, He willeth not one thing now, another anon, but once and for ever He willeth all things that He willeth; not again and again, nor now this, now that; nor willeth afterwards what He willeth not before, nor willeth not what before He willed. Because such a will is mutable, and no mutable thing is eternal; but our God is eternal.[3] Likewise He tells me, tells me in my inner ear, that the expectation of future things is turned to sight when they have come; and this same sight is turned to memory when they have passed. Moreover, all thought which is thus varied is mutable, and nothing mutable is eternal; but our God is eternal." These things I sum up and put together, and I find that my God, the eternal God, hath not made any creature by any new will, nor that His knowledge suffereth anything transitory.

19. What, therefore, will ye say, ye objectors? Are these things false? "No," they say. "What is this? Is it false,

[1] Ps. cxxxix. 21.

[2] Ps. cxlix. 6. He refers to the Manichæans (see p. 44, note). In his comment on this place, he interprets the "two-edged sword" to mean the Old and New Testament, called two-edged, he says, because it speaks of things temporal and eternal.

[3] See xi. sec. 41, above.

then, that every nature already formed, or matter formable, is only from Him who is supremely good, because He is supreme?" "Neither do we deny this," say they. "What then? Do you deny this, that there is a certain sublime creature, clinging with so chaste a love with the true and truly eternal God, that although it be not co-eternal with Him, yet it separateth itself not from Him, nor floweth into any variety and vicissitude of times, but resteth in the truest contemplation of Him only?" Since Thou, O God, showest Thyself unto him, and sufficest him, who loveth Thee as much as Thou commandest, and, therefore, he declineth not from Thee, nor toward himself.[1] This is the house of God,[2] not earthly, nor of any celestial bulk corporeal, but a spiritual house and a partaker of Thy eternity, because without blemish for ever. For Thou hast made it fast for ever and ever; Thou hast given it a law, which it shall not pass.[3] Nor yet is it co-eternal with Thee, O God, because not without beginning, for it was made.

20. For although we find no time before it, for wisdom was created before all things,[4]—not certainly that Wisdom manifestly co-eternal and equal unto Thee, our God, His Father, and by Whom all things were created, and in Whom, as the Beginning, Thou createdst heaven and earth; but truly that wisdom which has been created, namely, the intellectual nature,[5] which, in the contemplation of light, is light. For this, although created, is also called wisdom. But as great as is the difference between the Light which enlighteneth and that which is enlightened,[6] so great is the difference between the Wisdom that

[1] In his *De Vera Relig.* c. 13, he says: "We must confess that the angels are in their nature mutable as God is immutable. Yet by that will with which they love God more than themselves, they remain firm and stable in Him, and enjoy His majesty, being most willingly subject to Him alone."

[2] In his *Cor. Adv. Leg. et Proph.* i. 2, he speaks of all who are holy, whether angels or men, as being God's dwelling-place.

[3] Ps. cxlviii. 6. [4] Ecclus. i. 4.

[5] "Pet. Lombard lib. sent. 2, dist. 2, affirms that by Wisdom, Ecclus. i. 4, the angels be understood, the whole spiritual intellectual nature; namely, this highest heaven, in which the angels were created, and it by them instantly filled." —W. W.

[6] On God as the Father of Lights, see p. 76, note 2. In addition to the references there given, compare *in Ev. Joh. Tract.* ii. sec. 7; xiv. secs. 1, 2; and xxxv. sec. 8. See also p. 373, note, below.

createth and that which hath been created; as between the Righteousness which justifieth, and the righteousness which has been made by justification. For we also are called Thy righteousness; for thus saith a certain servant of Thine: "That we might be made the righteousness of God in Him."[1] Therefore, since a certain created wisdom was created before all things, the rational and intellectual mind of that chaste city of Thine, our mother which is above, and is free,[2] and "eternal in the heavens"[3] (in what heavens, unless in those that praise Thee, the "heaven of heavens," because this also is the "heaven of heavens,"[4] which is the Lord's)—although we find not time before it, because that which hath been created before all things also precedeth the creature of time, yet is the Eternity of the Creator Himself before it, from Whom, having been created, it took the beginning, although not of time,—for time as yet was not,—yet of its own very nature.

21. Hence comes it so to be of Thee, our God, as to be manifestly another than Thou, and not the Self-same.[5] Since, [illegible] it (it

Holy Ghost? Is not this house of God, not indeed co-eternal with God, yet, according to its measure, eternal in the heavens,[1] where in vain you seek for changes of times, because you will not find them? For that surpasseth all extension, and every revolving space of time, to which it is ever good to cleave fast to God."[2] "It is," say they. "What, therefore, of those things which my heart cried out unto my God, when within it heard the voice of His praise, what then do you contend is false? Or is it because the matter was formless, wherein, as there was no form, there was no order? But where there was no order there could not be any change of times; and yet this 'almost nothing,' inasmuch as it was not altogether nothing, was verily from Him, from Whom is whatever is, in what state soever anything is." "This also," say they, "we do not deny."

CHAP. XVI.—*He wishes to have no intercourse with those who deny Divine Truth.*

23

Jerusalem my country, Jerusalem my mother, and Thyself, the Ruler over it, the Enlightener, the Father, the Guardian, the Husband, the chaste and strong delight, the solid joy, and all good things ineffable, even all at the same time, because the one supreme and true Good. And I will not be turned away until Thou collect all that I am, from this dispersion[1] and deformity, into the peace of that very dear mother, where are the first-fruits of my spirit,[2] whence these things are assured to me, and Thou conform and confirm it for ever, my God, my Mercy. But with reference to those who say not that all these things which are true are false, who honour Thy Holy Scripture set forth by holy Moses, placing it, as with us, on the summit of an authority[3] to be followed, and yet who contradict us in some particulars, I thus speak: Be Thou, O our God, judge between my confessions and their contradictions.

CHAP. XVII.—*He mentions five explanations of the words of Genesis* i. 1.

24. For they say, "Although these things be true, yet Moses regarded not those two things, when by divine revelation he said, 'In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.'[4] Under the name of heaven he did not [illegible] spiritual or intellectual creature which, with sublime love, it shineth [illegible] God; nor under the name of earth [illegible] then?" "That may have loved thy beauty, and the place of the [illegible] he declared the glory of my Lord,[6] thy builder and owner. [illegible] wandering sigh after thee; and I speak unto Him that made thee, that He may possess me also in thee, seeing He hath made me likewise. "I have gone astray, like a lost sheep;"[7] yet upon the shoulders of my Shepherd,[8] thy builder, I hope that I may be brought back to thee.

22. "What say ye to me, O ye objectors whom I was addressing, and who yet believe that Moses was the holy servant of God, and that his books were the oracles of the

[1] 2 Cor. v. 21. [2] Gal. iv. 26. [3] 2 Cor. v. 1. [4] Ps. cxlviii. 4.
[5] Against the Manichæans. See iv. sec. 26, and part 2 of note on p. 77, abo
[6] Ps. xxvi. 8. [7] Ps. cxix. 176. [8] Luke xv. 5.

visible world, that afterwards by the enumeration of the days he might distribute, as if in detail, all those things which it pleased the Holy Spirit thus to reveal. For such men were that rude and carnal people to which he spoke, that he judged it prudent that only those works of God as were visible should be entrusted to them." They agree, however, that the earth invisible and formless, and the darksome deep (out of which it is subsequently pointed out that all these visible things, which are known to all, were made and set in order during those "days"), may not unsuitably be understood of this formless matter.

25. What, now, if another should say "That this same formlessness and confusion of matter was first introduced under the name of heaven and earth, because out of it this visible world, with all those natures which most manifestly appear in it, and which is wont to be called by the name of heaven and earth, was created and perfected"? But what if another should say, that "That invisible and visible nature is not inaptly called heaven and earth; and that consequently the universal creation, which God in His wisdom hath made,—that is, 'in the beginning,'—was comprehended under these two words. Yet, since all things have been made, not of the substance of God, but out of nothing,[1] (because they are not that same thing that God is, and there is in them all a certain mutability, whether they remain, as doth the eternal house of God, or be changed, as are the soul and body of man), therefore, that the common matter of all things invisible and visible,—as yet shapeless, but still capable of form,—out of which was to be created heaven and earth (that is, the invisible and visible creature already formed), was spoken of by the [illegible]nes by which the earth invisible and [illegible]m less [illegible]ess upon the deep would be called; with [illegible]er, that the earth invisible and formless [illegible]l matter, before it had any manner of [illegible]s upon the deep as spiritual matter, [illegible]t all of its unlimited fluidity, and [illegible] wisdom."

[1] See p. 295, note, above.

26. Should any man wish, he may still say, "That the already perfected and formed natures, invisible and visible, are not signified under the name of heaven and earth when it is read, 'In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth;' but that the yet same formless beginning of things, the matter capable of being formed and made, was called by these names, because contained in it there were these confused things not as yet distinguished by their qualities and forms, the which now being digested in their own orders, are called heaven and earth, the former being the spiritual, the latter the corporeal creature."

CHAP. XVIII.—*What error is harmless in Sacred Scripture.*

27. All which things having been heard and considered, I am unwilling to contend about words,[1] for that is profitable to nothing but to the subverting of the hearers.[2] But the law is good to edify, if a man use it lawfully;[3] for the end of it "is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned."[4] And well did our Master know, upon which two commandments He hung all the Law and the Prophets.[5] And what doth it hinder me, O my God, Thou light of my eyes in secret, while ardently confessing these things, —since by these words many things may be understood, all of which are yet true,—what, I say, doth it hinder me, should I think otherwise of what the writer thought than some other man thinketh? Indeed, all of us who read endeavour to

[1] See p. 291, note 4, above.
[2] 2 Tim. ii. 14.
[3] 1 Tim. i. 8.
[4] *Ibid.* ver. 5.
[5] Matt. xxii. 40. For he says in his *Con. Faust.* xvii. 6, remarking on John i. 17, [illegible] which he often quotes in this connection: "The [illegible] itself by being fulfilled [illegible] comes grace and truth. Grace is the fulfilment [illegible]." And so in *ibid.* xix. 27 we read: "From the words, 'I came not to d[illegible] law but to fulfil it,' we are not to understand that Christ by His prece[illegible] what was wanting in the law; but what the literal command failed in [illegible] and disobedience of men is accomplished by grace. . . . S[illegible] 'faith worketh by love.'" So, again, we read in *Serm.* cxxv. [illegible] dare caritatem, et caritas perficit legem; merito dixit non [illegible] sed implere." And hence in his letter to Jerome (*Ep.* clxvi[illegible] the "royal law" as being "the law of liberty, which is th[illegible] p. 348, note 4, above.

trace out and to understand that which he whom we read wished to convey; and as we believe him to speak truly, we dare not suppose that he has spoken anything which we either know or suppose to be false. Since, therefore, each person endeavours to understand in the Holy Scriptures that which the writer understood, what hurt is it if a man understand what Thou, the light of all true-speaking minds, dost show him to be true although he whom he reads understood not this, seeing that he also understood a Truth, not, however, this Truth?

CHAP. XIX.—*He enumerates the things concerning which all agree.*

28. For it is true, O Lord, that Thou hast made heaven and earth; it is also true, that the Beginning is Thy Wisdom, in Which Thou hast made all things.[1] It is likewise true, that this visible world hath its own great parts, the heaven and the earth, which in a short compass comprehends all made and created natures. It is also true, that everything mutable sets before our minds a certain want of form, whereof it taketh a form, or is changed and turned. It is true, that that is subject to no times which so cleaveth to the changeless form as that, though it be mutable, it is not changed. It is true, that the formlessness, which is almost nothing, cannot have changes of times. It is true, that that of which anything is made may in a certain mode of speech be called by the name of that thing which is made of it; whence that formlessness of which heaven and earth were made might be called "heaven and earth." It is true, that of all things having form, nothing is nearer to the formless than the earth and the deep. It is true, that not only every created and formed thing, but also whatever is capable of creation and of form, Thou hast made, "by whom are all things."[2] It is true, that everything that is formed from that which is formless was formless before it was formed.

CHAP. XX.—*Of the words, "In the beginning," variously understood.*

29. From all these truths, of which they doubt not whose inner eye Thou hast granted to see such things, and who immoveably believe Moses, Thy servant, to have spoken in the

[1] Ps. civ. 24. See p. 297, note 1, above. [2] 1 Cor. viii. 6.

spirit of truth; from all these, then, he taketh one who saith, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth,"—that is, "In His Word, co-eternal with Himself, God made the intelligible and the sensible, or the spiritual and corporeal creature." He taketh another, who saith, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth,"—that is, "In His Word, co-eternal with Himself, God made the universal mass of this corporeal world, with all those manifest and known natures which it containeth." He, another, who saith, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth,"—that is, "In His Word, co-eternal with Himself, God made the formless matter of the spiritual[1] and corporeal creature." He, another, who saith, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth,"—that is, "In His Word, co-eternal with Himself, God made the formless matter of the corporeal creature, wherein heaven and earth lay as yet confused, which being now distinguished and formed, we, at this day, see in the mass of this world." He, another, who saith, "In the beginning God created heaven and earth,"—that is, "In the very beginning of creating and working, God made that formless matter confusedly containing heaven and

[1] Augustine, in his letter to Jerome (*Ep.* clxvi. 4) on "The origin of the human soul," says: "The soul, whether it be termed material or immaterial, has a certain nature of its own, created from a substance superior to the elements of this world." And in his *De Gen. ad Lit.* vii. 10, he speaks of the soul being formed from a certain "spiritual matter," even as flesh was formed from the earth. It should be observed that at one time Augustine held to the theory that the souls of infants were created by God out of nothing at each fresh birth, and only rejected this view for that of its being generated by the parents with the body under the pressure of the Pelagian controversy. The first doctrine was generally held by the Schoolmen: and William of Conches maintained this belief on the authority of Augustine,—apparently being unaware of any modification in his opinion: "Cum Augustino," he says (Victor Cousin, *Ouvrages ined. d'Abelard*, p. 673), "credo et sentio quotidie novas animas *non ex traduce*, non ex aliqua substantia, sed *ex nihilo, solo jussu creatoris* creari." Those who held the first-named belief were called *Creatiani*; those who held the second, *Traduciani*. It may be noted as to the word "Traduciani," that Tertullian, in his *Anima*, chaps. 24-27, etc., frequently uses the word *tradux* in this connection. Augustine, in his *Retractations*, ii. 45, refers to his letter to Jerome, and says that if so obscure a matter is to be discussed at all, that solution only should be received: "Quæ contrarium non sit apertissimis rebus quas de originali peccato fides catholica novit in parvulis, nisi regenerentur in Christo, sine dubitatione damnandis." On Tertullian's views, see Bishop Kaye, p. 178, etc.

earth, out of which, being formed, they now stand out, and are manifest, with all the things that are in them."

CHAP. XXI.—*Of the explanation of the words, "The earth was invisible."*

30. And as concerns the understanding of the following words, out of all those truths he selected one to himself, who saith, "But the earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep,"—that is, "That corporeal thing, which God made, was as yet the formless matter of corporeal things, without order, without light." He taketh another, who saith, "But the earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep,"—that is, "This whole, which is called heaven and earth, was as yet formless and darksome matter, out of which the corporeal heaven and the corporeal earth were to be made, with all things therein which are known to our corporeal senses." He, another, who saith, "But the earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep,"—that is, "This whole, which is called heaven and earth, was as yet a formless and darksome matter, out of which were to be made that intelligible heaven, which is otherwise called the heaven of heavens, and the earth, namely, the whole corporeal nature, under which name may also be comprised this corporeal heaven,—that is, from which every invisible and visible creature would be created." He, another, who saith, "But the earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep,"—"The Scripture called not that formlessness by the name of heaven and earth, but that formlessness itself," saith he, "already was, which he named the earth invisible and formless and the darksome deep, of which he had said before, that God had made the heaven and the earth, namely, the spiritual and corporeal creature." He, another, who saith, "But the earth was invisible and formless, and darkness was upon the deep,"—that is, "There was already a formless matter, whereof the Scripture before said, that God had made heaven and earth, namely, the entire corporeal mass of the world, divided into two very great parts, the superior and the inferior, with all those familiar and known creatures which are in them."

CHAP. XXII.—*He discusses whether matter was from eternity, or was made by God.*[1]

31. For, should any one endeavour to contend against these last two opinions, thus,—"If you will not admit that this formlessness of matter appears to be called by the name of heaven and earth, then there was something which God had not made out of which He could make heaven and earth; for Scripture hath not told us that God made this matter, unless we understand it to be implied in the term of heaven and earth, or of earth only, when it is said, 'In the beginning God created heaven and earth,' as that which follows, but the earth was invisible and formless, although it was pleasing to him so to call the formless matter, we may not yet understand any but that which God made in that text which hath been already written, 'God made heaven and earth.'" The maintainers of either one or the other of these two opinions which we have put last will, when they have heard these things, answer and say, "We deny not indeed that this formless matter was created by God, the God of whom are all things, very good; for, as we say that that is a greater good which is created and formed, so we acknowledge that that is a minor good which is capable of creation and form, but yet good. But yet the Scripture hath not declared that God made this formlessness, any more than it hath declared many other things; the 'Cherubim,' and 'Seraphim,'[2] and those of which the apostle distinctly speaks, 'Thrones,' 'Dominions,' 'Principalities,' 'Powers,'[3] all of which it is manifest God made. Or if in that which is said, 'He made heaven and earth,' all things are comprehended, what do we say of the waters upon which the Spirit of God moved? For if they are understood as incorporated in the word earth, how then can formless matter be meant in the term earth when we see the waters so beautiful? Or if it be so meant, why then is it written that

[1] See xi. sec. 7, and note, above; and xii. sec. 33, and note, below. See also the subtle reasoning of Dean Mansel (*Bampton Lectures*, lect. ii.), on the inconsequence of receiving the idea of the creation out of nothing on other than Christian principles. And compare Coleridge, *The Friend*, iii. 213.

[2] Isa. vi. 2, and xxxvii. 16. [3] Col. i. 16.

out of the same formlessness the firmament was made and called heaven, and yet it is not written that the waters were made? For those waters, which we perceive flowing in so beautiful a manner, remain not formless and invisible. But if, then, they received that beauty when God said, Let the water which is under the firmament be gathered together,[1] so that the gathering be the very formation, what will be answered concerning the waters which are above the firmament, because if formless they would not have deserved to receive a seat so honourable, nor is it written by what word they were formed? If, then, Genesis is silent as to anything that God has made, which, however, neither sound faith nor unerring understanding doubteth that God hath made,[2] let not any sober teaching dare to say that these waters were co-eternal with God because we find them mentioned in the book of Genesis; but when they were created, we find not. Why—truth instructing us—may we not understand that that formless matter, which the Scripture calls the earth invisible and without form, and the darksome deep,[3] have been made by God out of nothing, and therefore that they are not co-eternal with Him, although that narrative hath failed to tell when they were made?"

CHAP. XXIII.—*Two kinds of disagreements in the books to be explained.*

32. These things, therefore, being heard and perceived according to my weakness of apprehension, which I confess unto Thee, O Lord, who knowest it, I see that two sorts of differences may arise when by signs anything is related, even by true reporters,—one concerning the truth of the things, the other concerning the meaning of him who reports them. For in one way we inquire, concerning the forming of the creature, what is true; but in another, what Moses, that excellent servant of Thy faith, would have wished that the reader and hearer should understand by these words. As for the first kind, let all those depart from me who imagine themselves to know as true what is false. And as for the other also, let all depart from me who imagine Moses to have spoken things that are false. But let me be united in Thee, O Lord, with

[1] Gen. i. 9. [2] See p. 295, note, above. [3] See p. 320, note 2, above.

them, and in Thee delight myself with them that feed on Thy truth, in the breadth of charity; and let us approach together unto the words of Thy book, and in them make search for Thy will, through the will of Thy servant by whose pen Thou hast dispensed them.

CHAP. XXIV.—*Out of the many true things, it is not asserted confidently that Moses understood this or that.*

33. But which of us, amid so many truths which occur to inquirers in these words, understood as they are in different ways, shall so discover that one interpretation as to confidently say "that Moses thought this," and "that in that narrative he wished this to be understood," as confidently as he says "that this is true," whether he thought this thing or the other? For behold, O my God, I Thy servant, who in this book have vowed unto Thee a sacrifice of confession, and beseech Thee that of Thy mercy I may pay my vows unto Thee,[1] behold, can I, as I confidently assert that Thou in Thy immutable word hast created all things, invisible and visible, with equal confidence assert that Moses meant nothing else than this when he wrote, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth."[2] No. Because it is not as clear to me that this was in his mind when he wrote these things, as I see it to be certain in Thy truth. For his thoughts might be set upon the very beginning of the creation when he said, "In the beginning;" and he might wish it to be understood that, in this place, "the heaven and the earth" were no formed and perfected nature, whether spiritual or corporeal, but each of them newly begun, and as yet formless. Because I see, that whichsoever of these had been said, it might have been said truly; but which of them he may have thought in these words, I do not so perceive. Although, whether it were one of these, or some other meaning which

[1] Ps. xxii. 25.

[2] It is curious to note here Fichte's strange idea (*Anweisung zum seligen Leben*, Werke, v. 479), that St. John, at the commencement of his Gospel, in his teaching as to the "Word," intended to contrast the Mosaic statement, which Fichte—since it ran counter to that idea of "the absolute" which he made the point of departure in his philosophy—antagonizes as a heathen and Jewish error. Or, "In the Beginning," see p. 297, note 1, above.

has not been mentioned by me, that this great man saw in his mind when he used these words, I make no doubt but that he saw it truly, and expressed it suitably.

CHAP. XXV.—*It behoves interpreters, when disagreeing concerning obscure places, to regard God the Author of truth, and the rule of charity.*

34. Let no one now trouble me by saying, "Moses thought not as you say, but as I say." For should he ask me, "Whence knowest thou that Moses thought this which you deduce from his words?" I ought to take it contentedly,[1] and reply perhaps as I have before, or somewhat more fully should he be obstinate. But when he says, "Moses meant not what you say, but what I say," and yet denies not what each of us says, and that both are true, O my God, life of the poor, in whose bosom there is no contradiction, pour down into my heart Thy soothings, that I may patiently bear with such as say this to me; not because they are divine, and because they have seen in the heart of Thy servant what they say, but because they are proud, and have not known the opinion of Moses, but love their own,—*not* because it is true, but because it is their own. Otherwise they would equally love another true opinion, as I love what they say when they speak what is true; not because it is theirs, but because it is true, and therefore now not theirs because true. But if they therefore love that because it is true, it is now both theirs and mine, since it is common to all [illegible] of truth. But because they contend that Moses meant not what I say, but what they themselves say, I neither like nor love; because, though it were so, yet such rashness is not of knowledge, but of audacity; and not sight, but vanity brought it forth. And therefore, O Lord, are Thy judgments to be dreaded, since Thy truth is neither mine, nor his, nor another's, but of all of us, whom Thou publicly callest to have it in common, warning us terribly not to hold it as specially for ourselves, lest we be deprived of it. For whosoever claims to himself as his own that which Thou appointed to all to enjoy, and desires that to be his own which belongs to all, is forced away from what is

[1] See p. 8, note, and p. 291, note 4, above.

common to all to that which is his own—that is, from truth to falsehood. For he that "speaketh a lie, speaketh of his own."[1]

35. Hearken, O God, Thou best Judge! Truth itself, hearken to what I shall say to this gainsayer; hearken, for before Thee I say it, and before my brethren who use Thy law lawfully, to the end of charity;[2] hearken and behold what I shall say to him, if it be pleasing unto Thee. For this brotherly and peaceful word do I return unto him: "If we both see that that which thou sayest is true, and if we both see that what I say is true, where, I ask, do we see it? Certainly not I in thee, nor thou in me, but both in the unchangeable truth itself,[3] which is above our minds." When, therefore, we may not contend about the very light of the Lord our God, why do we contend about the thoughts of our neighbour, which we cannot so see as incommutable truth is seen; when, if Moses himself had appeared to us and said, "This I meant," not so should we see it, but believe it? Let us not, then, "be puffed up for one against the other,"[4] above that which is written; let us love the Lord our God with all our heart, with all our soul, and with all our mind, and our neighbour as ourself.[5] As to which two precepts of charity, unless we believe that Moses meant whatever in these books he did mean, we shall make God a liar when we think otherwise concerning our fellow-servants' mind than He hath taught us. Behold, now, how foolish it is, [illegible] abundance of the truest opinions which can [illegible] these words, rashly to affirm which of them [illegible] larly meant; and with pernicious contentions to [illegible] itself, on account of which he hath spoken [illegible] whose words we endeavour to explain!

heaven

CHAP. XXVI.—*What he might have asked of God had he been enjoined to write the book of Genesis.*

36. And yet, O my God, Thou exaltation of my hum[illegible] and rest of my labour, who hearest my confessions, and

[1] John viii. 44.

[2] As to all truth being God's, see vii. sec. 15, and note 4, above; and compare x. sec. 65, above.

[3] 1 Tim. i. 8.

[4] 1 Cor. iv. 6.

[5] Mark xii. 3[illegible]

givest my sins, since Thou commandest me that I should love my neighbour as myself, I cannot believe that Thou gavest to Moses, Thy most faithful servant, a less gift than I should wish and desire for myself from Thee, had I been born in his time, and hadst Thou placed me in that position that through the service of my heart and of my tongue those books might be distributed, which so long after were to profit all nations, and through the whole world, from so great a pinnacle of authority, were to surmount the words of all false and proud teachings. I should have wished truly had I then been Moses (for we all come from the same mass; and what is man, saving that Thou art mindful of him?[1]). I should then, had I been at that time what he was, and enjoined by Thee to write the book of Genesis, have wished that such a power of expression and such a method of arrangement should be given me, that they who cannot as yet understand how God creates might not reject the words as surpassing their powers; and they who are already able to do this, would find, in what true opinion soever they had by thought arrived at, that it was not passed over in the few words of Thy servant; and should another man by the light of truth have discovered another, neither should that fail to be found in those same words.

CHAP. XXVII.—*The style of speaking in the book of Genesis is simple and clear.*

37. For as a fountain in a limited space is more plentiful, and affords supply for more streams over larger spaces than any one of those streams which, after a wide interval, is [illegible] from the same fountain; so the narrative of Thy [illegible]enser, destined to benefit many who were likely to [illegible]ourse thereon, does, from a limited measure of language, [illegible]flow into streams of clear truth, whence each one may [illegible]. out for himself that truth which he can concerning [illegible] subjects,—this one that truth, that one another, by larger [illegible]mlocutions of discourse. For some, when they read or [illegible] these words, think that God as a man or some mass [illegible] with immense power, by some new and sudden resolve,

[1] Ps. viii. 5.

had, outside itself, as if at distant places, created heaven and earth, two great bodies above and below, wherein all things were to be contained. And when they hear, God said, Let it be made, and it was made, they think of words begun and ended, sounding in times and passing away, after the departure of which that came into being which was commanded to be; and whatever else of the kind their familiarity with the world [1] would suggest. In whom, being as yet little ones,[2] while their weakness by this humble kind of speech is carried on as if in a mother's bosom, their faith is healthfully built up, by which they have and hold as certain that God made all natures, which in wondrous variety their senses perceive on every side. Which words, if any one despising them, as if trivial, with proud weakness shall have stretched himself beyond his fostering cradle, he will, alas, fall miserably. Have pity, O Lord God, lest they who pass by trample on the unfledged bird; and send Thine angel, who may restore it to its nest, that it may live until it can fly.[3]

CHAP. XXVIII.—*The words, "In the beginning," and, "The heaven and the earth," are differently understood.*

38. But others, to whom these words are no longer a nest, but shady fruit-bowers, see the fruits concealed in them, fly around rejoicing, and chirpingly search and pluck them. For they see when they read or hear these words, O God, that all times past and future are surmounted by Thy eternal and stable abiding, and still that there is no temporal creature which Thou hast not made. And by Thy will, because it is that which Thou art, Thou hast made all things, not by any changed will, nor by a will which before was not,—not out of Thyself, in Thine own likeness, the form of all things, but out of nothing, a formless unlikeness which should be formed by Thy likeness (having recourse to Thee the One, after their settled capacity, according as it has been given to each thing in his kind), and might all be made very good; whether they

[1] "Ex familiaritate carnis," literally, "from familiarity with the flesh."

[2] "Parvulis animalibus."

[3] In allusion, perhaps, to Prov. xxvii. 8: "As a bird that wandereth from her nest, so is a man that wandereth from his place."

remain around Thee, or, being by degrees removed in time and place, make or undergo beautiful variations. These things they see, and rejoice in the light of Thy truth, in the little degree they here may.

39. Again, another of these directs his attention to that which is said, "In the beginning God made the heaven and the earth," and beholdeth Wisdom,—the Beginning,[1] because It also speaketh unto us.[2] Another likewise directs his attention to the same words, and by "beginning" understands the commencement of things created; and receives it thus,—In the beginning He made, as if it were said, He at first made. And among those who understand "In the beginning" to mean, that "in Thy Wisdom Thou hast created heaven and earth," one believes the matter out of which the heaven and earth were to be created to be there called "heaven and earth;" another, that they are natures already formed and distinct; another, one formed nature, and that a spiritual, under the name of heaven, the other formless, of corporeal matter, under the name of earth. But they who under the name of "heaven and earth" understand matter as yet formless, out of which were to be formed heaven and earth, do not themselves understand it in one manner; but one, that matter out of which the intelligible and the sensible creature were to be completed; another, that only out of which this sensible corporeal mass was to come, holding in its vast bosom these visible and prepared natures. Nor are they who believe that the creatures already set in order and arranged are in this place called heaven and earth of one accord, but the one, both the invisible and visible; the other, the visible only, in which we admire the luminous heaven and darksome earth, and the things that are therein.

CHAP. XXIX.—*Concerning the opinion of those who explain it "At first He made."*

40. But he who does not otherwise understand, "In the beginning He made," than if it were said, "At first He made," can only truly understand heaven and earth of the matter of heaven and earth, namely, of the universal, that is, intelligible and

[1] See p. 297, note. [2] John viii. 25.

corporeal creation. For if he would have it of the universe, as already formed, it might rightly be asked of him: "If at first God made this, what made He afterwards?" And after the universe he will find nothing; thereupon must he, though unwilling, hear, "How is this first, if there is nothing afterwards?" But when he says that God made matter first formless, then formed, he is not absurd if he be but able to discern what precedes by eternity, what by time, what by choice, what by origin. By eternity, as God is before all things; by time, as the flower is before the fruit; by choice, as the fruit is before the flower; by origin, as sound is before the tune. Of these four, the first and last which I have referred to are with much difficulty understood; the two middle very easily. For an uncommon and too lofty vision it is to behold, O Lord, Thy Eternity, immutably making things mutable, and thereby before them. Who is so acute of mind as to be able without great labour to discover how the sound is prior to the tune, because a tune is a formed sound; and a thing not formed may exist, but that which existeth not cannot be formed?[1] So is the matter prior to that which is made from it; not prior because it maketh it, since itself is rather made, nor is it prior by an interval of time. For we do not as to time first utter formless sounds without singing, and then adapt or fashion them into the form of a song, just as wood or silver from which a chest or vessel is made. Because such materials do by time also precede the forms of the things which are made from them; but in singing this is not so. For when it is sung, its sound is heard at the same time; seeing there is not first a formless sound, which is afterwards formed into a song. For as soon as it shall have first sounded it passeth away; nor canst thou find anything of it, which being recalled thou canst by art compose. And, therefore, the song is absorbed in its own sound, which sound of it is its matter. Because this same is formed that it may be a tune; and therefore, as I was saying, the matter of the sound is prior to the form of the tune not before through any lapse of time of making it a tune; for neither is a sound the c[illegible]

[1] See a similar argument in his *Con. adv. Leg. et Proph.* i. 9; a[illegible] nd note, above.

the tune, but is sent forth from the body and is subjected to the soul of the singer, that from it he may form a tune. Nor is it first in time, for it is given forth together with the tune; nor first in choice, for a sound is not better than a tune, since a tune is not merely a sound, but a beautiful sound. But it is first in origin, because the tune is not formed that it may become a sound, but the sound is formed that it may become a tune. By this example, let him who is able understand that the matter of things was first made, and called heaven and earth, because out of it heaven and earth were made. Not that it was made first in time, because the forms of things give rise to time,[1] but that was formless; but now, in time, it is perceived together with its form. Nor yet can anything be related concerning that matter, unless as if it were prior in time, while it is considered last (because things formed are assuredly superior to things formless), and is preceded by the Eternity of the Creator, so that there might be out of nothing that from which something might be made.

CHAP. XXX.—*In the great diversity of opinions, it becomes all to unite charity and Divine Truth.*

41. In this diversity of true opinions let Truth itself beget concord;[2] and may our God have mercy upon us, that we may use the law lawfully,[3] the end of the commandment, pure charity.[4] And by this if any one asks of me, "Which of these was the meaning of Thy servant Moses?" these were not the

[1] See xi. sec. 29, above, and Gillies' note thereon; and compare with it Augustine's *De. Gen. ad Lit.* v. 5: "In vain we inquire after time before the creation as though we could find time before time, for if there were no motion of the spiritual or corporeal creatures whereby through the present the future might succeed the past, there would be no time at all. But the creature could not have motion unless it were. Time, therefore, begins rather from the creation, than creation from time, but both are from God."

[2] See p. 291, note 4, above. [3] 1 Tim. i. 8.

[4] See p. 335, note, above; and on the supremacy of this law of love, may be compared Jeremy Taylor's curious story (Works, iv. 477, Eden's ed.): "St. Lewis, the king, having sent Ivo, Bishop of Chartres, on an embassy, the bishop met a woman on the way, grave, sad, fantastic, and melancholy, who bare in one hand, and water in the other. He asked what those symbols meant. She answered, 'My purpose is with fire to burn Paradise, and with this water to quench the flames of hell, that men may serve God without the incentives of hope and fear, and purely for the love of God.'"

utterances of my confessions, should I not confess unto Thee, "I know not;" and yet I know that those opinions are true, with the exception of those carnal ones concerning which I have spoken what I thought well. However, these words of Thy Book affright not those little ones of good hope, treating few of high things in a humble fashion, and few things in varied ways.[1] But let all, whom I acknowledge to see and speak the truth in these words, love one another, and equally love Thee, our God, fountain of truth,—if we thirst not for vain things, but for it; yea, let us so honour this servant of Thine, the dispenser of this Scripture, full of Thy Spirit, as to believe that when Thou revealedst Thyself to him, and he wrote these things, he intended that which in them chiefly excels both for light of truth and fruitfulness of profit.

CHAP. XXXI.—*Moses is supposed to have perceived whatever of truth can be discovered in his words.*

42. Thus, when one shall say, "He [Moses] meant as I do," and another, "Nay, but as I do," I suppose that I am speaking more religiously when I say, "Why not rather as both, if both be true?" And if there be a third truth, or a fourth, and if any one seek any truth altogether different in those words, why may not he be believed to have seen all these, through whom one God hath tempered the Holy Scriptures to the senses of many, about to see therein things true but different? I certainly,—and I fearlessly declare it from my heart,—were I to write anything to have the highest authority, should prefer so to write, that whatever of truth any one might apprehend concerning these matters, my words should re-echo, rather than that I should set down one true opinio[n] this as that I should exclude the rest, that [w]hich could not offend me. Therefore am[I] God, to be so headstrong as not to believe [t]man [Moses] hath received so much. [H]wrote those words, perceived and thoug[ht] we have been able to discover, yea, and [w]been able, not yet are able, though stil[l] them.

[1] See end of note 1, p. 378, [be]

CHAP. XXXII.—*First, the sense of the writer is to be discovered, then that is to be brought out which Divine Truth intended.*

43. Finally, O Lord, who art God, and not flesh and blood, if man doth see anything less, can anything lie hid from "Thy good Spirit," who shall "lead me into the land of uprightness,"[1] which Thou Thyself, by those words, wert about to reveal to future readers, although he through whom they were spoken, amid the many interpretations that might have been found, fixed on but one? Which, if it be so, let that which he thought on be more exalted than the rest. But to us, O Lord, either point out the same, or any other true one which may be pleasing unto Thee; so that whether Thou makest known to us that which Thou didst to that man of Thine, or some other by occasion of the same words, yet Thou mayest feed us, not error deceive us.[2] Behold, O Lord my God, how many things we have written concerning a few words,—how many, I beseech Thee! What strength of ours, what ages would suffice for all Thy books after this manner? Permit me, therefore, in these more briefly to confess unto Thee, and to select some one true, certain, and good sense, that Thou shalt inspire, although many senses offer themselves, where many, indeed, may; this being the faith of my confession, that if I should say that which Thy minister felt rightly and profitably, this I should strive for; the which if I shall not attain, yet I may say that which Thy Truth willed through Its words to say unto me, which said also unto him what it willed.

[illegible] have seen (see notes, pp. 49 and 115), was frequently [illegible] interpretation, but he, none the less, laid stress on the [illegible] obscure and allegorical passages when it was necessary to [illegible] Christianity (*De Unit. Eccl.* ch. 5). It should also be [illegible]ed the meaning deduced from a doubtful Scripture, he [illegible] meaning must be *sacræ fidei congruam*. Compare [illegible]ok i.; and *ibid.* viii.) 4 and 7. See also notes, pp. 291

BOOK THIRTEENTH.

OF THE GOODNESS OF GOD EXPLAINED IN THE CREATION OF THINGS, AND OF THE TRINITY AS FOUND IN THE FIRST WORDS OF GENESIS. THE STORY CONCERNING THE ORIGIN OF THE WORLD (GEN. I.) IS ALLEGORICALLY EXPLAINED, AND HE APPLIES IT TO THOSE THINGS WHICH GOD WORKS FOR SANCTIFIED AND BLESSED MAN. FINALLY, HE MAKES AN END OF THIS WORK, HAVING IMPLORED ETERNAL REST FROM GOD.

CHAP. I.—*He calls upon God, and proposes to himself to worship Him.*

1. I CALL upon Thee, my God, my mercy, who madest me, and who didst not forget me, though forgetful of Thee. I call Thee into[1] my soul, which by the desire which Thou inspirest in it Thou preparest for Thy reception. Do not Thou forsake me calling upon Thee, who didst anticipate me before I called, and didst importunately urge with manifold calls that I should hear Thee from afar, and be converted, and call upon Thee who calledst me. For Thou, O Lord, hast blotted out all my evil deserts, that Thou mightest not repay into my hands wherewith I have fallen from Thee, and Thou hast anticipated all my good deserts, that Thou mightest repay into Thy hands wherewith Thou madest me; because before I was, Thou wast; nor was I [anything] to which Thou mightest grant being. And yet behold, I am, out of Thy goodness, anticipating all this which Thou hast made me, and of which Thou hast made me. For neither hadst Thou stood in need of me, nor am I such a good as to be helpful unto Thee,[2] my Lord and God; not that I may so serve [illegible] as though Thou wert fatigued in [illegible] Thy po[illegible] be less if lacki[illegible] be [illegible]

may so cultivate Thee that Thou wouldest be uncultivated did I cultivate Thee not; but that I may serve and worship Thee, to the end that I may have well-being from Thee, from whom it is that I am one susceptible of well-being.

CHAP. II.—*All creatures subsist from the plenitude of Divine goodness.*

2. For of the plenitude of Thy goodness Thy creature subsists, that a good, which could profit Thee nothing, nor though of Thee was equal to Thee, might yet be, since it could be made of Thee. For what did heaven and earth, which Thou madest in the beginning, deserve of Thee? Let those spiritual and corporeal natures, which Thou in Thy wisdom madest, declare what they deserve of Thee to depend thereon,—even the inchoate and formless, each in its own kind, either spiritual or corporeal, going into excess, and into remote unlikeness unto Thee (the spiritual, though formless, more excellent than if it were a formed body; and the corporeal, though formless, more excellent than if it were altogether nothing), and thus they as formless would depend upon Thy Word, unless by the same Word they were recalled to Thy Unity, and endued with form, and from Thee, the one sovereign Good, were all made very good. How have they deserved of Thee, that they should be even formless, since they would not be even this except from Thee?

How has corporeal matter deserved of Thee, to be even invisible, and [illegible], since it were not even this [illegible] Thou not made it; and therefore since it was not, it could not deserve of Thee that it should be made? Or how could the inchoate spiritual creature[2] deserve of Thee, that even it should flow darksomely like the deep,—unlike Thee, had it not been by the same Word turned to that by Whom it was created, and by Him so enlightened become light, although not equally, yet [illegible] to that Form which [illegible] unto Thee [illegible] is [illegible] one with being

beautiful, for then it could not be deformed; so also to a created spirit, to live is not all one with living wisely, for then it would be wise unchangeably. But it is good[1] for it always to hold fast unto Thee,[2] lest, in turning from Thee, it lose that light which it hath obtained in turning to Thee, and relapse into a light resembling the darksome deep. For even we ourselves, who in respect of the soul are a spiritual creature, having turned away from Thee, our light, were in that life "sometimes darkness;"[3] and do labour amidst the remains of our darkness, until in Thy Only One we become Thy righteousness, like the mountains of God. For we have been Thy judgments, which are like the great deep.[4]

CHAP. III.—*Genesis* i. 3,—*Of "light,"—he understands as it is seen in the spiritual creature.*

4. But what Thou saidst in the beginning of the creation, "Let there be light, and there was light,"[5] I do not unfitly understand of the spiritual creature; because there was even then a kind of life, which Thou mightest illuminate. But as it had not deserved of Thee that it should be such a life as could be enlightened, so neither, when it already was, hath it deserved of Thee that it should be enlightened. For neither could its formlessness be pleasing unto Thee, unless it became light,—now by merely existing, but by beholding the illuminating light, and cleaving unto it; so also, that it lives, and lives happily, it owes to nothing whatsoever but to Thy grace, being converted by means of a better change to that which

[1] Ps. lxxiii. 28.

[2] Similarly, in the *De Civ. Dei*, xii. 1, he argues that true blessedness is to be attained "by adhering to the Immutable Good, the Supreme God." This, indeed, imparts the only true life (see note, p. 215, above); for, as Origen says (*in S. Joh.* ii. 7), "the good man is he who truly exists," and "to be evil and to be wicked are the same as not to be." See notes, pp. 75 and 260, above.

[3] Eph. v. 8.

[4] Ps. xxxvi. 6, as in the Vulgate, which renders the Hebrew more correctly than the Authorized Version. This passage has been variously interpreted. Augustine makes "the mountains of God" to mean the saints, prophets, and apostles, while "the great deep" he interprets of the wicked and sinful. Compare *In Ev. Joh. Tract.* x. 2, and *in Ps.* xxxv. 7, sec. 10.

[5] Gen. i. 3.

[6] Compare the close of chap. 24 of book xii. of the *De Civ. Dei*, where he says that the life and light and joy of the holy city which is above is in God.

can be changed neither into better nor into worse; the which Thou only art because Thou only simply art, to whom it is not one thing to live, another to live blessedly, since Thou art Thyself Thine own Blessedness.

CHAP. IV.—*All things have been created by the grace of God, and are not of Him as standing in need of created things.*

5. What, therefore, could there be wanting unto Thy good, which Thou Thyself art, although these things had either never been, or had remained formless,—the which Thou madest not out of any want, but out of the plenitude of Thy goodness, restraining them and converting them to form not as though Thy joy were perfected by them? For to Thee, being perfect, their imperfection is displeasing, and therefore were they perfected by Thee, and were pleasing unto Thee; but not as if Thou wert imperfect, and wert to be perfected in their perfection. For Thy good Spirit was borne over the waters,[1] not borne up by them as if He rested upon them. For those in whom Thy good Spirit is said to rest,[2] He causes to rest in Himself. But Thy incorruptible and unchangeable will, which in itself is all-sufficient for itself, was borne over that life which Thou hadst made, to which to live is not all one with living happily, since, flowing in its own darkness, it liveth also; for which it remaineth to be converted unto Him by whom it was made and to live more and more by "the fountain of life," and in His light to "see light,"[3] and to be perfected, and enlightened, and made happy.

CHAP. V.—*He recognises the Trinity in the first two verses of Genesis.*

6. Behold now, the Trinity appears unto me in an enigma, which Thou O my God, art, since Thou, O Father, in the Beginning of our wisdom,—Which is Thy Wisdom born of Thyself, equal and co-eternal unto Thee,—that is, in Thy Son, hast created heaven and earth. Many things have we said of the heaven of heavens, and of the earth invisible and formless, and of the darksome deep, in reference to the wandering defects of its spiritual deformity, were it not converted unto Him from whom was its life, such as it was, and by His enlightening

[1] Gen. i. 2. [2] Num. xi. [illegible] [3] Ps. xxxvi. 9.

became a beauteous life, and the heaven of that heaven which was afterwards set between water and water. And under the name of God, I now held the Father, who made these things; and under the name of the Beginning,[1] the Son, in whom He made these things; and believing, as I did, that my God was the Trinity, I sought further in His holy words, and behold, Thy Spirit was borne over the waters. Behold the Trinity, O my God, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost,—the Creator of all creation.

CHAP. VI.—*Why the Holy Ghost should have been mentioned after the mention of heaven and earth.*

7. But what was the cause, O Thou true-speaking Light? Unto Thee do I lift up my heart, let it not teach me vain things; disperse its darkness, and tell me, I beseech Thee, by our mother charity, tell me, I beseech Thee, the reason why, after the mention of heaven, and of the earth invisible and formless, and darkness upon the deep, Thy Scripture should then at length mention Thy Spirit? Was it because it was meet that it should be spoken of Him that He was "borne over," and this could not be said, unless that were first mentioned "over" which Thy Spirit may be understood to have been "borne?" For neither was he "borne over" the Father, nor the Son, nor could it rightly be said that He was "borne over" if He were "borne over" nothing. That, therefore, was first to be spoken of "over" which He might be "borne;" and then He, who it was not meet to mention otherwise than as having been "borne." Why, then, was it not meet that it should otherwise be mentioned of Him, than as having been "borne over?"

CHAP. VII.—*That the Holy Spirit brings us to God.*

8. Hence let him that is able now follow Thy apostle with his understanding where he thus speaks, because Thy love "is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us;"[2] and where, "concerning spiritual things" he teacheth and showeth unto us a more excellent way of charity;[3] and where he bows his knees unto Thee for us,

[1] See also xi. sec. 10, and note, above.

[2] Rom. v. 5.

[3] 1 Cor. xii. 1, 31.

that we may know the super-eminent knowledge of the love of Christ.[1] And, therefore, from the beginning was He super-eminently "borne above the waters." To whom shall I tell this? How speak of the weight of lustful desires, pressing downwards to the steep abyss? and how charity raises us up again, through Thy Spirit which was "borne over the waters?" To whom shall I tell it? How tell it? For neither are there places in which we are merged and emerge.[2] What can be more like, and yet more unlike? They be affections, they be loves; the filthiness of our spirit flowing away downwards with the love of cares, and the sanctity of Thine raising us upwards by the love of freedom from care; that we may lift our hearts[3] unto Thee where Thy Spirit is "borne over the waters;" and that we may come to that pre-eminent rest, when our soul shall have passed through the waters which have no substance.[4]

CHAP. VIII.—*That nothing whatever, short of God, can yield to the rational creature a happy rest.*

9. The angels fell, the soul of man fell,[5] and they have thus indicated the abyss in that dark deep, ready for the whole

[1] Eph. iii. 14-19.

[2] "Neque enim loca sunt quibus mergimur et emergimus."

[3] Watts remarks here: "This sentence was generally in the Church service and communion. Nor is there scarce any one old liturgy but hath it. *Sursum corda, Habemus ad Dominum.*" Palmer, speaking of the Lord's Supper, says, in his *Origines Liturgicæ*, iv. 14, that "Cyprian, in the third century, attested the use of the form, 'Lift up your hearts,' and its response, in the liturgy of Africa (Cyprian, *De Orat. Dom.* p. 152, *Opera*, ed. Fell). Augustine, at the beginning of the fifth century, speaks of these words as being used in *all* churches" (Aug. *De Vera Relig.* iii.). We find from the same writer, *ibid.* v. 5, that in several churches this sentence was used in the office of baptism.

[4] "Sine substantia," the *Old Ver.* rendering of Ps. cxxiv. 5. The Vulgate gives "Aquam intolerabilem." The Authorized Version, however, correctly renders the Hebrew by "proud waters," that is, *swollen*. Augustine, in *Ps.* cxxiii. 5, sec. 9, explains the "aqua sine substantia," as the water of sins; "for," he says, "sins have not substance; they have weakness, not substance; want, not substance."

[5] We may note here that Augustine maintains the existence of the relationship between these two events. He says in his *Enchiridion*, c. xxix., that "the restored part of humanity will fill up the gap which the rebellion and fall of the devils had left in the company of the angels. For this is the promise to the saints, that at the resurrection they shall be equal to the angels of God (Luke xx. 36).

spiritual creation, unless Thou hadst said from the beginning, "Let there be light," and there had been light, and every obedient intelligence of Thy celestial City had cleaved to Thee, and rested in Thy Spirit, which unchangeably is "borne over" everything changeable. Otherwise, even the heaven of heavens itself would have been a darksome deep, whereas now it is light in the Lord. For even in that wretched restlessness of the spirits who fell away, and, when unclothed of the garments of Thy light, discovered their own darkness, dost Thou sufficiently disclose how noble Thou hast made the rational creature; to which nought which is inferior to Thee will suffice to yield a happy rest,[1] and so not even herself. For Thou, O our God, shalt enlighten our darkness;[2] from Thee are derived our garments of light,[3] and then shall our darkness be as the noonday.[4] Give Thyself unto me, O my God, restore Thyself unto me; behold, I love Thee, and if it be too little, let me love Thee more strongly. I cannot measure my love so that I may come to know how much there is yet wanting in me, ere my life run into Thy embracements, and not be turned away until it be hidden in the secret place of Thy Presence.[5] This only I know, that woe is me except in Thee,—not only without, but even also within

And thus the Jerusalem which is above, which is the mother of us all, the City of God, shall not be spoiled of any of the number of her citizens, shall perhaps reign over even a more abundant population." He speaks to the same effect at the close of ch. 2 of his *De Civ. Dei*, xxii. This doctrine was enlarged upon by some of the writers of the seventeenth century.

[1] See his *De Civ. Dei*, xxii. 1, where he beautifully compares sin to blindness, in that it makes us miserable in depriving us of the sight of God. Also his *De Cat. Rud.* sec. 21, where he shows that the restlessness and changefulness of the world cannot give rest. Comp. p. 4, note 1, above.

[2] Ps. xviii. 28. [3] Ps. civ. 2. [4] Ps. cxxxix. 12.

[5] Ps. xxxi. 20. "In abscondito vultus tui," *Old Ver.* Augustine in his comment on this passage (*Enarr.* 4, sec. 8) gives us his interpretation. He points out that the refuge of a particular place (*e.g.* the bosom of Abraham) is not enough. We must have Christ with us here as our refuge, and then we will be hidden in His countenance hereafter; or in other words, if we receive Him into our heart now, He will hereafter receive us into His countenance—*Ille post hoc saeculum excipiet te vultu suo.* For heaven is a prepared place for a prepared people, and we must be fitted to live with Him there by going to Him now, and this, to quote from his *De Serm. Dom. in Mon.* i. 27, "not with a slow movement of the body, but with the swift impulse of love."

myself; and all plenty which is not my God is poverty to me.[1]

CHAP. IX.—*Why the Holy Spirit was only "borne over" the waters.*

10. But was not either the Father or the Son "borne over the waters?" If we understand this to mean in space, as a body, then neither was the Holy Spirit; but if the incommutable super-eminence of Divinity above everything mutable, then both Father, and Son, and Holy Ghost were borne "over the waters." Why, then, is this said of Thy Spirit only? Why is it said of Him alone? As if He had been in place who is not in place, of whom only it is written, that He is Thy gift?[2] In Thy gift we rest; there we enjoy Thee. Our rest is our place. Love lifts us up thither, and Thy good Spirit lifteth our lowliness from the gates of death.[3] In Thy good pleasure lies our peace.[4] The body by its own weight gravitates towards its own place. Weight goes not downward only, but to its own place. Fire tends upwards, a stone downwards. They are propelled by their own weights, they seek their own places. Oil poured under the water is raised above the water; water poured upon oil sinks under the oil. They are propelled by their own weights, they seek their own places. Out of order, they are restless; restored to order, they are at rest. My weight is my love;[5] by it am I borne wheresoever I am borne. By Thy Gift we are inflamed, and are borne upwards; we wax hot inwardly, and go forwards. We ascend Thy ways that be in our heart,[6] and sing a song of degrees; we glow inwardly with Thy fire, with Thy good fire, and we go, because we go upwards to the peace of Jerusalem; for glad was I when they said unto me "Let us go into the house of the Lord."[7] There hath Thy good pleasure placed us, that we may desire no other thing than to dwell there for ever.

[1] See p. 215, note 11, above.

[2] See *De Trin.* xv. 17–19.

[3] Ps. ix. 13.

[4] Luke ii. 14, *Vulg.*

[5] Compare *De Civ. Dei* xi. 28: "For the specific gravity of bodies is, as it were, their love, whether they are carried downwards by their weight, or upwards by their levity."

[6] Ps. lxxxiv. 5.

[7] Ps. cxxii. 1.

CHAP. X.—*That nothing arose save by the gift of God.*

11. Happy creature, which, though in itself it was other than Thou, hath known no other state than that as soon as it was made, it was, without any interval of time, by Thy Gift, which is borne over everything mutable, raised up by that calling whereby Thou saidst, "Let there be light, and there was light." Whereas in us there is a difference of times, in that we were darkness, and are made light;[1] but of that it is only said what it would have been had it not been enlightened. And this is so spoken as if it had been fleeting and darksome before; that so the cause whereby it was made to be otherwise might appear,—that is to say, being turned to the unfailing Light it might become light. Let him who is able understand this; and let him who is not,[2] ask of Thee. Why should he trouble me, as if I could enlighten any "man that cometh into the world?"[3]

CHAP. XI.—*That the symbols of the Trinity in man, To Be, To Know, and To Will, are never thoroughly examined.*

12. Which of us understandeth the Almighty Trinity?[4] And yet which speaketh not of It, if indeed it be It? Rare is that

[1] Eph. v. 8.

[2] *Et qui non potest*, which words, however, some MSS. omit, reading, *Qui potest, intelligat; a te petat.*

[3] John i. 9; see p. 76, note 2, and p. 330, note 6, above.

[4] As Augustine constantly urges of God, "Cujus nulla scientia est in anima, nisi scire quomodo eam nesciat" (*De Ord.* ii. 18), so we may say of the Trinity. The objectors to the doctrine sometimes speak as if it were irrational (Mansel's *Bampton Lectures*, lect. vi., notes 9, 10). But while the doctrine is *above* reason, it is not *contrary* thereto; and, as Dr. Newman observes in his *Grammar of Assent*, v. 2 (a book which the student should remember has been written since his union with the Roman Church), though the doctrine be mysterious, and, when taken as a whole, transcends all our experience, there is that on which the spiritual life of the Christian can repose in its "propositions taken one by one, and that not in the case of intellectual and thoughtful minds only, but of all religious minds whatever, in the case of a child or a peasant as well as of a philosopher." With the above compare the words of Leibnitz in his "Discours de la Conformité de la Foi avec la Raison," sec. 56: "Il en est de même des autres mystères, où les esprits modérés trouveront toujours une explication suffisante pour croire, et jamais autant qu'il faut pour comprendre. Il nous suffit d'un certain *ce que c'est* (τί ἐστι), mais le *comment* (πῶς) nous passe, et ne nous est point nécessaire" (*Discourses de Locke et Leibnitz*). See also p. 318, note 1, above, on the "incomprehensibility" of eternity.

soul which, while it speaketh of It, knows what it speaketh of. And they contend and strive, but no one without peace seeth that vision. I could wish that men would consider these three things that are in themselves. These three are far other than the Trinity; but I speak of things in which they may exercise and prove themselves, and feel how far other they be.[1] But the three things I speak of are, To Be, to Know, and to Will. For I Am, and I Know, and I Will; I Am Knowing and Willing; and I Know myself to Be and to Will; and I Will to Be and to Know. In these three, therefore, let him who can see how inseparable a life there is,—even one life, one mind, and one essence; finally, how inseparable is the distinction, and yet a distinction. Surely a man hath it before him; let him look into himself, and see, and tell me. But when he discovers and can say anything of these, let him not then think that he has discovered that which is above these Unchangeable, which Is unchangeably, and Knows unchangeably, and Wills unchangeably. And whether on account of these three there is also, where they are, a Trinity

[1] While giving illustrations of the Trinity like the above, he would not have a man think "that he has discovered that which is above these, Unchangeable." (See also *De Trin.* xv. 5, end.) He is very fond of such illustrations. In his *De Civ. Dei*, xi. 26, 27, for example, we have a parallel to this in our text, in the union of existence, knowledge, and love in man; in his *De Trin.* ix. 4, 17, 18, we have mind, knowledge, and love; *ibid.* x. 19, memory, understanding, and will; and *ibid.* xi. 18, memory, thought, and will. In his *De Lib. Arb.* ii. 7, again, we have the doctrine illustrated by the union of being, life, and knowledge in man. He also finds illustrations of the doctrine in other created things, as in their measure, weight, and number (*De Trin.* xi. 18), and their existence, figure, and order (*De Vera Relig.* xiii.). The nature of these illustrations would at first sight seem to involve him in the Sabellian heresy, which denied the fulness of the Godhead to each of the three Persons of the Trinity; but this is only in appearance. He does not use these illustrations as presenting anything *analogous* to the union of the three Persons in the Godhead, but as dimly illustrative of it. He declares his belief in the Athanasian doctrine, which, as Dr. Newman observes (*Grammar of Assent*, v. 2), "may be said to be summed up in this very formula on which St. Augustine lays so much stress,—'Tres et Unus,' not merely 'Unum.'" Nothing can be clearer than his words in his *De Civ. Dei*, xi. 24. "When we inquire regarding each singly, it is said that each is God and Almighty; and when we speak of all together, it is said that there are not three Gods, nor three Almighties, but one God Almighty." Compare with this his *De Trin.* vii., end of ch. 11, where the language is equally emphatic. See also Mansel, as above, lect. vi. and notes 11 and 12.

or whether these three be in Each, so that the three belong to Each; or whether both ways at once, wondrously, simply, and yet diversely, in Itself a limit unto Itself, yet illimitable; whereby It is, and is known unto Itself, and sufficeth to Itself, unchangeably the Self-same, by the abundant magnitude of its Unity,—who can readily conceive? Who in any wise express it? Who in any way rashly pronounce thereon?

CHAP. XII.—*Allegorical explanation of Genesis,* chap. i., *concerning the origin of the Church and its worship.*

13. Proceed in thy confession, say to the Lord thy God, O my faith, Holy, Holy, Holy, O Lord my God, in Thy name have we been baptized, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, in Thy name do we baptize, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost,[1] because among us also in His Christ did God make heaven and earth, namely, the spiritual and carnal people of His Church.[2] Yea, and our earth, before it received the "form of doctrine,"[3] was invisible and formless, and we were covered with the darkness of ignorance. For Thou correctest man for iniquity,[4] and "Thy judgments are a great deep."[5] But because Thy Spirit was "borne over the waters,"[6] Thy mercy forsook not our misery,[7] and Thou saidst, "Let there be light," "Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand."[8] Repent ye, let there be light.[9] And because our soul was troubled within us,[10] we remembered Thee, O Lord, from the land of Jordan, and that mountain[11] equal unto Thyself, but little for our sakes; and

[1] Matt. xxviii. 19.

[2] He similarly interprets "heaven and earth" in his *De Gen. ad Lit.* ii. 4. With this compare Chrysostom's illustration in his *De Pœnit.* hom. 8. The Church is like the ark of Noah, yet different from it. [illegible] that [illegible] animals entered, so they came forth. The fox remained a [illegible] and the serpent a serpent. But with the spiritual ark it i[illegible]sitions are changed. This illustration of Chrysostom[illegible]ugh eloquence by the Italian preacher Segneri, [illegible]

[3] Rom. vi. 17. [4] Ps[illegible]

[5] Gen. i. 3.

[6] "His put[illegible]

upon our being displeased with our darkness, we turned unto Thee, "and there was light." And, behold, we were sometimes darkness, but now light in the Lord.[1]

CHAP. XIII.—*That the renewal of man is not completed in this world.*

14. But as yet "by faith, not by sight,"[2] for "we are saved by hope; but hope that is seen is not hope."[3] As yet deep calleth unto deep[4] but in "the noise of Thy waterspouts."[5] And as yet doth he that saith, I "could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal,"[6] even he, as yet, doth not count himself to have apprehended, and forgetteth those things which are behind, and reacheth forth to those things which are before,[7] and groaneth being burdened;[8] and his soul thirsteth after the living God, as the hart after the water-brooks, and saith, "When shall I come?"[9] "desiring to be clothed upon with his house which is from heaven;"[10] and calleth upon this lower deep, saying, "Be not conformed to this world, but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind."[11] And, "Be not children in understanding, howbeit in malice be ye children," that in "understanding ye may be perfect;"[12] and "O foolish Galatians, who hath bewitched you?"[13] But now not in his own voice, but in Thine who sentest Thy Spirit from above;[14] through Him who "ascended up on high,"[15] and set open the flood-gates of His gifts,[16] that the force of His streams might make glad the city of God.[17] For, for Him doth "the friend of the bridegroom"[18] sigh, having now the first-fruits of the Spirit laid up with Him, yet still groaning within himself, wai[illegible] for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of his [illegible] sighs, for he is a member of the Bride; for H[illegible] he is the friend of the Bridegroom;[20]

[illegible]or. v. 7. [3] Rom. viii. 24.

[illegible]s do the majority of Patristic commen-

[illegible]ran; and the "deep" that calls

[illegible] even as Peter had.

for Him is he jealous, not for himself; because in the voice of Thy "waterspouts,"[1] not in his own voice, doth he call on that other deep, for whom being jealous he feareth, lest that, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so their minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in our Bridegroom, Thine only Son.[2] What a light of beauty will that be when "we shall see Him as He is,"[3] and those tears be passed away which "have been my meat day and night, while they continually say unto me, Where is thy God?"[4]

CHAP. XIV.—*That out of the children of the night and of the darkness, children of the light and of the day are made.*

15. And so say I too, O my God, where art Thou? Behold where Thou art! In Thee I breathe a little, when I pour out my soul by myself in the voice of joy and praise, the sound of him that keeps holy-day.[5] And yet it is "cast down," because it relapses and becomes a deep, or rather it feels that it is still a deep. Unto it doth my faith speak which Thou hast kindled to enlighten my feet in the night, "Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted in me? hope thou in God;"[6] His "word is a lamp unto my feet."[7] Hope and endure until the night,—the mother of the wicked,—until the anger of the Lord be overpast,[8] whereof we also were once children who were sometimes darkness,[9] the remains whereof we carry about us in our body, dead on account of sin,[10] "until the day break and the shadows flee away."[11] "Hope thou in the Lord." In the morning I shall stand in Thy presence, and contemplate Thee;[12] I shall for ever confess unto Thee.[13] In the morning I shall stand in Thy presence, and shall see "the health of my countenance,"[14] my God, who also shall quicken [illegible] mortal bodies by the Spirit that dwelleth in us,[15] because [illegible] He was borne over our inner darksome and floating [illegible] we have in this pilgrimage received "an [illegible] should [illegible] be light, [illegible] as yet [illegible]

[illegible] k, [illegible] il dispo[illegible] ective but ro[illegible] serm. iv. sec. 10.

[5] Ps. xxxvi. 6.

[8] Matt. iii. 2.

[illegible] hat baptism was anciently called [illegible] nation, as [illegible] Ps. xlii. 2. [illegible] W. See also p. 179, note 1, part 1, above, for the me[illegible] of "illumination."

[10] Ps. xlii. 6.

[11] That is, Christ. See p. 210, note 3, part 2, above; and compare the *De Div. Quæst.* lxxxiii. 6.

hope,"[2] and are the children of light, and the children of the day,—not the children of the night nor of the darkness,[3] which yet we have been.[4] Betwixt whom and us, in this as yet uncertain state of human knowledge, Thou only dividest, who provest our hearts[5] and callest the light day, and the darkness night.[6] For who discerneth us but Thou? But what have we that we have not received of Thee?[7] Out of the same lump vessels unto honour, of which others also are made to dishonour.[8]

CHAP. XV.—*Allegorical explanation of the firmament and upper waters, ver. 6.*

16. Or who but Thou, our God, made for us that firmament[9] of authority over us in Thy divine Scripture?[10] As it is said, For heaven shall be folded up like a scroll;[11] and now it is extended over us like a skin.[12] For Thy divine Scripture is of more sublime authority, since those mortals through whom Thou didst dispense it unto us underwent mortality. And Thou knowest, O Lord, Thou knowest, how Thou with skins didst clothe men[13] when by sin they became mortal. Whence as a skin hast Thou stretched out the firmament of Thy Book;[14] that is to say, Thy harmonious words, which by the ministry of mortals Thou hast spread over us. For by their very death is that solid firmament of authority in Thy

[1] Rom. viii. 24.

[2] Though *of* the light, we are not yet in the light; and (though, in this grey dawn of the coming day, we have a foretaste of the vision that shall be, we cannot hope, as he says in 1 Jn. v. 4, to "see Him as He is" until the darkness of sin be overpast.

[3] Eph. v. 8, and 1 Thess. v. 5. [4] Ps. vii. 9. [5] Gen. i. 5.

[6] 1 Cor. iv. 7. [7] Rom. ix. 21. [8] Gen. i. 6.

[9] See sec. , below, and references there given.

[10] Isa. xxxiv. 4, and Rev. vi. 14.

[11] Ps. civ. 2; in the *Vulg.* being "extendens cœlum *sicut pellem*." The LXX. agrees with the *Vulg.* in translating יְרִיעָה, "as a curtain," by "as a skin."

[12] Gen. iii. 21. Skins he makes the emblems of mortality, as being taken from dead animals. See p. 166, note 1, above.

[13] That is, the firmament of Scripture was after man's sin stretched over him as a parchment scroll,—stretched over him for his enlightenment by the ministry of mortal men. This idea is enlarged on *in Ps.* viii. 4, sec. 7, etc., xviii. sec. 2, xxxii. 6, 7, and cxlvi. 8, sec. 15.

discourses set forth by them more sublimely extended above all things that are under it, the which, while they were living here, was not so eminently extended.[1] Thou hadst not as yet spread abroad the heaven like a skin; Thou hadst not as yet noised everywhere the report of their deaths.

17. Let us look, O Lord, "upon the heavens, the work of Thy fingers;"[2] clear from our eyes that mist with which Thou hast covered them. There is that testimony of Thine which giveth wisdom unto the little ones.[3] Perfect, O my God, Thy praise out of the mouth of babes and sucklings.[4] Nor have we known any other books so destructive to pride, so destructive to the enemy and the defender,[5] who resisteth Thy reconciliation in defence of his own sins.[6] I know not, O Lord, I know not other such "pure"[7] words which so persuade me to confession, and make my neck submissive to Thy yoke, and invite me to serve Thee for nought. Let me understand these things, good Father. Grant this to me, placed under them; because Thou hast established these things for those placed under them.

18. Other "waters" there be "above" this "firmament," I believe immortal, and removed from earthly corruption. Let them praise Thy Name,—those super-celestial people, Thine angels, who have no need to look up at this firmament, or by reading to attain the knowledge of Thy Word,—let them praise Thee. For they always behold Thy face,[8] and therein read without any syllables in time what Thy eternal will willeth. They read, they choose, they love.[9] They are always reading; and that which they read never passeth away. For, by choosing and by loving, they read the very unchangeableness of Thy counsel. Their book is not closed, nor is the scroll folded up,[10] because Thou Thyself art this to them, yea, and art so eternally; because Thou hast appointed them above this firmament, which Thou hast made firm over the weakness of

[1] We have the same idea *in Ps.* ciii. sec. 8: "Cum enim viverent nondum erat extenta pellis, nondum erat extentum cœlum, ut tegeret orbem terrarum."
[2] Ps. viii. 3. [3] Ps. xix. 7. See p. 43, note 1, above. [4] Ps. viii. 2.
[5] He alludes to the Manichæans. See notes, pp. 55, 88, and 102.
[6] See part 2 of note on p. 77, above. [7] Ps. xix. 8. [8] Matt. xviii. 10.
[9] "Legunt, eligunt, et diligunt." [10] Isa. xxxiv. 4.

the lower people, where they might look up and learn Thy mercy, announcing in time Thee who hast made times. "For Thy mercy, O Lord, is in the heavens, and Thy faithfulness reacheth unto the clouds."[1] The clouds pass away, but the heaven remaineth. The preachers of thy Word pass away from this life into another; but Thy Scripture is spread abroad over the people, even to the end of the world. Yea, both heaven and earth shall pass away, but Thy Words shall not pass away.[2] Because the scroll shall be rolled together,[3] and the grass over which it was spread shall with its goodliness pass away; but Thy Word remaineth for ever,[4] which now appeareth unto us in the dark image of the clouds, and through the glass of the heavens, not as it is;[5] because we also, although we be the well-beloved of Thy Son, yet it hath not yet appeared what we shall be.[6] He looketh through the lattice[7] of our flesh, and He is fair-speaking, and hath inflamed us, and we run after His odours.[8] But "when He shall appear, then shall we be like Him, for we shall see Him as He is."[9] As He is, O Lord, shall we see Him, although the time be not yet.

CHAP. XVI.—*That no one but the Unchangeable Light knows himself.*

19. For altogether as Thou art, Thou only knowest, Who art unchangeably, and knowest unchangeably, and willest unchangeably. And Thy Essence Knoweth and Willeth unchangeably; and Thy Knowledge Is, and Willeth unchangeably; and Thy Will Is, and Knoweth unchangeably. Nor doth it appear just to Thee, that as the Unchangeable Light knoweth Itself, so should It be known by that which is enlightened and changeable.[10] Therefore unto Thee is my soul as "land

[1] Ps. xxxvi. 5. [2] Matt. xxiv. 35. [3] Isa. xxxiv. 4.

[4] Isa. xl. 6-8. The law of storms and that which regulates the motions of the stars or the ebbing and flowing of the tides, may change at the "end of the world." But the moral law can know no change, for while the first is arbitrary, the second is absolute. On the difference between moral and natural law, see Candlish, *Reason and Revelation*, "Conscience and the Bible."

[5] 1 Cor. xiii. 12. [6] 1 John iii. 2. [7] Cant. ii. 9.

[8] Cant. i. 3. [9] 1 John iii. 2.

[10] See Dean Mansel on this place (*Bampton Lectures*, lect. v. note 18), who argues that revelation is clear and devoid of mystery when viewed as intended

where no water is,"[1] because as it cannot of itself enlighten itself, so it cannot of itself satisfy itself. For so is the fountain of life with Thee, like as in Thy light we shall see light.[2]

CHAP. XVII.—*Allegorical explanation of the sea and the fruit-bearing earth*—verses 9 and 11.

20. Who hath gathered the embittered together into one society? For they have all the same end, that of temporal and earthly happiness, on account of which they do all things, although they may fluctuate with an innumerable variety of cares. Who, O Lord, unless Thou, saidst, Let the waters be gathered together into one place, and let the dry land appear,[3] which "thirsteth after Thee"?[4] For the sea also is Thine, and Thou hast made it, and Thy hands prepared the dry land.[5] For neither is the bitterness of men's wills, but the gathering together of waters called sea; for Thou even curbest the wicked desires of men's souls, and fixest their bounds, how far they may be permitted to advance,[6] and that their waves may be broken against each other; and thus dost Thou make it a sea, by the order of Thy dominion over all things.

21. But as for the souls that thirst after Thee, and that appear before Thee (being by other bounds divided from the society of the sea), them Thou waterest by a secret and sweet

"for our practical guidance," and not as a matter of speculation. He says: "The utmost deficiency that can be charged against human faculties amounts only to this, that we cannot say that we know God as God knows Himself,—that the truth of which our finite minds are susceptible may, for aught we know, be but the passing shadow of some higher reality, which exists only in the Infinite Intelligence." He shows also that this deficiency pertains to the human faculties as such, and that, whether they set themselves to consider the things of nature or revelation. See also p. 359, note 2, above, and notes, pp. 370, 371, below.

[1] Ps. lxiii. 1.

[2] Ps. xxxvi. 9.

[3] Gen. i. 9. In his comment on Psalm lxiv. 6 (sec. 9), he interprets "the sea," allegorically, of the wicked world. Hence were the disciples called "fishers of men." If the fishers have taken us in the nets of faith, we are to rejoice, because the net will be dragged to the shore. On the providence of God, regulating the wickedness of men, see p. 53, note 1, above.

[4] Ps. cxliii. 6, and lxiii. 1.

[5] Ps. xcv. 5.

[6] Ps. civ. 9, and Job xxxviii. 11, 12.

spring, that the earth may bring forth her fruit,[1] and, Thee, O Lord God, so commanding, our soul may bud forth works of mercy according to their kind,[2]—loving our neighbour in the relief of his bodily necessities, having seed in itself according to its likeness, when from our infirmity we compassionate even to the relieving of the needy; helping them in a like manner as we would that help should be brought unto us if we were in a like need; not only in the things that are easy, as in "herb yielding seed," but also in the protection of our assistance, in our very strength, like the tree yielding fruit; that is, a good turn in delivering him who suffers an injury from the hand of the powerful, and in furnishing him with the shelter of protection by the mighty strength of just judgment.

CHAP. XVIII.—*Of the lights and stars of heaven—of day and night*, ver. 14.

22. Thus, O Lord, thus, I beseech Thee, let there arise, as Thou makest, as Thou givest joy and ability,—let "truth spring out of the earth, and righteousness look down from heaven,"[3] and let there be "lights in the firmament."[4] Let us break our bread to the hungry, and let us bring the houseless poor to our house.[5] Let us clothe the naked, and despise not those of our own flesh.[6] The which fruits having sprung forth from the earth, behold, because it is good;[7] and let our temporary light burst forth;[8] and let us, from this inferior fruit of action, possessing the delights of contemplation and of the Word of life above, let us appear as lights in the world,[9] clinging to the firmament of Thy Scripture. For therein Thou makest a plain unto us, that we may distinguish between things intelligible and things of sense, as if between the day and the night; or between souls, given, some to things

[1] Gen. i. 11. As he interprets (see sec. 20, note, above) the *sea* as the world, so he tells us in Ps. lxvi. 6, sec. 8, that when the *earth*, full of thorns, thirsted for the waters of heaven, God in His mercy sent His apostles to preach the gospel, whereon the earth brought forth that fruit which fills the world; that is, the earth bringing forth fruit represents the Church.

[2] Ps. lxxxv. 11. [3] *Ibid.* [4] Gen. i. 14.

[5] Isa. lviii. 7. [6] *Ibid.* [7] Gen. i. 12.

[8] Isa. lviii. 8. [9] Phil. ii. 15.

intellectual, others to things of sense; so that now not Thou only in the secret of Thy judgment, as before the firmament was made, dividest between the light and the darkness, but Thy spiritual children also, placed and ranked in the same firmament (Thy grace being manifest throughout the world), may give light upon the earth, and divide between the day and night, and be for signs of times; because "old things have passed away," and "behold all things are become new;"[1] and "because our salvation is nearer than when we believed;"[2] and because "the night is far spent, the day is at hand;"[3] and because Thou wilt crown Thy year with blessing,[4] sending the labourers of Thy goodness into Thy harvest,[5] in the sowing of which others have laboured, sending also into another field, whose harvest shall be in the end.[6] Thus Thou grantest the prayers of him that asketh, and blessest the years of the just;[7] but Thou art the same, and in Thy years which fail not[8] Thou preparest a garner for our passing years. For by an eternal counsel Thou dost in their proper seasons bestow upon the earth heavenly blessings.

23. For, indeed, to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom, as if the greater light, on account of those who are delighted with the light of manifest truth, as in the beginning of the day; but to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit, as if the lesser light;[9] to another faith; to another the gift of healing; to another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another the discerning of spirits; to another divers kinds of tongues. And all these as stars. For all these worketh the one and self-same Spirit, dividing to every man his own as He willeth;[10] and making stars appear manifestly to profit withal.[11] But the word of knowledge, wherein are contained all sacra-

[1] 2 Cor. v. 17. [2] Rom. xiii. 11, 12. [3] *Ibid.*
[4] Ps. lxv. 11. [5] Matt. ix. 38. [6] Matt. xiii. 39.
[7] Prov. x. 6. [8] Ps. cii. 27.
[9] Compare his *De Trin.* xii. 22-55, where, referring to 1 Cor. xii. 8, he explains that "knowledge" has to do with *action*, or that by which we use rightly things temporal; while wisdom has to do with the *contemplation* of things eternal. See also *in Ps.* cxxxv. sec. 8.
[10] 1 Cor. xii. 8-11. [11] 1 Cor. xii. 7.

ments,[1] which are varied in their periods like the moon, and the other conceptions of gifts, which are successively reckoned up as stars, inasmuch as they come short of that splendour of wisdom in which the fore-mentioned day rejoices, are only for the beginning of the night. For they are necessary to such as he Thy most prudent servant could not speak unto as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal[2]—even he who speaketh wisdom among those that are perfect.[3] But the natural man, as a babe in Christ,—and a drinker of milk,—until he be strengthened for solid meat,[4] and his eye be

[1] 1 Cor. xiii. 2. The Authorized Version and the Vulgate render more correctly, "mysteries." From Palmer (see p. 178, note 5, above), we learn that "the Fathers gave the name of *sacrament* or *mystery* to everything which conveyed one signification or property to unassisted reason, and another to faith;" while, at the same time, they counted Baptism and the Lord's Supper as the two great sacraments. The sacraments, then, used in this sense are "varied in their periods," and Augustine, *in Ps.* lxxiii. 2, speaks of distinguishing between the sacraments of the Old Testament and the sacraments of the New. "Sacramenta novi Testamenti," he says, "dant salutem, sacramenta veteris Testamenti promiserunt salvatorem." So also *in Ps.* xlvi. he says: "Our Lord God varying, indeed, the sacraments of the words, but commending unto us one faith, hath diffused through the sacred Scriptures manifoldly and variously the faith in which we live, and by which we live. For one and the same thing is said in many ways, that it may be varied in the manner of speaking in order to prevent aversion, but may be preserved as one with a view to concord."

[2] 1 Cor. iii. 1. [3] 1 Cor. ii. 6.

[4] 1 Cor. iii. 2, and Heb. v. 12. The allusion in our text is to what is called the *Disciplina Arcani* of the early Church. Clement of Alexandria, in his [illegible] enters largely into the matter of esoteric teaching, and traces its use [illegible] Hebrews, Greeks and Egyptians. Clement, like Chrysostom and [illegible], supports this principle of interpretation on the authority of St. Paul in Heb. v. and 1 Cor. referred to by Augustine above. He says (as quoted by Bishop Kaye, *Clement of Alexandria*, ch. iv. p. 183): 'Babes must be fed with milk, the perfect man with solid food; milk is catechetical instruction, the first nourishment of the soul; solid food, contemplation penetrating into all mysteries (ἐποπτικὴ θεωρία), the blood and flesh of the Word, the comprehension of the Divine power and essence.' Augustine, therefore, when he speaks of being "contented with the light of the moon and stars," alludes to the partial knowledge imparted to the catechumen during his probationary period before baptism. It was only as *competentes*, and ready for baptism, that the catechumens were taught the Lord's Prayer and the Creed. We have already adverted to this matter in the note on p. 108, and need not now do more than refer the reader to Dr. Newman's *Arians*. In ch. i. sec. 3 of that work, there are some most interesting pages on this subject, in its connection with the Catechetical School of Alexandria. See also p. 180, note 4, above; Palmer, *Origines Liturgicæ*, iv. sec. 7; and p. 371, note 1, below.

enabled to look upon the Sun,[1] let him not dwell in his own deserted night, but let him be contented with the light of the moon and the stars. Thou reasonest these things with us, our All-wise God, in Thy Book, Thy firmament, that we may discern all things in an admirable contemplation, although as yet in signs, and in times, and in days, and in years.

CHAP. XIX.—*All men should become lights in the firmament of heaven.*

24. But first, "Wash you, make you clean;"[2] put away iniquity from your souls, and from before mine eyes, that the dry land may appear. "Learn to do well; judge the fatherless; plead for the widow,"[3] that the earth may bring forth the green herb for meat, and the tree bearing fruit;[4] and come let us reason together, saith the Lord,[5] that there may be lights in the firmament of heaven, and that they may shine upon the earth.[6] That rich man asked of the good Master what he should do to attain eternal life.[7] Let the good Master, whom he thought a man, and nothing more, tell him (but He is "good" because He is God)—let Him tell him, that if he would "enter into life" he must "keep the commandments;"[8] let him banish from himself the bitterness of malice and wickedness;[9] let him not kill, nor

[1] Those ready for strong meat were called "illuminated" (see p. 1[illegible] above), as their eyes were "enabled to look upon the Sun." We hav[illegible] traces in Augustine's writings of the Neo-Platonic doctrine that [illegible] capacity to see God, even as the eye the sun. In *Serm.* [illegible] "Daretne tibi unde videres solem quem fecit, et non [illegible] cum qui te fecit, cum sol imaginem suam fecerit?" And, referring to [illegible] iii. 2, he tells us in *Ep.* xcii. 3, that not with the bodily eye shall we see G[illegible] but with the inner, which is to be renewed day by day: "We shall, therefore, see Him according to the measure in which we shall be like Him; because now the measure in which we do not see Him is according to the measure of our unlikeness to Him." Compare also Justin Martyr, *Dialogue with Trypho*, c. 4: "Plato, indeed, says, that the mind's eye is of such a nature, and has been given for this end, that we may see that very Being who is the cause of all when the mind is pure itself." Some interesting remarks on this subject, and on the three degrees of divine knowledge as held by the Neo-Platonists, will be found in John Smith's *Select Discourses*, pp. 2 and 165 (Cambridge 1860). On growth in grace, see note 3, p. 234, above.

[2] "He alludes to the sacrament of Baptism."—W. W. [illegible] i. 16, 19.

[3] Isa. i. 17. [illegible] n. i. 18.

[4] Gen. i. 11, 30. [5] Isa. i. 18. [illegible] 1 Cor.

[7] Matt. xix. 16. [8] *Ibid.* ver. 17.

commit adultery, nor steal, nor bear false witness; that the dry land may appear, and bud forth the honouring of father and mother, and the love of our neighbour.[1] All these, saith he, have I kept.[2] Whence, then, are there so many thorns, if the earth be fruitful? Go, root up the woody thicket of avarice; sell that thou hast, and be filled with fruit by giving to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven; and follow the Lord "if thou wilt be perfect,"[3] coupled with those amongst whom He speaketh wisdom, Who knoweth what to distribute to the day and to the night, that thou also mayest know it, that for thee also there may be lights in the firmament of heaven, which will not be unless thy heart be there;[4] which likewise also will not be unless thy treasure be there, as thou hast heard from the good Master. But the barren earth was grieved,[5] and the thorns choked the word.[6]

25. But you, "chosen generation,[7] you weak things of the world," who have forsaken all things that you might "follow the Lord," go after Him, and "confound the things which are mighty;"[8] go after Him, ye beautiful feet,[9] and shine in the firmament,[10] that the heavens may declare His glory, dividing between the light of the perfect, though not as of [illegible]s, and the darkness of the little, though not despised [illegible] Shine over all the earth, and let the day, lightened [illegible] sun, utter unto day the word of wisdom; and let [illegible], shining by the moon, announce unto night the word [illegible]nowledge.[11] The moon and the stars shine for the [illegible]ght, but the night obscureth them not, since they illumine [illegible] in its degree. For behold God (as it were) saying, "Let there be lights in the firmament of the heaven." There came suddenly a sound from heaven, as it had been the rushing of a mighty wind, and there appeared cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.[12] And there were ma[illegible] lights in the firmament of heaven, having the word

[1] Matt. xix. 16–19.
[2] *Ibid.* ver. 20.
[3] *Ibid.* ver 21.
[4] Matt. vi. 21.
[5] Matt. xix. 22.
[6] Matt. xiii. 7, 22.
[7] 1 Pet. ii. 9.
[8] 1 Cor. i. 27.
[9] Isa. lii. 7.
[10] Dan. xii. 3.
[11] Ps. xix.
[12] Acts ii. 3.

of life.[1] Run ye to and fro everywhere, ye holy fires, ye beautiful fires; for ye are the light of the world,[2] nor are ye put under a bushel.[3] He to whom ye cleave is exalted, and hath exalted you. Run ye to and fro, and be known unto all nations.

CHAP. XX.—*Concerning reptiles and flying creatures* (ver. 20),—*the sacrament of Baptism being regarded.*

26. Let the sea also conceive and bring forth your works, and let the waters bring forth the moving creatures that have life.[4] For ye, who "take forth the precious from the vile,"[5] have been made the mouth of God, through which He saith, "Let the waters bring forth," not the living creature which the earth bringeth forth, but the moving creature having life, and the fowls that fly above the earth. For Thy sacraments, O God, by the ministry of Thy holy ones, have made their way amid the billows of the temptations of the world, to instruct the Gentiles in Thy Name, in Thy Baptism. And amongst these things, many great works of wonder have been wrought, likeas great whales; and the voices of Thy messengers flying above the earth, near to the firmament of Thy Book; that being set over them as an authority, under which they were to fly whithersoever they were to go. For "there is no speech, nor language, where their voice is not heard;" seeing their sound[6] "hath gone through all the earth, and their words to

[1] 1 John i. 1.

[2] That is, as having their light from Him who is their central Sun (see p. 76, note 2, above). For it is true of all Christians in relation to their Lord, as he says of John the Baptist (*Serm.* ccclxxxii. 7): "Johannes lucerna illuminatum: Christus lumen illuminans." See also p. 371, note, above.

[3] Matt. v. 14. [4] Gen. i. 20. [5] Jer. xv. 19.

[6] Ps. xix. 3, 4. The word "sound" in this verse (as given in the LXX. and *Vulg.*), is in the Hebrew קַוָּם, which is rightly rendered in the Authorized Version a "line" or "rule." It may be noted, in connection with Augustine's interpretation that the word "firmament" in the first verse of this psalm is the רָקִיעַ of Gen. i. 7, translated in both places by the LXX. στερέωμα. The "heavens" and the "firmament" are constantly interpreted by the Fathers as referring to the apostles and their firmness in teaching the Word; and this is supported by reference to St. Paul's quotation of the text in Rom. x. 18: "But I say, Have they not heard? Yes, verily, their sound went into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the world."

might feed the dry land; and the fowl, though bred in the sea, is yet multiplied upon the earth. For of the first preachings of the Evangelists, the infidelity of men was the prominent cause; but the faithful also are exhorted, and are manifoldly blessed by them day by day. But the living soul takes its origin from the earth, for it is not profitable, unless to those already among the faithful, to restrain themselves from the love of this world, that so their soul may live unto Thee, which was dead while living in pleasures,[1]—in death-bearing pleasures, O Lord, for Thou art the vital delight of the pure heart.

30. Now, therefore, let Thy ministers work upon the earth, —not as in the waters of infidelity, by announcing and speaking by miracles, and sacraments, and mystic words; in which ignorance, the mother of admiration, may be intent upon them, in fear of those hidden signs. For such is the entrance unto the faith for the sons of Adam forgetful of Thee, while they hide themselves from Thy face,[2] and become a darksome deep. But let Thy ministers work even as on the dry land, separated from the whirlpools of the great deep; and let them be an example unto the faithful, by living before them, and by stimulating them to imitation. For thus do men hear not with an intent to hear merely, but to act also. Seek the Lord, and your soul shall live,[3] that the earth may bring forth the living soul. "Be not conformed to this world."[4] Restrain yourselves from it; the soul lives by avoiding those things which it dies by affecting. Restrain yourselves from the unbridled wildness of pride, from the indolent voluptuousness of luxury, and from the false name of

means Christ, in accordance with the well-known acrostic of ΙΧΘΥΣ. "If," he says in his *De Civ. Dei*, xviii. 23, "you join the initial letters of these five Greek words, Ἰησοῦς Χριστὸς Θεοῦ Υἱὸς Σωτήρ, which mean, 'Jesus Christ the Son of God, the Saviour,' they will make the word ἰχθύς,—that is, 'fish,' in which word Christ is mystically understood, because He was able to live, that is, to exist without sin in the abyss of this mortality as in the depth of waters." So likewise we find Tertullian saying in his *De Bapt.* ch. i.: "Nos pisciculi, secundum ΙΧΘΥΝ nostrum Jesum Christum in aqua nascimur; nec aliter quam in aqua permanendo salvi sumus." See Bishop Kaye's *Tertullian*, pp. 43, 44; and sec. 34, below.

[1] 1 Tim. v. 6. [2] Gen. iii. 8. [3] Ps. lxix. 32. [4] Rom. xii. 2.

knowledge;[1] so that wild beasts may be tamed, the cattle subdued, and serpents harmless. For these are the motions of the mind in allegory; that is to say, the haughtiness of pride, the delight of lust, and the poison of curiosity are the motions of the dead soul; for the soul dies not so as to lose all motion, because it dies by forsaking the fountain of life,[2] and so is received by this transitory world, and is conformed unto it.

31. But Thy Word, O God, is the fountain of eternal life, and passeth not away; therefore this departure is kept in check by Thy word when it is said unto us, "Be not conformed unto this world,"[3] so that the earth may bring forth a living soul in the fountain of life,—a soul restrained in Thy Word, by Thy Evangelists, by imitating the followers of Thy Christ.[4] For this is after his kind; because a man is stimulated to emulation by his friend.[5] "Be ye," saith he, "as I am, for I am as you are."[6] Thus in the living soul shall there be good beasts, in gentleness of action. For Thou hast commanded, saying, Go on with thy business in meekness, and thou shalt be beloved by all men;[7] and good cattle, which neither if they eat, shall they over-abound, nor if they do not eat, have they any want;[8] and good serpents, not destructive to do hurt, but "wise"[9] to take heed; and exploring only so much of this temporal nature as is sufficient that eternity may be "clearly seen, being understood by the things that are."[10] For these animals are subservient to reason;[11] when, being kept in check from a deadly advance, they live, and are good.

CHAP. XXII.—*He explains the Divine Image* (ver. 26) *of the renewal of the mind.*

32. For behold, O Lord our God, our Creator, when our affections have been restrained from the love of the world, by

[1] 1 Tim. vi. 20. See p. 265, note 5, above.
[2] Jer. ii. 13. See p. 215, note 11, and p. 207, note 1, above.
[3] Rom. xii. 2. [4] 1 Cor. xi. 1. [5] See p. 63, note 2, above.
[6] Gal. iv. 12. [7] Ecclus. iii. 17, etc. [8] 1 Cor. viii. 8.
[9] Matt. x. 16. [10] Rom. i. 20.
[11] In his *De Gen. con. Manich.* i. 20, he interprets the dominion given to man over the beasts of his keeping in subjection the passions of the soul, so as to attain true happiness.

which we died by living ill, and began to be a "living soul" by living well;[1] and Thy word which Thou spakest by Thy apostle is made good in us, "Be not conformed to this world;" next also follows that which Thou presently subjoinedst, saying, "But be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind,"[2]—not now after your kind, as if following your neighbour who went before you, nor as if living after the example of a better man (for Thou hast not said, "Let man be made after his kind," but, "Let us make man in our image, after our likeness"),[3] that we may prove what Thy will is. For to this purpose said that dispenser of Thine,—begetting children by the gospel,[4]—that he might not always have them "babes," whom he would feed on milk, and cherish as a nurse;[5] "be ye transformed," saith He, "by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect will of God."[6] Therefore Thou sayest not, "Let man be made," but, "Let us make man." Nor sayest Thou, "after his kind," but, after "our image" and "likeness." Because, being renewed in his mind, and beholding and apprehending Thy truth, man needeth not man as his director[7] that he may imitate his kind; but by Thy direction proveth what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect will of Thine. And Thou teachest him, now made capable, to perceive the Trinity of the Unity, and the Unity of the Trinity. And therefore this being said in the plural, "Let us make man," it is yet subjoined in the singular, "and God made man;" and this being said in the plural, "after our likeness," is subjoined in the singular, "after the image of God."[8] Thus is man renewed in the knowledge of God, after the image of Him that created him;[9] and being made spiritual, he judgeth all things, —all things that are to be judged,—"yet he himself is judged of no man."[10]

[1] As Origen has it: "The good man is he who truly exists." See p. 353, note 2, above; and compare the use made of the idea in Archbishop Thomson's *Bampton Lectures*, lect. i.

[2] Rom. xii. 2.
[3] Gen. i. 26.
[4] 1 Cor. iv. 15.
[5] 1 Thess. ii. 7.
[6] Rom. xii. 2.
[7] Jer. xxxi. 34.
[8] Gen. i. 27.
[9] Col. iii. 10.
[10] 1 Cor. ii. 15.

CHAP. XXIII.—*That to have power over all things* (ver. 26) *is to judge spiritually of all.*

33. But that he judgeth all things answers to his having dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowls of the air, and over all cattle and wild beasts, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. For this he doth by the discernment of his mind, whereby he perceiveth the things "of the Spirit of God;"[1] whereas, otherwise, man being placed in honour, had no understanding, and is compared unto the brute beasts, and is become like unto them.[2] In Thy Church, therefore, O our God, according to Thy grace which Thou hast accorded unto it, since we are Thy workmanship created in good works,[3] there are not only those who are spiritually set over, but those also who are spiritually subjected to those placed over them; for in this manner hast Thou made man, male and female,[4] in Thy grace spiritual, where, according to the sex of body, there is not male and female, because neither Jew nor Greek, nor bond nor free.[5] Spiritual persons, therefore, whether those that are set over, or those who obey, judge spiritually; not of that spiritual knowledge which shines in the firmament, for they ought not to judge as to an authority so sublime, nor doth it behove them to judge of Thy Book itself, although there be something that is not clear therein; because we submit our understanding unto it, and esteem as certain that even that which is shut up from our sight is rightly and truly spoken.[6] For

[1] 1 Cor. ii. 14. [2] Ps. xlix. 20. [3] Eph. ii. 10.
[4] Gen. i. 27. [5] Gal. iii. 28.

[6] In his *De Civ. Dei*, xi. 3, he defines very distinctly (as he does in other of his writings) the knowledge received "by sight"—that is, by experience, as distinguished from that which is received "by faith"—that is, by revelation (2 Cor. v. 7). He, in common with all the Fathers who had knowledge of the Pagan philosophy, would feel how utterly that philosophy had failed to "find out" (Job xi. 7) with certitude anything as to *God and His character*,—the *Creation* of the world,—the *Atonement* wrought by Christ,—the doctrine of the *Resurrection*, as distinguished from the Immortality of the Soul,—our *Immortal Destiny* after death, or "*the Restitution of all things*." As to the knowledge of God, see Justin Martyr's experience in the schools of philosophy, *Dialogue with Trypho*, ch. ii.; and on the doctrine of Creation, see p. 295, note. On the "Restitution of all things," etc., reference may be made to Mansel's *Gnostics*, who points

thus man, although now spiritual and renewed in the knowledge of God after His image that created him, ought yet to be the "doer of the law, not the judge."[1] Neither doth he judge of that distinction of spiritual and carnal men, who are known to Thine eyes, O our God, and have not as yet made themselves manifest unto us by works, that by their fruits we may know them;[2] but Thou, O Lord, dost already know them, and Thou hast divided and hast called them in secret, before the firmament was made. Nor doth that man, though spiritual, judge the restless people of this world; for what hath he to do to judge them that are without,[3] knowing not which of them may afterwards come into the sweetness of Thy grace, and which continue in the perpetual bitterness of impiety?

34. Man, therefore, whom Thou hast made after Thine own image, received not dominion over the lights of heaven, nor over the hidden heaven itself, nor over the day and the night, which Thou didst call before the foundation of the heaven, nor over the gathering together of the waters, which is the sea; but he received dominion over the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the air, and over all cattle, and over all the earth, and over all creeping things which creep upon the earth. For He judgeth and approveth what He findeth right, but disapproveth what He findeth amiss, whether in the celebration of those sacraments by which are initiated those whom Thy mercy searches out in many waters; or in that in which the Fish[4] Itself is exhibited, which, being raised from the deep, the devout earth feedeth upon; or in the signs and expressions of words, subject to the authority of Thy Book,—such signs as burst forth and sound from the mouth, as it were flying under the firmament, by interpreting, expounding, discoursing, disputing,

out (Introd. p. 3) that "in the Greek philosophical systems the idea of evil holds a very subordinate and insignificant place, and that the idea of redemption seems not to be recognised at all." He shows further (*ibid.* p. 4), that "there is no idea of the delivery of the creature from the bondage of corruption. The great year of the Stoics, the commencement of the new cycle which takes its place after the destruction of the old world, is but a repetition of the old evil." See also p. 291, note, above.

[1] Jas. iv. 11.
[2] 1 Cor. v. 12.
[3] Matt. vii. 20.
[4] See sec. 29, note.

blessing, calling upon Thee, so that the people may answer, *Amen*. The vocal pronunciation of all which words is caused by the deep of this world, and the blindness of the flesh, by which thoughts cannot be seen, so that it is necessary to speak aloud in the ears; thus, although flying fowls be multiplied upon the earth, yet they derive their beginning from the waters. The spiritual man judgeth also by approving what is right and reproving what he finds amiss in the works and morals of the faithful, in their alms, as if in "the earth bringing forth fruit;" and he judgeth of the "living soul," rendered living by softened affections, in chastity, in fastings, in pious thoughts; and of those things which are perceived through the senses of the body. For it is now said, that he should judge concerning those things in which he has also the power of correction.

CHAP. XXIV.—*Why God has blessed men, fishes, flying creatures, and not herbs and the other animals* (ver. 28).

35. But what is this, and what kind of mystery is it? Behold, Thou blessest men, O Lord, that they may "be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth;"[1] in this dost Thou not make a sign unto us that we may understand something? Why hast Thou not also blessed the light, which Thou calledst day, nor the firmament of heaven, nor the lights, nor the stars, nor the earth, nor the sea? I might say, O our God, that Thou, who hast created us after Thine Image,—I might say, that Thou hast willed to bestow this gift of blessing especially upon man, hadst Thou not in like manner blessed the fishes and the whales, that they should be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the waters of the sea, and that the fowls should be multiplied upon the earth. Likewise might I say that this blessing belonged properly unto such creatures as are propagated from their own kind, if I had found it in the herbs, and the fruit trees, and beasts of the earth. But [illegible] is it not said either unto the herbs, or trees, or beasts, or [illegible]erts, "Be fruitful and multiply;" since all these also, as well as fishes, and fowls, and men, do by propagation increase and preserve their kind.

[1] Gen. i. 28.

36. What, then, shall I say, O Thou Truth, my Light,—"that it was idly and vainly said?" Not so, O Father of piety; far be it from a minister of Thy word to say this. But if I understand not what Thou meanest by that phrase, let my betters—that is, those more intelligent than I—use it better, in proportion as Thou, O my God, hast given to each to understand. But let my confession be also pleasing before Thine eyes, in which I confess to Thee that I believe, O Lord, that Thou hast not thus spoken in vain; nor will I be silent as to what this lesson suggests to me. For it is true, nor do I see what should prevent me from thus understanding the figurative sayings[1] of Thy books. For I know a thing may be manifoldly signified by bodily expression which is understood in one manner by the mind; and that that may be manifoldly understood in the mind which is in one manner signified by bodily expression. Behold, the single love of God and of our neighbour, by what manifold sacraments and innumerable languages, and in each several language in how innumerable modes of speaking, it is bodily expressed. Thus do the young of the waters increase and multiply. Observe again, whosoever thou art who readest; behold what Scripture delivers, and the voice pronounces in one only way, "In the beginning God created heaven and earth;" is it not manifoldly understood, not by any deceit of error, but by divers kinds of true senses? Thus are the offspring of men "fruitful" and do "multiply."

37. If, therefore, we conceive of the natures of things, not allegorically, but properly, then does the phrase, "be fruitful and multiply," correspond to all things which are begotten of seed. But if we treat those words as taken figuratively (the which I rather suppose the Scripture intended, which doth not, verily, superfluously attribute this benediction to the offspring of marine animals and man only), then do we find that "multitude" belongs also to creatures both spiritual and corporeal, as in heaven and in earth; and to souls both righteous and unrighteous, as in light and darkness; and to holy authors, through whom the law has been furnished unto us, as in the

[1] See p. 115, note, above. [2] See p. 350, note, above.

firmament[1] which has been firmly placed betwixt waters and waters; and to the society of people yet endued with bitterness, as in the sea; and to the desire of holy souls, as in the dry land; and to works of mercy pertaining to this present life, as in the seed-bearing herbs and fruit-bearing trees; and to spiritual gifts shining forth for edification, as in the lights of heaven; and to affections formed unto temperance, as in the living soul. In all these cases we meet with multitudes, abundance, and increase; but what shall thus "be fruitful and multiply," that one thing may be expressed in many ways, and one expression understood in many ways, we discover not, unless in signs corporeally expressed, and in things mentally conceived. We understand the signs corporeally pronounced as the generations of the waters, necessarily occasioned by carnal depth; but things mentally conceived we understand as human generations, on account of the fruitfulness of reason. And therefore do we believe that to each kind of these it has been said by Thee, O Lord, "Be fruitful and multiply." For in this blessing I acknowledge that a power and faculty has been granted unto us, by Thee, both to express in many ways what we understand but in one, and to understand in many ways what we read as obscurely delivered but in one. Thus are the waters of the sea replenished, which are not moved but by various significations; thus even with the human offspring is the earth also replenished, the dryness[2] whereof appeareth in its desire, and reason ruleth over it.

CHAP. XXV.—*He explains the fruits of the earth* (ver. 29) *of works of mercy.*

38. I would also say, O Lord my God, what the following Scripture reminds me of; yea, I will say it without fear. For I will speak the truth, Thou inspiring [illegible] what Thou willest that I should say out of these [illegible] or by none other than Thy inspiration do I believe [illegible] speak the truth, since Thou art the Truth, but every man a liar.[3] And therefore he that "speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own;"[4] therefore that I may speak the truth, I will speak of Thine.

[1] See p. 373, note 6, above.
[2] See sec. 21, and note, above.
[3] Rom. iii. 4, and Ps. cxvi. 11.
[4] John viii. 44.

Behold, Thou hast given unto us for food "every herb bearing seed," which is upon the face of all the earth, "and every tree in the which is the fruit of a tree yielding seed."[1] Nor to us only, but to all the fowls of the air, and to the beasts of the earth, and to all creeping things;[2] but unto the fishes, and great whales Thou hast not given these things. Now we were saying, that by these fruits of the earth works of mercy were signified and figured in an allegory, the which are provided for the necessities of this life out of the fruitful earth. Such an earth was the godly Onesiphorus, unto whose house Thou didst give mercy, because he frequently refreshed Thy Paul, and was not ashamed of his chain.[3] This did also the brethren, and such fruit did they bear, who out of Macedonia supplied what was wanting unto him.[4] But how doth he grieve for certain trees, which did not afford him the fruit due unto him, when he saith, "At my first answer no man stood with me, but all men forsook me: I pray God that it may not be laid to their charge."[5] For these fruits are due to those who minister spiritual[6] doctrine, through their understanding of the divine mysteries; and they are due to them as men. They are due to them, too, as to the living soul, supplying itself as an example in all continency; and due unto them likewise as flying creatures, for their blessings which are multiplied upon the earth, since their sound went out into all lands.[7]

CHAP. XXV.—*In the confessing of benefits, computation is made not as to the "gift," but as to the "fruit,"—that is, the good and right will of the giver.*

39. But they who are delighted with them are fed by those fruits; nor are they delighted with them "whose god is their belly."[8] For neither in those that yield them are the things given the fruit, but in what spirit they give them. Therefore he who serves God and not his own belly,[9] I plainly see

[1] [illegible] [2] *Ibid.* ver. 30. [3] 2 Tim. i. 16.
[illegible] v. 16.
[illegible] A[illegible] of the holy things. So, *reasonable* [illegible] 2, *sincere* milk. Clem. Alex. calls Bapti[illegible] *Apost.* vi. 23, the Eucharist is styled, a r[illegible] [illegible] used to distinguish Christian mysteries fro[illegible] [illegible]*le.*"—W. W.
[7] Ps. xix. 4. [illegible] 19. [9] Rom. xvi. 18.

why he may rejoice; I see it, and I rejoice with him exceedingly. For he hath received from the Philippians those things which they had sent from Epaphroditus;[1] but yet I see why he rejoiced. For whereat he rejoices, upon that he feeds; for speaking in truth, "I rejoiced," saith he, "in the Lord greatly, that now at the last your care of me hath flourished again, wherein ye were also careful,"[2] but it had become wearisome unto you. These Philippians, then, by protracted wearisomeness, had become enfeebled, and as it were dried up, as to bringing forth this fruit of a good work; and he rejoiceth for them, because they flourished again, not for himself, because they ministered to his wants. Therefore, adds he, "not that I speak in respect of want, for I have learned in whatsoever state I am therewith to be content. I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound; everywhere and in all things I am instructed both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need. I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me."[3]

40. Whereat, then, dost thou rejoice in all things, O great Paul? Whereat dost thou rejoice? Whereon dost thou feed, O man renewed in the knowledge of God, after the image of Him that cr[illegible] thou living soul of so great continency, and thou tongue like flying fowls, speaking mysteries,—for to such creatures is this food due,—what is that which feeds thee? Joy. Let us hear what follows. "Notwithstanding," saith he, "ye have well done that ye did communicate with my affliction."[4] Hereat doth he rejoice, hereon doth he feed; because they have well done,[5] not because his strait was relieved, who saith unto thee, "Thou hast enlarged me when I was in distress;"[6] because he knew both "to abound and to suffer need,"[7] in Thee Who strengthenest him. For, saith he, "ye Philippians know also that in the beginning of the gospel, when I departed from Macedonia, no Church com-

[1] Phil. iv. 18. [2] *Ibid.* ver. 10. [3] *Ibid.* vers. 11–13. [4] *Ibid.* ver. 14.
[5] Compare p. 281, note, above. [6] Ps. iv. 1.
[7] Compare his *De Bono Conjug.* ch. xxi., where he points out that while any may suffer need and abound, to *know* how to suffer belongs only to great souls, and to *know* how to abound to those whom abundance does not corrupt.

municated with me as concerning giving and receiving, but ye only. For even in Thessalonica ye sent once and again unto my necessity."[1] Unto these good works he now rejoiceth that they have returned; and is made glad that they flourished again, as when a fruitful field recovers its greenness.

41. Was it on account of his own necessities that he said, "Ye have sent unto my necessity"? Rejoiceth he for that? Verily not for that. But whence know we this? Because he himself continues, "Not because I desire a gift, but I desire fruit."[2] From Thee, O my God, have I learned to distinguish between a "gift" and "fruit." A gift is the thing itself which he gives who bestows these necessaries, as money, food, drink, clothing, shelter, aid; but the fruit is the good and right will of the giver. For the good Master saith not only, "He that receiveth a prophet," but addeth, "in the name of a prophet." Nor saith He only, "He that receiveth a righteous man," but addeth, "in the name of a righteous man." So, verily, the former shall receive the reward of a prophet, the latter that of a righteous man. Nor saith He only, "Whosoever shall give to drink unto one of these little ones a cup of cold water," but addeth, "in the name of a disciple;" and so concludeth, "Verily I say unto you, he shall in no wise lose his reward."[3] The gift is to receive a prophet, to receive a righteous man, to hand a cup of cold water to a disciple; but the fruit is to do this in the name of a prophet, in the name of a righteous man, in the name of a disciple. With fruit was Elijah fed by the widow, who knew that she fed a man of God, and on this account fed him; but by the raven was he fed without fruit. Nor was the inner man[4] of Elijah fed, but the outer only, which might also from want of such food have perished.

CHAP. XXVII.—*Many are ignorant as to this, and ask for miracles, which are signified under the names of "fishes" and "whales."*

42. Therefore will I speak before Thee, O Lord, what is true, which to ignorant men and infidels (for the initiating and gaining of whom the sacraments of initiation and great works

[1] Phil. iv. 15, 16. [2] *Ibid.* ver. 17. [3] Matt. x. 41, 42.
[4] 1 Kings xvii. See p. 215, note 11, above.

of miracles are necessary,[1] which we believe to be signified under the name of "fishes" and "whales") undertake that Thy servants should be bodily refreshed, or should be otherwise succoured for this present life, although they may be ignorant wherefore this is to be done, and to what end; neither do the former feed the latter, nor the latter the former; for neither do the one perform these things through a holy and right intent, nor do the other rejoice in the gifts of those who behold not as yet the fruit. For on that is the mind fed wherein it is gladdened. And, therefore, fishes and whales are not fed on such food as the earth bringeth not forth until it had been separated and divided from the bitterness of the waters of the sea.

CHAP. XXVIII.—*He proceeds to the last verse, "All things are very good,"—that is, the work being altogether good.*

43. And Thou, O God, sawest everything that Thou hadst made, and behold it was very good.[2] So we also see the same, and behold all are very good. In each particular kind of Thy works, when Thou hadst said, "Let them be made," and they were made, Thou sawest that it was good. Seven times have I counted it written that Thou sawest that that which Thou madest was "good;" and this is the eighth, that Thou sawest all things that Thou hadst made, and behold they are not only good, but also "very good" as being now taken together. For individually they were only good, but all taken together they were both good and very good. All beautiful bodies also express this; for a body which consists of members, all of which are beautiful, is far more beautiful than the several members individually are by themselves; well-ordered union the whole is completed, though these members also be severally beautiful.[3]

[1] We have already referred (p. 59, note, above) to the cessation of miracles. Augustine has a beautiful passage in *Serm.* cxxiv. 5, on the evidence which we have in the spread of Christianity—it doing for us what miracles did for the early Church. Compare also *De Civ. Dei*, xxii. 8. And he frequently alludes, as, for example, *in Ps.* cxxx., to "charity" being more desirable than the power of working miracles.

[2] Gen. i. 31.

[3] In his *De Gen. con. Manich.* i. 21, he enlarges to the same effect on Gen. i. 31.

CHAP. XXIX.—*Although it is said eight times that "God saw that it was good," yet time has no relation to God and His Word.*

44. And I looked attentively to find whether seven or eight times Thou sawest that Thy works were good, when they were pleasing unto Thee; but in Thy seeing I found no times, by which I might understand that Thou sawest so often what Thou madest. And I said, "O Lord, is not this Thy Scripture true, since Thou art true, and being Truth hast set it forth? Why, then, dost Thou say unto me that in Thy seeing there are no times, while this Thy Scripture telleth me that what Thou madest each day, Thou sawest to be good; and when I counted them I found how often?" Unto these things Thou repliest unto me, for Thou art my God, and with strong voice tellest unto Thy servant in his inner ear, bursting through my deafness, and crying, "O man, that which My Scripture saith, I say; and yet doth that speak in time; but time has no reference to My Word, because My Word existeth in equal eternity with Myself. Thus those things which ye see through My Spirit, I see, just as those things which ye speak through My Spirit, I speak. And so when ye see those things in time, I see them not in time; as when ye speak them in time, I speak them not in time."

CHAP. XXX.—*He refutes the opinions of the Manichæans and the Gnostics concerning the origin of the world.*

45. And I heard, O Lord my God, and drank up a drop of sweetness [illegible] Thy truth, and understood that there are certain [illegible] whom Thy works are displeasing, who say that many of them Thou madest being compelled by necessity; —such as the frame of the heavens and the courses of the stars, and that Thou madest them not of what was Thine, but, that they were [illegible] elsewhere and from other sources created; that Thou gatherest [illegible] bring together and compact and interweave, when [illegible] Thy conquered enemies Thou raisedst up the walls [illegible] universe, that they, bound down by this structure [illegible] not be able a second time to rebel against Thee. But [illegible] other things, they say Thou neither madest them nor [illegible] raisedst them;—such as all flesh and all very minute creatures, and whatsoever holdeth the earth by its

roots; but that a mind hostile unto Thee, and another nature not created by Thee, and in everywise contrary unto Thee, did, in these lower places of the world, beget and frame these things.[1] Infatuated are they who speak thus, since they see not Thy works through Thy Spirit, nor recognise Thee in them.

CHAP. XXXI.—*We do not see "that it was good" but through the Spirit of God, which is in us.*

46. But as for those who through Thy Spirit see these things, Thou seest in them. When, therefore, they see that these things are good, Thou seest that they are good; and whatsoever things for Thy sake are pleasing, Thou art pleased in them; and those things which through Thy Spirit are pleasing unto us, are pleasing unto Thee in us. "For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of a man which is in him? Even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. Now we," saith he, "have received not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit which is of God, that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God."[2] And I am reminded to say, "Truly, 'the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God;' how, then, do we also know 'what things are given us by God?'" It is answered unto me, "Because the things which we know by His Spirit, even these 'knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God.' For, as it is rightly said unto those who were to speak by the Spirit of God, 'It is not ye that speak,'[3] so is it rightly said to them who know by the Spirit of God, 'It is not ye that know.' None the less, then, is it rightly said to those that see by the Spirit of God, 'It is not ye that see;' so what they see by the Spirit of God that it is good, it is not they but God who 'sees that it is good.'" It is one thing, therefore, for a man to suppose that to be bad which is good, as the Manichees do; another, that what is good a man should see to be good (as Thy creatures are pleasing unto many, [illegible] are

[1] He alludes in the above statements to the heretical [illegible] of the Manichæans. Their speculations on these matters are enlarged [illegible] the note on p. 77.

[2] 1 Cor. ii. 12. [3] Matt. x. 20

good, whom, however, Thou pleasest not in them when they wish to enjoy them rather than enjoy Thee); and another, that when a man sees a thing to be good, God should in him see that it is good,—that in truth He may be loved in that which He made,[1] who cannot be loved unless by the Holy Ghost, which He hath given. "Because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us;"[2] by whom we see that whatsoever in any degree is, is good. Because it is from Him who Is not in any degree, but He Is that He Is.

CHAP. XXXII.—*Of the particular works of God, more especially of man.*

47. Thanks to Thee, O Lord. We behold the heaven and the earth, whether the corporeal part, superior and inferior, or the spiritual and corporeal creature; and in the embellishment of these parts, whereof the universal mass of the world or the universal creation consisteth, we see light made, and divided from the darkness. We see the firmament of heaven,[3] whether the primary body of the world between the spiritual upper waters and the corporeal lower waters, or —because this also is called heaven,—this expanse of air, through which wander the fowls of heaven, between the waters which are in vapours borne above them, and which in clear nights drop down in dew, and those which being heavy flow along the earth. We behold the waters gathered together through the plains of the sea; and the dry land both void and formed, so as to be visible and compact, and the matter of herbs and trees. We behold the lights shining from above, —the sun to serve the day, the moon and the stars to cheer the night; and the by all these, times should be marked and noted. We behold on every side a humid element, fruitful with fishes, beasts, and birds; because the density of the air, which bears up the flights of birds, is increased by the exhalation of the waters.[4] We behold the face of the earth

[1] See the end of note 3, p. 70.

[2] Rom. v. 5.

[3] In his *Retractations*, ii. 6, he says: "Non satis considerate dictum est; nisi enim in abdito est valde."

[4] Compare *De Gen. con. Manich.* ii. 17.

furnished with terrestrial creatures, and man, created after Thy image and likeness, in that very image and likeness of Thee (that is, the power of reason and understanding) on account of which he was set over all irrational creatures. And as in his soul there is one power which rules by directing, another made subject that it might obey, so also for the man was corporeally made a woman,[1] who, in the mind of her rational understanding should also have a like nature, in the sex, however, of her body should be in like manner subject to the sex of her husband, as the appetite of action is subjected by reason of the mind, to conceive the skill of acting rightly. These things we behold, and they are severally good, and all very good.

CHAP. XXXIII.—*The world was created by God out of nothing.*

48. Let Thy works praise Thee, that we may love Thee; and let us love Thee, that Thy works may praise Thee, the which have beginning and end from time,—rising and setting, growth and decay, form and privation. They have therefore their successions of morning and evening, partly hidden, partly apparent: for they were made from nothing by Thee, not of Thee, nor of any matter not Thine, or which was created before, but of concreated matter (that is, matter at the same time created by Thee), because without any interval of time Thou didst form its formlessness.[2] For since the matter of heaven and earth is one thing, and the form of heaven and earth another, Thou hast made the matter indeed of almost nothing, but the form of the world Thou hast formed of formless matter; both, however, at the same time, so that the form should follow the matter with no interval of delay.

[1] "'Concipiendam,' or the reading may be 'concupiscendam,' according to St. Augustine's interpretation of Gen. iii. 16, in the *De Gen. ad Litt.* ii. 15. 'As an instance hereof was woman made, who is in the order of things made subject to the man: that what appears more evidently in two kinds of beings, the man and the woman, may be contemplated in the one, man: viz. that the inward man, as it were manly reason, should have in subjection the appetite of the soul, whereby we act through the bodily members.'"—E. B. P.

[2] See p. 295, note, above.

CHAP. XXXIV.—*He briefly repeats the allegorical interpretation of Genesis (ch. i.), and confesses that we see it by the Divine Spirit.*

49. We have also examined what Thou willedst to be shadowed forth, whether by the creation, or the description of things in such an order. And we have seen that things severally are good, and all things very good,[1] in Thy Word, in Thine Only-Begotten, both heaven and earth, the Head and the body of the Church, in Thy predestination before all times, without morning and evening. But when Thou didst begin to execute in time the things predestinated, that Thou mightest make manifest things hidden, and adjust our disorders (for our sins were over us, and we had sunk into profound darkness away from Thee, and Thy good Spirit was borne over us to help us in due season), Thou didst both justify the ungodly,[2] and didst divide them from the wicked; and madest firm the authority of Thy Book between those above, who would be docile unto Thee, and those under, who would be subject unto them; and Thou didst collect the society of unbelievers into one conspiracy, in order that the zeal of the faithful might appear, and that they might bring forth works of mercy unto Thee, even distributing unto the poor earthly riches, to obtain heavenly. And after this didst Thou kindle certain lights in the firmament, Thy holy ones, having the word of life, and shining with an eminent authority preferred by spiritual gifts; and then again, for the instruction of the unbelieving Gentiles, didst Thou out of corporeal matter produce the sacraments and visible miracles, and sounds of words according to the firmament of Thy Book, by which the faithful should be blessed. Next didst Thou form the living soul of the faithful, through affections ordered by the vigour of continency; and afterwards, the mind subjected to Thee alone, and needing to imitate no human authority,[3] Thou didst renew after Thine image and likeness; and didst subject its rational action to the excellency of the understanding, as the woman to the man; and to all Thy ministries, necessary for the perfecting of the faithful in this life, Thou didst will that, for their temporal uses, good

[1] Gen. i. 31. [2] Rom. iv. 5. [3] See p. 294, note, above.

things, fruitful in the future time, should be given by the same faithful.[1] We behold all these things, and they are very good, because Thou dost see them in us,—Thou who hast given unto us Thy Spirit, whereby we might see them, and in them love Thee.

CHAP. XXXV.—*He prays God for that peace of rest which hath no evening.*

50. O Lord God, grant Thy peace unto us,—for Thou hast supplied us with all things,—the peace of rest, the peace of the Sabbath, which hath no evening. For all this most beautiful order of things, "very good" (all their courses being finished), is to pass away, for in them there was morning and evening.

CHAP. XXXVI.—*The seventh day, without evening and setting, the image of eternal life and rest in God.*

51. But the seventh day is without any evening, nor hath it any setting, because Thou hast sanctified it to an everlasting continuance; that that which Thou didst after Thy works, which were very good, resting on the seventh day, although in unbroken rest Thou madest them, that the voice of Thy Book may speak beforehand unto us, that we also after our works (therefore very good, because Thou hast given them unto us) may repose in Thee also in the Sabbath of eternal life.

CHAP. XXXVII.—*Of rest in God, who ever worketh, and yet is ever at rest.*

52. For even then shalt Thou so rest in us, as now Thou dost work in us; and thus shall that be our rest through us, as these are Thy works through us. But Thou, O Lord,

[1] "The peace of heaven," says Augustine in his *De Civ. Dei*, xix. 17, "alone can be truly called and esteemed the peace of the reasonable creatures, consisting as it does in the perfectly ordered and harmonious enjoyment of God, and of one another in God. When we shall have reached that peace, this mortal life shall give place to one that is eternal, and our body shall be no more this animal body which by its corruption weighs down the soul, but a spiritual body feeling no want, and in all its members subjected to the will." See p. 163, note 4 (end), above.

[2] Compare his *De Gen. ad Lit.* iv. 9: "For as God is properly said to do what we do when He works in us, so is God properly said to rest when by His gift we rest."

ever workest, and art ever at rest. Nor seest Thou in time, nor movest Thou in time, nor restest Thou in time; and yet Thou makest the scenes of time, and the times themselves, and the rest which results from time.

CHAP. XXXVIII.—*Of the difference between the knowledge of God and of men, and of the repose which is to be sought from God only.*

53. We therefore see those things which Thou madest, because they are; but they are because Thou seest them. And we see without that they are, and within that they are good, but Thou didst see them there, when made, where Thou didst see them to be made. And we were at another time moved to do well, after our hearts had conceived of Thy Spirit; but in the former time, forsaking Thee, we were moved to do evil; but Thou, the One, the Good God, hast never ceased to do good. And we also have certain good works, of Thy gift, but not eternal; after these we hope to rest in Thy great hallowing. But Thou, being the Good, needing no good, art ever at rest, because Thou Thyself art Thy rest. And what man will teach man to understand this? Or what angel, an angel? Or what angel, a man? Let it be asked of Thee, sought in Thee, knocked for at Thee; so, ever so shall it be received, so shall it be found, so shall it be opened.[1] *Amen.*

[1] Matt. vii. 7.

INDEX OF TEXTS.

GENESIS.

CHAP. PAGE
i. 1, . 67, 293, 383
i. 2, 320, n., 323, 327, 352, 354
i. 3, . . 353, 361
i. 4, . . . 374
i. 5, . . . 364
i. 6, . . . 364
i. 6-8, . . . 324
i. 7, . . 373, n.
i. 9. . 340, 367, n.
i. 11, . 368, n.
i. 11, 30, . . 371
i. 12, . . . 363
i. 14, . . 309, 368
i. 15, . . . 371
i. 17, . . 320, n.
i. 20, . . 373, 375
i. 20, 27, . 373, n., 378
i. 27, . 47, 278, 379
i. 28, . . . 381
i. 29, 30, . . 384
i. 31, . 160, n., 273, 387, n., 392
ii. 7, . . . 375
iii. 8, . . . 376
iii. 19, . . 79, 269
iii. 21, 166, n., 364, n.
ix. 3, . . . 270
xiv. 3, 10, . 38, n.
xvi. 13, 14, . . 82
xviii. 27, . 5, 242
xxii. 1, . 265, n.
xxv. 33, 34, . . 156
xxv. 34, . . 270
xxvii. 1, . . 274
xxvii. 28, . 319, n.
xlvii. 13-19, . 274

EXODUS.

iii. 14, . . 158, n.
iii. 21, 22, . 156, n.
vi. 12, . . . 291
xii. 35, 36, . 156, n.

EXODUS—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
xvi. 3, . . 156, n.
xvi. 16, . . 8, n.
xxxii. 1-6, . . 156
xxxiii. 20, . . 5

LEVITICUS.

xix. 18, . . . 281

NUMBERS.

xi. . . . 270
xi. 5, . . 156, n.
xi. 25, etc., . . 354
xvi. 2, 19, . 185, n.

DEUTERONOMY.

iv. 24, . . . 86
vi. 5, . . . 49
xxix. 5, . . 48, n.
xxxii. 39, . 27, 172
xxxii. 42, . . 172

JOSHUA.

x. 12-14, . . 310

2 SAMUEL.

xxiii. 15-17, . . 270

1 KINGS.

xvii. . . . 386
xvii. 6, . . . 270
xviii. 40, . . 46

1 CHRONICLES.

xxi. 1, . . . 185, n.

JOB.

[illegible] 10, . . . 174
ii. 13, . . 202, n.
vii. 1, *Old Ver.*, 264, 271

JOB—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
ix. 3, . . . 5
xi. 7, . . 379, n.
xiv. 1, . . . 48
xiv. 13, . . . 363
xv. 26, . . . 151
xxiii. 8, 9, . . 263
xxiv. 14-16, . . 287
xxviii. 28, . . 176
xxviii. 28, *in the* LXX., 88
xxxiii. 10-12, . 367

PSALMS.

ii. 7, . . . 301
ii. 11, . 171, 241, 267
iv. 1, . 213, 214, 385
iv. 1, *Old Ver.*, . 161
iv. 2, . . . 57
iv. 3, . . . 214
[illegible] 3-7, . . . 215
[illegible] e . . . 215
[illegible] . . 104, 215
iv. 8, . . 215, 216
iv. 8, *Vulg.*, . 227
iv. 9, *Vulg.*, . . 216
v. 3, . . . 363
v. 12, . . . 239
vi. 2, . . . 273
vi. 3, . . . 203
vi. 5, . . . 144
[illegible] . . . 364
[illegible] . . . 33
viii. . . . 365
viii. 3, . . . 365
viii. 7, 8, . . 86
viii. 8, . . . 344
ix. 9, . . . 11
ix. 13, . . . 358
x. 3, . . . 216
x. 3, *Vvlg.and* LXX., 279
xvi. 2, . . . 159
xviii. 7, . . . 273
xviii. 28, 76, n., 311, 357
xviii. 31, . . . 3

PSALMS—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
xviii. 35, . . 176
xix. . . . 372
xix. 2, . . 279
xix. 3, 4, 373, *n.*, 374
xix. 4, . . . 384
xix. 5, . . . 71
xix. 6, . . 82, 213
xix. 7, . . . 365
xix. 8, . . . 365
xix. 9, . . 58, n.
xix. 12, . . . 35
xix. 12, 13, . . 5, n.
xix. 14, . . 189, 206
xxii. 2, *Vulg.*, . 11
xxii. 25, . . 341
xxii. 26, . 2, 288
xxiii. 5, . . 375
xxv. 9, . . . 155
xxv. 11, . . 241
xxv. 15, . 65, 274
xxv. 18, . . 155
xxvi. 3, . . 275
xxvi. 7, . 292, 316
xxvi. 8, . 175, 331
xxvi. 12, *Vulg.*, . 5, n.
xxvii. 1, . . 260
xxvii. 4, . 316, 326
xxvii. 5, . . 308
xxvii. 8, . 21, 211
xxvii. 12, *Vulg.*, . 51
xxviii. 1, . . 332
xxix. 5, . 178, 212
xxix. 9, . 2[illegible] n.
xxx. 11, . . [illegible]5
xxx. 12, . . [illegible]63
xxxi. 6, 14, 18 . [illegible]69
xxxi. 10, . 298, 316
xxxi. 20, . [illegible]7, n.
xxxi. 22, . 22, 254
xxxii. 1, . . 240
xxxii. 5, . . 5
xxxii. 9, . . 245
xxxiii. 96, . . 295
xxxiii. 11, . . [illegible]
xxxiv. 5, . . [illegible]
xxxiv. 18, . . [illegible]
xxxv. 6, . . [illegible], 206
xxxv. 10, 82, [illegible]74, 296
xxxvi. 2, . . 19[illegible]
xxxvi. 5, . . 366
xxxvi. 6, 62, 353, n., 361
xxxvi. 7, . . 80
xxxvi. 9, 227, 354, 367
xxxvii. 3–11, *Vulg.*, 150
xxxvii. 23, . . 94
xxxix. 5, . . 308
xxxix. 11, . 25, 361

PSALMS—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
xxxix. 11, *Vulg.*, . 158
xli. 4, . . 59, 71, 99
xli. 8, . . . 362
xlii. 1, 2, . . 362
xlii. 2, . 326, 361, n.
xlii. 3, . . 326, 363
xlii. 4, 5, . . 363
xlii. 5, . . . 63
xlii. 6, . . . 361
xlii. 7, . . 362, 363
xlii. 10, . . . 326
xlii. 11, . . . 261
xliii. 5, . . . 363
xlv. 2, . . . 32
xlvi. 1, . . . 11
xlvi. 4, . . . 362
xlvi. 10, . . 209
xlviii. 3, . . 11
xlix. 20, . . . 379
li. 1, . . . 241
li. 5, . . . 10
li. 6, . . . 238
li. 8, . . . 62
li. 8, *Vulg.*, . . 78
li. 17, . . 60, 172
li. 19, . . . 97
lv. 7, . . . 287
lv. 22, . . . 287
lviii. 10, *Vulg.*, . 275
lix. 9, *Vulg.*, . . 89
lxii. 1, 2, . . 172
lxiii. 1, . . . 367
lxiii. 3, 8, . . 316
lxiii. 27, . . 275
lxv. 10, . . . 31
lxv. 11, . . . 368
lxviii. 2, . . 198
lxviii. 5, . . 232
lxviii. 6, 210, n., 220
lxix. 3, . . . 45
lxix. 32, . . 376
lxxi. 5, . . 107
lxxiii. 7, . . 30
lxxiii. 9, . . 72
lxxiii. 16, . . 307
[illegible]xiii. 27, . . 84
lxxiii. 28, 159, 332, 353
lxxiv. 16, . . 291
lxxiv. 21, . . 57
lxxvi. 7, . . 32
lxxvii. 10, . . 278
lxxviii. 39, . 15, 77
lxxix. 5, 8, . . 303
lxxx. 1, . . . 54
lxxx. 5, . . . 227
lxxx. 17, . . 292
lxxx. 19, . . [illegible]

PSALMS—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
lxxxiv. 5, . . 358
lxxxiv. 6, . 72, 208
lxxxv. 11, . . 368
lxxxvi. 1, . . 291
lxxxvi. 15, . . 21
lxxxviii. 1, . . 54
lxxxviii. 5, . . 287
lxxxix. 11, *Vulg.*, . 151
xci. 11, . . 271, n.
xci. 13, . . . 236
xcii. 1, . . . 9
xciii. 20, *Vulg.*, 27, n.
xciv. 1, . . . 62
xcv. 5, . . . 367
xcvi. 4, . . . 289
c. 3, . . 7, 312
ci., . . . 231
cii. 12, . . 117, 151
cii. 20, . . . 51
cii. 27, . 8, 301, 369
ciii. 3, 69, 289, 297, 287
ciii. 3–5, . 278, 298
ciii. 14, . . . 269
ciii. 20, . . . 27
civ. 2, . 357, 364, n.
civ. 9, . . . 367
civ. 15, . . . 104
civ. 24, . . 298, 336
cvi. 2, . . . 63
cvi. 20, . . . 156
cvii. 8, *Vulg.*, . 247
cix. 22, . . . 282
cxi. 10, . . 192, n.
cxii. 10, . . 180
cxv. 16, *Vulg.*, etc., 320
cxvi. 10, . 5, 238, 308
cxvi. 11, . . 283
cxvi. 12, . . . 34
cxvi. 13, . . 172
cxvi. 15, . . 220
cxvi. 16, . 29, 323
cxvi. 16, 17, . 174, 206
cxvi. 17, . . . 57
cxviii. 1, . 77, 99, 289
cxix. 18, . . 287
cxix. 37, . . 161
cxix. 85, . . 292
cxix. 85, *Old Ver.*, 202
cxix. 105, . . 363
cxix. 108, . . 236
cxix. 122, *Vulg.*, . 287
cxix. 142, . . 67
cxix. 155, *Vulg.*, . 105
cxix. 176, . . 331
cxx. 3, 4, *Old Ver.*, 203, n.
cxxi. 4, . . . 274
cxxii. 1, . . 358

PSALMS—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
cxxiv. 5, . 356, n.
cxxv. 3, . . 210
cxxx. 1, . 27, 291
cxxx. 3, . . 5
cxxxvi. 4, . . 74
cxxxvi. 6, . 375, n.
cxxxviii. 6, . . 85
cxxxix. 2, 4, . 223, n.
cxxxix. 6, . . 306
cxxxix. 7, . . 83
cxxxix. 7, 8, . . 33
cxxxix. 8, . . 2
cxxxix. 12, . . 357
cxxxix. 16, . 271, n.
cxxxix. 21, . . 329
cxxxix. 22, . . 103
cxli. 3, 4, *Vulg.*, 99, n.
cxli. 5, . . . 282
cxlii. 5, . . . 95
cxliii. 2, . . 235
cxliii. 6, . . 367
cxliii. 10, . . 350
cxliv. 5, . . 178
cxliv. 7, . . 53
cxliv. 9, . 50, n.
cxliv. 11, . . 241
cxlv. 3, . . . 1
cxlv. 15, . . 129
cxlv. 15, 16, . . 136
cxlv. 18, . . 85
cxlvii. 3, . . 318
cxlvii. 5, . . 1
cxlvii. 5, *Vulg.*, . 86
cxlviii. 1–12, . . 161
cxlviii. 4, . . 331
cxlviii. 6, . . 330
cxlix. 6, . 329, n.

PROVERBS.

iii. 7, . . . 176
viii. 22, . 171, n.
ix. 8, . . . 122
ix. 13, 14, 17, . . 46
ix. 18, . . . 45
x. 6, . . . 369
xvii. 6, *in the* LXX., 87
xxi. 20, . . . 112
xxi. 21, . . . 6
xxii. 15, . . 120
xxvii. 8, . 345, n.
xxvii. 21, . . 279

SONG OF SOLOMON.

i. 3, . . . 366

SONG OF SOLOMON—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
i. 3, 4, . . . 220
i. 4, . . . 183
ii. 9, . . . 366
ii. 17, . . . 363

ISAIAH.

i. 16–18, . . 271
vi. 2, . . . 339
x. 26, . . . 26
xiv. 13, . . . 86
xiv. 13, 14, . . 279
xxvi. 20, . 196, 332
xxviii. 15, . . 134
xxxii. 13, . . 79
xxxiii. 5, . . 22
xxxiv. 4, 364, 365, 366
xxxvii. 16, . . 339
xl. 6, 8, . . 366
xlii. 3, . . . 57
xlvi. 4, . . . 81
xlvi. 8, . . . 56
xlviii. 10, . . 279
xlviii. 22, . . 260
lii. 7, . . . 372
lvi. 8, . . . 71
lviii. 7, 8, . . 368
lviii. 10, . . 243
lxiv. 4, . . . 226

JEREMIAH.

ii. 13, . . . 377
ii. 27, . . . 26
iv. 25, . . 319, n.
xii. 15, . . . 5
xv. 19, . . . 373
xxiii. 24, . . 367
xxxi. 34, . . 373
li. 6, . . . 29

LAMENTATIONS.

iii. 48, . . . 278

DANIEL.

ix. 21, . . 216
xii. 3, . . . 372

HOSEA.

ii. 8, . . . 157
v. 11, . . 185, n.
xii. 1, . . . 58

JOEL.

CHAP. PAGE
ii. 20, . . . 23

AMOS.

v. 4, . . . 257

JONAH.

i., ... 34
iv., ... 34

MALACHI.

iii. 6, . . . 7
iii. 10, . . . 362

APOCRYPHA.

TOBIT.

iv. . . . 273

THE WISDOM OF SOLOMON.

vii. 27, . . 159, 227
viii. 2, *Vulg.*, . 132
viii. 21, . 265, 266
ix. 15, . . . 163
x. 21, . . . 186
xi. 20, . . . 88
xi. 25, *Old Ver.*, . 83
xii. 1, . . . 175
xiii. 9, . . . 85

ECCLESIASTICUS.

i. 2, . . 330, n.
iii. . . . 377
iii. . . . 134
v. 3, . . 266, n.
x. 9, . . 262, n.
x. 13, . . 185, n.
xviii. 30, . . 269
xix. 1, . . . 222
xxii. 6, . . 269
xxxix. 21, . 160, n.

SONG OF THE THREE HOLY CHILDREN.

Ver. 3, . . . 39
Ver. 4, . . . 171

NEW TESTAMENT.

MATTHEW.

iii. 2, . . . 361
iii. 4, . . . 270
iv. 1, . . . 212
iv. 8, . . . 270
v. 3, . . 192, n.

MATTHEW—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
v. 3-9, . . 289
v. 3-11, . . 123, n.
v. 7, . . 2, 235
v. 14, . . 373
v. 22, . . 234
vi. 2, 5, . . 282
vi. 6, . . 196
vi. 6, 11, 12, . 196
vi. 8, . . 289
vi. 12, . . 235, n.
vi. 13, . . 265, n.
vi. 14, . 235, n., 373
vi. 21, . . 372
vi. 33, . . 202
vi. 34, . . 267
vii. 7, 2, 130, 327, 394
vii. 7, 8, . . 319
vii. 11, . . 307
vii. 13, . . 119, 135
vii. 20, . . 380
ix. 2, . . 236
ix. 33, . . 369
x. 16, . . 377
x. 20, . . 389
x. 29, 30, . . 73
x. 30, . . 15
x. 41, 42, . . 386
xi. 12, . . 196
xi. 25, . . 172, 177
xi. 25, 28, 29, . 155
xi. 28, 29, . 73, 172
xi. 29, . . 155
xi. 30, . 184, 206, 278
xii. 20, . . 57
xii. 29, . . 185
xii. 36, . . 234, n.
xiii. 7, 22, . . 372
xiii. 39, . . 369
xiii. 54, . . 376
xvi. 27, . . 60
xvii. 5, . . 295
xvii. 17, . . 26
xvii. 27, . . 86
xviii. 10, . . 385
xviii. 35, . . 235
xix. 7, 22, . . 372
xix. 8, . . 48, n.
xix. 12, . 29, 177
xix. 14, . . 38
xix. 16, 17, . . 371
xix. 16-22, . . 372
xix. 21, . . 204
xix. 22, . . 372
xix. 29, . 123, n.
xxii. 37-39, . . 49
xxii. 40, . . 335
xxiv. 35, . . 366

MATTHEW—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
xxv. 21, . 36, 223
xxv. 27, . . 4
xxvi. 35, . . 366
xxvi. 38, 41, . 163
xxviii. 19, . . 361

MARK.

xii. 30, 31, . . 343

LUKE.

ii. 14, *Vulg.*, . 358
ii. 19, . . 98
ii. 46, . . 91
iii. 5, . . 212
iv. 23, . . 34
v. 8, . . 271
vii. 12-15, . . 108
viii. 15, . . 236
ix. 26, . . 173
xi. 22, 25, . . 185
xii. 32, . . 279
xiv. 14, . . 209
xiv. 26-35, . . 193
xv. 4-10, 32, . 182
xv. 5, . . 331
xv. 8, . . 256
xv. 11-32, . . 21
xv. 12, 13, . . 80
xv. 16, . . 45
xv. 18, . . 11
xv. 32, . . 183, 269
xvi. 10, . . 129
xvi. 11, 12, . . 129
xvi. 26, . 356, n.
xvi. 31, . . 265
xviii. 43, . 211, n.
xxiv. 25, . . 71
xxiv. 49, . . 214

JOHN.

i. 1, . 153, n., 296
i. 1-5, . 154, 166, n.
i. 3, . . 80, 292
i. 6-9, . . 165, n.
i. 7-14, . . 154
i. 9, 76, 193, 215, 359
i. 10, . . 71
i. 12, . . 184
i. 14, 166, 166, n., 287
i. 16, . . 76, 165
i. 17, . . 33, n.
iii. 5, . . 215
iii. 20, . . 238
iii. 29, . 78, 298, 362
iv. 14, . . 109

JOHN—*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
iv. 21, . . 46
iv. 48, . . 376
v. 14, . . 59
v. 46, . . 293
vi. 27, . . 57
vii. 39, . . 214
viii. 23, . . 346
viii. 25, *Old Ver.*, 297, n.
viii. 40, . . 261
viii. 44, . 343, 383
x. 18, . 288, n., 297
xii. 35, . . 291
xiv. 6, 67, 165, 174, 260
xiv. 8, . . 63, n.
xiv. 16, 17, . . 214
xiv. 30, . . 236
xv. 2, . . 9
xvi. 12, 13, . 38, n.
xvi. 33, . . 271
xvii. 17, . . 67
xvii. 21, . 287, n.
xviii. 38, . . 172
xxi. 22, . . 277

THE ACTS.

ii. 1-4, . . 214
ii. 3, . . 372
ii. 18, . . 3
ii. 38, . . 362
ii. 47, . 236, n.
v. 26, . 223, n.
vii. 22, . 167, n.
ix. 5, . . 61
xiii. 10, . 185, n.
xiii. 12, . . 384
xvii. 28, . . 157

EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS.

i. 3, . . 102, n.
i. 20, 159, and n., 163, 166, 169, 243, 244, 377
i. 21, . . 21, 87
i. 21, 22, . . 176
i. 21, 23, . 86, 155
i. 24-29, . . 51
i. 25, . 80, 157
ii. 5, . . 215
ii. 6, . . 60
iii. 4, . . 383
iv. 5, . . 355, 392
v. 5, . 61, 239, 390
v. 6, . . 165
v. 8, 9, . . 286, n.
vi. 17, . 199, 361

EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS —*continued.*

CHAP. PAGE
vi. 21, . . 34
vi. 23, . . 285
vii. 17, . . 199
vii. 20, . . 187
vii. 22-24, . 188, n.
vii. 22-25, . . 171
vii. 22, 24, 25, . 171
viii. 6, margin, 82, n.
viii. 7, . . . 234
viii. 10, . . 363
viii. 11, . . 363
viii. 16, . 163, n.
viii. 22, . . 171
viii. 23, . 227, 362
viii. 24, . . 364
viii. 24, 25, . . 293
viii. 26, . . 332
viii. 31, . . 319
viii. 32, . . 155
viii. 34, 214, 235, 271, 286, n., 287, 293
ix. 5, . . . 165
ix. 12, . . . 156
ix. 15, . 235, 243
ix. 21, . . . 364
x. 12, . . . 291
x. 14, . . . 2
x. 17, . . 378, n.
xi. 33, . . . 62
xi. 36, . . . 3
xii. 1, . . 384, n.
xii. 2, . 362, 377, 378
xii. 3, . . . 376
xii. 11, . . . 11
xiii. 11, 12, . . 360
xiii. 13, 14, . . 204
xiv. 1, . . . 204
xiv. 16, . . 208
xiv. 20, . . 270
xiv. 23, . . 270
xvi. 18, . . 334

1 CORINTHIANS.

i. 27, . . . 372
i. 27, 28, . . 184
i. 30, . . . 86
i. 31, . . . 269
ii. 6, . . . 370
ii. 9, . . . 226
ii. 11, 163, n., 239, 242
ii. 12, . . . 389
ii. 14, . . . 370
ii. 15, . . . 372
iii. 1, . . . 362, 370
iii. 2, . . . 370, n.

1 CORINTHIANS—*cont.*

CHAP. PAGE
iii. 11, . . . 170
iv. 3, . . 47, 243
iv. 4, . . . 242
iv. 6, . . . 343
iv. 7, . . 171, 364
iv. 15, . . 176, 378
v. 7, . . . 174
v. 8, . . . 371
v. 12, . . . 380
vii. 1, . . . 26
vii. 7, . . . 175
vii. 28, . . . 26
vii. 32, 33, . . 26
viii. 1, . . . 169
viii. 6, . . . 336
viii. 8, . 269, 270, 336, 377
ix. 27, . . . 268
x. 4, . . 115, n.
x. 13, . . . 243
xi. 1, . . . 377
xi. 19, . . . 169
xii. 1, 31, . . 355
xii. 7-11, . . 369
xii. 8, . . 369, n.
xii. 22, . . . 271
xiii. 2, . . 370, n.
xiii. 7, . . . 239
xiii. 11, . . 102, n.
xiii. 12, 105, 174, 238, 328, 366
xiv. 20, . . . 362
xiv. 22, . . . 375
xv. 9, . 173, n., 184
xv. 22, 96, 234, n., 258, 286, n.
xv. 44, . . 164, n.
xv. 51, . . . 228
xv. 54, . . 216, 267

2 CORINTHIANS.

i. 11, . . . 241
i. 22, . . . 362
ii. 16, . . . 39
iii. 6, . 105, 115 n.
v. 1, . . 331, 332
v. 2, . . 273, 362
v. 4, . . . 362
v. 5, . . . 172
v. 6, . . . 242
v. 7, . 362, 379, n.
v. 8, . . . 287
v. 17, . . . 369
v. 21, . . . 331
vi. 10, . . . 87
x. 17, . . . 235

2 CORINTHIANS—*cont.*

CHAP. PAGE
xi. 3, . . . 363
xi. 9, . . . 384
xi. 14, . . . 285
xii. 1, . . 320, n.
xii. 9, . . . 242
xii. 10, . . . 240

GALATIANS.

i. 17, . . 212, n.
iii. 1, . . . 362
iii. 23, . . . 378
iv. 4, . . . 48, n.
iv. 12, . . . 377
iv. 19, . . 13, 226
iv. 24, . . 115, n.
iv. 26, . . 331, 333
v. 17, . . 187, 260
vi. 3, . . . 282

EPHESIANS.

i. 20, . . . 214
i. 20, etc., . . 326
ii. 2, . . 285, 363
ii. 3, . . . 363
ii. 10, . . . 379
ii. 15, . . 96, and n.
iii. 14-19, . . 356
iii. 20, . . 204, 267
iv. 8, . . . 362
iv. 13, 14, . . 86
iv. 14, . . . 74
iv. 26, . . . 214
v. 8, 198, 215, 353, 359, 362, 363, 364
v. 14, . . . 188
v. 27, . . . 238

PHILIPPIANS.

ii. 6, 7, . 72, n.
ii. 6, 8, . . 287
ii. 6-11, . . 165
ii. 15, . . . 368
ii. 27, . . . 210
iii. 13, 226, 316, 317, 362
iii. [illegible] . 316, n.
[illegible] . . 384
iv. 10, . . . 385
iv. 11, 13, . . 385
iv. 11-14, . 269, 385
iv. 15-17, . . 386
iv. 18, . . . 385

COLOSSIANS.

i. 16, . . . 339

COLOSSIANS—*continued.*

CHAP.	PAGE
i. 20, etc.,	96
ii. 3,	237, 293
ii. 8,	177
ii. 8, 9,	42
ii. 14,	172, 236
ii. 16,	270
iii. 5,	202
iii. 10,	113, n., 378

1 THESSALONIANS.

ii. 7,	378
iv. 14,	226
v. 5,	364
v. 26,	163, n.

2 THESSALONIANS.

ii. 1-7,	291, n.

1 TIMOTHY.

i. 5,	231
i. 8,	335, 343, 348
i. 15,	71
ii. 5,	165, 285, 316
iv. 4,	270
iv. 8,	75, n.
v. 4, 9, 10, 14,	226
v. 6,	376
v. 10,	97
vi. 16,	325
vi. 20,	377

2 TIMOTHY.

CHAP.	PAGE
i. 13,	334
ii. 14,	335
ii. 15,	113
ii. 21,	185
iii. 13,	136, n.
iv. 16,	334

TITUS.

i. 10,	198
i. 15,	270

HEBREWS.

i. 1,	48, n.
i. 3,	72, n.
iv. 13,	238
v. 5,	301
v. 14,	370, n.
vi. 1, 2,	180, n.
vi. 4,	361, n.
xi. 8-40,	47
xii. 1,	284

JAMES.

i. 17,	44, 76
ii. 13,	235
iv. 4,	16
iv. 6,	1, 60, 76, 152, 278
iv. 11,	330

JAMES—*continued.*

CHAP.	PAGE
iv. 14,	15

1 PETER.

i. 23,	69
ii. 1, 2,	2, n.
ii. 2,	57, 334, n.
ii. 5,	203
ii. 9,	372
iii. 18-21,	291, n.
v. 5,	1, 60, 76, 152
v. 8,	172

1 JOHN.

i. 1,	373
i. 5,	157, n.
i. 8,	234, n., 233
ii. 4,	13
ii. 16,	59, 86, n., 659, n., 273, 275, 280
iii. 2,	363, 366

3 JOHN.

Ver. 2,	215, n.

REVELATION.

iii. 5,	34
vi. 14,	[illegible]
viii. 8,	241
xiii. 3,	[illegible]
xii. 4,	[illegible]
xxi. 2,	[illegible]

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

ABRAHAM's bosom, 210, 211, and n., 357, n.

Academics, Augustine has a leaning towards the philosophy of the, 99; they doubted everything, 100, 106.

Academies, the three, 100, n.

Actions of the patriarchs, 49.

Adam averted death by partaking of the tree of life, 68, n.; the first and second, 286, n,

Adeodatus, Augustine's son, helps his father in writing *The Master*, 218, and n.; he is baptized by Ambrose, 218, n.

Adversity the blessing of the New Testament, prosperity of the Old, 75, n.; uses of, 280, n.

Æneas, the wanderings of, 15, 16.

Æneid, quotations from the, 16, 17, 20.

Affections, in darkened, lies distance from God, 21; inordinate, bring their own punishment, 15, 22, 26.

Agentes in rebus, their office, 192 and n.; Evodius is one of the, 220, n.

Agonistic garland, Augustine receives the, 60.

Allegories in Scripture, 115, n.; Augustine was fond of, 350, n.

Altar, Augustine begs that his mother may be remembered at the, 236.

Alypius, bishop of Thagaste, 110, n.; was born at that city; had studied there and at Carthage with Augustine; his love of the circus, 121; was taken up as a thief at Carthage, 126; now his innocence was proved, 127; his integrity in judgment and at Milan, 128, 129; his discussion with Augustine as to celibacy, 132; Augustine undertakes to write the life of, 133, n.; retires with Augustine into the garden, 196; the conversion of, 204.

Ambrose, bishop of Milan, effect of his preaching; his ministry, 2, and n.; Augustine makes his acquaintance, and is received by him in a fatherly way; his eloquence, 104; distinction between his teaching and that of Faustus, and its influence, 105; Monica's love for, 109, 11[illegible]; celibacy of, 112; in his study, 11[illegible]; he expounded the Scriptures every Lord's day, 113; Simplicianus succeeds him as bishop, 174; the Song of, and Augustine, 218, n.; is persecuted by Justina, the mother of Valentinian, 219, and n.; miracles wrought in behalf of, 220.

Amelius the Platonist, 152, n.

Amphitheatre of Titus, Gibbon's description of the, 124, n.

Anaximenes of Miletus, his notions about God, 244, and n.

Angels, source of their blessedness, 164, n.; God's eternity manifest in their unchangeableness, 326; Augustine asserts that they are changeable, 330; misery of, shows their former excellence, 356.

Answer to prayer of Monica, 54, 95; Augustine's faith strengthened by, 216.

Antony, an Egyptian monk, the founder of Monachism, 190; was born at Thebes, and visited Paul in the desert before his death, 190, n.

Anubis, 178.

Ἀποκατάστασις, the doctrine unnecessary, 83, n.

Apollinaris, bishop of Laodicea, 167, n.

Approbation, Augustine's love of, 73; especially that of Hierius, 73, 74.

Arcesilas, teaching of, 100, n.

Ἀρχή, "The Beginning," applied to Christ, 297, n.

Architect, God the great, 65, n., 274; Alypius and the, 128.

Argument, Augustine's power in, 55, and n.

Arians, the Empress Justina seduced by the, 219.

Aristotle's *Ten Predicaments*, 78; categories of, 79, and n.; he and Zeno prepared the way for Neo-Platonism, 100, n.

Arius, Victorinus wrote some books against, 177, n.

Arts, liberal, Augustine understood the books relating to the, unaided, 79.

Asceticism, of Paul of Thebais, 190, n.; Manichæan, as compared with Christian, 191, n.; by embracing, we virtually deny the right use of God's gifts, 270, n.

Astrologers, Augustine's classification of, 59, n.; belief of the Jews in, 59, n.; divinations of the, 147; were called mathematicians, 149, n.
Astrology, refutation of, 148, 149.
Atoms, in nature no two touch, 202, n.
Atonement, the, 287.
Augustine, describes his infancy, 5, etc.; his boyhood, 10–24; how he learns to speak, 10; he prays to God that he may not be beaten, 11; his fondness for play, 12; educated from his mother's womb in the true faith, 13; he was signed with the cross, and seasoned with salt, 13, and n.; his hatred of study and the Greek language, but delight in Latin and the empty fables of the poets, 15; the reason of this, 17; Homer distasteful to him because it was in Greek, 17; he entreats that whatever he learnt as a boy may be dedicated to God, 18; his declamation applauded above that of his fellows, 20; he was more afraid of making a mistake in grammar than of offending God, 22; he committed petty thefts and sought dishonest victories at play, 22; he deplores the wickedness of his youth, 25, 26; especially that of *his sixteenth year*, 27; he used to go to Madaura to learn grammar and rhetoric; his father, though only a poor freeman of Thagaste, made a great sacrifice to send his son to Carthage, 27; he plumes himself upon being more licentious than his fellows; his mother unwisely opposes his marrying, 28; he robs a neighbouring [illegible] from a love of mischief, 30; he is caught in the snares of licentious passion, 37; his love of stage-plays, 38; he is affected by a foul spiritual disease, 39; his sacrilegious curiosity, 40; not even in church does he suppress his desires, 40; he becomes head in the school of rhetoric, 40; he begins to study eloquence; his father dies in *his seventeenth year*, 41; in *his nineteenth year* he is led by the *Hortensius* of Cicero, to philosophy, 41; he rejects the Sacred Scriptures as too simple, 42; he falls into the errors of the Manichæans, 43, 77; his longing after truth, 43, 44; Manichæan system peculiarly enthralling to an ardent mind like his, 44, n.; his desire for knowledge caused him to join the Manichæans, 46, n.; his victory over inexperienced persons, 55, and n.; *the nine years from his nineteenth year*, 56–81; he teaches rhetoric, 57; he has a mistress, 57; he receives the Agonistic garland, 60; he is given to divination, 61; his friend's illness and death, 62; his grief, 62, 63; he leaves Thagaste and goes to Carthage, 66; he writes books on the "Fair and Fit," 72; he dedicates them to Hierius; he longs for his commendation, 73; he turns his attention to the nature of the mind, 74; in what he conceived the chief good to consist, 75; he calls it a Monad, and the chief evil a Duad, 76; when scarce twenty, he understood Aristotle's *Ten Predicaments*, 78; his ready understanding of the liberal arts, 79, and sciences, 80; his wit a snare to him, 80; *the twenty-ninth year of his age*, 82–106; he begins to appreciate the knowledge of God above secular learning, 87; he points out the fallacy of the Manichæan belief as to the Paraclete, 88, n.; he withdraws from the errors of the Manichæans, being remarkably aided by God, 93; he leaves Carthage to go to Rome, 94; he deceives his mother, 95; he is attacked by fever, 98; is restored, 99; becomes one of the "elect" of the Manichæans, 99; his view of Arcesilas' philosophy, 100, n.; his erroneous views as to Christianity, 101; he goes to Milan to teach rhetoric, and there makes the acquaintance of Ambrose, 104; he resolves to abandon the Manichæans and become a catechumen, 106; *his thirtieth year*, 107–138; his mother follows him over the sea, 107; he recognises the falsity of his old opinions, 114; he describes how Alypius, led into the circus by his fellow-students, becomes fascinated by the fights held there, 124, 125; he becomes inflamed with the love of wisdom, 130; he is troubled in mind, 131, 132, 136; he is prevented from marrying by Alypius, 132; he undertakes to write the life of Alypius, 133, n.; is urged by his mother to marry, and a maiden sought for, 134; he sends his mistress back to Africa, but takes another, 136; in *his thirty-first year* he recalls the

[illegible]ing of his youth, 139-173; his conception of God, 139, 140, and n., [illegible] 145; his mind is severely exercised as to the origin of evil, 150; is stimulated to wisdom by the *Hortensius* of Cicero, 152, n., 194; his conception of Christ, 166; he rejoices that he proceeded from Plato to the Scriptures, and not the reverse, 170; he found in the latter what [illegible] in the former, 171; he con[illegible] Simplicianus as to the renewing of his mind, 174; he describes the *thirty-second year* of his age, 174-[illegible]; he is still held by the love of women, [illegible]5; he burns to imitate Victorinus, 195; his review of his life, [illegible]; he retires with Alypius into the garden, 196; his trouble of spirit, 197; [illegible] the Manichæan notion of [illegible] of minds, 198, 199; was [illegible] called by his old loves, 201; he retires into solitude to meditate, [illegible] a voice saying, "Take up and read," 203; his reason for giving up the professorship, 207, 208, n.; [illegible] become affected, 208, 209; he retires to the villa of his friend [illegible], 209, 210; he finally [illegible] the professorship, 211, 212; [illegible] in retirement preparation [illegible] work, 212, n.; effect of the [illegible] especially the fourth, [illegible] anger against the [illegible], in *his thirty-fourth* [illegible] his book *The Master*, [illegible] between him and his son, [illegible] from toothache, but [illegible] to prayer, 216; he [illegible] that he was to his [illegible], 221, n.; his last [illegible] with his mother, 227, [illegible] at her death, 230-[illegible] that he was so [illegible] God, 263; effect of [illegible] on him, 272; object [illegible] Confessions, 240, 241, [illegible] entreats of God that he [illegible] to the truth through the [illegible] 290-292; he designates [illegible] his successor, 290; he [illegible] taught by God, 307; [illegible] as to matter, 321, [illegible] longings for the heavenly [illegible], 333; was addicted to [illegible] explanation of Scrip-[illegible]

[illegible] and morals, 49; of the holy [illegible] 118, and n., 119.

BACON, the sentiments of, concerning friendship, 66, n.

Baptism, Augustine being seized with illness, prays for; on his recovery it was postponed, 13; in Augustine's days often deferred till death approached, 13, n.; wrongly deferred, 14, n.; guilt after, greater than before, 13, 14, and n.; those who attended stage-plays were excluded from, by the Fathers, 38, n.; that of Nebridius took place when he was ill and unconscious, 62; candidates for, seasoned with salt, 108, n.; martyrdom described as a second, 109, n.; the washing of, called illumination, 179, n., 361; renunciation of Satan before, 180, n.; customs of the Eastern Churches at, 181, n.; being the sacrament of initiation, is not so profitable without the Lord's Supper, 374, n.; gives life, Lord's Supper maintains it, 375; the entrance into the Church, 375, n.

בָּרָא and קָנָה distinguished, 172, n.

Basilica, the Portian, 219, n., 220, and n.

Bath, soothing powers of the, 232.

Bauto, the consul at Milan, 119, n.

Beasts of the field symbolical of those given to carnal pleasures, 85, n., 86; clean and unclean, explanation of the division of, 112, n.

Beautiful, love of the, 72.

Beauty of God, 4, 44.

Beggar, the joyous, 120.

Beginning, Christ the of all things; the Word the, [illegible]; the words, "In the beginning," interpreted differently, 337, 345.

Bible, literary merit of the, [illegible], n., 87, n.; the Psalms "a Bible in little," 213, n.

Birds of the air symbolical of pride, 85, n.

Blessedness, true, to be attained only by adhering to God, 353, n.

Blind man, the, cured, 220; his vow, 220, n.

Blindness, Augustine compares sin to, 357, n.

Body, soul, and spirit, 163, n.; as distinct from soul, 164; the mind commands the, 197, 198.

Books, the Manichæan, 92.

Boyhood, Augustine's fondness for play in, 12; he thanks God for his, 23, 24.

Cæsar, Christ paid tribute to, 86.
Calling upon God, 2.
Carthage, Augustine sent by his father to pursue his studies at, 27, 37; he leaves that city on account of the violent habits of the students there, 94.
Cassiacum, Verecundus' villa at, 210.
Catechumens, seasoned with salt, 13, and n., 108, n.; or "Hearers" of the Manichæans, their privileges, 53, n.; Augustine resolves to become one in the Catholic Church, 106; customs of, at baptism, 181, n.; before baptism, 370, n.; when ready for, they were termed *Competentes*, 370, n.
Categories of Aristotle may be classed under two heads, 79, and n.
Catiline loved not his villanies, but had a motive for committing them, 31.
Cavils, Manichæan, 299, 300, 317.
Celibacy, discussion of Augustine and Alypius concerning, 132.
Chief evil, nature of the, 76.
Chief good, Augustine's conception of the, 75; Varro gives 288 different opinions as regards the, 75, n.; God the, 146, 260, n.
Childhood, the sins of, found in manhood; an emblem of humility, 23.
Christ, the fulness of the Godhead is in, 42; perfect human sympathy of, 63, n.; humiliation of, for us, 71, 72, n.; our very life, 71; paid tribute to Cæsar, 86; humanity of, 96, n., 154; Manichæan belief as to the human birth of, 102, n.; fulness of, 155; the Mediator, 165, 170, n.; a perfect man, 167; the two natures of, 168, n., 285, and n., 286; as God, the country to which we go, as man, the way by which we go, 171; healing in Him alone, 171; the Victor and Victim, Priest and Sacrifice, 287; the Beginning, 297.
Christian, certainty of the faith of the, as compared with the uncertainty of the teaching of the philosophers, 100, n.; the almost and altogether, 188, n.
Christianity gives the golden key to happiness, 75, n.; Augustine's erroneous views as to, 100, n.
Church, the, history of, creation type of the, 361; music of, its effect on Augustine, 272.
Circensian games, Alypius' love of the, 121; how cured of it, 122; he becomes Augustine's pupil, and is involved in the same superstition as his friend, 123; Augustine becomes carried away by the love of the, 121; they were put a stop to by the sacrifice of Telemachus the monk, 1[illegible], n.
Cicero's writings as compared with the Word of God, 87, n.; [illegible] concerning Arcesilas' [illegible], 100, n.; Augustine studies his *Hortensius*, 41; and is stimulated to student thereby, 152, n., 194, 195.
Circus, games of the, 123, n., 1[illegible], and n., 277, n.
Classics, highly esteemed in Augustine's day, 16; objections to the study of the, 20.
Commandments, modes of dividing the Ten, 50, and n.
Community, Augustine and his friends propose to establish a, 1[illegible].
Companions, influence of bad, 85.
Competentes, name given to catechumens when ready for baptism, 370.
Conception of Christ, Augustine's [illegible] of God, 139, 140, and n., 141, [illegible].
Confession to God, Augustine [illegible] duty of, 82; is [illegible] Augustine's, 240, 2[illegible]; [illegible] 289.
Confirmation sometimes [illegible] ment by the Fathers, 1[illegible], n.
Constantine was not baptized till the end of his life, 1[illegible], n.; [illegible] versy with Sylvester.
Constantius enacted laws [illegible] Paganism, 185.
Contemplation, the [illegible] the mount of, by [illegible] reward of practice [illegible] things eternal, 3[illegible].
Continency, false [illegible] Manichæans, 12[illegible] and n., [illegible] 202; imposed on [illegible].
Continentia and *Sti*[illegible] between, 265, n.
Conversion, Monica's [illegible] 53; of Victorinus, 181, 1[illegible] 184, and n., 228, n. [illegible]
Converts, [illegible] Martyr's [illegible], 179, n.
Corporeal [illegible] thought of God [illegible] the Manichæans, 16[illegible] Augustine's mind [illegible] 74, 77; but later on [illegible] the notion of a, 11[illegible].
Corruption, [illegible]
Courtiers, history of the [illegible]
Creasti, explanation of, [illegible]
Creation praise, God, 8[illegible], 1[illegible]

[illegible] the, 160-162; testifies to a [illegible], 294; time began from the, [illegible] from time, 348, n.; doctrine of the Trinity emblemized in the, [illegible] history of the, a type of the Church, 361.
[illegible], true joy to be found only in the, 33; putting the creature above the, 36; God the, 295.
Credulity of the Manichæans, 117, n.
Cries of Christ symbolized, 18, 19, n.
Curds, the mountain of, 210, and n.
Curiosity, a help to learning, 18; affects a desire for knowledge, 32; Augustine's sacrilegious, 40; fishes of the sea symbolical of, 85, n.; evil of, to Augustine, 124; a snare to Alypius, 133, 134; temptation of, stimulated by the lust of the eyes, 275, 276; for experiment's sake, 276; manifold temptations of, 277.
Curtain of Ps. civ. 2, rendered "skin," [illegible], n.
Custom, force of, 18; true inner right-ousness doth not judge according to, 47; *versus* law, 94; conforming to, 111, n.; the weight of carnal, 162; power of, 187.
[illegible] human, to be obeyed, 49.
[illegible] oratory in memory of, 95.

[illegible] 19.
[illegible] praying in captivity, 332, n.
[illegible] and light, 143, n.
[illegible] prayers for the, 109, n., 232, [illegible], festivals in honour of the, [illegible] origin of the custom, 111, n.
[illegible] origin of the law of, 68, n.; [illegible] says Adam was able to [illegible] by partaking of the tree of [illegible] n.
[illegible] baptism of Nebridius, 62.
[illegible], Augustine's, applauded [illegible] of his fellow-students, 20.
[illegible] the great," Augustine's in[illegible] of the, 353, n., 362, n.
[illegible] 6.
[illegible] distraction, 316, and nn.
[illegible] the soothsayers used sacri[illegible] their, 57; the mathema[illegible] not do so, [illegible]; Augustine's [illegible] belief in, but his friend [illegible] scoffs at it, 61; afterwards [illegible] by Augustine, he too [illegible] in it, 62; of the astrologers, [illegible]
[illegible] Christ, 168, n.
[illegible] of the, 167, n.
[illegible] how developed in Augustine's time, 109, n.; spiritual pride of the Donatists, 287, n.
Drachma, the woman and the, 182, 256.
Dream, of Monica concerning her son's conversion, 53; temptation in, 266, 267; Augustine's view of, 266, n.; Thorwaldsen's, result of, 266, n.
Drunkenness forbidden by God, 268, 269.
Duad, Monad and, 76, and n., 77, n.; how this dualistic belief affected the Manichæan notion of Christ, 102, n.
Dust, the mathematicians drew their figures in, 78, n.

Ear, the delights of the, 272.
Earth, beauty of the, 244, n.
East, turning to the, at baptism, 181, n.
Education, Augustine disapproves of the mode of, in his day, 18.
Egyptians, Faustus' objection to the spoiling of the, 52, n.; gold of the, belongs to God, 156, and n., 157.
"Elect" of the Manichæans, 53, and n., 56, 92, n.; Augustine becomes one of the, 99; divine substance in the, 143, 270, n.
Eloquence, wit and, baits to draw man to the Word, 2, n.; Augustine begins to study, 41; Greek and Latin, Hierius' knowledge of, 73; of Faustus, 90, 91; of Ambrose, 104.
Ἐνδιάθετος, "in the bosom of the Father," 153, n., 297, n.
Enemies of God, who are the, 83, n.
Epicureanism, 137; popularity of, 137, n.
Eraclius, Augustine designates, as his successor, 290, n.
Esau, Jacob and, illustrations concerning, 149; his longing after the Egyptian food, 155, and n.
Eternal, on comprehending the, 299, 318, n.
Eternity, of God, 8, 158, and n.; relation of, to the mutable creature, 326; time has no relation to, 299; God's to-day is, 301; reason leads us to the necessity of a belief in, 315, n.; has no succession, 318, n.
Eucharist, oblations for the, 97, n.; regeneration necessary before the reception of the, 179, n., 228, n.; called by the ancients "the sacrament of perfection;" maintains life which baptism gives, 37[illegible]; Augustine's interpretation of the, 375, n.

Eunuchus, Terence's, 20, and n.
Eversores, or subverters, 40, n., 41.
Evil, whence is it?—see *Manichæans*: Augustine's notions concerning, 46, n.; the chief, Augustine calls a Dual, 76; Manichæan doctrine of, 92, n., 101, 102; the cause of, 143, 144; origin of, 145, 146, 159; not a substance, 160, 162; Augustine's notion of, 166, n.
Evil habits bind like iron, 186, and n., 187; conviction powerless against, 188.
Evodius, became associated with Augustine, 220; he leads the singing at Monica's funeral, 231; Augustine's endeavours to unravel his difficulties as to the spirits in prison, 291, n.
Excess, by grace we avoid, 269.
Eyes, the lust of the, 275, 276.

Fables, Manichæan, 92, and n.; old wives', 97; the use of, common with mediæval writers, 292, n.
"Fair and Fit," Augustine's book as to the, 72, 78.
Faith, preaching leads to, 2; the Manichæans exalted reason at the expense of, 44, n.; the rule of, 54, 205; reason and, 117, 118, and n.; and sight, 379, n.
Fame, the emptiness of popular, 56.
Fasting enjoined by Justin Martyr as a preparation for baptism, 179, n., 267, n.
Faustus, a bishop of the Manichæans, goes to Carthage, 84; eloquence of, 90, 91; his knowledge superficial, 90, 91; distinction between his teaching and that of Ambrose, 105.
Fear, "pure," 58, n.; joy in proportion to past, 189, 192.
Fever, Nebridius falls sick of a, and dies, 82; Augustine is attacked by, 93.
Fichte's strange idea as to St. John's teaching concerning the Word, 341, n.
Fictions, Augustine's love of, 17, 20; evils of, 19, 20; results of, to Augustine, 39; Manichæan, 44; Augustine's reply to Faustus as to Manichæan, 117, n.
Fideles, the, 108.
Fig-tree, Manichæan delusions concerning, 52, 53.
Firmament, allegorical explanation of the, 361, 365, 373, n.
Firminius, a friend of Augustine's, 147; studies the constellations, and relates a story to [illegible] 148, 149.
Fish of the sea, symbolical [illegible] tion of the, 35, n., [illegible]
Flesh, the Word [illegible] 154, 165–168, 287; [illegible] body, 164, n.
Forgetfulness the [illegible] 253, 254.
Fortunatus, Augustine's [illegible] with, 142.
Free-will, 77, and n.; [illegible] 143, 144; absence of [illegible] of former sin, 198; [illegible] held that through [illegible] could attain perfection, [illegible]
Friendship, of the world, [illegible] 16; false, 35, [illegible] Augustine and Nebridius, [illegible] of Pylades and Orestes, [illegible] Bacon's sentiment, [illegible]
Fruit, distinction between [illegible] and the, 384–387; [illegible] allegorized, 384.
Funerals, Roman customs [illegible] rites at Monica's, [illegible]

Gassendi vitalized [illegible] n.
Genesis, what Moses [illegible] of, 344; repetitions [illegible] interpretation of, [illegible]
Gibbon, his description [illegible] theatre of Titus, [illegible] of Platonism [illegible] 153, n.
Gifts, diversities of, [illegible] 389; distinction [illegible] and the "fruit," [illegible]
Gnostic opinion as [illegible] the world, 388.
God, worthy of [illegible] desires to praise [illegible] and wisdom, 1; [illegible] only, 1, 36, 71, [illegible] 2; Augustine [illegible] ledge, 277, n.; [illegible] 84; attributes of [illegible] can contain, 3; [illegible] 3; by filling them [illegible] 67; majesty of, [illegible] ableness of, 4, [illegible] beauty of, 4, [illegible] yet always at rest, [illegible] man cannot comprehend [illegible] 4, n.; providence of, [illegible] 158, and n.; is [illegible] 156, n., 157, n., [illegible] and n.; sought [illegible]

found, 46; His care of us, 54; held by the Manichæans to be an uncreated light, 56, n.; the true light, 76, n., 157, and n., 274; the source of light, 164, n.; the fountain of light, 283; the architect and artificer of His Church, 65, n.; wounds [illegible] to heal, 65, n.; should be our highest love, 67; all good is from, 71; unity of, 79; our supreme good, 81, 260, n.; to be preferred to learning, 164; Augustine's conception of, 139, 140, and n., 141, 145; incomprehensible, 140; incorruptibility of, 142, and n., 144; never suffers evil, 144; the Chief Good, 146; subjection to, our only safety, 151; the Word, 153, 154; "I AM THAT I AM," 158, 159, n.; hope and joy in Him alone, 238, 265; searchings after, 243–245; the Creator, 295; the Immutable Light of wisdom, 352, n.; the mercy of, in conveying His truth by symbols, 374.

Gods, why the poets attributed wickedness to the, 18; Homer transfers things human to the, 19.

Gold of Egypt, 156, and n., 157.

Good, the Manichæans taught that good and evil were primeval, and had independent existence, 46, n.; all, is from God, 71; Augustine's conception of the chief, 75, 146; God our Supreme, 81, 260, 353, n.; and evil illustrated, 160, n.; God saw that everything in creation was, 387, [illegible]

[illegible] fulfilment of love, 335, n.

[illegible] Christians forbidden by [illegible] to teach, 185.

[illegible] schools, entrances of, covered with veils, 16, and n.

[illegible] joy in the conversion of the, [illegible] 185, n.; influence of the, 185, [illegible]

[illegible] Augustine's dislike to, 15; the reason of his dislike, 17; his knowledge of, 162, n.; eloquence, Hierius' knowledge of, 73.

Greeks, [illegible] to Christ by philosophy, [illegible]

[illegible] ne's, at the death of [illegible] 2–64; at his mother's [illegible] 233; effect of time on, [illegible] a good consoler in, 202, [illegible] death of friends natural, 269, n.

Harris, evil, bind like iron, 186, and n., 187; conviction powerless against, 188.

Happiness, Christianity gives the golden key to, 75, n.; knowledge of God the highest, 87; the Word of God a fount of, 87, n.; whence comes true, 195; consummation of, in heaven only, 211, n.; not joy merely, but joy in God, 263.

Happy life, longings after the, 257–261; to be found in God only, 260.

Harts of the forests, 291, and n.

"Hearers" or catechumens, privileges of the, 53, n.; why Augustine never went beyond the rank of a, 56, n.; did not practise abstinence, 270, n.

Heart, the law written on the, 70, n.; humility exalts the, 72, n.; lifting up of the, 356, n.; of man, Augustine interprets the "deep" to mean, 362, n.

Heaven, rest in, 1, n., 393; the double, 319; the third, 320; the felicity of, 1, n.; fulness of reward in, 75, n.; consummation of happiness only in, 211, n.; a prepared place for prepared people, 357, n.; and earth shall pass away, but not the Word, 366; the peace of, 393.

Heaven and earth, different interpretations of, 335.

Heavenly bodies, motions of the, not time, 309, 310.

Hebrew, Augustine had no knowledge of, 293, and n.

Hedonism and Epicureanism, 137, n.

Hedonists, their "good" is their own pleasure, 75, n.

Helpidius, disputes with the Manichæans, 103.

Heresies confirm the truth, 169.

Hierius, a native of Syria, an orator of Rome; Augustine dedicates his books on the "Fair and Fit" to, 73.

Hippocrates, Vindicianus early understood, 60.

Holy City, light, life, and joy of the, is in God, 353, n.

Holy Spirit, why spoken of in Genesis as "borne over," 355; brings us to God, 355, 356.

Homer, distasteful to Augustine because it was Greek, 17; fictions of, 19.

Honoratus, a friend of Augustine, at one time a Manichæan, 106, n.

Hope, we are saved and made happy by, 75, n.; all, is in the mercy of God, 265.

Hope and joy in God alone, 238.

Horace, quotation from, 65.
Horoscope-casters, Vindicianus begs Augustine to throw away the books of the, 60.
Hortensius, Cicero's, 19; Augustine's study of, 41; he is stimulated to wisdom thereby, 152, n., 194, 195.
Hour-glasses of Augustine's time, 290.
Human life a distraction, 316.
Humanity of Christ, 63, n., 96, n., 168, n.; Augustine thinks it profane to believe in the, 102; Manichæans' belief as to the, 102, n.
Humiliation of Christ for us, 71; to draw us to Himself, 72, n.
Humility, childhood the emblem of, 23; exalts the heart, 72, n.; the holy, of Scripture, 119.
Hyle or matter, the evil principle of the Manichæans, 77, n.

Ἰχθύς, emblem of the, 375, n.
Ignorance, danger of, 5, n.
Illumination, the washing of baptism, 179, n., 361, n., 371, n.
Image of God, man created in the, 113, n.
Importunity, Monica's, to the bishop, 55.
Incarnation of Christ, Manichæans' notion of the, 102, n.; a mystery to Porphyry, 285.
Infancy, sin in, 5, n.; waywardness in, 6, 9; prone to sin, 8–10; its innocence is not in its will, but in its weakness, 9.
Injury man does himself by sin, 83, nn.
Intuitionists, their "good" lies in following the dictates of conscience, 75, n.

Jacob and Esau, illustration concerning, 149.
Jerome, his knowledge of Hebrew, 293.
Jerusalem, Augustine longs for the heavenly, 333, and n.; the mother of us all, 357, n.
Jews, the, their influence on Neo-Platonism, 179, n.; Julian the Apostate favoured the, and encouraged them to rebuild the temple, 186, n.
Jove, 19.
Joy, true, to be found in the Creator only, 33; true and false, 120; source of true, 120, 260; in proportion to past fear, 182, 183; in the conversion of the great, 184, 185, n.; and hope, in God alone, 238.
Julian, the Emperor, [illegible] tians to teach grammar and [illegible] 185; he favoured [illegible] Donatists, and the [illegible]
Juno, 19.
Justice and mercy, illustration of [illegible] 216, n.
Justin Martyr, 153; [illegible] were received in his time, [illegible]
Justina, persecution of [illegible] 219, and n.

קָנָה and בָּרָא distinguished, [illegible]
Knowledge of God, 2; [illegible] happiness, 87; Augustine's [illegible] was to attain, 276, [illegible] 317, 318.
Knowledge, human, [illegible] divine, 21, 22; curiosity [illegible] desire for, 32; Augustine's [illegible] for, made him join the Manichæans, 46, n.; [illegible] action, 369, n.; not [illegible] 276; received by [illegible] ence between that and [illegible]

Latin, Augustine's love of, [illegible]
Law of God, the [illegible] different in applic[illegible] development in [illegible] death, 68, n.; written [illegible] (*lex occulta*), 70, [illegible] 94; Levitical, [illegible] sion of beasts into [illegible] 112, n.; natural and [illegible]
Laws, human, to be [illegible] God to be obeyed [illegible] laws, 49, 50, 52, [illegible]
Learning, rudiments [illegible] Augustine, 15; [illegible] 18; vanity of, [illegible] God to be appreciated [illegible] 87; to be preferred to money, and God to it, 104.
Lentile, the Egyptian food, [illegible]
Liberal arts and [illegible] Faustus had no [illegible] 90, 91; Augustine [illegible] ledge of, does not [illegible]
Licentius' notion [illegible] 194, n.
Life, seeking for the [illegible] our very, 71; [illegible] blessed, 257–26[illegible] human, 264.
Light, the Manich[illegible] an unmeasured, [illegible] true, 76, and n., [illegible]

[illegible], n.; God the unchangeable, 157, and n., 165; God the source of, 164, n.; that seen by Tobias, 273; that seen by Isaac and by Jacob, 274; the fountain of, 283; what Augustine understood by the Word in Genesis i. 3, 358.
[illegible]ness to God, our, 113, n.
Little things, the power of, 222, n., 223.
[illegible], the, 153, n., 166, 297.
Lord's Supper. See *Eucharist.*
Love, pure, 58, n.; God should be our highest, 67; love not to be condemned, but love in God is to be preferred, 70; of the beautiful, 72; of the world, 82; what it is to love God, 243; of praise, 279, 280, 282, [illegible]; grace the fulfilment of, 335, n.; supremacy of the law of, 348, n.
[illegible] God purely, 58, and n.
[illegible] of the flesh, the, continency from, 265; analogy between, and one of our Lord's temptations, 265, n.; eating and drinking a, 267–270; of the eyes, curiosity stimulated by the, 275, 276; difference between it and love, 265, n.
Luther's *Bible in Little*, 213, n.

MADAURA, formerly an episcopal city, now a village — Augustine learnt grammar and rhetoric there, 27.
[illegible], moved by God to delight in praising Him, 1; his existence from God, 2, 3; imperfect, cannot comprehend the perfect, 4, n.; made in God's image, 47, 118, n.; a great [illegible], 78; injures himself, not God, [illegible], 83, nn.; Christ as, 154; a triad, 163; the trichotomy of, 163, n., 167, n.; the Mediator between God and, 165; Christ a perfect, 167, 170, n.; knoweth not himself, 243; God does not need, although He created him, 351, 354, and n.; faint signs of the Trinity in, 359, 360, and [illegible]; how Augustine interprets the [illegible] of, over the beasts, 377; renewed in the knowledge of God after His image, 378; knoweth nothing but by the Spirit of God, [illegible]; on the creation of, 390; difference between his knowledge and God's, 394.
Manichæans, their materialistic views of God, 3, n., 56, n., 77, 101; Augustine falls into the errors of [illegible], 43; the Scriptures obscured to their mocking spirit, 43, n., 55, n., 105, n.; Augustine later on accused them of professing to believe in the New Testament to entrap the unwary, 43, n., 92, n.; their system peculiarly enthralling to an ardent mind like Augustine's, 44, n.; kindred in many ways to modern Rationalism, 44, n.; Augustine attacks their notions concerning evil, 46; cavillings of the, 46, 102, 118, 299, 300, 317; their doctrine concerning good and evil, 46, n., 77, n., 92, n.; their delusions concerning the fig-tree, 52, 53; their reason for refusing to give bread to any but their own sect, 53, and n., 56; they held that God was an unmeasured light, 56, n.; their notion concerning the soul, 77, n.; when opposed, they pretended the Scriptures had been corrupted, 88, n., 103, and n.; their belief as to the humanity of Christ, 102, n.; their false and seducing continency, 123, and n.; Romanianus falls into the errors of, 135, n.; delusions of the, 142, n.; Augustine's anger against the, 213; Augustine refutes their opinions as to the origin of the world, 388.
Manichæanism, cannot satisfy, 45; a strange mixture of the pensive philosophy of Persia with Gnosticism and Christianity, 46, n.
Manichæus asserted that the Holy Ghost was personally resident in him, 88; asceticism of his followers, 191, n.
Manna, meaning of, 8, and n.
Marriage, Augustine desires, but his parents oppose it, 29.
Mars, 178.
Martyrdom, reason for exalting, 109, n.; described as a second baptism, 109, n.
Martyrs, honour done to the, 109, and n., 110, n.; two of the, buried in the Ambrosian Basilica, 220, and n.
Materialists, the, seek the common "good" of all, 75, n.
Mathematicians used no sacrifices in their divinations, 58; they drew their figures in dust or sand, 78, n., 149, n.
Matter, or Hyle, the evil principle according to Faustus, [illegible], n.; the Platonic theory concerning, 77, n.; God did not create the world from, but by His word, 294, 295; the

world not created out of, but by God's word, 295; Augustine's old notion as to, 321, 322; not created out of God's substance, 323; Augustine discusses whether it was from eternity or was made by God, 339.
Medea, 45.
Mediator, Christ the, 165, 170, n.; God and man, 285, and n.; or *medius*, 286.
Memory, nature and power of, 246, 254; privation of, is forgetfulness, 253, 254; God cannot be attained unto by the power of; possessed by beasts and birds, 255, 256; manifoldness of, 255–258, 283; God dwells in the, 262.
Mercy, and misery, 7, n., 38; of God, all hope is in the, 265.
Milan, Augustine is sent to teach rhetoric at, 104; he recites his panegyric to the Emperor at, 119, n.; Church hymns and psalms first introduced at, 219.
Mind, Augustine turns his attention to the nature of the, 74; commands the body, 197, 198; Augustine refutes the Manichæan notion of two kinds of, 198, 199; four perturbations of the, 252; time the impression of things on the; future and past things in relation to the, 315.
Minerva, 178.
Ministers, how they should work, 376.
Miracles, the cessation of, and its probable result, 59, n., 78, n., 149, n.; wrought in behalf of Ambrose, 220, and n.; necessary to some ignorant men, 387; cessation of, 387, n.
Misery of the angels and their former excellence, 358.
Moderation in eating and drinking, 268.
Monachism, Antony the founder of, 190, and n.
Monad and Duad, 76, and n., 77, n.
Money, learning to be preferred to, 104.
Monica, the mother of Augustine, her obedience to her husband, 14; her dream concerning her son's conversion, 53; the wooden rule therein symbolical of the rule of faith, 54; her anxiety about her son; she goes to consult a certain bishop, 55; how her prayers for her son were answered, 54, 95, 96; her son deceives her, 95; her sorrow at his deception, 96; she never failed to make oblations at God's altar twice every, 97; [illegible] her prayers, 98; her visions, [illegible] 197; she follows her son over sea and land, and encourages the [illegible] danger, 107; her [illegible] could not die without [illegible] a Catholic Christian, 108; her [illegible] and her obedience to Ambrose, [illegible] 111; she gives up making [illegible] at the oratories, 111; she urges her son to marry, and chooses a wife for him, 134; early training and [illegible] 221, 224; her youthful love [illegible] 222; how cured of it, [illegible] her conduct as a wife, [illegible] making and [illegible] gains her husband to God [illegible] death draws near, [illegible] her [illegible] versation with her son, [illegible] death at Ostia, [illegible]
Monophysites [illegible] renouncing [illegible]
Montanus, the [illegible] to that of the [illegible]
Moon, sun and [illegible] to the, 44; its [illegible] n.; influence of the, [illegible] natural man and the, [illegible]
Morality of the [illegible]
Morals, authority and, [illegible]
Mortality, skins the [illegible] and n., 364.
Mortification, pain [illegible] and n.
Moses, 157, n., [illegible] n.; what he [illegible] Genesis, 344; he [illegible] perceived all [illegible] 349.
Mountain of milk and [illegible] n.
Mountains of God, [illegible] pretation of the, [illegible]
Music, church, [illegible] 272.
Mysteries, of Scripture, [illegible] for the, 8, n. [illegible] simplicity of [illegible] the unfolding [illegible] life only, [illegible] 291, n.; symbolic [illegible] regulated [illegible] into the, [illegible] and devoid of, [illegible] be revealed by [illegible]
Mystery or [illegible]

Natures, the two [illegible]
Nebridius, a good [illegible]

[illegible]d, 61, 147, 210; he left Carthage for Milan to be near Augustine, 129; tried to dissuade Augustine from belief in the astrologers, 61, 147; his argument against Manichæanism, [illegible]; consented to teach under Verecundus; his humility, 189; dies in Africa after the conversion of his household, 210; letter of Augustine to, 211.
Neo-Platonism, Aristotle and Zeno prepared the way for, 100, n.; Amelius developed and formulated, 152, n.; doctrine of, as to the "Word," 153, n.; as to the soul's capacity, 371, n.; Augustine speaks with admiration of, 177, n.
[illegible], 178.
New Song, the, of Praise, 1, n.
New Testament, the Manichæans professed to believe in the, to entrap the unwary, 43, n.; adversity the blessing of the, 75, n.; the Manichæans asserted that the writings of, had been corrupted, 103, and n.

Obedience to teachers enjoined, 11; to princes, 50; to God, in or against human laws, necessary, 49, 50, 52.
Oblations, what they are, 97, n.; Monica made them twice a day, 97; offered at Queen Victoria's coronation, 97, n.; at the tombs of the [illegible], 109, n.
[illegible] attraction of, 271.
[illegible]ers, 282, and n.
[illegible]ment, its histories, typical [illegible]gorical, 49, n.; prosperity [illegible] blessing of the, 75, n.
[illegible]ence of God, 2.
[illegible]us, hospitality of, 384.
[illegible] in memory of Cyprian, 95; [illegible] memory of the saints and martyrs, [illegible] and n.; offerings at the, for[illegible] by Ambrose and afterwards [illegible]gustine; Monica discontinues [illegible], 110, and n.
[illegible], undue appreciation of, 21; [illegible] Christians forbidden by Julian [illegible], 185.
[illegible] Pylades, 64.
[illegible]wledge of Hebrew, 293.
[illegible] of the law of death, 68, n.; of [illegible], 145, 146, 150; of the human [illegible] Augustine on the, 337, n.; of [illegible] world, the Manichæan notion [illegible]ning the, 388.
[illegible] Augustine and his mother stay at, 226; she dies at, and is buried there, 229, 230.
Ovid, quotations from, 63, n., 65.

Pachomius, the good done by the monks of, 191, n.
Paganism, Constantius enacted laws against, but Julian the Apostate reinstated it in its former splendour, 185, n.
Pain, spiritual and physical, better than mortification, 136, and n.
Paraclete, the, of the Manichæans, 43; Manichæus asserted that He was personally resident in him, 88, and n.; the, the Spirit of Truth, 214.
Paradise, allegorized by some, 115, n.
Parents, make light of the childish troubles of their offspring, 12; ambition for their children's progress often injudicious, 13; our first, doctrine of the early Church concerning their immortality had they not sinned, 68, n.
Past and future, in the, there is time, 304; they exist only in the soul, 306.
Patriarchs, actions of the, prophetic, 49, and n.
Patricius, the father of Augustine, a poor freeman of Thagaste, he was only a catechumen when his son was in his sixteenth year, 28; he dies when Augustine is sixteen, 41; was at first unkind to his wife, but was melted by her enduring meekness, etc., 224, 225; is gained over to God by her, 226.
Paul, St., Augustine studies the writings of, 170; conversion of, 184, and n.; his rejoicing at the good works of the Philippians, 385.
Paul of Thebaic, asceticism of, 190, n.
Peace of heaven, the only true, 393, n.
Pearl of great price, Augustine compares Christ to the, 176, n.
Pelagians, they laid claim to the attainment of perfection through power of free-will, 234, n.
Pelagius and the bishop, dispute between, 269.
Pelican, the fable of the, 292, n.
Pen of the Spirit, 170.
Phantasies, unreality of, 45; poetical fictions less dangerous than, 45, 46.
Phantasm, Augustine thinks of God as a, 63, 66; and of Christ also, 96, [illegible] 101, 102; Augustine ceases to [illegible] upon God as a, 162.

Philo, the Therapeutæ of, 190, n.
Philosophy, made the beginning of Augustine's conversion, 41; in Greek, the love of wisdom is called, 41; effect of, on the writings of the Fathers, 41, n.; the various schools of, 75, n.; revelation alone can reconcile the different systems of, 75, n.; the academic and other schools of, 100, n.; unsatisfying, 137, n.; led the Greeks to Christ, 152, n.; Augustine's opinion of the various schools of, 153, n.; Plato's, the nearest to Christ, 177.
Photinus, heresy of, 169.
Pyrrhonists, doctrine of the, 100, n.
Piety, confession to God is, 88.
Plato, works of, compared with the Word of God, 87, n.; dogmatic and sceptical sides of his philosophy, 100, n.; doctrine of, in connection with Christianity, 152, n., 170; parallels between his doctrine and that of God, 158; much in Platonism in common with asceticism, 190, n.
Platonic theory of matter, 77, n.
Platonists, Augustine studies the books of the, probably those of Amelius, 152, and n.
Pleasures, carnal, the beasts of the field symbolical of, 85, n., 86.
Πνεῦμα, the, 163, n., 168, n.
Plotinus, theories of, 152, 153, n., 164.
Poetry, classical, evils of, 15–21.
Pompey, the ruse of, 222, n.
Pontitianus, a countryman of Augustine's, 189; his delight at finding Augustine reading St. Paul's writings; he relates to him the history of Antony, 190.
Porphyry's pride in regard to the Incarnation of Christ, 285.
Poverty, in what [illegible] displeases God consists, 192.
Praise, God worthy of, 1; Augustine begins his book with, 1, n.; man desires to praise God, 1, 82; God's, is inexhaustible, 1, 4, and n.; silence the highest, to God, 4, n.; love of worldly, 73, 279, 280, 282, n.; sometimes not to be avoided, 281.
Prayers, the manner of Easterns when at, 53, n., 95; God's answer to Monica's, 54; how He answered them, 95; Augustine's faith strengthened by answer to, 216; for the dead, 232, 237.
Preaching, leads to faith, 2; effect of Ambrose's, 2.
Pretium regium, meaning of, [illegible]
Pride, debases the heart [illegible] tine errs through, [illegible] of the air symbolical of, [illegible] temptation of, 27[illegible]
Priority of origin illustrated, [illegible]
Prodigal son, the, allusions to, [illegible] 80.
Progress, the law of, in Scripture, [illegible]
Προφορικός, *i.e.* "[illegible] flesh," [illegible] 297, n.
Prosperity the blessing of the [illegible] tament, adversity of the New, [illegible]
Providence of God, [illegible]
Ψυχικός, "soulish," [illegible] "[illegible]" 164, n.
Psalms and hymns first sung [illegible] at Milan, 219; song of death and burials, 2[illegible], n.
Psaltery of ten strings, [illegible] and [illegible]
Πειρασήριον, a "warfare," [illegible] n.
Ψυχή, the, 163, n., [illegible]
Punishment of sin, [illegible] absence of free-will [illegible]
Purgatory, prayers for the dead [illegible] a belief in, 23[illegible]
Pylades and Orestes, [illegible]

רָקִיעַ, "the firmament," [illegible]

Rationalem, term applied to [illegible] 384, n.
Rationalism, [illegible] system kindred [illegible]
Reason, the Manichæans [illegible] the expense of faith, [illegible] faith, 117, 11[illegible] belief in the [illegible] 314, n.
Reddere, used [illegible]
Regeneration, 1, [illegible] before receiving [illegible]
Rest, true, in God [illegible] 129, [illegible] in [illegible] earnest of the [illegible] ever worketh [illegible] rest, 393, 394.
Retirement, Augustine [illegible] paration for [illegible]
Revelation, law of [illegible] 48, n.; can alone [illegible] culties of the [illegible] philosophy, 75, [illegible] and deep river, [illegible] mystery, 366, [illegible]
Rhetoric, Augustine [illegible] the school of, [illegible] Thagaste, 57; [illegible] then at Rome, [illegible]

...manianus, a relative of Alypius, rich and talented, and good to Augustine, ... and n.; is influenced by Augus... to embrace the Manichæan heresy, 135, n.; Augustine's explana... on of his conversion to, 173, n.
...e, Augustine's motive for wishing to go to, 94; he leaves, 104.
...the wooden, seen by Monica in her dream, 54; symbolical of the Rule of Faith, 54, 205; the, or ...line," of Ps. xix. 3, 4, 373, n.
...mination, spiritual, 112, n.; of the ...cts, 291, n.

...RAMENT, or mystery, 178, n.; con...rmation, etc. sometimes spoken of by ...e Fathers as a, 179, n., 370, and n.
...dices were used by the soothsayers ...their divinations, 57.
..., a Manichæan, 52, n., 53, n.
...ust, quotation from, 31.
...seasoning with, on admission as a ...catechumen, 13, and n., 108, n.
...the "flesh," 164, n.
...n, renunciation of, before baptism, ...80.
...ools, Augustine disapproves of the ...ethod of instruction in, 18, 20; ...different, of philosophy, etc., ...
...ce does not lead to God, 85, 276.
...ces called "liberal," 56; Augus... read the books concerning, un... 79; Faustus was reputed to ...skilled in, 84; but had no real ...owledge of them, 90, 91.
...'s change of name, 184, n.
...ture, God's reason for the mysteries ... 8, n., veiled in mysteries, 42, ... made plain to the "little ones," ... to the mocking spirit ... the Manichæans, 43, n.; Mani... an perversion of, 43, n., 55, n.; ...ried to deprive it of all autho... 44, n.; the law of progress in, ... and n.; the Manichæans, when op... pounded that the, had been ...rrupted, 88, n.; what they censured ... the, 102; Ambrose expounded the, ...ry Lord's day, 113; "letter" of, ..., n.; types in, 115, n.; Manichæan ...illings at, 118; authority of, 118, ..., 177, n.; belief in, 118, n.; plain... ss and depth of, 119, and n.; ...ugustine rejoices that he studied ... to before, and not the converse, ..., 170; Augustine entreats of God that he may be led to the truth through the study of, 280–282, 325, and n.; mysteries and right use of, 291, nn.; symbolized, 291, n.; the Hebrew and Greek, 293; awful depth of, 328; truth to be seen in, but not by all, 336.
Sea, allegorical explanation of the, 367, and n., 368, n.
Security, false, 271, and n.
Self-deception, Augustine's, 194.
Self-knowledge to be preferred to ignorance, 5, n.
Self-love and pride the sources of sin, 51.
Sense, God has given to each its proper pleasure as well as use, 82, n.
Sermons, Goodwin's description of the effect of, 109.
Shakespeare, quotation from, 60, n.
Shame, false, 21, 29.
Sight, the allurements of, 273; knowledge received by, 379; faith and, 379, n.
Silence, the highest form of praise to God, 4, n.; a consoler in grief, 202, n.
Simplicianus, and the Platonist, 166, n.; Augustine consults him about the renewing of his mind, 174, 176; he succeeded Ambrose as Bishop of Milan, 176; his skill, 177; his uncompromisingness, 178.
Sin, in infancy, 5, 8; original, 5, 8, 96; the Manichæans denied, 77, n.; guilt of, after baptism greater than before, 13; our motives to, 31, 33; love of, for the sin's sake, 34; self-love and pride the sources of, 51; its own punishment, 67, 83, n., 241, n.; the absence of free-will the punishment of former sin, 198; forgiveness of ... baptism, 237, and n.; has not ... on ... ness, 356, n.; Augustine ... to blindness, 357, n.
Sinners cannot escape God, 83; ... themselves, not God, 83, n.
Skins, Ambrose ... the ... of mortality, 166, and n., ...
Sodom, the sea of, 38, and n.
Solomon, the enigma of, 46.
Son, the prodigal, 21.
Song of Ambrose and Augustine, 218 n.
Soothsayer, the, promises Augustine victory on certain conditions which he despises, 57.
Sorrow, why sent to us, 65, n.; effect of time and consolations of friends on, 66; effect of silence in, 202, n.

Soul, Augustine fancied that he and Nebridius had only one soul between them, 65; invocation to it to return to God, 69; the Manichæan notion concerning the, 77, n.; sight or eye of the, 116; body, spirit, and, 163, n.; speculations concerning it after death, 291, n.; Augustine on the origin of the human, 337, n.; Neo-Platonic idea as to its capacity for seeing God, 371, n.
Sozomen's account of the origin of Monachism, 190, n.
Spirit, the letter and the, of Scripture, 115, and n.; body, soul, and, 163, n.; pen of the, 170, n.; leadings of the, 264; gifts of the, 369.
Spiritual body, the, 164, n.
Stage-plays, Augustine's love of, 38; reprobated by the Fathers, those who went to them being excluded from baptism, 38, n.
Stars, knowledge of the, etc., 85, 87, 88; Manichæan teaching as to the, false, 89; the catechumen to be content with the light of the moon and the, 370, 371.
Στερίωμα, the firmament, 373, n.
Stoics, the great year of the, 380, n.
Study, Augustine's distaste for, in boyhood, 14; Ambrose in his, 113.
Substance, corporeal, Augustine's idea of God as a, 139, 140, and n., 141, 142; God's substance incorruptible, 145; evil not a, 160; the two substances, 161; Augustine thinks of God as an incorruptible, 174; matter not created out of God's, 323; sins have not, 356, n.
Subverters, Augustine delighted in their friendship, although he abhorred their acts, 40; the name of a pestilent and licentious set of persons, also termed *Eversores*, 40, n., 41.
Sun, the Christian should always aspire to look [illegible] the, 87; when able to [illegible] Christ [illegible] central, 373, n.
Sun and moon, Manichæan belief as to the, 91; proved false, 91, 92, and n.; influence of the, 143, n.
Superventia and *continentia*, difference between, 266, n.
[illegible] bishop of Rome before [illegible], 50, n.
[illegible]s, use of, 142, n.; God's goodness in conveying [illegible], 142, n.
[illegible] Manichæism the [illegible] to Milan, 193.
Sympathy, real and [illegible], 15; [illegible] 39; Christ's perfect humanity, [illegible]
Syria, Hierius a native of, [illegible]

Tablets, matrimonial, 224, and n.
Talmud, illustrations of God's reality in, 4, n.; of His mercy [illegible], 216, n.
Tears, why sweet to the [illegible], 64.
Τέκτονες, or artificers, [illegible]
Te Deum, the song of Ambrose or Augustine, 218, n.
Telemachus the [illegible] to put an end to [illegible] 126, n.
Temptation, the [illegible] stilled by Christ, [illegible] 265; as a testing, [illegible] not court, 271, [illegible] 85, n., 265, n.
Terence, *Eunuch*, [illegible]
Testament, the Old and New, [illegible]
Thagaste, Augustine's [illegible] freeman of, [illegible] rhetoric there, [illegible] Augustine met [illegible] tine leaves to [illegible] the birthplace of [illegible]
Thebes, Antony a [illegible] hermit of, 190, n.
Theft, Augustine [illegible] parents' table, [illegible] not from poverty, [illegible] wrong-doing, 80, 82–86; [illegible] Alypius is apprehended for, [illegible]
Theophilus of Antioch, [illegible] cerning Adam, [illegible]
Theraputæ of [illegible]
Thorwaldsen, [illegible] dream of, 2[illegible]
Time, effect of [illegible] [illegible]s in, 3[illegible] eternity, 29[illegible] fore not [illegible] what is, 30[illegible] 302, 303; [illegible] 311, 313, and [illegible] there is past, [illegible] of the heavenly [illegible] of what is [illegible] the impression [illegible] 314; regarded as [illegible] Augustine argues [illegible] world had one beginning, [illegible] from the creation, [illegible] from it, 368, n.; [illegible] God and His Word, [illegible]
Titius, amphitheatre [illegible] n.

Tobias, the sight seen by, 273.
Toothache, Augustine suffers from, 216; De Quincey on, 216, n.
Tradition, Rabbinical, concerning the children of Israel, 48, n.; belief in, 118, n.
Tree of life, able to avert death from Adam, 68.
Triad, man a, 163.
Trichotomy of man, doctrine of the, 163, n., 167, n.
Triers, the monastery at, 191.
Trinity, the Manichæan notion of the, 43, n.; doctrine of the, conveyed in creation, 354; types of, in man, 359, 360, and n.; mystery of the doctrine of the, 359, n.; illustrations of the, 360, n.
Trouble, why sent to us, 65, n.; effect of time on, 66.
Truth, Augustine's desire and longing for, 43, 44; the Manichæans abused the word truth, 43; God is, 43, 67, 86, 260, 262, 343, and n.; Augustine's despair of finding the, 101; is God's alone, 156, n.; heresies confirm, 169; Licentius' and Trygetius' notions concerning; the search after and the finding, 194, n.; joy in the, 261; he who finds, finds God, 262; Augustine begs that God will lead him to the, through the Scriptures, 290–292; wisdom and, 298; the discovery of, difficult, 319; to be seen in Scripture, but not by all, 336.
Trygetius' notion concerning truth, 194, n.
Tully, Augustine at one time thought the Holy Scriptures not to be compared in dignity to, 43; his contrary opinion, 87, n.; orations of, 91.
Types in Scripture, 115, n.; of the Trinity in man, 359, 360.

UNIVERSE, beauty of the, 83, n.

VICTORINUS, conversion of, 178.

WAX, writing on, 216, and n.
Way, Christ the, 170, n., 174.
Weeping, why sweet to the unhappy, [illegible]
West, custom of turning to the, 180, n.
Wife, Monica fears that a, would prove an encumbrance to her son, 29; but afterwards seeks for one for him, 134.
Will, evil a perversion of the, 162; feebleness of, 199; conflict in the, 199–201; of God is eternal, 329.
Wine-bibbing, Ambrose forbids it at oratories, 110; Monica's, in her youth, 222; how cured, 223.
Wisdom, Augustine's love of, 41, 42, 130; the love of, called philosophy in Greek, 41; God enjoins man to behold, 88; Augustine stimulated to the love of, by Cicero's *Hortensius*, 152, n.; and truth, 298; of God eternal, 330, 331; the word of, given by the Spirit, 369, and n.
Wit, 2, n.; Augustine's, a snare to him, 80.
Wizards, Augustine's opinion of, 59, n.
Woman, creation of, 391, and n.
Wood, the cross called a ship of, 18, 19, n., 170, n.
Word, wit and eloquence baits to draw man to the, 2, n.; the written, likened to the swaddling-clothes of the child Jesus, 48, n.; made flesh, 152, 153, n., 154, 165–168, 287; God the, 153, 154; Christ the, 166; God created the world by His, 294, 295; God speaks to us eternally in His, 296, 297; the beginning of all things, 297; happiness of the spiritual creature to be found only in the, 352; the firmament the type of the, 364, 365; heaven and earth shall pass away, but not the, 366.
Word of God, eternal, 69; a fount of happiness, 87, n.; incorruptible, 142, and n.
Words and ideas, 11.
World, the things of this, are fleeting, 69, 70; love of [illegible] 82; [illegible] likened to the [illegible] 368, n. [illegible] tic opin[illegible] 388; the [illegible] 391.

ZENO[illegible]

00067791

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 18 July, 2018